

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100



## NEW SECOND LATIN BOOK

### Reading Material

The first 133 pages contain selections from Roman Traditions and History, including the periods of the Kingdom, the Republic, and the Empire, selected from Eutropius and Viri Romae, with special care in limiting the size of the vocabulary. There are also four "lives" from Nepos-Aristides, Hamilcar, Hannibal, and Cato, -and three stories from Ovid. Extensive selections from all seven books of the Gallic War are given, including Chapters 1 to 29 of Book I, and Books II, III, and IV complete. In the separate text edition for class use Chapters 30-54 of Book I of the Gallic War, and an additional "Life" (Agesilaus) from Nepos will be found. The gradation of the reading has been guarded with special care, making the approach to the Gallic War much less abrupt than in many texts.

### The Plan

The vocabulary of new words and notes are placed at the foot of the study page.. A separate paper text for class use is provided. "The Story of a Roman Boy" is incorporated as an introductory chapter. This is an excellent means of impressing on the high school boy and girl the fact that in studying Latin they are coming in contact with an enlightened civilization of another day. There is a grammar appendix of more than a hundred pages.











his reb; gestis. omni gallia pacata. in  
ta. huius belli. et barbaros oppinio perlatæ. ut ab his nationib; quæ  
trans rhenum incolebant. mitterentur legati ad caesarem. quos ob fides  
daturas. imperata facturæ pollicerentur. quæ legationes caesar. ad  
in italia illis. in quæ pperabat in ita. puma aestate. ad serenus  
iussit. ipse in carmines. ad desituros. quæ ciuitates. p. p. in quæ  
erant ubi bellum gesserat. legionib; in hibernia. et deducit. in italia  
pfectus. et ob eiusque res exultans. caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio  
decreta. quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

**The Lake Classical Series**

---

# A NEW SECOND LATIN BOOK

BY

**CHARLES H. BEESON**

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

**HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT**

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL

(A REVISION OF THE MILLER AND BEESON SECOND LATIN BOOK)

**SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY**  
**CHICAGO**

**NEW YORK**

~~FTT. 6584~~

EducT 919.16.198  
L

March 28, 1921  
Harvard University,  
Library of the Graduate School  
of Education

TRANSFERRED TO  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
1932

COPYRIGHT 1902, 1916, BY  
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

ROBERT O. LAW COMPANY  
EDITION BOOK MANUFACTURERS  
C H I C A G O, U. S. A

## PREFACE

The present volume is a revision of the Miller and Beeson Second Latin Book, which was published in the year 1900. In the Preface to the original edition the following statement of purpose and point of view was made:

"The right of Caesar to occupy an important place in the early years of the Latin program of secondary schools has not been successfully challenged. His Commentaries will continue to enjoy the prestige which the traditions of centuries have assigned them. And rightly; for no Latin writer has surpassed this literary soldier in the composition of vigorous and luminous prose, which so admirably fits his work to be a medium for the presentation of the form and structure of the Latin language to the young student.

"But the right of Caesar to occupy not alone the center of the stage but the whole stage as well, in the second year of Latin study, has been justly and successfully challenged. During the last few years a very general call has been heard for an easier, better graded, richer second year program in Latin than the study of Caesar alone affords. Not only have secondary teachers urged this change, but college professors and administrative officers have generally approved the plan, and accepted this more varied program in lieu of their long established requirements in Caesar.

"The Second Latin Book which is herewith presented to the public, is intended to meet this need. It makes no professions of originality — so far as the plan is concerned of presenting selections from other authors supplementary to Caesar. Its reason for existence lies in the consistent working out of this plan: in the attempt to make the work of this most critical period in the study of Latin so attractive that the student will be drawn on by a real pleasure in the work itself; so well-graded, that he will never find it hopelessly beyond his powers; so varied, that he will never lose interest through the monotony of his task."

Attention is called to the following points in the revised edition:

(1) The material has been still further simplified, and the vocabulary has been decreased. This has been accomplished by omitting the selections from Phaedrus and the prose versions of the fables, and by reducing the number of selections from Viri Romae, Aulus Gellius, and Ovid. By these changes the vocabulary of Part I has been reduced by almost a half. Experience has shown that the most serious difficulty in the work of the pupil in the second year arises from the limitations of his vocabulary.

(2) The additions to the original text comprise chapters 1-29 from Book I of Caesar's Gallic War and four "Lives" of Nepos. The inclusion of this material makes it possible to vary the work in Caesar more widely from year to year, or even to give the entire year to Caesar occasionally, using the other parts of the book for sight reading. The selections from Nepos are sufficient in amount to give the pupil a knowledge of the character of the work of this author.

In the separate text edition which is furnished with this book for class-room use chapters 30-54 of Book I of the Gallic War and an additional "Life" of Nepos are included for sight or rapid reading. The General Vocabulary is made to cover this material.

(3) The page vocabularies have been revised and simplified, only the most important meanings being given, together with the special meanings required for the passage in which the word first occurs.

(4) The notes have been made to furnish a greater amount of help in the translation of difficult passages and in the understanding of the grammatical principles illustrated by the text.

The notes accompanying the selections from Ovid were originally prepared by Professor Miller, and they have been retained with a few slight changes and additions.



(5) A chapter on Word Formation and English Derivatives has been added, the first part presenting the more important noun and verb formations, with their English equivalents. The second part illustrates the great indebtedness of the English vocabulary to Latin by a systematic presentation of important Latin formative elements from the point of view of their use in English derivatives. It also furnishes material for a study of Latin adjective formatives which may be used to supplement the first part.

The grammatical appendix which appeared in the former edition has been retained with the changes made by its author, Professor Arthur Tappan Walker, for his edition of Caesar.

Throughout the notes, references are made to the standard Latin grammars for the convenience of teachers who prefer to have their pupils begin the use of the grammar in connection with the work of the second year.

As in the original edition, the General Vocabulary is made to cover the topics of military equipment and organization in such a way as to fulfill the purpose of the usual introduction to the school editions of Caesar. The general vocabulary of the first edition was the work of Mabel Banta Beeson, formerly Instructor in Latin in Indiana University, and it has been retained with only minor changes.

As in the first edition, care has been taken to secure accuracy in the marking of quantities, in accordance with the latest conclusions of competent scholars.

In the revision of the selections from Caesar due attention has been paid to the recent literature, especially to Meusel's work on the text and Holmes' remarkable investigations, covering every phase of the subject.

C. H. B.  
H. F. S.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE.....	3
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.....	9-10
INTRODUCTION: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY.....	11
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.....	44

## PART I

### ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY:

#### *I. The Period of the Kingdom*

1. The Founding of Rome.....	47
2. Numa Pompilius.....	51
3. Tullus Hostilius.....	53
4. Ancus Marcius.....	54
5. Lucius Tarquinius Priscus.....	55
6. Servius Tullius.....	57
7. Lucius Tarquinius Superbus.....	59
8. Horatius at the Bridge.....	61

#### *II. The Period of the Republic*

9. The First Consuls.....	65
10. The First Dictatorship.....	67
11. The First Tribune of the People.....	69
12. From the Plow to the Presidency.....	70
13. Rome Captured by the Gauls.....	73
14. The Second Samnite War.....	75
15. The Roman Disgrace at the Caudine Forks.....	77
16. The Third Samnite War: The Fall of Tarentum.....	79
17. Beginning of Imperialism: The First Punic War.....	86
18. Rome's First Naval Victory.....	87
19. Regulus Invades Africa.....	88
20. The Aegates Islands.....	92
21. The Second Punic War.....	94
22. Hannibal's Successes in Italy.....	96
23. The Roman Respect for an Oath.....	100
24. The Battle of the Metaurus: The Beginning of the End..	103
25. Hannibal Recalled to Defend Africa.....	104
26. The Battle of Zama: The End of the War.....	106
27. The Third Punic War: Destruction of Carthage.....	109
28. The Conquest of Greece: Destruction of Corinth.....	111

	PAGE
29. A Century of Civil Strife.....	113
30. Gaius Marius.....	113
31. Sulla Supreme in Rome.....	115
32. The Rise of Pompey.....	117
33. The Conspiracy of Catiline.....	119
34. The First Triumvirate: Julius Caesar Consul.....	120
35. Civil War between Pompey and Caesar.....	123
36. The Battle of Pharsalus.....	124
37. Caesar Supreme in Rome: His Assassination.....	127
38. Caesar Avenged at Philippi.....	129
39. Battle of Actium: End of Civil Strife.....	131
<i>III. The Period of the Empire</i>	
40. Augustus Emperor.....	132

## PART II

## CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR:

Book I. (Chap. 1-29)—War with the Helvetians.....	135
Book II. (complete)—War with the Belgae.....	190
Book III. (complete)—Campaigns against the Veneti, etc....	239
Book IV. (complete)—War with the Germans and First In- vasion of Britain.....	275
Book V. (Chap. 1-25)—Second Invasion of Britain.....	316
Book VI. (Chap. 9-29)—Customs of Gauls and Germans....	340
Book VII. (Chap. 68-90)—War with Vercingetorix.....	357

## PART III

## SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS:

1. Aristides.....	380
2. Hamilcar.....	383
3. Hannibal.....	386
4. Cato.....	397

## PART IV

## STORIES FROM OVID:

1. How the Human Race Was Destroyed by Flood.....	401
2. How Two Young Lovers Came to a Tragic End.....	409
3. How Two Pious People Entertained Angels Unawares.....	415

EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.....	421
-------------------------------------	-----

WORD FORMATION AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.....	429
---	-----

APPENDIX.....	437
---------------	-----

## GENERAL VOCABULARY

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
A Chapter from a Manuscript of Caesar's Gallic War.....	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Amulets.....	13
The Bulla.....	14
Child with Toy Cart.....	16
Blind Man's Buff.....	17
Children Playing Ball.....	17
Abacus.....	24
Waxed Tablets and Stylus.....	25
A Flogging at School.....	27
Reading a Roll.....	29
Reproduction of Virgil Manuscript.....	30
The Boxers.....	33
Discus Thrower.....	34
Game of Ball.....	35
Medallion.....	64
Galea.....	68
Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.....	<i>Facing</i> 107
Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus.....	" 117
Gaius Julius Caesar.....	" 127
Roman Officers and Gauls.....	" 135
Pas de l'Écluse.....	" 151
Roman Soldiers.....	" 201
The Storming of a Besieged City.....	" 233
Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine.....	" 295
Caesar's Works before Alesia.....	" 363
Acies Triplex.....	<i>Vocab.</i> 2
Aquilae.....	" 9
Aries.....	" 10
Diagram of Cohort Arrangement.....	" 21
Essedum.....	" 37
Falx.....	" 41
Funda.....	" 44
Galeae.....	" 45
Gladii.....	" 46
Glans.....	" 46
Pilum.....	" 79

	PAGE
Plutei.....	<i>Vocab.</i> 80
Scutum.....	" 95
Testudo.....	" 106
Turris Ambulatoria.....	" 110
Vallum et Fossa.....	" 113
Vineae.....	" 116

## LIST OF MAPS AND PLANS

## MAPS

	PAGE
I. Roman Empire.....	<i>Front Cover</i>
II. Italy.....	" "
III. Rome.....	" "
IV. Gaul in Caesar's Time.....	<i>Following</i> 133
V. Caesar's Fortifications on the Rhone.....	151

## PLANS

Capitoline Hill.....	20
Roman Camp.....	43
Battle with the Helvetians.....	182
Battle on the Aisne.....	<i>Facing</i> 203
Battle on the Sambre.....	" 223
Siege of the Town of the Atuatuca.....	" 231
Alesia.....	" 359

# INTRODUCTION

---

## THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY

BY FRANK JUSTUS MILLER

**His Birth.**—One bright morning in Rome, in the spring <sup>1</sup> of the year of the city 681 (or 73 B.C. as we count time), the early passer-by might have noticed unusual bustle and signs of festivity at the house of Gnaeus Cornelius Rufus. A passing slave of the family is ready enough to tell that this morning an infant son of the master is to be named with religious ceremonies and started upon his journey in life as a formal member of the little world of the home.

Nine days ago he was born, and immediately upon birth he was laid at the feet of his father, who, by stooping and raising the child in his arms, acknowledged him to be his own. This act admitted the infant to all the rights and privileges belonging to membership in the family. Pitiful indeed would have been his fate had his father, who held all power as head of the household, not thus acknowledged him. He would have become an outcast, exposed in the street to die or to be carried off by the first chance prowler and brought up very probably as a slave or professional beggar.

**The Name.**—And now the ninth day has come, when, <sup>2</sup> according to custom, the whole family is assembled in the *ātrium*, the large central living room of the house. All are in holiday attire, even the slaves being tricked out in their best finery. Relatives and friends also of the family have come in, even from distant homes, to do honor to the new member who is to-day to be formally introduced into their clan.

The father, acting as priest, first performs a simple ceremony of purification (*lūstrātiō*), sprinkling the child with pure water by means of an olive or laurel branch and burning rich incense upon the altar. As the sweet odor fills the room, he next offers sacrifices for the child, commending him to the especial favor of the gods. Then, amid the profound and reverent silence of the household, he solemnly confers upon the child the *praenōmen*, or given name, by which familiar title he is hereafter to be known among his relatives and intimate friends.

The name which has thus been given to the child is not in any sense a legal name, for he does not become an object of legal recognition until he has "come of age," or reached his majority. The little fellow has, however, even at this early age, like all other well-born Roman boys, three names, one which is now given him as his own distinctive name, and two which he has by right of birth. One of these, the "name" proper (*Cornelius*), distinguishes the clan or *gēns* into which he is born, the noble Cornelian *gēns*. This name is called *nōmen gentilicium*, or simply *nōmen*. The other name, third and last in order (*Rufus*), called the *cognōmen*, designates the particular branch or family of the *gēns* to which he belongs (in this case the *Rūfini* branch of the Cornelian *gēns*). The *cognōmen* in older times was usually a nickname indicative of some physical trait as, for instance, Cicero, the man with a pea-like wart; Naso, the long-nosed man; Paetus, the squint-eyed man; Rufus, the red-headed man. But these names have lost their significance at the time of which we are speaking.

So our young man is born into the world a Cornelius Rufus. What is to be his given name? The father, being a Cornelian, has only seven names from which to choose, for that clan confines its selection to the following names: Aulus (A.), Gnaeus (Cn.), Lucius (L.), Marcus (M.), Publius (P.), Servius (Ser.), and Tiberius (Ti.). As the bright morning



light streams down through the *impluvium*, or square aperture in the roof, and illumines the infant's head, the father joyfully accepts the happy omen and names the boy *Lūcius*, "the child of light"—Lucius Cornelius Rufus.

**Presents and Amulets; the Bulla.**—The relatives and friends 3 now crowd around the baby who has just arrived at the dignity of a name, rejoicing over him in the demonstrative Italian fashion, and showering congratulations upon the father and mother. Everyone, including the slaves, has some trinket to offer as a present to the child. There are



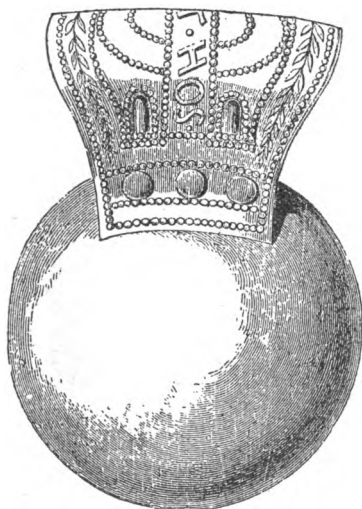
AMULETS

dolls, rattles, and similar playthings; also numerous little metal toys in the shape of flowers, dolphins, crescents, axes, swords, etc., called collectively *crepundia*. They are intended for the baby's amusement as they dangle from his neck within reach of his delighted fingers.

These little images serve also as amulets or charms; for these superstitious folk have much fear of witchery and unseen evil powers of every sort. Especially do they fear the "evil eye," a malignant influence that is thought to be lurking ever ready to blight the health, prospects, and even life of the unlucky victim. This fear still haunts the Italian

peasant of this modern time, and even the cultured classes are not without the same dread, as the secret possession of horn-shaped bits of coral and other such charms may testify.

But the charm of greatest power, one which is always henceforth to be worn about our Lucius's neck until he has arrived at man's estate, is placed there on this naming day



THE BULLA

by his father—the *bulla*, a locket made of two concave plates of gold fastened by a spring and hung upon a cord. The *bulla* worn by children of the poor was only a piece of leather; but it was worn by these as religiously as the costlier gold that our more fortunate Lucius wears throughout the period of childhood.

**The Nursery.**—The next seven years were spent in such simple and natural development as comes to any child in any place or age of the world. Lucius

made his first timid explorations on hands and knees from one side of the sunny room to the other, tracing with delight the curious patterns on the marble pavement; he pulled himself to his feet by the aid of chair or table, and took his first tottering but triumphant steps to the huge delight of his admiring family—for all the world as such things happen nowadays.

One lucky thing for Lucius was that it was the fashion in those days for the Roman mother to devote herself to her child and to take entire charge of his training, especially during these early years. Slaves there were, a plenty, to

render all needful service; but the mother's personality was the atmosphere in which the child grew up. The next most important personage in the nursery was the nurse, who not merely cared for the child in his infancy but in many cases continued to be his devoted attendant up even into manhood. The nurse was frequently a Greek slave, so selected in order that the child might from the first and without effort acquire a speaking knowledge of that language of elegant culture, an acquaintance with which was much sought after by the cultivated Romans of that day, just as in modern practice a French or German maid is secured for the little child. The affection which grew up between the nurse and her charge during these years of intimate service and dependence was often very deep and beautiful.

Here in the nursery we may be sure was the same "baby talk" as nowadays, consisting of that distorting and clipping of words, that use of diminutives and other tricks of speech, which have been the language of brooding affection since the world began. Inasmuch as we have nothing left us but the dignified language of Roman "grown-ups," it is hard to believe that real, human children ever learned to use it in their everyday life or that it was used as the very undignified language of the nursery. But then, Roman babies and Roman mothers were just as human as the American babies and mothers of to-day.

By the time of Lucius the world had arrived at the use of cradles with rockers, though in more ancient times this soothing motion had been gained in the hollow of father's spreading shield, in a winnowing fan, and so on, back to the time when the half-human mother swung with her baby "on the tree top." As for lullabies, those crooning, half meaningless songs which are the natural accompaniment of the swaying cradle, we may be sure that Lucius heard these from his earliest consciousness. Indeed, one of these old Roman slumber songs has by strange good fortune come

down to us. Here it is, just as Lucius himself may have heard it:

*Lalla, lalla, lalla, aut dormi aut lactā.*

To a baby of our own land this song would mean:

Lullaby, lullaby, go to sleep or take your milk.

We may be sure, too, that there were plenty of stories for the wondering child to hear—stories of fairies and witches, of nymphs that haunt the springs and woods and mountains, of strange creatures, half man half goat, that dance merrily in the deep green woods, of wonderful changes that happened in the olden time, such as when a man was changed into a wolf, or a maid into a laurel tree. And then as the child grew older there would be the old Roman tales, stories of the little Romulus and Remus, and the mother wolf that suckled them; of how Romulus got wives for his

men; of the tragic fate of Tarpeia, the daughter of the Roman guard; of the heroic struggle of Horatius at the bridge, and all the thrilling deeds of those wild old days. And the little Roman boy heard of the famous deeds of his own great ancestors, and was stirred by them till his blood ran more quickly in his veins, though as yet he but half comprehended them.

#### Playthings, Games, Pets.

The playthings in our youngster's nursery were

not very different from those of to-day, except that the picture books so abundant in our homes were entirely lacking then,



6

CHILD WITH TOY CART

and the elaborate mechanical toy had not yet been invented. The playthings were, however, sufficiently varied. There were dolls of clay and wax (but their eyes did not open and shut); there were toy wagons, whistles, tops and whiplash to spin them with, marbles (round nuts were most commonly used), hoops rolled with sticks, and balls of every sort.

Lucius had as many pets as any child of to-day could wish. Tame birds in great variety were his delight. Doves and pigeons cooed around the sunny court of the big house in which he lived; ducks and geese swam in the little lake which the fountain made; sparrows and quails flitted familiarly within his reach; and crows and parrots croaked their hoarse notes, often in human words, to his huge



BLIND MAN'S BUFF



CHILDREN PLAYING BALL

amusement. Then he had tame mice which he trained to draw a little cart. The only pet familiar to our modern households which he did not have was the cat.

Of children's games, besides his marbles and tops and

rolling hoops, he had such old time favorites as "Blind Man's Buff," "Odd or Even," "Hide and Seek," "See-Saw"; such games of ball as "Two Old Cats," "Barney Ball," and, at least in rudimentary form, all the other varieties of ball games which are familiar to the boy of to-day.

- 6 **Home Training.**—The moral atmosphere of the home in which Lucius grew up was a wholesome one. Simplicity and integrity of life were daily enforced by example and precept. His parents believed that if ever their son was to become strong and manly the place and time to begin the training for this was in the home in early childhood. There were three cardinal virtues which Lucius learned once for all, and which made him fit in after life for the proud position of citizenship in the state that was even then mastering the world. These virtues were truthfulness, obedience to authority, and self-reliance. Reverence for the gods he also learned, both from direct teaching and because the very atmosphere of the household breathed this. If he knew nothing as yet of the great gods whose stately temples adorned the Capitol and the Forum, he heard much of the Lares and Penates, whose images stood within his father's house, and upon whose altar at the hearth of the great living-room incense was daily burned and sacrifices offered. He was taught that these household gods were the kindly deities who watched over the family and allowed no evil to pass its threshold.

As to intellectual training, this was not neglected even in these early years. Lucius was taught his "letters" by means of the blocks so familiar to our own childhood. Blocks of ivory or some less costly material were painted or inscribed with the different letters of the alphabet, and so in his sport the child became familiar with these "seeds of words." He would be taught also to trace these himself with a sharp-pointed *stilus* of metal or bone, his hand being held at first and guided over the tablet thinly coated with wax.

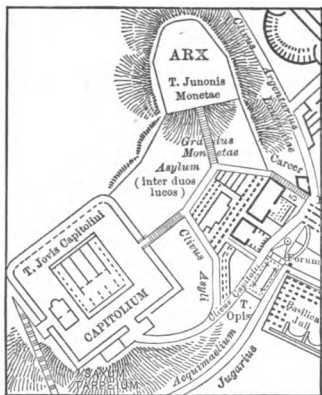
To these elements of reading and writing were added a simple use of numbers as in counting, and a careful training in the proper pronunciation and use of his mother tongue. Reference has already been made to opportunities from the earliest years of childhood for gaining acquaintance with the Greek language. The glorious traditions of Rome, which described her progress from a simple settlement upon the Palatine to a world power, had no small part in the early development of this Roman boy.

**Lucius Starts to School.**—When Lucius was seven years of 7 age, it was decided by his parents that he should now be sent from the sheltered training of the home to a public school, where he might receive his further education in company with other boys of his own age. Accordingly, a kind-faced, elderly slave man, who has belonged in the family for years, is on hand this morning to conduct his little master to the schoolhouse. This slave, because of the duty thus assigned him, is called in the household *paedagōgus* (pedagogue) or “child leader.” But Lucius himself, who is to-day placed under his care and authority, calls him *dominus*, or “master.” This slave is to be the little fellow’s “guide, philosopher, and friend” throughout his boyhood, helping him with his lessons at home, accompanying him to school, remaining there throughout the hours of study, and bringing him safely home again.

**His Dress.**—And a pretty sight the lad makes as he walks 8 briskly along this bright morning beside his staid companion. His head is, according to the fashion of the time, quite unprotected, except for his thick hair which falls in dark glossy locks nearly to his shoulders. Around his neck hangs the precious golden *bullā* which he has worn constantly since his naming day. An outer garment of pure white wool with a broad purple border (the *toga praetexta*, worn by boys and girls alike until the legal majority of the one or the marriage of the other) is draped gracefully over the

upper part of his body, while another garment, also of wool, is worn beneath this next to the skin. This is called the *tunica*, a plain shirt or tunic, of the natural white color of the wool, with very short sleeves and reaching from the neck to a little below the knees. There is, besides, a *subligaculum* or loin cloth of linen, somewhat resembling the trunks worn by athletes. His feet are protected by the *calceus* or low shoe, fastened with a lace.

- 9 **On the Way to School.**—The house of Lucius's father stood upon the southwestern slope of the Capitoline Hill facing



PLAN OF CAPITOLINE HILL

the River Tiber and the Janiculan Hill beyond. This morning the pedagogue leads him up to the higher ground of the hill through streets which even in that more wealthy quarter of the city are quite narrow and unattractive. Plain, brick-fronted houses face the narrow, stone-paved streets. Some of these streets have no sidewalks at all, while others have narrow, shelf-like walks raised a foot or more above the street level, with high stepping-

stones at the street intersections for crossing from side to side.

They soon reach that part of the Capitoline Hill which lies between two higher crests on either side. Here the way widens out into a spacious open court with the ancient temple of the Capitoline Jove upon their right, the summit crowned with the famous *quadriga*, or four-horse chariot, brought from Etruria. Lucius is reminded that upon this crest, within this temple, the Romans had made their last stand more than two centuries ago when all else had been abandoned to the vic-



torious Gauls. Upon their left is the *Arx* or citadel, with a temple of Juno crowning its summit. In front, shutting off the forum from their view, is the huge pile of the *Tabulārium*, or treasury building, in which public records and precious state papers of every sort are kept.

Further off to the right, beyond the temple of Jove, is the infamous Tarpeian Rock, recalling the dreadful death of state criminals who, in the earlier times, were thrown headlong from this steep precipice to the rocks below. Lucius thinks, too, with pity, of the treacherous and unfortunate Tarpeia who here, as he has heard from his old nurse, was buried and crushed beneath the weight of the heavy Sabine shields.

The two now pass to the right down the famous *Clivus Capitōlinus*, that continuation of the *Via Sacra* up which so many Roman generals had proudly ridden in their triumphal chariots. As he walks down this way, the heart of the lad swells with pride while he recalls the stories of the heroic deeds of his great kinsman, Publius Cornelius Scipio, who, over a hundred years ago, was led up this very slope amid the plaudits of thousands of grateful citizens, after he had defeated the dreaded Hannibal and brought the long struggle of the second Punic war to a close.

Their way has wound around the eastern slope of the Capitoline, between the *Tabulārium* on the left and the temple of Saturn upon the lower level on the right. And now Lucius can see immediately before him the outer structure of the ill-famed *Tullianum*, or underground prison (*carcer*). He thinks with a shudder of the dark, frightful den, deep under ground, completely walled in and covered with massive stones. Entrance is gained only through a narrow hole in the ceiling of the prison; and exit is made too often through a hole in the floor which drops down into the darkness of the great sewer (*cloāca maxima*), which runs beneath. Grewsome stories of this place his father's slaves have often told the boy with bated breath. He has heard

too how the wicked African prince, Jugurtha, was let down into this dark, cold grave, and left there miserably to starve to death. Lucius is glad to turn away his eyes from this place with all its sad traditions, to the bright beauty of the open, sunshiny forum which now lies spread out before him.

- 10 **Across the Forum.**—What a scene of busy and varied activity this forum is! Here, as Lucius and his guide stand upon the slight elevation in front of the temple of Saturn, they can see groups of white-haired senators making their way to the senate house (*cūria*) near by. These men, in their quiet dignity, are the embodiment of the majesty of that state whose power is already felt throughout Italy and Greece and in two continents besides. Here is the *rōstra* with its high, wide platform of marble, its triumphal pillars adorned with the beaks of captured ships (whence its name, “the place of beaks”), where orators for generations past have stood and addressed the sovereign people of the Republic. Here are the stalls of the money changers around which eager merchants cluster for a while and then hasten away to their own shops which either border upon the forum or are to be found within the neighboring streets. Among the crowd can be seen captains of Roman galleys which lie full of foreign merchandise down by the Tiber side; swarthy Spaniards, fair-haired, shrewd-faced Greeks, Jews, Moors—all the world seems jostling here in this centre of the world. Yonder, within the shelter of a *basilica* or public court, is a strolling street philosopher, haranguing a restless crowd of temporary listeners. Silent processions of grave priests are seen ascending the steps of the temples which face the busy square, and soon clouds of fragrant incense arise from the altars within the richly colonnaded temple areas. Most impressive of all to the little boy is a procession of white-robed vestal virgins who now come forth from the large, rambling structure at the further end of the forum (the *ātrium Vestae*, or “house of Vesta”), a sort of convent

home for the priestesses of the oldest religious cult in Rome. Headed by their senior sister (*Vestālis maxima*) they cross the short intervening space to the beautiful round temple of their goddess upon whose altar it is their duty to cherish the eternal fire.

**At the School.**—Lucius and his pedagogue have crossed the forum diagonally, and now, proceeding a few squares directly north, come to the schoolhouse, which is the objective point of this morning's walk.

This is a rough, shed-like structure, built as a sort of lean-to against a large public building of the neighborhood, with a roof but no side walls. The din of the noisy street resounds through the schoolroom, but this is more than equaled by the din of the school itself. The noise of the distant shouting of children's voices can be heard a block away; and when our friends reach the place they find that it is only an exercise in reading that is in progress. They stand at one side and watch this busy and seemingly disorderly scene.

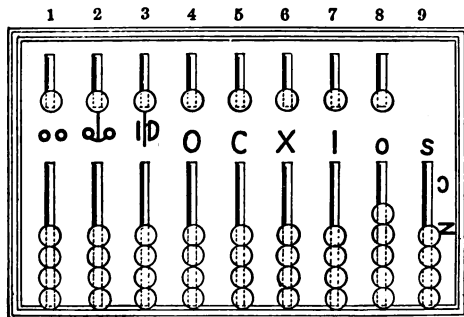
The teacher, a loud-voiced, severe-looking man, in appearance a freedman (*libertinus*), stands at the head of the room giving out with great exactness of pronunciation some piece of Latin poetry line by line. As he throws out each line in a loud and formal tone, the scholars in concert catch it up and shout it back to him at the top of their united voices. In this way correct pronunciation (if not enunciation) is taught, and by the same process the lines are committed to memory. Similarly, wise saws, proverbs, etc. (called *sententiae*) are committed to memory by means of this loud-voiced reiteration.

During a lull in this exercise Lucius is duly introduced to the teacher and is assigned by him to a place upon one of the rough, backless benches that serve for seats; while the faithful pedagogue takes his place with others of his class at the back of the room.

The thing which would first attract the attention of a modern boy visiting this school is the utter absence of books. All instruction is given by the oral method. The reading, or pronouncing, we have already heard. Arithmetic is taught in much the same way, the teacher giving out simple problems in adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing, and the student performing these operations in his mind. Here is a sample sum which dates from very near Lucius's own time:

Question: "If from five ounces (i.e. of copper) one be subtracted, what is the remainder?" Answer: "A third of a penny." Question: "If an ounce be added, what does it make?" Answer: "The half of a penny."

Calculations which are too long to be held in the mind are assisted by a species of counting board (*abacus*), consisting of



ABACUS

a wooden frame with perpendicular partitions, in which balls or buttons are placed, the different partitions representing units, tens, and hundreds, respectively.

As to writing, or rather print-

ing, for at this time there was no cursive or running handwriting, most of the scholars have already learned at home how to form the different letters. They are now given exercises at dictation which they are asked to put down upon their waxed tablets of wood which serve in place of slates, the sharp pointed metal *stilus* corresponding to the slate pencil. When proficient in this exercise, they will be taught

the use of the reed pen with ink upon papyrus or parchment; but these materials were used very sparingly, owing to their high price.

And so to the ancient and honorable three R's—Reading, Writing, and Arithmetic, these sturdy Roman lads of the primary school pay their respects — enforced respects, it must be confessed. For it is not to be supposed that these youngsters had any more natural studiousness or any less explosive activity pent up under their little tunics than the modern boy. And in their case it must be added that, as a rule, the teacher was not one to inspire respect except as he enforced it at the rope's end, or by vigorous resort to the birch-rod.



WAXED TABLETS AND STYLUS

**School Hours and Holidays.**—The school to which Lucius 12 was thus introduced began its daily sessions before sunrise, a custom in general vogue in Roman business life. This early start was necessitated by the extreme heat in the middle of the day. The boys, therefore, would arrive in the early dawn, each provided with his candle or torch, and the combined lights of all of these would sufficiently illumine the schoolroom. The consequent smoke and grime, however, must have added much to the generally forbidding appearance and atmosphere of the place. The session continued until well along in the forenoon, and, after a liberal midday allowance of time for luncheon and recreation, was resumed in the afternoon.

The Romans had no division of time corresponding to our days of the week, and consequently no welcome and regularly

recurring Saturday and Sunday for holiday and rest from ordinary employment. But, notwithstanding this, the Roman boy was not so badly off for holidays. According to Roman traditions and customs, there was a large number of days either set apart as sacred or otherwise designated as unavailable for secular business. Thus in Lucius's time, or a very few years later (i.e. under the Julian Calendar), there were 126 out of 365 days so designated. This prohibition of secular business may not have extended in all cases to the schools, but it is certain that the holidays were numerous enough to satisfy the most exacting schoolboy.

There were two periods in particular extending over several days and corresponding loosely to our Spring and Christmas holidays. These were the *Quīnquātria*, or "days of Minerva," as Ovid calls them, extending from March nineteenth to twenty-third, inclusive; and the *Sāturnālia*, beginning on the seventeenth of December. In addition to these shorter holidays, there was the long summer vacation which came as a matter of course on account of the heat which drove out of Rome all who could get away. As to school work in summer, most parents in Lucius's time would readily have agreed with the poet Martial, who, more than a hundred years later said: "If boys keep well in summer time, that's work enough."

- 13 The Grammar School.**—The next grade above the elementary school, to which Lucius in due time attained, was the grammar school. We are fortunately able to give the name of the teacher of this particular grammar school to which Lucius went, the school which, a few years later, the little Quintus Horatius Flaccus himself attended. This teacher was one Orbilius, who came to Rome from Beneventum when Lucius was ten years old. He was a harsh man and hammered learning into his boys with rope and ferule unmercifully. Horace, in his later days, cannot think of him without wincing, and calls him "Orbilius the Flogger" (*plāgōsus*).

The program of this school contained studies in elocution, music, and geometry. But the time was chiefly devoted to the Greek and Roman poets. Among the Greek poets, Homer was then, as he has always been, the popular school



A FLOGGING AT SCHOOL

classic. Apart from the language itself, the grammar of which was most carefully studied, there would be many other interesting objects of study in the two great Homeric epics, such as geography, mythology, antiquities, history, etc. Of course, the stories themselves would be matter for never failing enjoyment. And it is an inspiring thought that in the thrill of interest which the modern schoolboy feels in these old tales, he is by that very experience in most real sympathy with the schoolboys of those days many centuries ago.

Lucius studied also the poetry of his own language. And what was this? What was the poetic product of his country

which he could know? He had no *Aeneid*, for the poet who was to write that immortal work was even now himself a schoolboy away up in Mediolanum in Northern Italy. As for the poet Horace, he was still a little lad eight years younger than Lucius, in a small provincial town of Apulia, though destined soon to be pursuing his studies in these very schools of Rome. Lucretius and Catullus were older contemporaries of Lucius, while Ovid was nearly a generation younger.

The Roman poetry which was known to him was, first, the *Annālēs* of Ennius, who embodied in this great poem the early traditions and history of Rome; then there were the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the tragedies of Ennius, Pacuvius, Accius, and others, and the satires of Lucilius. Such was, for the most part, the Latin poetry available at that time for use in the schools. But, strange as it may seem, the Latin text-book which had been most in vogue for over a century and a half, and was still in general use, was not a Latin poem at all, but Homer's *Odyssey*, translated into crabbed old Latin by one Livius Andronicus.

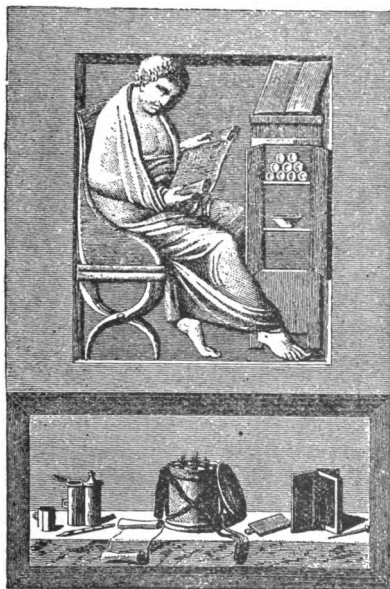
This Livius was a Greek slave who came to Rome in 240 B.C., and, setting up as a teacher of Latin, made this crude translation in order that he might have a text-book from which to teach that language. His was the first literary work in the language of the Romans of which we have definite knowledge, and he was the first professor of Latin on record!

- 14 **The Character of Lucius's Text-Books.**—The modern school-boy little realizes how much better equipped he is with his neat, well-printed book, than were Lucius and his school-mates. Their books were clumsy affairs, consisting of many sheets of papyrus, written on one side and pasted together at the lateral edges so as to form one long, continuous sheet. The columns of written matter would thus stand parallel to one another and perpendicular to the bottom of the sheet.



The right and left edges of this sheet were glued to thin strips of wood, and the whole was rolled tightly around the right-hand strip. Thus the book was, in a real sense, a "volume" (*volūmen*, roll), a name not properly applied to our modern books.

When a student would read his book, he held it upright before him and slowly unrolled the volume, reading first the left-hand sheet or page. This, when read, would be rolled upon the left-hand wooden strip, and the next page unrolled. So the reading was a process of rolling and unrolling to the end of the volume. This would then be rolled back upon the right-hand roller ready for use again. The



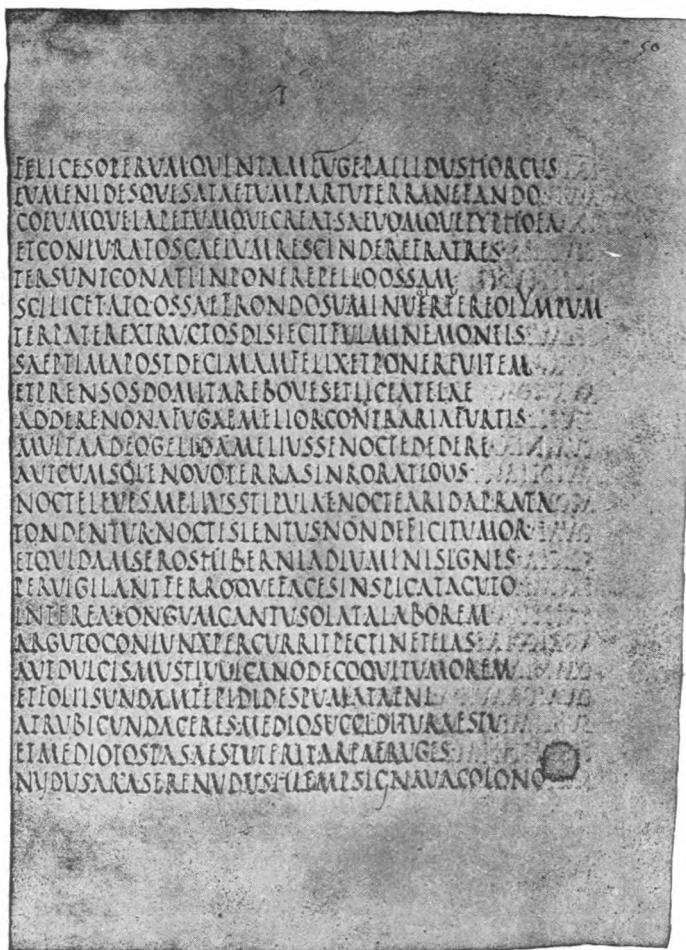
READING A ROLL

accompanying cut represents a man reading in this way.

The text itself of the ancient book seems to us almost unreadable. The letters were all in capitals, often very rude and clumsy; the words were unspaced save only by a dot which was frequently omitted; and the sentences were not punctuated. The difficulties of reading such a text may easily be imagined.

We have no manuscript of any Latin author dating from the time of the original composition, nor within several hundred years of this; but we are able to get some idea of the appearance of a page of Latin poetry from the later

copies which have come down to us. We are reproducing here a page of the poet Vergil (*Georgics*, I., 277-299), fr



a manuscript dating from about the fifth century of our era now kept in the Vatican Library at Rome.

**The Schools of Rhetoric.**—For most Roman boys, especially of the middle and lower classes, the studies of the school last described completed their formal education. They would go from this directly into business life. But for the high-born lads and the more ambitious of the lower classes there remained a third school, not a part of the system of more elementary education, but corresponding to our college. Schools of this type were devoted largely to the study of rhetoric, and embraced composition, debate, and declamation.

The students were now put upon the prose authors, who were studied chiefly as models of prose composition, in which the narrative style was first practised. As proficiency was gained in this, the students would be given opposite sides upon some disputed point in history, and required to present the arguments in defense of their respective positions. Such exercises were called *suāsōriæ*. We know what some of these questions were which Lucius and his fellows debated. Following are two favorite examples: "Shall Hannibal march upon Rome after his victory at Cannæ?" "Shall Sulla, after attaining the dictatorship, retire to private life upon his laurels?"

The next exercise which was taken up was a series of debates involving some imaginary knotty problem in law (*contrōversiae*). One such question is outlined by Suetonius, a chatty old historian who lived a hundred years later than Lucius. The case is stated thus: "A party of young people were picnicking at Ostia and saw some fishermen preparing to draw in their nets. The youths bargained for the haul for a certain sum and paid their money. But when the net was drawn in, it was found to contain no fish at all, but a basket full of gold. Each side claimed the gold, the one, on the ground that they had paid for the haul, the other, on the ground that the bargain related to fish alone." It would be worth something to hear the arguments of the schoolboys upon this difficult point.

Another exercise, much in vogue in the school of rhetoric, involved training in oratorical composition and declamation. The boys would be given some dramatic historical situation and required to compose for the chief actor in the scene a speech consistent with the known facts. We have none of these academic exercises, but our Latin historical books are full of speeches of this sort, so realistic as to show that their authors must have had excellent training in this style of composition. Instances of these are Hannibal's address to his army, which had lost courage amid the difficulties of the passage of the Alps; the harangues of Scipio and Hannibal to their respective armies on the eve of the battle of the Ticinus, and scores of other such speeches in Livy. Sallust, in his history of the conspiracy of Catiline, records the supposed speeches of Caesar, Cato, and others during the discussion as to the fate of the captured conspirators, and admirably adapts the style and sentiments of these speeches to the supposed speakers. Tacitus has given us the stirring speech of the Caledonian chief, Calgacus, to his countrymen upon the occasion of their last great stand against the Romans in Britain.

- 16 **A Day of Sport in the Campus Martius.**—But we must not lose sight of the fact that during these ten years over which his schooldays stretched, the daily life of Lucius was full, besides, of interesting events and varied activity in home, street, field, and forum. We have seen already how the child's mother was his constant companion in his nursery days, and how large a place in his school days was filled by his pedagogue and his teacher. But what of his father? Did a Roman boy grow up without the important influence of his father's companionship? On the contrary, the boy was much under his father's care and instruction, during the out-of-school hours and on holidays. At such times Lucius would generally be found at his father's side on the street or in the forum, and then would his father tell

him of the earlier years of Rome and all the stirring deeds of which his country's history was full. In this way every public monument and building became familiar to the boy. And on great occasions his father would reverently open the cabinets that stood in one corner of the *atrium* of his home and show him the waxen images of his great ancestors, telling him at the same time of their history. Lucius would also attend the sessions of the Senate in his father's charge and observe with eager eyes and ears the transactions of that august assembly.

And, best of all, when the necessary tasks were done, the two would almost daily repair to the Campus Martius for



THE BOXERS

exercise and amusement. This Campus was a large, green expanse lying without the city and inclosed by the Tiber, which, at that point, makes a wide bend to the west. This was the recreation ground of Rome to which boys and men of all ages made daily resort. The Romans were an athletic race and delighted in every form of physical exercise. Here might be seen wrestlers, stripped and anointed with oil, their struggles an object of eager interest to the on-lookers.

who dearly loved such an exhibition of strength and skill; and boxers, with their hands and forearms protected with heavy strips of leather (the *caestus*); races of footmen and horsemen, and occasionally the wild dash of the chariot.

The throwing of the *discus* also was a popular test of athletic skill. This was a disc of stone or metal about ten or twelve inches in diameter held in the right hand and leaning against the forearm. The position in throwing is shown in the accompanying cut.



DISCUS THROWER

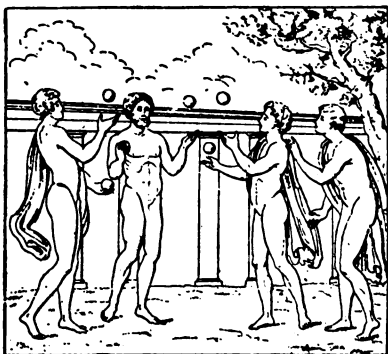
But the game that was most popular with young and old was the game of ball, which was played then as now, in many forms. It may be said that the rudiments, at least, of all forms of ball games as they are now played existed then. Generally a small, hard ball was used, the simplest form of the game being that in which two players merely passed the

ball back and forth. A more difficult game was called *trigōn*, in which three players stood at the angles of a triangle and passed the ball, perhaps more than one, rapidly and irregularly to one another. This game required the ability to catch and throw with either hand. Again, there was a large, inflated ball of leather, like a foot-ball, which could

be either thrown or kicked back and forth. This was much in favor with boys and old men for the gentle and safe exercise which it afforded.

The close proximity of the Tiber made swimming a natural accompaniment of all these games, and at the same time furnished the convenient bath which was much coveted after the vigorous exercise of the athletic field.

**Lucius sees a Roman Triumph.**— One day, in the year in which Lucius was twelve years old, the city was in an unusual bustle of excitement.



GAME OF BALL

17

The whole population was in the streets in festive attire and hurrying toward the forum. The air was full of the fragrance of incense which rose in white clouds from the temple altars, and all the sacred images were garlanded with flowers. For, on this morning, the great emperor, Gnaeus Pompeius, was to enter the city walls and celebrate the triumphs which the Senate had decreed to him. The name of the general was on every lip, for had he not brought the long war against Mithradates to a successful close, after a campaign which included the conquest of fifteen different nations, scores of princes, and hundreds of cities, which vastly extended the territory of Rome and enriched her treasury by thousands of talents of silver and gold? The spectacle of a triumph in Rome, while not of frequent occurrence, was still familiar to all, and Pompey had himself triumphed twice before; but this grand pageant was to surpass any that had ever before been witnessed in the imperial city.

Among these thronging spectators we may be sure that Lucius is eagerly waiting under the care of his faithful pedagogue, for his father, as a senator, is marching in the triumphant procession itself.

And now the distant fanfare of trumpets is heard which announces that the moving pageant has entered the city gates. Here they come at last, along the Via Sacra, heading into the forum. First appears the stately procession of senators in festal robes with the magistrates marching at their head. These are followed by a band of trumpeters filling the air with their inspiring and triumphant notes; then, a long train of wagons bearing the spoils captured in war, the rude, heavy wheels creaking and groaning beneath their load. There is much craning of necks here to see this new wealth which is destined for the public treasury, and to read the tablets which accompany and describe each load.

Next comes a band of flute-players. Then the white bulls selected for sacrifice walk stolidly along, their horns gilded and garlanded. Following these are the forlorn and dejected band of captive princes before whom are borne their insignia and arms. The people look in amazement upon the captives, for never before have so many conquered princes graced a Roman triumph. The lesser captives follow these, dismally clanking their heavy fetters.

It would be only in accordance with established custom for some of these wretched captives to be led aside to the *Tullianum*, and there pitilessly dispatched as a sacrifice in the lowest dungeon. But this barbarous custom the more merciful Pompey disregards.

There now appear the lictors of the emperor walking in single file, with laurel-wreathed fasces in their hands. All eyes are centred upon the space next beyond these, for here rides the emperor himself. A great wave of cheers rolling up from the distance in constantly increasing volume has heralded his progress. And now the forum fairly rocks with



tumultuous shouts as the general at last appears in his rich triumphal chariot drawn by four horses. He is attired in a gold embroidered toga and flowered tunic, his brow laurel-crowned, a branch of laurel in his right hand and a sceptre in his left. Surely, this is a veritable deification of man. Lest it should prove too dangerous exaltation for a human soul, a slave is set within the chariot to remind him in his ear that he is only mortal still (*hominem tē mementō*); and the *bulla* of his boyhood, long since laid by, is again about his neck to protect him from the evil eye of envy.

Last of all comes the veteran and victorious army by which the general has wrought all these victories. They march in serried ranks with their spears all wreathed in laurel, a model of discipline except for their jests and songs and shouts of triumph.

Through the forum and up the sacred slope the long procession takes its way; and finally the general stands before the temple of the Capitoline Jove. He enters this and lays his wreath at the feet of the god, while at the temple altar the sacrificial bulls are offered up, the pomp and ceremony culminating in the most solemn of religious rites.

The great pageant is over. The throngs of spectators gradually melt away to their homes, there to rehearse the incidents of this exciting day. To most of them it is but one more huge spectacle to be enjoyed. To Lucius, as to every highborn boy in Rome, it is a revelation of the unimagined glories of his country, something to dream about for years to come. And in the dream, it will not be the form of Pompeius Magnus, but the dreamer's self that stands exultant in the triumphal chariot.

**Lucius Becomes a Man.**—We have now come to the closing 18 scene in the life of every Roman boy, to the time when he passed out of the seclusion and shelter of the home into the larger life of the State. The legal age at which a boy became a man and a citizen varied somewhat with different periods;

but at this time the boy commonly attained his legal majority upon the completion of his sixteenth year. This event, the most important in all his life as yet, was observed with great ceremony, as befitted such an occasion. It was customary to observe these ceremonies, not always upon the sixteenth birthday itself, but upon that seventeenth of March which fell nearest to the birthday. This day was the so-called *Liberālia*, or festival to Liber, of hallowed memory to Roman youth for generations past.

Accordingly, again to-day, as on that morning sixteen years ago with which this Roman boy's story opens, we may see signs of unusual bustle and festivity at the house of Gnaeus Cornelius Rufus upon the Capitoline slope. The order of the ceremonies and festivities has been established by long custom. Early in the morning the whole household together with relations and friends have assembled in the roomy *ātrium* once more.

And now the *bullā*, which has been worn so faithfully during all these years is removed from the boy's neck and consecrated to the Lares of the household. Only upon such an occasion as we have described in a Roman triumph will the *bullā* ever again be worn, when its charms may be needed against such peculiar dangers of the evil eye. The boy is next dressed by his father in the *tunica recta*, a long undergarment of wool woven in one piece; and over this is draped, not the *toga praetexta*, which, with the *bullā*, has been the distinguishing mark of boyhood (*īnsignia pueritiae*), but the *toga virilis*, the pure, white robe of manhood and Roman citizenship.

Before leaving the house a sacrifice is offered to the household gods and their blessing invoked upon the young man. And now an orderly procession of all the retinue is formed—slaves, freedmen, clients, friends, relatives, and the immediate family. By this guard of honor the proud youth is escorted to the forum, that heart of Rome, where every

important event is consummated; and there Lucius is formally presented to the State as a candidate for citizenship. Many similar processions are entering the forum on this festal day, escorting other scions of Roman houses; and there is much mutual congratulation and rejoicing as these processions meet and pass.

The last official act of the ceremony is the registration of the full name of the candidate in the official list of Roman citizens kept in the *Tabulārium*, whereby it is made known to all the world that one Lucius Cornelius Rufus, son of Gnaeus, is endowed with all the duties, rights, and privileges appertaining to Roman citizenship. After public sacrifice upon an altar in the temple near by, the whole retinue retrace their steps to the father's house, there to make merry and rejoice that their Lucius has at length come to his man's estate, and that the Republic has been enriched by one more worthy citizen.

**Supplementary Education and Culture; the *Tirōcinium*.— 19**

And now the world of broader culture and activity opened invitingly to the young man. After the fashion of his time, he would naturally turn to travel and residence in foreign lands where he might freely indulge his tastes for the study of history, works of art, social customs, and like objects of general interest. Especially desirable in the eyes of the young men of Rome was a period of residence at Athens, during which the youth would devote himself to a study of Greek philosophy. Indeed, so prevalent did this custom become, that Athens came to be the centre of higher culture for Rome—the recognized University of the ancient world.

But the most important of all questions which Lucius had to answer at this critical period of his life, was as to his choice of a profession. As a matter of fact, there were only two fields of activity open to a Roman gentleman, the forum and the army. For either of these a year of special training

and preparation was necessary, called the *tirōcinium*, or apprenticeship. If the young man chose the law and politics, he would attach himself to some prominent statesman and orator. This learned patron he would attend in all his public duties, assisting him where this was possible, and listening to all his public utterances—just such a course in law and statesmanship as was followed by students in modern times up to the general establishment of schools of law. Such training was called by the Romans *tirōcinium fori*. Similarly, if the young man elected the army as his profession, his military training, called *tirōcinium militiae*, would be gained in the camp of some Roman general, who would allow young nobles, in the character of lieutenants or aids-de-camp, to serve under him a full apprenticeship in the arts of war. Here a young man would be given abundant opportunities both to observe and to practise the duties of an officer and leader of men, while at the same time he would be excused from the drudgery of the hard drill that fell to the lot of the common soldier.

**20 Lucius Joins the Army of Julius Caesar in Gaul.**—At the beginning of the year 57 B.C., in which Lucius attained his legal majority, all Rome was ringing with the praises of Caius Julius Caesar, the popular hero of the hour. He had, in the previous year, fought two brilliant campaigns; in one, he had swept back again to their cramped home in the Alps the migrating hordes of the Helvetians, who had threatened to overflow the Roman borders in the west; and, in the other, he had met and crushed the terrible Ariovistus and his Germans who had crossed the Rhine in overwhelming numbers.

The natural enthusiasm for war which had always characterized the highborn young men of Rome was kindled into unusual life by these brilliant successes. Where could they better learn the arts of war than under a leader whose very name inspired courage and admiration in all ranks of

his soldiers, and fear in the hearts of his enemies? And so the second year of Caesar's campaign in Gaul found many young men in his camp, who, like Lucius, had just reached their legal majority and were eager to serve their military apprenticeship under such a master.

**Lucius in Camp.**—Lucius and his companions joined 21 Caesar in the early summer of 57, in the region of the Po river, where the general was levying fresh troops for his campaign against the Belgians. Having completed his levy, Caesar gave the new legions to one of his lieutenants to lead northward, while he himself, taking the young men with him, hastened to the Sequanian country, where his veteran army was still in winter quarters under the famous Labienus.

Here in camp Lucius gained his first lesson in the art of war—the lesson of absolute order. The camp was indeed a model of orderly arrangement, with its site carefully selected with reference to fuel and water, with its four sides defended by wall and ditch, each wall pierced by a well-protected gate, with its carefully laid out streets dividing the camp into equal portions like a well-planned town, with its neat rows of tents where were encamped the veteran legions, each in its own district or ward; there also were the *praetorium*, containing the general's quarters, the *forum*, or meeting place of the soldiers, and the tribunal from which the general would harangue the troops.

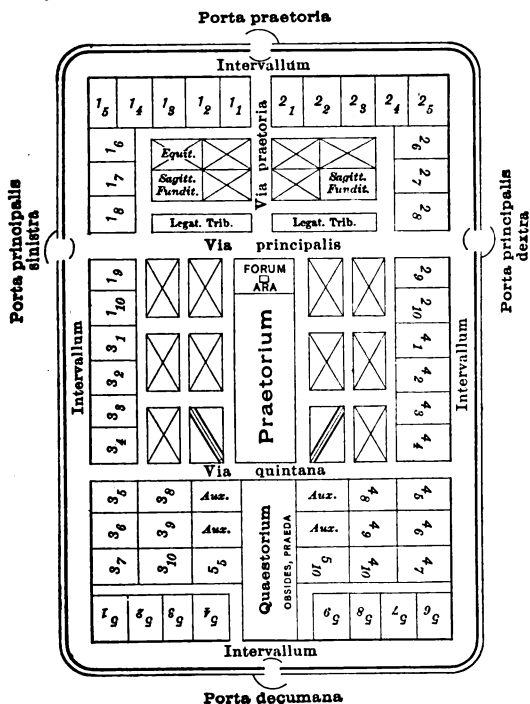
The young men were also much impressed with the absolute discipline of the veteran troops as they were put through the daily drill in military evolution. Small, but hardy, with muscles like whipcords, with the bold, confident air born of successful experience, with the perfection of every movement which comes from constant and long practice, these soldiers excited the wondering admiration of the untrained young men, and awoke in them the ambition to handle and command for themselves some day this perfect military mechanism.

**22 On the March.**—Then came long marches north and westward toward the country of the rebellious Belgians. This great movement of thousands of men was begun one morning in June at sunrise. A long blast upon the *tuba* sounded, and instantly throughout that great camp the tents were struck and the baggage packed. Again the trumpet sounded, and straightway the wagons and pack animals were loaded; and at the third blast the great army was in motion. Here, again, absolute order prevailed. In front of the great column was its vanguard composed of auxiliary cavalry and light-armed troops. Then came the main army of Roman infantry marching by legions, each legion in columns of cohorts, with its own baggage train following. The whole marching army was guarded at the back by a rear-guard of cavalry. After a day's march of about seventeen miles, the army again encamped; and Lucius was surprised to find that, though the stay was to be but a single night, the same elaboration and care were observed in the camp formation.

During these days, being admitted close to the general's person, our young soldier soon came to feel the devoted loyalty which all felt who came under the influence of that marvelous personality, a personality which in senate and forum, in camp and on battlefield, never failed to animate and inspire to heroic action.

**23 Back to Rome a Veteran.**—The events that followed in this first year of our young soldier's military life, embracing long marches over rough mountains, through vast, primeval forests, and across rushing streams; battles with hostile tribes; stormings of walled cities; treaties with faithless enemies, and the last desperate but victorious struggle with the Nervii,—these events are all recorded in the history of that second Gallic campaign which Caesar himself has written. And when the campaign was over and the army assigned to winter quarters, it was the proud task of Lucius, now no longer tyro but veteran, to carry his general's

*litterae laureatae*, the bay-bound letter of victory, announcing to Rome the wonderful successes of her armies in the north; and to witness the unprecedented *supplicatio*, or thanksgiving festival of fifteen days, which the senate decreed in Caesar's honor.



12 First Legion  
Second Cohort

This camp is for five legions with  
cavalry and auxiliary troops

PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP (ACCORDING TO RÜSTOW)

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE NOTES AND VOCABULARY

- A. = Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar.  
 abbr. = abbreviated, abbreviation.  
 abl. = ablative.  
 abs. = absolute, absolutely.  
 acc. = accusative.  
 act. = active, actively.  
 adj. = adjective, adjectively.  
 antec. = antecedent.  
 adv. = adverb, adverbial, adverbially.  
 App. = Appendix.  
 B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar.  
 Bk. = Book.  
 cf. = *cōfer*, i.e., compare.  
 ch. = chapter.  
 cl. = clause.  
 comp. = comparative.  
 cond. = condition, conditional.  
 conj. = conjunction.  
 constr. = construction.  
 correl. = correlative, correlatively.  
 cpd. = compound.  
 dat. = dative.  
 defect. = defective.  
 dem. = demonstrative.  
 desid. = desiderative.  
 dim. = diminutive.  
 dir. dis. = direct discourse.  
 distrib. = distributive.  
 e.g. = *exempli grātiā*, i.e., for example.  
 encl. = enclitic.  
 Eng. = English.  
 esp. = especially.  
 fem. (f. *in Vocab.*) = feminine.  
 fig. = figurative, figuratively.  
 freq. = frequentative.  
 fut. = future.  
 gen. = genitive.  
 H. = Harkness's Latin Grammar.  
 H.-B. = Hale-Buck Latin Grammar.  
 hist. = historical.  
 i.e. = *id est*, that is.  
 illus. = illustration.  
 impers. = impersonal, impersonally.  
 impf. = imperfect.  
 inv. = imperative.  
 indecl. = indeclinable.  
 ind. dis. = indirect discourse.  
 indef. = indefinite.  
 ind. = indicative.  
 inf. = infinitive.  
 interrog. = interrogative, interrogatively.  
 intens. = intensive.  
 interj. = interjection.  
 intrans. (intr. *in Vocab.*) = intransitive.  
 l., ll. = line, lines.  
 lit. = literally.  
 loc. = locative.  
 masc. (m. *in Vocab.*) = masculine.  
 neg. = negative.  
 neut. (n. *in Vocab.*) = neuter.  
 nom. = nominative.  
 num. = numeral.  
 obj. = object.  
 p., pp. = page, pages.  
 part. = participle.  
 pass. = passive.  
 pers. = person, personal.  
 pf. = perfect.  
 pl. = plural.  
 poss. = possessive.  
 pred. = predicate.  
 prep. = preposition.  
 pres. = present.  
 pron. = pronoun.  
 recipr. = reciprocal.  
 ref. = reference.  
 reflex. = reflexive.  
 rel. = relative.  
 sc. = *scilicet*, i.e., supply.  
 sing. = singular.  
 subj. = subjunctive.  
 subst. = substantive, substantively.  
 sup. = superlative.  
 tr. = translate, translation.  
 trans. (tr. *in Vocab.*) = transitive.  
 Vocab. = General Vocabulary.  
 w. = with.



**PART I.—EUTROPIUS AND VIRI ROMAE**

**PART II.—CAESAR**

**PART III.—NEPOS**

**PART IV.—OVID**

## ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY

The beginnings of Roman history are wrapped in obscurity. The stories of Romulus and his royal successors, which sound so familiar to our ears, are largely mere tradition. These traditions come down to us through the works of various ancient writers, notably of Livy, who lived many centuries after the earlier events of which he writes. The almost complete absence of reliable information upon this early period is due partly to the fact that it was not an age of many literary records of events, and largely to the destruction by fire in 390 B.C. of such records as were in existence, at the time when Rome was captured by the Gauls.

Roman history naturally divides itself into three great periods: I. *The Period of the Kingdom*, from the founding of the city, fixed by tradition in the year 753 B.C., to the expulsion of the Tarquins in 509 B.C.; II. *The Period of the Republic*, from its establishment in 509 B.C., to the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., which left Augustus sole master of the Roman world; III. *The Period of the Empire*, extending to 476 A.D., when the last Roman emperor was deposed.

Following is an outline of Roman history down to the establishment of imperial government. The selections are from the *Breviarium*, or abridged history, by Eutropius, an historian of the fourth century A.D. His account follows Livy rather closely through the regal and republican periods, and continues with the empire until the death of Jovian, A.D. 364. This outline is supplemented by illustrative material selected from Aulus Gellius, and the *Viri Romae Illustres* of Lhomond.

## PART I

# ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY

### I. THE PERIOD OF THE KINGDOM, 753-509 B.C.

#### 1. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Romulus founds his city upon the Palatine Hill, recruits his citizens, establishes an advisory body called the Senate, and obtains wives for his men from among the women of the neighboring tribes.

Rōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō exōrdium habet, quī Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, filius et, quantum putātus est, Mārtis

1. *imperium, state (literally authority).*

quī Rhēae Silviae, etc., order for translation, *quī fuit filius Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, et (quantum putātus est) Mārtis.*

2. *Vestālis virginis:* the Vestal Virgins were the priestesses of Vesta. They were six in number.

*quantum putātus est, as it was believed (literally, as he was thought).*

1. *Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., of Rome, Roman; as subst., m., a Roman, pl., the Romans.*

*imperium, -i, n. [imperō], command, authority, sovereignty, empire.*

*ā, ab, or abs, prep. with abl., from, away from, by.*

*Rōmulus, -i, m., the mythical founder and first king of Rome.*

*exōrdium, -i, n. [ex+ōrdō], a beginning.*

*habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., have, hold; consider, regard.*

*quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that.*

*Rhēa, -ae, f., praenomen of Rhea*

*Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.*

2. *Silvia, -ae, f., see Rhēa.*

*Vestālis, -e, adj., Vestal, pertaining to Vesta.*

*virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin, young girl.*

*filius, -i, m., son.*

*et, conj. and adv., and, also, too; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

*quantum, adv. [quantus], as much as, as much; how much, how far.*

*putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., consider, suppose, think.*

*Mārs, -tis, m., the Roman god of war.*

fuit. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem exiguam in Palātīnō monte cōstituit, post Troiae excidium annō trecentēsīmō  
5 nōnāgēsīmō quārtō.

Conditā cīvitatē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec

3. decem et octō annōs nātus, at the age of eighteen years (literally, having been born eighteen years); annōs is accusative of duration of time.

Palātīnō monte, the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

4. annō trecentēsīmō, etc.: according to the common legend Rome was founded in the year 753 B.C. Some authorities give 754.

6. conditā cīvitatē, after he had founded the city, when the city was founded (literally, with the city founded; ablative absolute).

haec ferē ēgit, his further achievements were about as follows (he did about these things).

3. sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist.  
is, ea, id, dem. pron., that, this; he,  
she, it; such, of such a sort.

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.  
octō, indecl. num. adj., eight.

annus, -ī, m., year.

nātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of  
nāscor], born; old, of age.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [exigō],  
limited, small, slight.

in, prep. with acc. or abl.; with acc.,  
into, to, toward, against, upon;  
with abl., in, upon, among.

Palātīnus, -a, -um, adj., Palatine,  
of the Palatium. Map III, D-E, 4.

4. mōns, montis, m., hill, height;  
mountain.

cōstitutō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and  
intr. [com-+statuō], place, sta-  
tion; set up, arrange; build,  
found, establish; appoint; de-  
termine upon.

post, adv. and prep. w. acc.; as adv.,  
behind; after, afterwards, later;  
as prep., behind, after.

Troia, -ae, f., Troy, a city of Asia  
Minor. Map I, H-I, 5.

excidium, -ī, n. [cadō], downfall,  
destruction, ruin.

trecentēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.  
[trecentī], three-hundredth.

5. nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.  
[nōnāgintā], ninetyeth.

quārtus, -a, -um, adj. [quattuor],  
fourth, the fourth.

6. condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.  
[com-+dō], found; build; put  
away, store.

cīvītās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], citizenship;  
state, tribe, nation; city.

ex or (only before consonants) ē,  
prep. w. abl., out of, from.

nōmen, -inis, n., name; reputation,  
renown.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., his own,  
her own, its own, their own; his,  
hers, its, theirs.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. Map I, E, 4.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vōx], call,  
summon; call by name, name.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., referring  
to an object comparatively near in  
space, time, order of words, or  
thought, this, this one; he, she, it;  
the following.

ferē ēgit. Multitūdinem finitimōrum in civitātem recēpit, centum ex senīōribus lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit ad spectāculum 10 lūdōrum vicinās urbī Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs

8. lēgit: how distinguished from the similar form of the present tense? quōrum . . . ageret, *by whose advice he should act in all matters (should do everything)*; a relative clause of purpose.

9. cum, *since*.

uxōrēs: object of *habērent*.

11. Rōmae: not genitive.

7. ferē or fermē, *adv.*, nearly, usually, generally; about.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, drive, extend, bring up, pursue; do, act, transact, perform.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus], multitude, crowd, great number.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis], bordering, neighboring; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, neighbors.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+capiō], receive, admit; sē recipere, recover oneself; betake oneself, withdraw, retreat.

8. centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, a hundred.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; as *subst.*, *m.*, an old man, elder; *comp.*, senior, -ōris, older; as *subst.*, *m.*, old man, *pl.*, the elders.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *tr.*, choose, select, appoint; read.

cōnsilium, -i, *n.*, advice, plan; judgment, council, assembly.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole, the whole of.

9. senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex], senator.

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], name, call, mention.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, near; on account of.

senectūs, -ūtis, *f.* [senex], old age.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, thereupon.

cum, *conj.* [=quom, *acc. of qui*], of time, when, while, whenever, after; of cause, since, because; of opposition, though, although.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

10. ipse, -a, -um, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; *emphatic*, very, the very.

populus, -i, *m.*, people, nation.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, invite, request, urge.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, up to, toward; to the vicinity of; at, near to, close by.

spectāculum, -i, *n.* [spectō], show, spectacle.

11. lūdus, -i, *m.* [lūdō], game, public game.

vicinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vīcus], neighboring, near.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.

atque or (before consonants) ac, *conj.* [ad-+que], and; and also, and even; as, than; after alius, from.

rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum iniūriam Caenīnēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabīnōs, Fidēnātēs, Veientēs. Haec omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum ortā subitō tem-  
 15 pestātē nōn compāruisset, annō rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōsecrātus. Deinde Rōmae per

**12. commōtis bellis**, when war broke out; ablative absolute.

**raptārum iniūriam** (supply *virginum*), the wrong done in stealing the maidens. The participial phrase explains *iniūriam*.

**13. Sabīnōs**: in apposition with the three proper names preceding. The towns whose inhabitants are referred to were Sabine towns. The other two towns (Fidenae and Veii) were Etruscan towns.

**15. nōn compāruisset**, had disappeared.

**16. cōsecrātus** (est), was deified. **Rōmae**: locative case.

**per quīnōs diēs**, for five days each.

**12. rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tum, tr.**, carry off, seize, snatch or hurry away, take by force.

**com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr.**, move, disturb, alarm; begin.

**bellum, -i, n.**, war.

**iniūria, -ae, f.** [in-+iūs], injustice, wrong, injury.

**Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, m.**, the people of the town of Caenina, northeast of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

**13. vincō, -ere, vici, victum, tr. and intr.**, conquer, defeat; win.

**Antemnātēs, -ium, m.**, the people of Antemnae, a town north of Rome. Map I, A, 7.

**Crustumīni, -ōrum, m.**, the people of Crustumeria, a town northeast of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

**Sabīni, -ōrum, m.**, the Sabines, an Italian people adjoining the Latins on the north. Map II, D, 4.

**Fidēnātēs, -ium, m.**, the inhabitants of Fidenae, a town north of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

**Veientēs, -ium, m.**, the people of the Etruscan town Veii. Map I, A, 7.

**14. oppidum, -i, n.**, town, city; stronghold.

**cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctum, tr.**, surround, encircle.

**orior, -irī, ortus, intr.**, arise, spring; come forth, be born; begin.

**subitō, adv.** [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly.

**tempestās, -ātis, f.** [tempus], season; weather; storm, tempest.

**15. com-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.**, appear, make one's appearance.

**rēgnum, -i, n.** [rēx], royal authority, rule, reign, kingdom.

**tricēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [trīgintā], thirtieth.

**septīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [septem], seventh.

**deus, -i, m.**, a god, deity.

**16. trāns-eō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr.**, go over, pass over, cross; pass by, pass; desert.

**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr. and intr.**, intrust, trust; believe, think.

**cōsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [com-+sacrō], consecrate; honor as a deity, deify.

**deinde or dein, adv.**, thence, from there; afterwards, then, next.

**per, prep. v. acc.**, through, among, throughout; along, across; during; by means of.

quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus annus ūnus complētus est.

17. hīs rēgnantibus, *under their rule* (lit., *these ruling*); ablative absolute.

1%. quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [quīnque], five each.

diēs, -ēī, *f. and m.*, day; time, period of time, appointed time.

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [in+parō], command, bid; demand; levy; rule, govern.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [rēgnum], be king, reign.

18. ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, only, alone.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [com-+pleō, fill], fill up; complete.

## 2. NUMA POMPILIUS

Romulus had been a warrior king. His life was spent in subduing the peoples living in the country immediately surrounding Rome, and in strengthening his new kingdom against attack from without. His successor, Numa Pompilius, devoted himself to the internal welfare of the state, giving laws, and establishing social and religious customs.

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī quam Rōmulus prōfuit.

1. *quidem*, *it is true*, is regularly concessive when followed by *sed*, "yet." It is often used to emphasize a preceding word, especially a relative pronoun, and is frequently best translated by putting special stress of voice upon the emphatic word. The translation "indeed" should seldom be employed as it too often means nothing.

2. *cīvitatī*: dative with *prōfuit*. Most compounds of *sum* take the dative.

1. post-eā, *adv.*, afterwards.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, a Roman proper name; esp. Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

Pompilius, -i, *m.* See Numa.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, make; choose, appoint.

quidem, *adv.*, *postpositive*, indeed, it is true, even; *nē . . . quidem*, not even, not . . . either.

2. nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ne+ūllus],

no, not any; *as subst., m.*, no one.

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, *tr.*, bear, wear, have; conduct, wage, carry on; hold, manage, transact, do.

sed, *conj.*, but, on the contrary.

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough; *as subst., n.*, an insufficiency, lack; *comp.*, minus, less; *sup.*, minimē, least.

quam, *adv.*, to what degree, how, than; *correl. w. tam*, as.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *intr.*, be useful, benefit, help.

Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōstituit, quī cōsuētūdine proeliōrum iam latrōnēs ac sēmibarbarī putābantur, et annum  
 5 dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs prius sine aliquā supputātiōne cōfūsum, et infinita Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō et tertiō imperī annō.

**3. et:** correlative with *et* in line 4, both . . . and. The first *et* may be omitted in translation.

**Rōmānīs,** for the Romans; a dative of reference.

**cōsuētūdine proeliōrum,** from their continual battles (from their custom of battles).

**5. in decem mēnsēs:** others say that Numa divided the year into twelve months.

**aliquā = ūllā,** which is the regular word in connection with a negative or in an expression implying a negative.

**cōfūsum** agrees with *annum*.

**6. Rōmae:** for case see App. 151 a; A. 427, 3; B. 232; H. 483; H.-B. 449.

**morbō dēcessit,** died a natural death (died from illness); *morbō* is ablative of cause.

**3. nam, conj.,** for, inasmuch as.

**lēx, lēgis, f.,** law, condition, terms.

**mōs, mōris, m.,** usage, custom.

**-que, conj., encl.,** and; **-que . . . -que,** both . . . and.

**cōsuētūdō, -inis, f.** [cōsuētus], habit, custom; manner of living.

**4. proelium, -i, n.,** battle.

**iam, adv.,** presently, now; by this time, already.

**latrō, -ōnis, m.,** robber, brigand.

**sēmi-barbarus, -a, -um, adj.,** semi-barbarous.

**5. dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrip-tum, tr.,** mark off, divide.

**mēnsis, -is, m.,** month.

**prius, comp. adv.** [prior], before, previously; first; **prius . . . quam,** sooner . . . than, before.

**sine, prep. with abl.,** without.

**aliquis (-quī), aliqua, aliquid (-quod), indef. pron.;** as *subst.*, someone, somebody, something; anyone; as *adj.*, some, any.

**supputātiō, -ōnis, f.** [sub+putō], reckoning, computation.

**cōfūsus, -a, -um, adj.** [pf. part. of cōfundō], confused, unregulated.

**6. in-finitus, -a, -um, adj.,** unlimited, countless; enormous.

**sacrum, -i, n.** [sacer], something holy; *pl.*, sacred things; religious rites, sacrifices.

**templum, -i, n.,** temple.

**morbis, -i, m.,** sickness, disease.

**7. dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.,** go away, depart, withdraw; (*sc. vitā*) die.

**quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [quadrāgintā], fortieth.

**tertius, -a, -um, adj.** [ter], third.



## 3. TULLUS HOSTILIUS

Tullus Hostilius pushed still farther Rome's conquest of her neighbors, and enlarged the boundaries of the city itself by extending its original walls to include the Caelian Hill.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vicit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō mīliārīō sunt, Veientēs et Fīdēnātēs, quōrum aliī sextō mīliārīō absunt ab urbe Rōmā, aliī octāvō decimō, bellō superāvit, urbem ampliāvit adiectō

1. huic successit Tullus, *he was succeeded by Tullus*. We use the passive more freely than the Latin, and a change to the passive construction in translating is often the best way to retain the emphasis of the Latin order.

• bella reparāvit: *i.e.*, he renewed the wars that had been interrupted by Numa's reign.

2. duodecimō mīliārīō: ablative of place with the preposition omitted. The Romans set up milestones along their military roads to indicate the distance from the city. We should say "twelve miles from Rome."

3. quōrum aliī . . . aliī: translate as if *quōrum* referred to the names of the towns instead of to their inhabitants: *one of which . . . the other*. A Latin writer of the best period would use *alteri . . . alteri*.

4. octāvō decimō: what is the commoner form? See App. 47; A. 133; B. 79; H. 163; H.-B. 130.

bellō: ablative of means.

adiectō . . . monte, *by annexing the Caelian Hill*; ablative absolute, denoting means.

1. succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō], go under, enter, advance; succeed to, follow.

Tullus, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

Hostilius, -i, *m.*, Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

re-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, renew, restore.

Albānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alba], Alban, of Alba; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Albans.

2. duodecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [duodecim], twelfth.

mīliārium, -i, *n.* [mille], milestone.

3. alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another, the one . . . the other; aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.

sextus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [sex], sixth.

ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, *intr.*, be away from, be lacking, be absent, be distant from.

4. octāvus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [octō], eighth; octāvus decimus, eighteenth.

decimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [decem], tenth.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [superus], surpass; subdue, conquer.

ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [amplus], increase, enlarge.

adi-ciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *tr.* [ad+iaciō], join to, annex, add.

5 Caeliō monte. Cum trīgintā et duōs annōs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

5. duos: for the declension see App. 49.

rēgnāset: contracted form of rēgnāvisset.

6. domō: for the declension see App. 29, *d*; A. 93; B. 49, 4; H. 133, 1; H.-B. 97, 5.

ārsit, *was consumed*; from *ārdeō*, *burn*, in intransitive sense.

5. Caelius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Caelian; mōns Caelius, the Caelian Hill at Rome. Map III, F, 4.

trīgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty.

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two.

fulmen, -inis, *n.* [fulgeō], flash of lightning, thunderbolt.

6. icō, -ere, icī, ictum, *tr.* (only the

*pf. tenses in classical prose*), strike.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, together with.

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; loc. domī, at home.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *intr.*, burn, be burned, be consumed.

#### 4. ANCUS MARCIUS

The fourth king of Rome was Ancus Marcius, who was very like his grandfather Numa in character. His reign was rich in public works. He added two hills to the city's territory, extended the city walls, and built a seaport town at the mouth of the Tiber. He also built the Tullianum, the first prison at Rome.

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem

1. Numae ex filiā nepōs, *a grandson of Numa, the son of his daughter.*  
suscēpit imperium, *succeeded to the throne.* *Suscipere* is the regular word for taking up a burden or a task; cf. Eng. "undertake."

1. Ancus, -ī, *m.*, *praenomen* of Ancus Marcius, *fourth king of Rome.*

Mārcius, -ī, *m.*, *a Roman name*; see Ancus.

filiā, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson; descendant.

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [sub+capīō], take up, assume, receive.

2. contrā, *adv. and prep.*; as *adv.*,

on the contrary, in opposition; as *prep.*, against, opposite to, contrary to.

Latīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Latium, Latin; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Latins. Map II, D, 4.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight, contend.

Aventīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Aventine; mōns Aventīnus, the Aventine Hill. Map III, D, 5.

civitatī adiēcit et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis civitātem suprā mare sextō decimō miliārīō ab urbe Rōmā condidit. Vicēsīmō et quārtō annō imperī morbō periit.

5

**3. Iāniculum:** part of the object of *adiēcit*. The Janiculum is on the opposite side of the Tiber from the other hills and is not usually reckoned as one of the seven hills.

**apud ōstium:** the conjunction *et* is understood before *apud*, and also before *Aventīnum* in line 2. Conjunctions are omitted more freely in Latin than in English.

**civitātem:** the name of the city was Ostia. It was the seaport of Rome until the time of the Emperor Claudius. The site of the ancient city is now four miles inland, owing to the alluvial deposits of the river.

**4. suprā mare, on the sea.**

**3. Iāniculum, -ī, n.** [Iānus, an old Italian deity], the Janiculum. Map III, B, 3-4.

**apud, prep. with acc.,** at the house of, with; near, among.

**ōstium, -ī, n.** [ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

**Tiberis, -is, m.,** the Tiber, the principal river of central Italy. Map II, C, 3-4.

**4. suprā, adv. and prep. with acc.** [superus]; as *adv.*, above; before; as *prep.*, above, on.

**mare, -is, n.,** the sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean.

**5. vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [vigintī], twentieth.

**per-eō, -ire, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr.,** go through; perish, die.

## 5. LUCIUS TARQUINIUS PRISCUS

Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king, was famous for his public buildings, as well as for being the first to institute those Roman games which were so large a feature in the later life of the city.

Deinde rēgnum Priscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum

**1. numerum . . . duplicāvit:** what had been the number? See text of 1, 8. This number was increased to three hundred and then remained unchanged for several centuries. Sulla added three hundred and Caesar three hundred more, but Augustus reduced the number to about six hundred.

**1. Priscus, -ī, m.,** elder; as a cognomen, the Elder.

**Tarquinius, -ī, m.,** name of an early Roman gens; **Tarquinius Priscus,**

the fifth king of Rome.

**accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.** [ad+capiō], take, receive, accept.

**numerus, -ī, m.,** number.

senātōrum duplicāvit, circum Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs instituit, quī ad nostram memoriam permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum agrōrum sublātum

**2. duplicāvit, aedificāvit, instituit:** in a series of coördinate words or statements the connective is omitted with all (asyndeton), or is expressed between the first and second, second and third, etc., or *-que* (rarely *et*) may connect the last two; *i.e.*, we may have *a b c*, *a et b et c*, or *a b cque*.

**circum** (noun): the Circus Maximus, an enclosure between the Palatine and the Aventine hills, for races and other sports. The games mentioned in 1 are said to have been held here. At first the spectators sat or stood on the grassy slopes of the two hills, until Tarquin erected wooden seats. The structure was destroyed and enlarged many times, until it is said to have accommodated 485,000 people, but this number is a gross exaggeration. Here were held horse and chariot races, athletic contests, and for a time gladiatorial combats and wild beast fights.

**lūdōs Rōmānōs:** this was a particular celebration occurring in September of each year. The games included racing, boxing, dancing, etc., and later, plays were performed.

**3. memoriam, time.**

**4. idem:** translate simply *he* (subject of *vicit*). It is sometimes difficult to indicate in English the exact emphasis given by this word.

**nōn parum agrōrum, a large area of their country (not a little of their land);** the phrase is the object of *iūxit*. The word *parum*, which is sometimes an adverb, is here a noun.

**sublātum isdem . . . iūxit, he took from them (isdem) a large area of their country and annexed it; isdem** is a dative of reference used with a word of taking away.

**sublātum:** perfect participle of *tollō*, in agreement with *parum*. The participle is occasionally translated, as here, by a verb coördinate with the main verb of its sentence.

**2. duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**  
[duplex], double.

**circus, -i, m., circle; a circus. Map III, D-E, 4.**

**aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**  
[aedēs, temple+faciō], build.

**3. instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr.** [in+statuō], place; found, establish; begin, institute; determine upon.

**noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [nōs],**  
our, ours, our own.

**memoria, -ae, f. [memor], memory,**  
recollection; time.

**per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsi, -māsum,**  
*intr.*, continue, remain.

**4. idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron.,**  
the same, same one; also.

**et-iam, adv. and conj., still, even;**  
also, too.

**ager, agri, m., field, farm; land,**  
country.

**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, tr.,**  
lift, raise, take up; take away,  
carry off, remove.

isdem urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxit, prīmusque triumphāns 5  
urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohāvit.  
Tricēsīmō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī filiōs occīsus est, rēgis  
eius, cui ipse successerat.

5. **prīmus** . . . **intrāvit**, *he was the first to enter.*

**triumphāns**, *with a triumphal procession.* See *Intro.* 17.

6. **mūrōs fēcit**: this wall was known as the Servian Wall, and was commonly believed to have been built by the king who followed Tarquinius Priscus.

**cloācās**: the most famous of these was the Cloaca Maxima, a remarkable engineering achievement which until a few years ago, after a lapse of twenty-six centuries, served the purpose for which it was built.

**Capitōlium**: this magnificent temple, which was not finished until the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (533 B.C.), covered eight acres. The sums of money spent in decorating it were enormous. After being destroyed several times it was rebuilt for the last time on a more magnificent scale than ever by Domitian, who is said to have spent \$12,500,000 on the gilding alone.

7. **tricēsīmō octāvō**: in what other way may this numeral be written?

**per filiōs**: the accusative with *per* is here equivalent to the ablative of agent, *ā filiīs*.

5. **territōrium**, -ī, *n.* [terra], territory.  
**iungō**, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iūctum**, *tr.*,  
join, unite.

**prīmus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of prior*],  
first, foremost, earliest.

**triumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*  
[triumphus], celebrate a triumph.

6. **intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, go  
into, enter.

**mūrus**, -ī, *m.*, wall.

**faciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, *tr.*, make,  
construct, do, perform, cause,

render, effect.

**cloāca**, -ae, *f.*, sewer. *Map III, D, 4.*

**Capitōlium**, -ī, *n.* [caput], the chief  
temple of Jupiter at Rome, the  
Capitol; the Capitoline Hill on  
which the temple was built; the  
citadel of Rome. See *Introduc-*  
*tion 9, and Map III, D, 3.*

**incohō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, begin,  
undertake.

7. **occidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.*  
[ob+caedō], cut down, kill.

## 6. SERVIUS TULLIUS

Servius Tullius added three of the seven hills to the city, and surrounded the whole with a new wall. He was the first to take a census of the people.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex

1. **genitus ex**, *a son of.*

1. **Servius**, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

**Tullius**, -ī, *m.*, name of a Roman  
gens; **Servius Tullius**, the sixth

king of Rome.

**gignō**, -ere, **genuī**, **genitum**, *tr.*,  
bear, produce.

nōbili fēminā, captivā tamen et ancillā. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Viminālem, Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrū dūxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsū ordināvit, quī adhūc per orbem terrārum incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēnsū delātīs habuit capita

**2. quoque** always follows the emphatic word. It is distinguished from the abl. of *quisque* by the quantity of the *o*.

**4. dūxit**, *extended*. He finished the wall begun by his predecessor and further strengthened it by a ditch.

**5. orbem terrārum**: "the circle of lands" around the Mediterranean, a common expression for the world.

**6. omnibus in cēnsū delātīs**, *when all had been enumerated*.

**capita** . . . **Rōmānōrum**, *a population of eighty-three thousand Roman citizens*; *mīlia* is a noun in apposition with *capita*, which means *heads*, as in the phrase, "so many head of cattle."

**2. nōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [nōscō], highborn, noble; excellent.

**fēmina**, -ae, *f.* [feō, bear], woman.

**captiva**, -ae, *f.* [captivus], female captive, captive.

**tamen**, *adv.*, still, nevertheless, however.

**ancilla**, -ae, *f.*, maidservant.

**quoque**, *conj.*, also, too.

**3. subigō**, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [sub+agō], conquer, subdue.

**trēs, tria**, *num. adj.*, three.

**Quirīnālis**, -e, *adj.* [Quirīnus], of Quirinus or Romulus, Quirinal; *as subst.*, *m.* (*sc. collis*), the Quirinal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

**Viminālis**, -e, *adj.* [vīmen], of osiers; Viminal; *as subst.*, *m.* (*sc. collis*), the Viminal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

**Ēsquilīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Esquiline; *as subst.*, *m.* (*sc. mōns*), the Esquiline Hill. *Map III, F, 2-3.*

**4. ad-iungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.*, join to, add.

**fossa**, -ae, *f.* [fossus], ditch.

**circum**, *prep. w. acc. and adv.*, around, about.

**dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct; construct; inscribe; think, consider.

**5. cēnsus**, -ūs, *m.* [cēnseō], census. ordinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ōrdō], arrange.

**ad-hūc**, *adv.*, up to this time, as yet. orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; the world; *also orbis terrae or terrārum*, the world.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth; land; country.

**in-cognitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown.

**6. sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under, beneath.

**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring down, carry away, convey; confer, report, register.

**caput**, -itis, *n.*, the head.

LXXXIII milia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant. Occīsus est scelere generī suī Tarquīnī Superbī, filī eius rēgis cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquīnius habēbat uxōrem.

10

7. LXXXIII: in reading the text the Latin words should be given for the Roman numerals. The numerals may stand for either cardinals, ordinals, or distributives.

quī . . . erant: *i.e.*, the Roman citizens who lived outside the city walls.

9. filiae: genitive, depending on *scelere*, connected by *et* with *generī*.

10. uxōrem, *as his wife*.

7. LXXXIII = tria et octōgintā; octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.* [octō], eighty.

mille, *num. adj.*, a thousand; *pl.*, milia, -ium, *n.*, thousands.

civis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, citizen, fellow-citizen.

8. scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, an evil or impious act.

gener, generī, *m.*, son-in-law.

superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, proud; *as subst., m.*, the Proud, *cognomen of Tarquīnius, the seventh king of Rome*.

## 7. LUCIUS TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS

Lucius Tarquinius Superbus was the seventh and last of the Roman kings. Having obtained the kingdom by his own crime, he was destined to lose it through that of his son. Still he reigned for twenty-four years, during which time he added greatly to the Roman state by reducing many cities of Latium to subjection.

L. Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe

1. L.: such abbreviations should be read and translated in full.

2. quae gēns, *a nation which*. When a new substantive (here *gēns*) is added to explain an antecedent (*Volscōs*) it is incorporated in the rel. cl. with the case of the relative.

ad Campāniam euntibus, *in the direction of Campania (for those going toward)*, a special use of the dative of reference; the participle is used as a substantive.

1. L., *abbr. for Lūcius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen*.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of ulterior*], most remote or distant; last part of, last.

2. Volscī, -ōrum, *m., an ancient tribe of Latium. Map II, D, 4-5.*

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation.

Campānia, -ae, *f.*, a district south of Latium. Map II, D-E, 5.

eō, ire, īi or īvi, itum, *intr.*, go, proceed.

longē, *adv.* [longus], far away, afar; by far; far.

- est, vicit, Gabiōs civitātem et Suessam Pōmētiam subēgit, cum Tuscis pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitōliō aedificāvit.
- 5 Postea Ardeam oppugnāns, in octāvō decimō miliārīō ab urbe Rōmā positam civitātem, imperium perdidit. Cumque imperāset annōs quattuor et vīgintī cum uxōre et liberis suis fūgit.

**3. Gabiōs civitātem, the city of Gabii.** When the name of a city is given with the word *urbs* (or *civitās*) it usually stands in apposition. The English equivalent is *of* and the proper name. Many names of towns in Latin have only plural forms.

**4. Capitōliō** here means the Capitoline Hill; in **5, 6** *Capitōlium* means the Capitoline temple. A depression divides the crest of the hill into two summits. On the north summit was the Arx or citadel, on the south the Capitolium, mentioned in **5, 6**.

**5. oppugnāns, while besieging.**

**in octāvō decimō miliārīō:** the preposition might have been omitted without affecting the meaning, as in **3, 2**.

**6. positam, situated.**

**perdidit:** he was compelled to flee because of the indignation aroused by a crime committed by one of his sons.

**cumque imperāset, etc., and after a reign of twenty-four years.** *-que* is always translated before the word to which it is added.

**imperāset:** contracted form of *imperāvisset*.

**7. fūgit:** how distinguished from the similar form of the present?

**3. Gabiī, -ōrum, m., an ancient town of Latium, east of Rome.** Map I, B, 8.

**Suessa, -ae, f., a city in Latium, usually called Suessa Pometia.** Map I, B, 8.

**Pōmētia, -ae, f., see Suessa.**

**4. Tuscus, -a, -um, adj., Tuscan, Etruscan; as subst., m. pl., the Etruscans, Etrurians.** Map II, C, 3-4.

**pāx, pācis, f., peace.**

**Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter or Jove, god of the heavens, the supreme deity of the Romans.**

**5. Ardea, -ae, a town of the Rutuli,**

**south of Rome.** Map I, A, 8.

**oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ob + pugnō], attack, storm, assault, besiege.**

**6. pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, tr., put, place, set up; pf. part. positus, situated, lying.**

**per-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr., ruin; lose.**

**7. quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four. vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty.**

**liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber], the free members of the household, children.**

**fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, tr. and intr., flee, escape.**



Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus, cum adhūc Rōma, ubi plūrimum, vix usque ad quīntum declmum mīliārium possidēret.

10

8. Rōmae: the same case as *Rōmae* in 1, 16.

rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, *the reigns of seven kings lasted*. The verb is impersonal.

annīs: occasionally in classical prose, and oftener in later Latin, the abl. is used to denote duration of time where the acc. would be expected.

9. cum, *although, while*.

ubi plūrimum, *at its greatest extent, literally, where (it extends) most*.

8. ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way, to such a degree; on this condition.

septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven.

ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo + centum], two hundred.

9. quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty.

ubi, *adv.*; *rel.*, where, when, whenever; *as*; *interrog.*, where?

multum, *adv.* [multus], much,

greatly; *comp.*, plūs, more; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very.

vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even, as far as.

10. quīntus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnque], fifth.

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por = prō + sedeō], hold, possess, occupy.

## 8. HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE (*Viri Romae*)

During an attempt made by the Etruscan king to restore the Tarquins to power, occurred the famous defense of the wooden bridge over the Tiber by Horatius Cocles, which Macaulay has immortalized for English readers.

Porsenna, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnum Tar-

1. Etrūscōrum: at the time of the founding of Rome the most powerful people in Italy, consisting of a confederation of twelve cities. Little is known of their history, but they did not belong to the same family as the Romans or speak the same language.

ad . . . Tarquiniōs: for this use of the gerundive to denote purpose, see App. 293; A. 506; B. 338; 3, 339; H. 628; H.B. 612.

1. Porsenna, -ae, *m.*, a king of Etruria.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Etruscans; people of Etruria, on the west coast

of Italy. Map II, C, 3-4.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [re- + statuō], replace, restore, re-instate.

quiniōs infestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Primō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsīt: adeō valida rēs tum Clūsina erat magnumque Porsennae  
5 nōmen. Ex agris in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia urbis pars mūrīs, alia Tiberī obiectō tūta

2. **infestō exercitū**, with a hostile army; ablative of accompaniment. In military expressions *cum* may be omitted in this construction when the abl. is modified by an adjective not a numeral.

3. **nōn . . . ante**, never before.

4. **rēs . . . Clūsina**, the commonwealth of Clusium; the adjective is often thus used in Latin instead of a subjective or objective genitive or a prepositional phrase.

5. **ex agris**, from the country.

6. **alia . . . alia**, one . . . another. When a noun is modified by an adjective and a genitive (or a phrase equivalent to a genitive) a common order is: adjective, genitive (or phrase), noun.

**Tiberī obiectō**, by the interposition of the Tiber; ablative absolute.

2. **infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile.  
**exercitus**, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō], army.  
**veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, go.

**impetus**, -ūs, *m.* [petō], attack; force; fury.

3. **capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, take possession of, capture, seize, receive.

**umquam**, *adv.* [cum+quam], at any time, ever.

**aliās**, *adv.* [alius], at another time.

**ante**, *adv. and prep.*; as *adv.*, before; in front; formerly; **antequam**, sooner . . . than, before; as *prep.*, before, in front of.

**tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, such, so large.

**terror**, -ōris, *m.* [terreō], fear, panic.

4. **in-vādō**, -ere, -vāsi, -vāsum, *tr.*, invade, seize.

**ad-eō**, *adv.*, to this point, to such an extent, so very, so.

**validus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [valeō], strong, powerful.

**rēs**, **rei**, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; fact, circumstance; deed, achievement, event; *pl.*, things in general, the universe; **rēs** or **rēs pública**, the state, commonwealth, government.

**Clūsinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Clusium; **rēs Clūsina**, the commonwealth of Clusium. *Map II, C, 3.*

**magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large, of great extent.

5. **dē-migrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, emigrate, remove, depart.

**saepiō**, -īre, -psī, -ptum, *tr.* [saepēs], hedge in, inclose, surround, guard.

6. **praesidium**, -ī, *n.* [praeses], defense, garrison, guard, outpost.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, division; side, direction.

**obi-ciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ob+iaciō], throw before, interpose; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, interposed, lying before.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of tueor], protected, safe, secure.

vidēbātur. Pōns sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus vir fuisset Horātius Coclē, illō cognōmine appellātus, quod in aliō proeliō oculum amiserat. Is extrēmā pontis parte occupātā aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō inter- 10 rumperētur. Ipsa audācia obstupescit hostēs; ponte rescissō

7. *paene . . . dedit . . . fuisset*: the sentence is elliptical; after *dedit*, supply *et dedisset*,—almost gave (and would have given), *had it not been for a single man, Horatius*, etc.

10. *ā tergō*: a common idiom; in Eng. we say, "in the rear."

*interrumperētur*: for the subjunctive with *dōnec*, see App. 235, b.

11. *ipsa*, *very*.

7. *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *vīsum*, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe; *pass.*, seem, appear, seem best.

*pōns*, *pontis*, *m.*, bridge.

*sublicius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sublica*], resting on piles; *pōns sublicius*, the pile-bridge built by *Ancus Marcius*. Map III, D, 4.

*iter*, *itineris*, *n.*, way, road, march.

*paene*, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

*hostis*, -is, *m. and f.*, an enemy, public enemy; *pl.*, the enemy.

*dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datum*, *tr.*, give, concede, grant, afford, assign.

*nisi*, *conj.* [*nī+si*], if not, unless; after a *neg. cl.*, except, unless.

8. *vir*, *virī*, *m.*, man; man of courage; husband.

*Horātius*, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

*Coclē*, -itis, *m.*, a cognomen, literally "one-eyed."

*ille*, *illa*, *illud*, *dem. pron.*, referring to an object comparatively remote in space, time, order of words, or order of thought, that, that one; he, she, it.

*cognōmen*, -inis, *n.* [*com-*+(*g*)*nōmen*], surname, family name.

*appellō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, call by name; name, call.

*quod*, *adv. and conj.* [*quī*]; as *adv.*, in

respect to which, in what; as *conj.*, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that, because, since.

9. *oculus*, -i, *m.*, eye.

*ā-mittō*, -ere, -misi, -misum, *tr.*, dismiss; lose.

*exterus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ex*], on the outside; *comp.*, exterior, -ius, outer, exterior; *sup.*, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, extreme, farthest; the end of, extremity of.

*occupō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*ob+capio*], take possession of, seize.

10. *aciēs*, -ēi, *f.*, sharp edge; line of battle, battle.

*sōlus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.

*sustineō*, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [*sub+teneō*], support, sustain, withstand.

*dōnec*, *conj.*, while, as long as; until, till.

*tergum*, -i, *n.*, the back, rear.

*inter-rumpō*, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.*, break through, break down.

11. *audācia*, -ae, *f.* [*audāx*], daring, boldness.

*ob-stupesciō*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [*stupefaciō*], make stupid, amaze, stupefy.

*re-scindō*, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.*, cut down, tear down, destroy.

armātus in Tiberim dēsiliuit et multīs superincidentibus tēlīs incolumis ad suōs trānsnāvit. Grāta ergā tantā virtutem civitās fuit; eī tantum agrī pūblicē datum est, quantum ūnō  
15 diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī in comitiō posita.

12. Tiberim: for the ending in *-im* see App. 25.

multīs . . . tēlīs: ablative absolute, equivalent to an adversative clause, *although many weapons fell about him from above*.

14. agrī: genitive of the whole.

pūblicē, *by the state*.

15. eī, *in his honor*; dative of reference. posita: supply *est*.

12. armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [arma], arm, equip; *pf. part. as adj.*, armed, in arms.

dēsiliō, -ire, -silui, —, *intr.* [dē + saliō], leap down; dismount.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, many a, much, abundant; *pl.*, many.

super-incidō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, fall from above, fall upon.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, weapon.

13. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe,

trāns-nō, -āre, -āvi, —, *tr. and intr.*, swim across.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant; pleased, grateful.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward, to, for.

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir], manliness, courage, bravery.

14. pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus], in behalf of the state, officially.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*; *interrog.*, how great? how large? how much? *rel.*, as great, as large, or as much as; tantus . . . quantus, as much or so much . . . as.

15. circum-arō, -āre, -āvi, —, *tr.*, plow around.

statua, -ae, *f.* [status], statue.

comitium, -ī, *n.* [com- + eō], a place of meeting; *esp. a place adjacent to the Forum where assemblies and courts of law were held*, the Comitium. Map III, A, 5.



## II. THE PERIOD OF THE REPUBLIC, 509-31 B.C.

### 9. THE FIRST CONSULS

In place of a kingdom, Rome now became a republic under elective consuls, two of whom were chosen in order that one might be a check upon the power of the other. Also, as a precaution against the attainment of too much power, the consul's term of office was limited to one year.

Hinc cōsulēs coepēre, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creātī, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset, alter eum habēns potestātem

1. **hinc cōsulēs coepēre**, after this the consulship was established.

**cōsulēs**: the consuls called and presided over meetings of the senate and carried out its orders. They had charge of the election of magistrates, raised armies and commanded them in the field, and administered the affairs of the state in general.

**coepēre**: the ending *-erunt* is more frequently used than *-ere* in the third person plural of the perfect, but some writers use both; for the conjugation of *coepi* see App. 86.

**prō ūnō . . . creātī**, two (consuls) being chosen in place of one king, for this reason.

2. **malus** may here be translated *troublesome to the state*.

**voluisset**: the subjunctive here represents an act which was at a past time regarded as yet to take place (future from a past point of view).

**eum**: object of *coerceret*; the subject and object are often thus grouped together, especially in the case of pronouns.

1. **hinc**, *adv.*, from this place, hence; from this time, henceforth.

**cōsul**, *-ulis, m.*, consul.

**coepi**, *-isse, coeptum, tr. and intr.*, begin, commence.

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in return for, instead of; *as*.

**causa**, *-ae, f.*, cause, reason; *abl. with gen.*, on account of, for the sake of.

?. **ut or utī**, *adv. and conj.*; *as adv.*,

when, as; *as conj.*, that, so that, in order that.

**sī**, *conj.*, if; whether, to see if.

**malus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, bad, wicked; *comp.*, **peior**, *-ius*; *sup.*, **pessimus**, *-a, -um*.

**volō, velle, voluī**, —, *tr. and intr.*, will, be willing, wish.

**alter**, *-tera, -terum, adj.*, one of two, the other; a second.

**potestās**, *-ātis, f.* [potis, able], power, authority, opportunity.

similem coërcēret. Et placuit, nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitatem potestātis insolentiōrēs  
 5 redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē post annum scīrent futūrōs esse prīvātōs. Fuērunt igitur annō primō ab  
 expulsīs rēgibus cōsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius Collātinus, marītus

3. **placuit nē habērent**, *it was thought best that they should not hold (it was pleasing that, etc.).*

4. **nē redderentur**, *that they might not become (be rendered).*

5. **sed** (supply *ut*) . . . **essent**: note the shift from the negative purpose to an affirmative one.

**cīvīlēs**, *of the character of citizens.*

**quī scīrent**, *since they knew.*

6. **ab . . . rēgibus**, *after the expulsion of the kings.*

7. **maximē . . . pellerētur**, *had been most active in driving out Tarquinius.*

3. **similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar; *comp.*, **similior**, -ius; *sup.*, **similimus**, -a, -um.

**coërcēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [com-+arceō], restrain, check.

**placeō**, -ēre, -uī (-itum est), -itum, *intr.*, please; *impers.*, it is settled, determined.

**nē**, *adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; as *conj.*, that not, for fear that.

**longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, long-continued.

4. **annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], lasting a year; annual.

**diūturnitās**, -ātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long continuance, length of time.

**in-solēns**, -entis, *adj.*, haughty, insolent.

5. **red-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, give back, give up; render, make.

**cīvīlis**, -e, *adj.* [civis], of citizens, civil; befitting a citizen.

**semper**, *adv.*, always.

**suī**, **sibi**, **sē** or **sēsē**, *sing. and pl., reflex. pron. of 3d pers.*, of himself, herself, itself; of themselves; *in acc. as subject of inf.*, him, her, it, them, he, she, etc.

6. **sciō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, know, know how.

**privātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of privō*], individual, private; as *subst., m.*, a private citizen.

**igitur**, *conj.*, usually postpositive, therefore, accordingly.

7. **ex-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive out, expel.

**Iūnius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**maximē**, *sup. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, exceedingly, especially, most.

8. **pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, *tr.*, strike, drive out, banish, expel; repulse.

**Collātinus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**marītus**, -ī, *m.* [mās], husband.

Lucrētiae. Sed Tarquiniō Collātīnō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat enim, nē quisquam in urbe manēret, quī Tarquinius 10 vocārētur. Ergō acceptō omī patrīmōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit et locō ipsius factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

9. *Lucrētiae*: she was the victim of the crime which had been the cause of the uprising against Tarquinius.

*Tarquiniō Collātīnō*, from *Tarquinius Collatinus*. The case is the same as that of *isdem*, 5, 5.

10. *nē quisquam*, that no one.

11. *vocārētur*: for the mood see App. 274; A. 593; B. 324; H. 652; H.-B. 539.

12. *locō ipsius*, in his place.

*cōsul*: predicate nominative with *factus est*.

9. *Lucrētia*, -ae, *f.*, the wife of *Collatinus*.

*statim*, *adv.* [stō], at once, immediately.

*dignitās*, -ātis, *f.* [dignus], worth, honor, rank, dignity; authority, office.

10. *enim*, *conj.*, postpositive, for, for in fact, really.

*quis-quam*, *quidquam* or *quicquam*, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, any one, anybody, anything; as *adj.*, any.

*maneō*, -ēre, *mānsi*, *mānsum*, *intr.*, stay, remain.

11. *ergō*, *adv.*, therefore, so then, then.

*patrīmōnium*, -ī, *n.* [pater], inheritance, property.

*migrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, move, migrate.

12. *locus*, -ī, *m.* (*pl. loci and loca*), place, locality, position.

*Valerius*, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

*Pūblicola*, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

## 10. THE FIRST DICTATORSHIP

In 501 B.C., at a time of especial public danger, the office of dictator was created, whose powers exceeded the powers of the consul.

Nōnō annō post rēgēs exāctōs cum gener Tarquini ad

1. *post rēgēs exāctōs*, after the expulsion of the kings. Compare *ab . . . rēgibus*, 9, 6.

*ad . . . vindicandam*, to avenge the overthrow of his father-in-law. The gerundive is used to denote purpose, usually only in short phrases.

1. *nōnus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [no-  
vem], ninth.

*exigō*, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ex-  
agō], drive out, expel; require.

iniūriam socerī vindicandam ingentem conlēgisset exercitum, nova Rōmae dignitās est creāta, quae dictātūra appellātur, maior quam cōsulātus. Eōdem annō etiam magister equitum  
 5 factus est, quī dictātōrī obsequerētur. Dictātōr autem Rōmae primus fuit T. Larcus, magister equitum primus Sp. Cassius.

**2. socerī:** objective genitive. **ingentem** modifies *exercitum*.

**3. Rōmae:** locative. **dignitās**, *office*.

**5. dictātōrī:** dative with a compound of *ob*. The dictator was appointed for special emergencies, but regularly not for a longer period than six months. He was chosen for a specific purpose, on the fulfillment of which he resigned his office. He had supreme military and judicial power, and during his term of service all the ordinary magistrates except the tribunes of the people were responsible to him.

**obsequerētur:** subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

**2. socer, socerī, m.,** father-in-law.

**vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [*vin-*  
*dex*], claim, maintain; avenge, punish.

**ingēns, -entis, adj.** [*in-*+*gēns*], enormous, huge, great, very large.

**conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.** [*com-*+*legō*], collect, assemble; recover.

**3. novus, -a, -um, adj.,** new, recent; strange.

**dictātūra, -ae, f.** [*dictātōr*], dictatorship.

**4. cōsulātus, -ūs, m.** [*cōsul*], consulship.

**magister, -trī, m.,** master; magister

**equitum,** master of the horse, aid-de-camp of a dictator.

**eques, -itis, m.** [*equus*], horseman, knight; *pl.*, cavalry.

**5. dictātōr, -ōris, m.** [*dictō*, dictate], dictator.

**ob-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, intr.,** yield, submit, obey; assist.

**autem, conj.** (*never first in its clause*), but, however, moreover.

**6. T., abbr. for Titus, -ī, m.,** a praenomen.

**Larcus, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Sp., abbr. for Spurius, -ī, m.,** a praenomen.

**Cassius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.





## 11. THE FIRST TRIBUNE OF THE PEOPLE

In all these changes the lower classes had not been greatly benefited, having merely exchanged regal for patrician lords; and at length, in 494 B.C., by an act of secession, they forced the senate and consuls to create the office of tribune, which was to be the people's own office, the occupants of which were to stand between them and patrician oppression.

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs sēditionem populus Rōmae fēcit, tamquam ā senātū atque cōsulibus premerētur. Tum et ipse sibi tribūnōs plēbis quasi propriōs iūdicēs et dēfēnsōrēs creāvit, per quōs contrā senātum et cōsulēs tūtus esse posset.

5

1. **sēditionem**: note etymology. This is known as the First Secession of the Plebs; it marked the beginning of a long and bitter struggle between the two orders, which did not end until, in 286 B.C., the plebs were admitted to an equal share in the government.

2. **tamquam premerētur**, on the ground that they were oppressed; subjunctive because the reason is quoted.

3. **tum et ipse**, then, also, they; *ipse* is singular to agree with *populus*, but the English idiom requires a plural.

**tribūnōs**: at first two, then five, and later ten. At first they were appointed merely to protect the plebs against any abuse on the part of the patrician magistrates; and to enable them to do this more effectually their persons were declared sacred and inviolate. Their power gradually increased with the influence of the plebs until they became the most powerful officials in the state.

4. **dēfēnsōrēs**: what is the force of the ending *-sor* (more often *-tor*)? See on Word Formation, page 429, section 1.

1. **sēditio**, -ōnis, *f.* [sēd-+eō], dissension, rebellion, revolt.

2. **tam-quam**, *adv.*, as if, just as if; on the ground that.

**senātus**, -ūs, *m.* [senex], council of elders, senate.

**premō**, -ere, **pressi**, **pressum**, *tr.*, press, press hard, oppress, harass.

3. **tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune.

**plēbs**, **plēbis** or **plēbēs**, -eī, *f.*, common people.

**qua-si**, *adv.*, as if, just as if, as though.

**proprius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, own, special; peculiar.

**iūdex**, -icis, *m. and f.* [iūs+dicō], a judge.

4. **dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō], defender.

5. **possum**, **posse**, **potui**, —, *intrans.* [potis, able+sum], be able, can.

## 12. FROM THE PLOW TO THE PRESIDENCY (*Viri Romae*)

The familiar story of how Cincinnatus was called from the plow to the highest office in the state is told in the following selection.

Aequi cōsulem Minucium atque exercitum eius circumsessōs tenēbant. Id ubi Rōmam nūntiātum est, tantus pavor, tanta trepidātiō fuit, quanta sī urbem ipsam, nōn castra hostēs obsidērent; cum autem in alterō cōsule parum esse praesidi vidērētur, dictātōrem dicī placuit, quī rem adflictam restitueret. Quīntius Cincinnātus omnium cōsēnsū dictātor est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor

1. circumsessōs tenēbant, *were holding surrounded.*

2. ubi . . . nūntiātum est, *when news of this was brought to Rome.* The acc. *Rōmam*, not the locative, is used on account of the motion implied in the verb.

3. quanta (*fuisse*) . . . obsidērent, *as (there would have been) if the enemy were besieging, etc.*

4. parum (subject of *vidērētur*) . . . praesidi, *too little (of) protection.*

5. dictātōrem . . . placuit (supply *populō*), *they determined that a dictator should be appointed.*

*rem adflictam restitueret*, *should rescue the country from the danger (lit., should restore the distressed commonwealth).*

1. Aequi, -ōrum, *m., a people of central Italy. Map I, B, 7.*

Minucius, -i, *m., a Roman name.*

circum-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr., besiege, blockade.*

2. teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr., hold, keep; occupy, watch, guard; possess.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr., announce, report.*

pavor, -ōris, *m. [paveō], terror.*

3. trepidātiō, -ōnis, *f. [trepidō], alarm, confusion.*

castrum, -i, *n., fortress; usually pl., castra, -ōrum, camp.*

4. obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr. [ob+sedeō], obstruct, blockade.*

5. adflictus, -a, -um, *adj. [pf. part. of affligō], overwhelmed, distressed.*

6. Quīntius, -i, *m., a Roman name.* Cincinnātus, -i, *m., cognomen of a famous Roman dictator.*

cōsēnsus, -ūs, *m. [cōsentiō], agreement, consent.*

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, *tr., say, speak; appoint.*

7. spēs, speī, *f., hope, expectation; source of hope.*

ūnicus, -a, -um, *adj. [ūnus], single, only.*

trāns, *prep. with acc., across, beyond.*

tunc, *adv., then, at that time.*

iūgerum colēbat agrum. Ad quem missī lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte datā redditāque Quīnctius togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs 10 mandāta togātus audiret.

Postquam abstersō pulvere ac sūdōre togā indūtus prōcessit Quīnctius, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit, expōnunt. Quīnctius igitur

**8. iūgerum:** observe that the genitive plural of this word ends in *-um* instead of *-ōrum*.

**nūdum:** without his toga, which was regularly laid aside in any active employment. A woolen tunic was worn next to the body.

**10. prōferre:** the infinitive is the regular constr. with *iubeō*.

**14. sit:** why subjunctive?

**8. iūgerum, -ī, n. (gen. pl., iūgerum),** a Roman acre, a little more than half an acre of our land measure.

**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, tr.,** till, cultivate; cherish, honor.

**mittō, -ere, misi, missum, tr.,** send, send away; cast.

**lēgātus, -ī, m., [lēgō, depute],** ambassador; lieutenant.

**nūdus, -a, -um, adj.,** naked; lightly clad.

**9. arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** plow.

**offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, tr. and intr. [ob+ -fendō, strike],** strike; come upon, find.

**salūs, salūtis, f.,** health, safety; greeting, salutation.

**toga, -ae, f. [tegō],** toga, the outer garment worn by the Romans in civil life.

**10. properē, adv. [properus, quick],** hastily, quickly.

**tugurium, -ī, n.,** hut, cottage.

**prō-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr.,** carry out, bring out.

**Racilia, -ae, f.,** the wife of Cincinnatus.

**iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum, tr.,** order, command; direct.

**11. mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō],** command, charge.

**togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga],** wearing the toga.

**audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr.,** hear, listen to; hear of.

**12. post-quam, conj.,** after, as soon as.

**abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersi, -tersum, tr.,** wipe off or away.

**pulvis, -eris, m. and f.,** dust.

**sūdor, -ōris, m. [sūdō, sweat],** sweat, perspiration.

**induō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr.,** put on, clothe; **indūtus,** clothed, clad.

**prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, intr.,** come forward, advance; proceed.

**13. grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [grātus],** rejoice; congratulate.

**cōnsalūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [com+salūtō],** greet, salute.

**14. ex-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr.,** put forth; set forth, relate, explain.

- 15 Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus lictōribus domum dēductus est. Posterō diē ab urbe profectus Minuciō obsidiōne liberātō victōs hostēs sub iugum mīsit. Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ductī ante currum hostium ducēs, militāria signa praelāta; secūtus est exercitus praedā onustus; epulae instrūctae sunt  
 20 ante omnium domōs. Atque haec tantā vėlōcitatē gessit Quīntius, ut dictātūrā in sex mēnsēs acceptā sextō decimō diē sē abdicāret, prōrsus ut festināsse dictātor ad relictum opus

15. *vēnit*: how distinguished from the similar form of the present?

17. *sub iugum mīsit*: the yoke was made by setting two spears upright and placing a third spear crosswise upon them. Under this the conquered army passed in token of submission. Cf. Eng. "subjugate."

21. *dictātūrā . . . sē abdicāret*, *resigned the dictatorship*; *dictātūrā* is ablative of separation. *in*: *for*.

22. *ad relictum opus*, *to the work which he had left*.

15. *ante-cēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cesum, *tr. and intr.*, precede, go ahead; surprise.

*lictōr*, -ōris, *m.* [*ligō*, bind], lictor.  
*dē-dūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead down, lead away; lead, conduct, escort.

16. *posterus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [post], the following, next.

*proficiscor*, -i, *profectus*, *intr.* [cf. *proficiō*], set out, proceed.

*obsidiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege; peril; oppression.

*liberō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*liber*], set free, free, release.

17. *iugum*, -i, *n.*, yoke, ridge, crest.  
*ingredior*, -i, -gressus, *tr. and intr.* [*in*+gradior], enter, advance.

18. *currus*, -ūs, *m.* [*currō*], chariot.  
*dux*, *ducis*, *m.* [*dūcō*], leader, guide, general.

*militāris*, -e, *adj.* [*mīles*], of war, military.

*signum*, -i, *n.*, sign, token; a military standard, ensign; signal; statue.

*prae-ferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*,

carry in front, carry in procession, display; prefer.

19. *sequor*, -i, *secūtus*, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, ensue.

*praeda*, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder.

*onustus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], burdened, laden.

*epulae*, -ārum, *f.*, *only in pl.*, banquet, dinner.

*in-struō*, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.*, construct, draw up, array, prepare.

20. *vėlōcitas*, -ātis, *f.* [*vėlōx*], swift-ness, speed.

21. *sex*, *indecl. num. adj.*, six.

22. *ab-dicō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, disavow; *w. sē and the abl.*, resign, abdicate.

*prōrsus*, *adv.* [*prō*+vorsus=versus], by all means, indeed, certainly.

*festinō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, hasten.

*re-liquō*, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave.

*opus*, -eris, *n.*, work, task; deed, achievement.

vidērētur; expeditiōne enim finītā ad bovēs rediit triumphālis agricola.

**23. bovēs:** for the declension of this word see App. 27; A. 79; B. 41; H. 107; H.-B. 92.

**rediit:** the use of the perfect *ivī* of the verb *eō* is rare, both in the forms of the simple verb and of the compounds. Usually, as here, the perfect *ī* is used.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>23. expeditiō, -ōnis, f.</b> [expediō],<br>military expedition, campaign. | <b>red-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr.,</b><br>return.                    |
| <b>finiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, tr.</b> [finis],<br>bound, limit, end, finish.  | <b>triumphālis, -e, adj.</b> [triumphus],<br>triumphal; having had a triumph. |
| <b>bōs, bovis, m. and f.,</b> bull, ox, cow;<br><b>pl.,</b> cattle, oxen.    | <b>24. agricola, -ae, m.</b> [ager+colō],<br>farmer.                          |

### 13. ROME CAPTURED BY THE GAULS

The next landmark in Roman history is the capture of Rome by the Gauls in 390 B.C. This remarkable event, which nearly put an end to the existence of Rome, was not planned by those northern nations, but was an incident in one of their widely extended plundering expeditions. They made no attempt at permanent conquest in central Italy, but after laying Rome in ashes and collecting rich booty, returned whence they had come.

Statim Galli Senonēs ad urbem vēnērunt et victōs Rōmānōs undecimō miliāriō ā Rōmā apud flūmen Alliam secūtī etiam

1. statim, just at this time.

Galli Senonēs, the Senones, a tribe of Gauls.

victōs Rōmānōs . . . secūtī . . . occupāvērunt: note the fondness of the Latin for the participial construction. Translate, *after defeating the Romans . . . they followed (them) . . . and seized, etc.*

2. Alliam: in memory of this terrible defeat, the eighteenth of July (*dies Alliensis*) was declared an unlucky day in the Roman calendar, on which no public business could be transacted.

1. Gallus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Gaul, Gallic; as subst., m., a Gaul; pl., the Gauls. Map I, C-D, 2-4.

Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of northern Celtic Gauls, part of whom settled

in upper Italy. Map II, D, 3.

2. undecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ūnus+decimus], eleventh.

flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō], river.

Allia, -ae, f., a small tributary of the Tiber. Map I, B, 7.

urbem occupāvērunt. Neque dēfendī quicquam nisi Capitōlium potuit; quod cum diū obsēdissent et iam Rōmānī famē  
 5 labōrārent, acceptō aurō, nē Capitōlium obsidērent, reces-  
 sērunt. Sed ā Camillō, quī in vicinā cīvitatē exsulābat, Gallis  
 superventum est gravissimēque victi sunt. Posteā tamen etiam  
 secūtus eōs Camillus ita cecidit, ut et aurum, quod hīs datum  
 fuerat, et omnia, quae cēperant, militāria signa revocāret. Ita  
 10 tertiō triumphāns urbem ingressus est et appellātus secundus  
 Rōmulus, quasi et ipse patriae conditor.

3. Capitōlium: see on Capitōliō, 7, 4.

4. famē: the ablative of *famēs* is a fifth declension form.

5. labōrārent, *were suffering*.

nē, (*on condition*) that . . . not; see App. 225, b; A. 531; B. 282; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 2.

6. vicinā cīvitatē: the city was Ardea.

Gallis superventum est, *the Gauls were surprised*; impersonal construction.

7. gravissimē, *overwhelmingly*.

8. eōs ita cecidit, *so thoroughly crushed them*.

datum fuerat: we should have expected *datum erat*.

11. quasi et ipse, *as if he too, as well as Romulus*.

3. neque or nec, *conj.*, and not, nor; nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēsum, *tr. and intr.* [dē+-fendō, strike], ward off, repel; defend, protect.

4. diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time, for a long while; *comp.*, diūtius; *sup.*, diūtissimē.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation.

5. labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [labor], labor; be hard pressed, be in distress, suffer.

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, retreat.

6. Camillus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

exsulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [exsul], be in exile.

7. super-veniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *tr. and intr.*, come up, come upon, surprise.

graviter, *adv.* [gravis], heavily, severely, seriously.

8. caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, *tr.*, cut, cut down; strike; kill.

9. re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, recall, withdraw, recover.

10. tertiō, *adv.* [tertius], for the third time.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor], second; favorable, successful.

11. patria, -ae, *f.* [patrius], native country, country.

conditor, -ōris, *m.* [condō], founder.

## 14. THE SECOND SAMNITE WAR

Over a hundred years of wars now ensued, which, reaching out in ever-widening circles, with occasional repulses for Rome, still brought more and more peoples under her sway, until at last all Italy acknowledged the power of Rome. The most notable of these struggles were those against the Samnites, the cities of the Latin league, the Etruscans, and against the Greek cities in the southeast, ending in the fall of Tarentum in 272 B.C.

The first Samnite war (343-341 B.C.) arose from the request of the Campanians for the aid of Rome against the incursions of the Samnites. Rome accepted the offer of the Campanians for an alliance, but in the midst of the struggle with the Samnites the revolt of the Latin league compelled Rome to make a treaty with her late enemies and face the Latins. The grievance of the Latins was that while they were ostensibly in partnership with Rome, Rome was not disposed to share her power and conquered territory with them. This revolt was suppressed by the combined forces of the Romans and Samnites after a struggle of two years (340-338 B.C.), ending in the battle of Mt. Vesuvius.

The second Samnite war (326-304 B.C.) arose because the Romans while securing their conquests in Campania encroached upon the rights of some cities which were under the Samnite protection. Here is an incident of this war:

Iam Rōmānī potentēs esse coepērunt. Bellum enim in centēsīmō et tricēsīmō ferē miliārīō ab urbe apud Samnītas gerēbātur, quī mediū sunt inter Picēnum, Campāniam et Āpūliam. L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris ad id bellum profectus

**2. Samnītas:** some third declension nouns in Latin, especially names of peoples, have the Greek accusative plural ending *-as* instead of *-ēs*.

**3. mediū sunt inter,** *are situated between.* The Samnite country was mountainous and its people were brave soldiers. Their subjugation was a much more difficult task than that of the peoples which Rome had previously brought under her sway.

**1. potēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of possum*], mighty, powerful, influential.

**centēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [*centum*], hundredth.

**2. Samnītēs, -ium (acc. pl. -ēs or -as), m.,** the Samnites, a Sabine people east of Latium. Map II, D-E, 4.

**3. mediū, -a, -um, adj.,** middle, the middle of; in the middle.

**inter, prep. with acc.,** between,

among, in the midst of; during.

**Picēnum, -ī, n.,** a district of eastern Italy. Map II, D, 3-4.

**Āpūlia, -ae, f.,** Apulia, a district of southeastern Italy. Map II, E-F, 4-5.

**4. Papīrius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name. **Cursor, -ōris, m.** [*cursor, a runner*], a cognomen.

**honor or honōs, -ōris, m.,** honor, esteem; official honor, office.

5 est. Quī cum Rōmam rediret, Q. Fabiō Maximō, magistrō  
equitum, quem apud exercitum reliquit, praecēpit, nē sē  
absente pugnāret. Ille occāsiōne repertā fēlicissimē dīmīcāvit  
et Samnitas dēlēvit. Ob quam rem ā dictātōre capitis damnā-  
tus, quod sē vetante pugnāsset, ingentī favōre militum et populi  
10 liberātus est, tantā Papīriō sēditionē commōtā, ut pāne ipse  
interficerētur.

5. Maximō: why dative?

6. nē . . . pugnāret: what part of the sentence is this clause?

sē absente: ablative absolute, in his (i.e., Papirius's) absence; for the indirect reflexive, see App. 165; A. 300, 2 a; B. 244, II; H. 504; H.-B. 262. 2, a.

8. rem, disobedience.

capitis damnātus, condemned to death (lit. condemned of a capital offense); for the genitive with a verb of condemning see App. 108; A. 352; B. 208, 2; H. 456; H.-B. 342.

9. quod . . . pugnāsset: the subjunctive indicates that the reason given is quoted.

sē vetante, against his orders; see sē absente, l. 6.

favōre: ablative of cause.

10. Papīriō, against (lit. for) Papirius; for case see App. 120; A. 376; B. 188; H. 425, 4; H.-B. 366.

5. Q., abbr. for Quīntus, -ī, m., a praenomen.

Fabius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Maximus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

6. praeciō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [prae+capiō], instruct, order.

7. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part of absum], absent, away.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [pugna], fight, contend.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [ob+cadō], occasion, opportunity.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, tr., find, discover, find out.

fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], happily, successfully, auspiciously.

8. dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, tr., destroy, overthrow.

ob, prep. with acc., toward; on account of, by reason of.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [damnum], condemn, sentence.

9. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, tr., forbid. favor, -ōris, m. [faveō], favor, goodwill.

mīles, -itis, m., soldier.

11. interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [inter+faciō], kill.



## 15. THE ROMAN DISGRACE AT THE CAUDINE FORKS

The Romans, at first successful, received a most crushing defeat (in 321 B.C.) at the Caudine Forks, a place forever after of unhappy memory to them. After this defeat, with varying events the war was finally brought to a successful close.

Posteā Samnītēs Rōmānōs T. Veturiō et Sp. Postumiō cōsulibus ingentī dēdecore vicērunt et sub iugum misērunt. Pāx tamen ā senātū et populō solūta est, quae cum ipsīs propter necessitātem facta fuerat. Posteā Samnītēs victi sunt ā L. Papīriō cōsule, septem mīlia eōrum sub iugum missa. Papīrius prīmus dē Samnītibus triumphāvit. Eō tempore Ap. 5

1. **T. Veturiō . . . cōsulibus**, in the consulship of Titus Veturius, etc. (lit. *Titus Veturius and Spurius Postumius being consuls*), i.e., in the year 321 B.C. The consuls held office for twelve months beginning at the first of the year, and the Romans designated a given year by the names of the consuls in office during that time. In such expressions *et* is usually not written unless the *praenōmina* are not given.

2. **ingentī dēdecore**: ablative of manner.

3. **ipsis** = *īs*, as often in Eutropius; so *ipsōrum*, line 11.

4. **facta fuerat**: for *facta erat*.

6. **dē Samnītibus**, in consequence of a victory over the Samnites.

**Ap. Claudius cēnsor**: see Vocab., *Claudius* (2). After 443 B.C., two censors were elected every four or five years, holding office for eighteen months. Their duty was to assemble the people every five years on the *Campus Mārtius* to take the census. They had charge also of the finances of the state and the construction and maintenance of public works. They exercised a general supervision over the public morals, and had power to remove a senator from the senate, a knight from the equestrian order, or a common citizen from his tribe, for such offenses as did not come under the laws, e.g., luxury, irregular life, or bad treatment of children, slaves, or clients.

1. **Veturius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name.

**Postumius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name.

2. **dē-decus, -oris, n.**, dishonor, disgrace.

3. **solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, tr.** [*sē-+luō*], loosen, release; impair, annul.

4. **necessitās, -ātis, f.** [*necesse*],

necessity, need, compulsion.

6. **dē, prep. with abl.**, from; concerning, in regard to; on account of, for, about.

**tempus, -oris, n.**, time, occasion.

**Ap., abbr. for Appius, -ī, m.**, a praenomen; as *adj.*, **Appius, -a, -um**, of Appius, Appian.

Claudius cēnsor aquam Claudiam indūxit et viam Appiam strāvit. Samnītēs reparatō bellō Q. Fabium Maximum vicērunt tribus milibus hominum occīsīs. Postea, cum pater ei  
 10 Fabius Maximus lēgātus datus fuisset, et Samnītas vicit et plūrima ipsōrum oppida cēpit. Deinde P. Cornēlius Rūfinus, M. Curius Dentātus, ambō cōsulēs, contrā Samnītas missī ingentibus proeliīs eōs cōnfēcēre. Tum bellum cum Samnītibz per annōs quadrāgintā novem āctum sustulērunt. Neque

**7. aquam Claudiam:** this aqueduct, usually called *Aqua Appia*, was over ten miles in length, almost entirely underground. It was the first of fourteen aqueducts (the longest of which was over fifty-five miles in length), built at an immense cost, that furnished Rome with an enormous quantity of water. Modern Rome is abundantly supplied by four aqueducts with a capacity of less than one-tenth of the ancient water supply.

**viam Appiam:** the first and most famous of a splendid system of military roads that formed a vast network over Italy and brought Rome into closer communication with her provinces. The *Via Appia* ran from Rome to Capua, but was later extended to Brundisium. The natural obstructions to be overcome were very great. Rocks had to be cut through, valleys filled up, ravines bridged, and swamps embanked. The remains of this road are still visible and show that the cost must have been enormous.

**8. Q. Fabium Maximum:** son of the Fabius mentioned in 14. See Vocab., *Fabius* (2).

**10. lēgātus:** predicate nominative.

**13. eōs cōnfēcēre,** *crushed them.*

**14. quadrāgintā novem:** Eutropius is mistaken. It was thirty-nine years. **āctum:** translate by a relative clause.

**7. Claudius, -i, m.,** a Roman name; as *adj.*, Claudius, -a, -um, of Claudius, Claudian.

**cēnsor, -ōris, m.** [cēnsēō], censor, a Roman magistrate.

**aqua, -ae, f.,** water.

**in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** bring in; draw on, cover.

**via, -ae, f.,** way, road, journey, march.

**8. sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, tr.,** stretch out, spread; lay, pave; overthrow.

**9. homō, -inis, m. and f.,** human being, man.

**pater, -tris, m.,** father.

**11. P., abbr. for Pūblius, -ī, m.,** a praenomen.

**Cornēlius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Rūfinus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**12. M., abbr. for Mārcus, -ī, m.,** a praenomen.

**Curius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Dentātus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj.,** both.

**13. cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [com- + faciō], make ready, complete, finish up; wear out, exhaust; kill.

**14. novem, indecl. num. adj.,** nine.

ūllus hostis fuit intrā Italiam, quī Rōmānam virtūtem magis 15  
fatigāverit.

16. *fatigāverit*: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283 1, 2; H. 591 f.  
H.-B. 521 1.

15. *ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllius, adj.*,  
any; *as subst.*, any one, anybody.  
*intrā, prep. with acc.*, within, inside  
of; into, inside.

*Italia, -ae, f.*, Italy. *Map II.*  
*magis, comp. adv.*, more, rather.

16. *fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*,  
weary, fatigue; test.

### 16. THE THIRD SAMNITE WAR: THE FALL OF TARENTUM

The third war with the indomitable Samnites, who were leagued with almost all Italy against Rome, was started because of Samnite interference with what Rome deemed her rights in Lucania. At the end of this war, Tarentum, a Greek city in southeastern Italy, was the only obstacle to the complete supremacy of Rome. Rome soon found cause of quarrel against the Tarentines, who summoned Pyrrhus, king of Epirus in Greece, to their aid. The events of this war (281-272 B.C.) are here described:

Eodem tempore Tarentīnis, quī iam in ultimā Italiā sunt,  
bellum indictum est, quia lēgātis Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcis-  
sent. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium  
poposcērunt, quī ex genere Achillis originem trahēbat. Is

1. *in ultimā Italiā, in (the) remotest (part of) Italy, i.e.*, southern Italy,  
known as *Magna Graecia*, because it was largely settled by Greek colonies.

3. *Pyrrhum . . . auxilium*: for two accusatives with verb of demand-  
ing see App. 125 a; A. 396; B. 178, a; H. 411; H.-B. 393.

1. *Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m.*, the people  
of Tarentum, Tarentines. *Map*  
*II, F, 5.*

2. *in-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, tr.*,  
proclaim, appoint; *w. bellum*,  
declare.

*quia, conj.*, because.

3. *Pyrrhus, -ī, m.*, a king of Epirus.

*Ēpīrus, -ī, f.*, the northwest district of  
Greece. *Map I, G, 5.*

*auxilium, -ī, n.* [*augeō*], aid, help.

4. *poscō, -ere, poposci, —, tr.*, ask,  
ask for, demand.

*genus, -eris, n.* [*cf. gēns*], race,  
family; sort, class.

*Achillēs, -is, m.*, the hero of the *Iliad*,  
and the most famous Greek warrior  
in the Trojan war.

*origō, -inis, f.* [*orior*], source, origin;  
lineage.

*trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, tr.*, draw,  
drag, draw out or forth; derive.

- 5 *mox* ad Italiam vēnit, tumque primum Rōmānī cum trāns-marīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendī omnem exercitum tumque dīmīttī, ut renūtiārent Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.
- 10 Commissā *mox* pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quōs incognītōs Rōmānī expāvērunt. Sed *nox* proeliō finem dedit; Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octīngentōs cēpit et eōs summō honōre tractāvit,

5. *primum*, for the first time. What would *prīmī* mean?

8. *dūcī, ostendī . . . dīmīttī*: see on *duplicāvit*, etc., 5, 2. The subject of *ostendī* is *exercitum*. With *dīmīttī* the subject is shifted back to *eōs*.

10. *iam*, meaning "now," is to be distinguished from *nunc*, "now," "at the present time," denoting absolute time. *Iam* always has reference to another time, past or future, more or less immediate. Used of past time it often marks the end of a series of events. Used with the imperfect, *iam* often denotes the beginning of an act.

12. *finem*: note difference of meaning in sing. and plural.

*dedit, put.*

5. *mox, adv.*, soon, thereupon, then, afterwards.

*primum, adv.* [*prīmus*], first, at first; *cum primum*, as soon as; *quam primum*, as soon as possible.

*trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, adj.* [*marīnus*, of the sea], from over the sea; foreign.

7. *Laevīnus, -ī, m.*, a cognomen.

*explōrātōr, -ōris, m.* [*explōrō*], scout, spy.

8. *ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, tr.* [*obs = ob + tendō*], display, show, point out.

*dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.*, send away, let go.

9. *re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.*, bring back word, report.

*quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.

10. *com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.*, bring together; engage in, begin; intrust.

*pugna, -ae, f.*, battle.

*elephantus, -ī, m.*, elephant.

11. *ex-pavēscō, -ere, -pāvī, —, tr. and intr.* [*pavēscō*, begin to fear], fear greatly, dread.

*nox, noctis, f.*, night.

12. *finis, -is, m. and f.*, boundary, end, close; *pl.*, territory, land.

13. *octīngenti, -ae, -a, num. adj.* [*octō + centum*], eight hundred.

*superus, -a, -um, adj.* [*super*], high; *comp.*, superior, -ius, higher, upper, superior; former, previous; *sup.*, summus, -a, -um, and *suprēmus, -a, -um*, highest; the highest or uppermost part of, top of; greatest, utmost.

*tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.* [*trahō*], handle, manage, treat.

occīsōs sepelīvit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere et truci vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur 15 cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi militēs contigissent.

Posteā Pyrrhus coniūctīs sibi Samnītibus, Lūcānīs, Brutiīs Rōmam perrēxit, omnia ferrō ignique vāstāvit, Campāniam

14. *cum*: not the preposition.

*adversō vulnere*, with wounds in front. They died with their faces turned toward the foe.

15. *dicitur*: personal constr. What shows it?

16. *hāc vōce*, these words.

*orbis*: see on *orbem terrarum*, 6, 5.

*esse potuisse*, could have been; for the use of the present infinitive with *posse* see App. 205, a; A. 486, a; B. 270, 2; H. 618, 2; H.-B. p. 311, ft. note 2. The perfect infinitive (*potuisse*) is used because in direct discourse an indicative *potuī* would be written.

18. *sibi*: *coniungō* may govern either the abl., usually with *cum*, or the dative.

14. *sepeliō*, -ire, -ivī, -pultum, *tr.*, bury.

*adversus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, [*perf. part. of advertō*], turned toward, facing, in front, opposite.

*vulnus*, -eris, *n.*, wound.

*trux*, *trucis*, *adj.*, fierce, stern.

*vultus*, -ūs, *m.*, expression, countenance, look.

15. *mortuus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of morior*], dead.

*iaceō*, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate, lie dead.

*ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; lift.

*caelum*, -ī, *n.*, the sky, heaven.

*manus*, -ūs, *f.*, hand; force, band of troops.

16. *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f.*, voice, utterance; word.

*tōtus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, the whole

of, all, entire.

*dominus*, -ī, *m.*, master, owner, ruler.

*tālis*, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a sort; of this sort; *tālis* . . . *quālis*, such . . . as.

17. *contingō*, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [*com-+tangō*], touch, extend to; happen, fall to one's lot.

18. *coniungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *tr.* [*com-+iungō*], join, unite.

*Lūcānī*, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Lucania, Lucanians. Map II, E-F, 5.

*Brutiī*, -ōrum, *m.*, the Bruttians, inhabitants of the southwestern point of Italy. Map II, F, 6.

19. *pergō*, -ere, *perrēxī*, *perrēctum*, *intr.* [*per+regō*], go on, advance.

*ferrum*, -ī, *n.*, iron; spear, sword.

*ignis*, -is, *m.*, fire.

*vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*vās-tus*], devastate, ravage, destroy.

- 20 populātus est atque ad Praeneste vēnit, miliārīō ab urbe octāvō decimō. Mox terrōre exercitūs, quī eum cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redimēdis captīvīs missī ab eō honōrificē susceptī sunt. Captīvōs sine pretiō Rōmam mīsīt. Ūnum ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum,
- 25 Fābriciūm, sic admirātus, cum eum pauperem esse cognōvisset, ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā sollicitāre voluerit, ut ad sē trānsīret, contemptusque est ā Fābriciō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum ingentī admirātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsīt, quī pācem aequīs condiōnibus peteret, praecipuum virum,

**20. ad Praeneste:** for the use of the preposition see App. 131, *a*; A. 428, *a*; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453.

**25. Fābriciūm:** Fabricius is an embodiment of the sturdy virtues that went to make up an ideal Roman of the old school, and is often referred to by Roman writers as a model citizen.

**admirātus:** supply *est*.

**26. prōmissā,** by the promise of.

**27. -que, but.** A proposition is often introduced by *-que, et, or atque* where *but* would be used in English.

**20. populor, -ārī, -ātus, tr.,** lay waste, ravage.

**Praeneste, -is, n.,** one of the oldest cities of Latium. Map I, B, 8.

**22. redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtum, tr.** [red-+emō], ransom, release.

**23. captīvus, -ī, m.** [capiō], prisoner.

**honōrificē, adv.** [honōrificus, honorable], with honor, honorably.

**24. pretium, -ī, n.,** price, reward, ransom.

**25. Fābricius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name. **sic, adv.,** thus, so, to such a degree.

**ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr.,** wonder at, admire.

**pauper, -eris, adj.,** poor, of small means; as *subst., m.,* a poor man.

**cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, tr.** [com-+(g)nōscō], become acquainted with, learn; in the *pf.* *tenses,* know.

**26. prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.,** promise, assure, give hope of.

**sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** stir up, instigate, urge.

**27. contemnō, -ere, -temp-sī, -temptum, tr.** [com-+temnō, scorn], despise, disregard.

**quā-rē, adv.,** by reason of which, for this reason, therefore, then.

**28. admirātiō, -ōnis, f.** [admīror], admiration; surprise.

**29. aequus, -a, -um, adj.,** even; fair, just; favorable.

**condiciō, -ōnis, f.** [condicō, agree], agreement, terms, condition, stipulation.

**petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr.,** aim at, seek; make for, attack; demand, ask for, ask.

**praecipuus, -a, -um, adj.** [prae-cipiō], eminent, prominent.

Cineam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae, quam iam armīs occupāverat, obtinēret.

Pāx displicuit remandātumque Pyrrhō est ā senātū eum cum Rōmānis, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habēre nōn posse. Tum Rōmānī iussērunt captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus red-  
diderat, infāmēs habērī, quod armātī capī potuissent, nec ante  
eōs ad veterem statum revertī, quam sī binōrum hostium  
occīsōrum spolia rettulissent. Ita lēgātus Pyrrhī reversus est.  
Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam comperisset,  
Cineās dīxit rēgum sē patriam vīdisse; scilicet tālēs illic ferē

30. nōmine: for ablative see App. 149; A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; H.-B. 441.  
ita ut, on condition that; the ut clause denotes purpose.

32. eum . . . posse: subject of remandātum est.

33. recessisset stands for a future perfect in direct discourse.

posse, would be able, is equivalent to a future infinitive (representing a future indicative in direct discourse), as the word has in itself a future idea.

35. ante . . . quam, sooner . . . than, before; often written as one word.

38. ā: omit in translating. With quaerō the name of the person asked is put in the ablative with ā or ab, ē or ex, or dē.

quālem . . . comperisset: indirect question; what kind of city he had found Rome to be (lit. of what sort he had found Rome).

39. tālēs . . . quālis, such . . . as.

30. Cineās, -ae, m., the minister of Pyrrhus.

arma, -ōrum, n., arms, weapons.

31. obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. and intr. [ob+teneō], hold, occupy; retain.

32. displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr. [dis+placeō], displease, be unsatisfactory.

re-mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., send back word.

35. infāmis, -e, adj. [in-+fāma], infamous.

36. vetus, -eris, adj., old, ancient; former.

status, -ūs, m. [stō], standing, position; condition.

revertor, revertī, perf. revertī, (rarely

reversus sum), intr., return.

binī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., by twos, two each.

37. spoliū, -ī, n., spoil, booty.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, tr., bring back, bring; report, tell.

38. quaerō, -ere, -sīvi or -sīi, -sītum, tr., seek, ask, inquire.

quālis, -e, adj.; interrog., of what sort? what kind of? rel., of such a kind, such as, as.

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, tr., discover, learn.

39. scilicet, adv. [scīre+licet], without doubt, evidently, that is; ironically, doubtless.

illic, adv. [ille], in that place, there.

40 omnēs esse, quālis ūnus Pyrrhus apud Ēpīrum et reliquam Graeciam putārētur.

Missi sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīginti mīlia caesa hostium, et ex Rōmānīs  
45 tantum quīnque mīlia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fābricius est missus, quī prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vicīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum  
50 occisūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur. Quem Fābricius vīnc-tum reducī iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus spondisset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum

40. ūnus, *alone*. apud Ēpīrum, *in Epirus*.

45. tantum, *only*, a common meaning.

48. vicīna castra . . . habērent, *had their camps close together*.

50. occisūrum (*esse*): verbs of promising are usually followed by the future infinitive. *Esse* is often omitted in the future infinitive.

vīnc-tum, *in chains*; give principal parts of vīnciō, vīvō, and vīncō.

51. dīcī: what is the subject?

40. reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relin-quō], remaining, other, rest of.

41. Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. *Map I, G-H, 5-6*.

42. Sulpicius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Decius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Mūs, Mūris, *m.*, a cognomen.

43. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, struggle], struggle, battle.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vul-nus], wound.

45. tantum, *adv.* [tantus], so much; only, merely; tantum . . . quantum, as much or as far . . . as.

quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, a Greek city in south-ern Italy. *Map II, F, 5*.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [fuga], rout, put to flight.

46. intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [inter+iaciō], interpose, put between; *pass.*, of time or place, intervene.

48. medicus, -ī, *m.*, physician.

49. venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison.

50. polliceor, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, offer, promise.

vīnciō, -īre, vīnxi, vīnc-tum, *tr.*, bind.

51. re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or conduct back.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? what sort of?

52. spondeō, -ēre, spondi, spōn-sum, *tr.*, promise, undertake.



dixisse fertur: "Ille est Fābricius, quī difficilīus ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest." Tum rēx ad Siciliam profectus est. Fābricius victis Lūcānīs et Samnītibus trium- 55 phāvit.

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversum Pyrrhum missī sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit, ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. Eā diē caesa hostium vigintī tria milia. Curius in cōsulātū 60 triumphāvit. Primus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae civitātem, occisus est.

**57. Dentātus:** see 15, 12. This was his third consulship. His *praenomen* was *Manius* not *Mārcus*.

**60. eā diē:** in the singular *diēs* is either masculine or feminine; in the plural it is masculine.

**in cōsulātū triumphāvit:** this was his third triumph, as he had already celebrated victories over the Samnites and Sabines. He was noted for the simplicity of his manners and life, being content after all his successes to live in a rude cottage on a little farm; and he was fond of declaring that "that citizen was a pernicious one who did not find seven acres sufficient for his needs."

**62. ā Tarentō:** the preposition sometimes occurs with names of towns, contrary to regular usage.

**53. difficulter, adv.** [difficilis], with difficulty; *comp.*, **difficilius**; *sup.*, **difficillimē**.

**honestās, -ātis, f.** [honōs], honor.

**54. sōl, sōlis, m.,** the sun.

**cursus, -ūs, m.** [currō], speed; course.

**ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr.,** turn away, turn.

**Sicilia, -ae, f.,** Sicily. *Map I, F, 6.*

**57. Lentulus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**58. adversum or adversus, adv. and prep.** [advertō], opposite. against.

**62. Argos, n. (nom. and acc. only), or Argī, -ōrum, m.,** a city of Greece. *Map I, H, 6.*

## 17. BEGINNINGS OF IMPERIALISM: THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Another critical point in Roman history has now been reached, when, with all Italy reduced to the condition of a subject state, Rome stands upon the threshold of that career of foreign conquest which was to make her mistress of the whole known world. And the first step in this foreign conquest was taken against the Carthaginians in Africa, a nation, however, which was not to be finally overcome until after three mighty struggles, involving forty-three years of actual warfare, and covering a period of one hundred and eighteen years.

Annō quadringentēsīmō septuāgēsīmō septimō, cum iam clārum urbis Rōmae nōmen esset, arma tamen extrā Italiam mōta nōn fuerant. Ut igitur cognōscerētur quāe cōpiaie Rōmānōrum essent, cēnsus est habitus. Tum inventa sunt  
5 cīvium capita ducenta nōnāgintā duo mīlia trecenta trīgintā quattuor.

Et contrā Āfrōs bellum susceptum est primum Ap. Claudiō

1. *cum*: the force of *cum* is indicated by the following *tamen*.

3. *cōpiaie*: note different meanings in sing. and plural.

5. *capita*: see on *capita*, 6, 6.

7. *Āfrōs*: *i.e.*, the Carthaginians, a people of whose early history little is known. As far back as 600 B.C. Carthage was the center of a mighty empire extending from Cyrene (see Map I, H, 7) to the Strait of Gibraltar, holding as provinces the Balearic Islands (Map I, C, 5), Sardinia (Map I, E, 5), and some settlements on the coast of Spain and Gaul. At the time of the first Punic war the Carthaginians felt so sure of their mastery on the water that they boasted that the Romans could not even wash their hands in the sea without permission from Carthage. When Pyrrhus left Sicily after a stay of two years he is said to have exclaimed: "What a fine battleground we are leaving for the Carthaginians and the Romans!" This expectation was soon fulfilled.

Ap. Claudiō: see Vocab., *Claudius* (3).

1. *quadringentēsimus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [*quadringentī*], four-hundredth.

*septuāgēsimus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [*septuāgintā*], seventieth.

2. *clārus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear; renowned.

*extrā*, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [*exter*, outward], outside, outside of.

3. *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, *tr.*,

move, stir, set in motion; arouse.

*cōpia*, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, supplies; troops, forces.

4. *in-veniō*, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, find, discover.

5. *nōnāgintā*, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety.

*trecentī*, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [*trēs +centum*], three hundred.

7. *Āfer*, *Āfrī*, *m.*, an African; *Āfrī*, Africans, Carthaginians.

Q. Fulviō cōsulibus. In Siciliā contrā eōs pugnātum est et Ap. Claudius dē Āfris et rēge Siciliae Hierōne triumphāvit.

9. rēge Siciliae: *i.e.*, of Syracuse and the east coast of Sicily. Hiero later became an ally of the Romans, rendering them valuable service in the latter part of this war and in the Second Punic War.

triumphāvit, *celebrated a triumph over (dē).*

8. Fulvius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

9. Hierō, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Syracuse.

### 18. ROME'S FIRST NAVAL VICTORY

The necessity of a navy was very soon apparent to the Romans in this struggle against a maritime power; and it is a high tribute to their energy and skill that, in sixty days after they began the task, a fleet of one hundred and twenty quinqueremes had been built and launched, and the first naval victory in their history won. This was gained near Mylae, by Gaius Duilius.

Quintō annō primī bellī, quod contrā Āfrōs gerēbātur, primum Rōmānī C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus in mari dimicāvērunt parātīs nāvibus rōstrātīs, quās Liburnās

3. parātīs: give principal parts of *parō*, *pāreō*, and *pariō*.

nāvibus rōstrātīs: one of the chief elements in the power of the Romans was their ability to borrow from their enemies and improve or adapt to their own needs whatever was likely to be of any service to them. A Carthaginian galley that had been wrecked on the south coast of Italy served the Romans as a model; and while the forest was being converted into a fleet, the soldiers were taught to use the oar by rowing on benches arranged in tiers on the land.

Liburnās (sc. *nāvēs*): the Liburnians were celebrated as bold and skillful sailors, and their ships were remarkable for their swiftness.

2. C., *abbr. for Gaius*, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

Duilius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus*, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

Asina, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Cn. Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul in 260 B.C.

3. parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, pre-

pare, provide, prepare for; obtain.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship; *nāvis longa*, war vessel.

rōstrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōstrum], furnished with a beak, beaked.

Liburnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Liburnian; *nāvēs Liburnae*, light galleys built like those of the Liburnians. Map I, F, 4.

vocant. Cōsul Cornēlius fraude dēceptus est. Duilius com-  
missō proeliō Carthāginiēnsium ducem vīcit, trīgintā et ūnam  
nāvēs cēpit, quattuordecim mersit, septem milia hostium cēpit,  
tria milia occīdit. Neque ūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātiōr fuit,  
quod invicti terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum possent.

**4. fraude dēceptus est:** with seventeen vessels he was blocked by the Carthaginian fleet, and his whole squadron was captured without a struggle.

**8. terrā . . . marī:** the locative ablative of these words is found with or without a preposition (compare *in marī*, line 3). The preposition is regularly omitted in the phrase *terrā marique*.

**plūrimum possent,** *were most powerful*; why the subjunctive? For the accusative see App. 128; A. 390, c; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; H.-B. 387, III.

**4. fraus, fraudis, f.,** deceit, trickery.

**dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.,** [dē+capiō], take in, deceive.

**5. Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj.,** of Carthage; *as subst., m.,* a Carthaginian.

**6. quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj.,** [quattuor+decem], fourteen.

**mergō, -ere, mersi, mersum, tr.,** sink, overwhelm.

**7. victōria, -ae, f. [victor],** victory.

**8. in-victus, -a, -um, adj.,** unconquered, invincible.

## 19. REGULUS INVADES AFRICA

Then followed the invasion of Africa under Regulus, in which attempt he was defeated and taken prisoner. Sent to Rome to effect an exchange of prisoners, he advised the senate against this, though he knew that the acceptance of his advice meant for him a return to death by torture.

L. Mānliō Vulsōne M. Atiliō Rēgulō cōsulibus bellum in Āfricā trānslātum est. Contrā Hamilcarem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, in marī pugnātum, victusque est. Nam perditis

**3. pugnātum (est),** *they fought*.

**victus . . . est:** the change of subject is not indicated by expressing the new subject by *is* or *ille* as we should expect.

**1. Mānlius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Vulsō, -ōnis, m.,** a cognomen.

**Atilius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Rēgulus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**2. Āfrica, -ae, f.,** Africa. *Map I.*

**trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,** take or carry across, transfer.

**Hamilcar, -aris, m.,** a Carthaginian general.

sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus retrō sē recēpit. Rōmānī vīgintī  
 duās āmisērunt. Sed cum in Āfricā trānsissēt, prīmā 5  
 Clypeam, Āfricae cīvitatē, in dēditionē accēpērunt. Cōn-  
 sulēs usque ad Carthāginē prōcessērunt, multisque castellīs  
 vāstātīs Mānlius victor Rōmā rediit et vīgintī septem mīlia  
 captīvōrum redūxit, Atīlius Rēgulus in Āfricā remānsit. Is  
 contrā Āfrōs aciem instrūxit. Contrā trēs Carthāginiēnsium 10  
 ducēs dimicāns victor fuit, decem et octō mīlia hostium  
 cecīdit, quīnque mīlia cum decem et octō elephantīs cēpit,  
 septuāgintā quattuor cīvitatēs in fidem accēpit. Tum victī  
 Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt, quam cum  
 Rēgulus nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus dare, Āfrī auxilium 15  
 ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt. Et duce Xanthippō, quī ā

4. retrō sē recēpit, *he retreated.*

6. in dēditionē accēpērunt, *they granted terms of surrender to.*

7. usque ad, *all the way to (the vicinity of);* for this use of the preposition see App. 131, a; A. 428, a; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453, 1.

9. Atīlius, etc., *while Atīlius, etc.*

13. in fidem accēpit, *he took under his protection.*

15. dūrissimīs condiciōnibus: the conditional force of the ablative absolute is made clear by the use of *nisi*.

16. duce Xanthippō, *under the leadership of Xanthippus.*

Note above, three combinations making the ablative absolute; a noun with a participle, two nouns, a noun with an adjective.

4. sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty.  
 retrō, *adv.*, backward, to the rear,  
 back.

6. Clypea, -ae, *f.*, a town of northern  
 Africa. Map I, E, 6.

dēditio, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō], surrender.

7. Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage, a  
 city of Africa. Map I, E, 6.

castellum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of castrum*],  
 fortress, stronghold; redoubt.

8. victor, -ōris, *m.*, victor; as *adj.*,  
 victorious.

9. re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, *intr.*,  
 remain, be left.

13. septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*,  
 seventy.

fidēs, -ei, *f.* [fidō], faith, confidence;  
 faithfulness; promise; protection.

15. nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —, *tr. and*  
*intr.* [ne+volō], not wish, be  
 unwilling.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard; harsh,  
 severe, haughty.

16. Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*,  
 Lacedaemonian; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*,  
 the Lacedaemonians or Spartans.  
 Map I, H, 6.

Xanthippus, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan  
 general.

Lacedaemoniis missus fuerat, Rōmānōrum dux Rēgulus victus est ultimā perniciē. Nam duo milia tantum ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū refūgērunt, quingentī cum imperātōre Rēgulō captī  
 20 sunt, trīgintā milia occīsa, Rēgulus ipse in catēnās coniectus.

Posteā Carthāginiēnsēs Rēgulum ducem, quem cēperant, petivērunt, ut Rōmam proficiscerētur et pācem ā Rōmānis obtinēret ac permūtātiōnem captivōrum faceret. Ille Rōmam cum vēnisset, inductus in senātum nihil quasi Rōmānus ēgit  
 25 dixitque sē ex illā diē, quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset, Rōmānum esse dēsisse. Itaque et uxōrem ā complexū remōvit

**17. Lacedaemoniis:** Greek soldiers frequently entered the service of foreign states as mercenaries. While the strict manner of life of early Sparta was no longer maintained, it was natural that her soldiers should still retain something of the prestige of earlier times and hence should be sought after as auxiliaries.

**21. Rēgulum:** ā Rēgulō would be the regular construction. Cf. ā Lacedaemoniis, l. 16. The *ut* clause takes the place of the second noun.

**23. obtinēret, obtain.**

**24. ēgit, acted.** Regulus held that according to the Roman law he had lost his citizenship, since he had been captured in war and thereby made a slave; and that as a result his marriage was annulled. But there was a provision of the law by which a person thus returning after captivity was restored to his former civil standing (*postliminium*).

**25. diē:** for gender compare note on *diē*, 16, 60.

**26. dēsisse = dēsivisse.**

**18. perniciēs, -ēi, f. [per+nex],** calamity, loss, disaster.

**19. re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr.,** flee back, flee, escape.

**quingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quīn-que+centum],** five hundred.

**imperātōr, -ōris, m. [imperō],** general, commander-in-chief.

**20. catēna, -ae, f.,** chain, fetter.

**coniciō or coiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [com-+iaciō],** throw, cast; put.

**23. permūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [permūtō],** an exchange.

**24. nihil, n. indecl.,** nothing.

**26. dē-sinō, -ere, -sivī or -sui, -situm (pf. inf. dēsisse), intr.,** cease, stop.

**ita-que, conj.,** and so; accordingly, therefore.

**complexus, -ūs, m. [complector],** an embrace.

**re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. and intr.,** move back, put aside, remove.

et senātūi suāsīt, nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim frāctōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; sē tantī nōn esse, ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter ūnum sē et senem et paucōs, quī ex Rōmānīs captī fuerant, redderentur. Itaque obtinuit, nam 30 Āfrōs pācem petentēs nūllus admīsīt. Ipse Carthāginem rediit, offerentibusque Rōmānīs, ut eum Rōmae tenērent, negāvit sē in eā urbe mānsūrum, in quā, postquam Āfrīs servierat, digni-

**27. illōs enim**, etc., *for (he said) they*, etc. The verb of saying is often omitted when it is easily supplied from the context. Change indirect discourse to direct discourse.

**28. tantī**: for the genitive of value see App. 105; A. 417; B. 203, 3; H. 448; H.-B. 356. It is explained by the following result clause.

**29. et senem**, *an old man at that*.

**30. captī fuerant**: not a part of Regulus's speech. With indirect discourse a subordinate clause is often retained in the indicative when it is parenthetical or explanatory or when the fact stated is to be emphasized. Notice *servierat*, l. 33.

**obtinuit**: used absolutely, *he prevailed, he gained his request*.

**31. nūllus admīsīt**: *i.e.*, the senate absolutely refused to give the embassy a hearing.

**32. negāvit**: this verb is regularly used instead of *dīcō nōn*.

**33. mānsūrum**: supply *esse*.

**Āfrīs**: for the dative with *servierat* see App. 115; A. 367; B. 187 II; H. 426 I; H.-B. 362.

**27. suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, tr.** and *intr.*, *advise, persuade*.

**Poenus, -a, -um, adj.**, Punic, Carthaginian; *as subst.*, *m.*, a Carthaginian; **Poenī**, the Carthaginians.

**fiō, fieri, factus**, *used as pass. of faciō*, be made, be done, become; result, happen.

**frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, tr.**, break, break down; weaken, wear out.

**28. tot, indecl. adj.**, so many.

**cāsus, -ūs, m.** [cadō], accident, misfortune, calamity, fate.

**29. paucī, -ae, -a, adj.**, few; *as subst.*, *m. pl.*, a few.

**31. ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.**, admit, receive.

**32. offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, tr.** [ob+ferō], offer, present.

**negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.**, say no, deny, refuse.

**33. serviō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, intr.** [servus], be a slave or subservient to; submit.

tātem honestī cīvis habēre nōn posset. Regressus igitur ad  
35 Āfricam omnibus suppliciīs exstinctus est.

**34. honestī:** never translate this by the English word "honest."

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>34. honestus, -a, -um, adj.</b> [honōs], honorable, illustrious.<br/> <b>regredior, -ī, -gressus, intr.</b> [re-+ gradior, walk], go back, come back, return.</p> | <p><b>35. supplicium, -ī, n.</b> [supplex], punishment, torture.<br/> <b>ex-stinguō, -ere, -tūxi, -tūctum, tr.</b> [stinguō, quench], put out; kill, put to death.</p> |
|---|--|

## 20. THE AEGATES ISLANDS

The decisive event of this war was the battle off the Aegates Islands in 241 B.C.

C. Lutātiō Catulō A. Postumiō Albīnō cōsulibus, annō bellī Pūnicī vicēsīmō et tertiō Catulō bellum contrā Āfrōs commissum est. Profectus est cum trecentīs nāvibus in Siciliam; Āfrī contrā ipsum quadringentās parāvērunt. Numquam in mari  
5 tantīs cōpiīs pugnātum est. Lutātius Catulus nāvem aeger ascendit; vulnerātus enim in pugnā superiōre fuerat. Contrā Lilybaeum, civitātem Siciliae, pugnātum est ingentī virtūte Rōmānōrum. Nam LXIII Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae sunt, cxxv dēmersae, xxxii milia hostium capta, xiii milia occīsa,

**2. Catulō:** dative.

**bellum contrā Āfrōs:** the Latin usually avoids the use of a prepositional phrase depending on a noun. Usually the phrase is connected with its noun by a participle or a relative clause (as *quod . . . gerēbatur*, 18, 1), or an adjective is used instead. See on *rēs* . . . *Clūsīna*, 8, 4.

**8. Rōmānōrum, (on the part) of the Romans.**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>1. Lutātius, -ī, m., a Roman name.</b><br/> <b>Catulus, -ī, m., a cognomen.</b><br/> <b>A., abbr. for Aulus, -ī, m., a praenomen.</b><br/> <b>Albinus, -ī, m., a cognomen.</b><br/> <b>2. Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenus],</b><br/>     Punic, Carthaginian.<br/> <b>4. quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.</b><br/>     [quattuor+centum], four hundred.<br/> <b>numquam, adv. [ne+umquam],</b><br/>     never.</p> | <p><b>5. aeger, -gra, -grum, adj.,</b> ill, sick.<br/> <b>6. ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum,</b><br/> <i>tr. and intr.</i> [ad+scandō, climb],<br/>     mount, ascend; go on board.<br/> <b>7. Lilybaeum, -ī, n., a promontory</b><br/> <i>and town of western Sicily. Map</i><br/> <i>II, C, 7.</i><br/> <b>9. dē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr.,</b><br/>     sink.<br/> <b>XIII = tredecim, indecl. num. adj.</b><br/>     [trēs+decem], thirteen.</p> |
|---|---|



infinītum aurī, argentī, praedae in potestātem Rōmānōrum 10  
redāctum. Ex classe Rōmānā xii nāvēs dēmersae. Pugnātum  
est vi Īdūs Mārtiās. Statim pācem Cārthāginiēnsēs petivērunt  
tribūtaque est hīs pāx. Captivī Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur  
ā Cārthāginiēnsibus, redditī sunt. Etiam Cārthāginiēnsēs peti-  
vērunt, ut redimī eōs captīvōs liceret, quōs ex Āfris Rōmānī 15  
tenēbant. Senātus iussit sine pretiō eōs dari, quī in públicā  
custōdiā essent; quī autem ā privātis tenērentur, ut pretiō  
dominis redditō Cārthāginem redirent atque id pretium ex  
fiscō magis quam ā Cārthāginiēnsibus solverētur.

The results of the first Punic war were (1) the Romans gained control of all Sicily except the territory of Hiero; (2) Rome became a maritime power and mistress of the sea; (3) Carthage paid in tribute to Rome the whole cost of the war.

10. *infinītum*, a great amount.

12. VI. *Īdūs Mārtiās* = *ante diem sextum Īdūs Mārtiās*; see App. 300; A. 631; B. 371, 372; H. 754, 755; H.-B. 662-671.

15. *liceret*: what is the subject?

17. *essent*: why subjunctive?

ut . . . *redirent*: for the regular constr. after *iubeō* compare *dari*, 1. 16.

10. *argentum*, -ī, *n.*, silver.

11. *redigō*, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.*  
[red-+agō], drive back; bring;  
render.

*classis*, -is, *f.*, fleet.

XII = *duodecim*, *indecl. num. adj.*  
[duo+decem], twelve.

12. *Īdūs*, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, the  
fifteenth day of March, May, July,  
and October, the thirteenth of the  
other months.

*Mārtius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [Mārs], of  
Mars; of the month of March.

13. *tribuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*  
[tribus, a division of the people],  
assign, bestow, grant.

15. *licet*, -ēre, -uit and -itum est,  
*intr., impers.*, it is allowed, per-  
mitted, one may.

16. *pūblicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [popu-  
lus], belonging to the state,  
public.

17. *custōdia*, -ae, *f.* [custōs], care,  
custody, guard.

19. *fiscus*, -ī, *m.*, basket, purse;  
treasury.

## 21. THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Carthage had made peace with Rome because her own strength was exhausted, and not because she had recognized the justice of Roman claims. After biding her time for twenty-three years she again took up the struggle in the second Punic war (218-201 B.C.). This was precipitated by Hannibal's attack upon Saguntum, a coast town in southern Spain, which Rome claimed as an ally.

Eodem annō bellum Pūnicum secundum Rōmānīs inlātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quī Saguntum, Hispāniae civitatem Rōmānīs amīcam, oppugnāre adgressus est, annum agēns vicēsimum aetātis, cōpiīs congregātis **CL** mīlium. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Is lēgātōs admittēre nōluit. Rōmānī etiā Carthāginem misērunt, ut mandārētur Hannibali, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra respōnsa ā Carthā-

1. eodem annō: this was in the year 219 B.C.

Rōmānīs: dative with compound verb.

2. per, through (the action of).

4. annum . . . aetātis, in his twentieth year (lit. passing the twentieth year of his life).

6. admittēre: compare nūllus admisit, 19, 31.

7. misērunt: supply lēgātōs.

ut mandārētur, that instructions should be given; the subject is the following clause.

Hannibali is the indirect object retained in the passive.

1. in-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum, *tr.*, bring in; bear, bring; inflict; *w.* bellum, wage.

2. Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, a great Carthaginian general.

Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, a city on the east coast of Spain. Map I, C, 5.

3. Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain (often *pl.* because it was divided into two provinces). Map I, A-C, 4-5.

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly.

adgredior, -ī, -gressus, *tr.* and *intr.* [ad+gradior], attack.

4. aetās, -ātis, *f.*, time of life, life, age.

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+grex], collect, assemble.

L = quinquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty.

5. dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, give notice.

6. abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* and *intr.* [abs+teneō], keep from, abstain from.

7. mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, commit, intrust, order, command.

8. socius, -ī, *m.*, companion, ally, associate.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeō], answer, response.

giniēnsibus data sunt. Saguntinī intereā famē victī sunt, captique ab Hannibale ultimīs poenīs adficiuntur. Bellum 10 Carthāginiēnsibus indictum est.

Tum P. Cornēlius Scīpiō cum exercitū in Hispāniam pro-  
fectus est, Ti. Semprōnius in Siciliam. Hannibal relictō  
in Hispāniā frātre Hasdrubale Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Alpēs,  
adhūc eā parte inviās, sibi patefecit. Trāditur ad Italiam 15

9. *famē*: for the ablative of *famēs* see on 13, 4. The siege lasted eight months.

10. *adficiuntur*, *were visited with*; historical present. The town was later captured by the Romans and freed from Carthaginian control.

12. P. Cornēlius Scīpiō: see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (3).

14. *Alpēs*: it is not clear by what route Hannibal crossed the Alps, but it was probably by the pass known as the Little St. Bernard. The crossing was attended with the greatest difficulties. It was late in the year; the higher passes of the Alps were covered with snow, which concealed the trail or made it slippery and dangerous. The Alpine tribes hurled down masses of stone from the heights above his path; the narrow places often had to be cut wider to allow the huge elephants to pass; the men were weakened by cold and hunger and exhausted by the severe toil. The loss of men was frightful. Less than half of the army that had crossed the Pyrenees remained when Hannibal descended into the plains of the Po. The hardships of the march were so great that Hannibal's army was not able to fight for some time.

15. *eā parte*: for the ablative with preposition omitted see App. 151, b.; A. 429, 1; B. 228, 1, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

*trāditur*: personal or impersonal?

9. *Saguntinī, -ōrum, m.*, the people of Saguntum.

*inter-eā, adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

10. *poena, -ae, f.*, punishment, penalty.

*adfiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.* [ad+faciō], treat, afflict, punish; with *acc. and abl.*, visit with, inflict upon.

12. *Scīpiō, -ōnis, m.*, a cognomen.

13. *Ti., abbr. for Tiberius, -ī, m.*, a praenomen.

*Semprōnius, -ī, m.*, a Roman name.

14. *frāter, -tris, m.*, brother.

*Hasdrubal, -alis, m.*, a Carthaginian name.

*Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj.*, Pyrenaean; as *subst., m.*, the Pyrenees. *Map I, B-C, 4.*

*Alpēs, -ium, f.*, the Alps. *Map I, D-E, 3-4.*

15. *inviūs, -a, -um, adj.* [in-+via], impassable.

*patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr.* [pateō+faciō], lay open, open, open up.

*trā, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.* [trāns+ac], give up, surrender; hand down, report.

LXXX mīlia peditum, x mīlia equitum, septem et xxx elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt. Semprōnius Gracchus cognitō ad Italiam Hannibalis adventū ex Siciliā exercitum Ariminum trāiēcīt.

**17. intereā:** during the crossing and before meeting the Romans.

**Hannibalī:** see on *sibi*, 16, 18.

**18. Semprōnius Gracchus:** a mistake. It was Tiberius Sempronius Longus.

**ad, on the borders of.**

**cognitō . . . adventū:** the Romans had no idea of Hannibal's plans. Upon the declaration of war the senate sent Sempronius Longus to Africa by way of Sicily, and Publius Scipio to Spain. When it was learned that Hannibal had crossed the Pyrenees and had reached the Rhone, Sempronius was recalled from Sicily. Scipio, on his way to his army, which had already reached Spain, landed at Massilia, and learning of Hannibal's movements, but not being able to check him, made haste to return to northern Italy.

**19. Ariminum:** from this place a great military road (*Via Aemilia*) extended up the Po through the heart of Cisalpine Gaul. For the omission of the preposition see App. 131; A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1, a; H. 418; H.-B. 450.

**16. pedes, -itis, m. [pēs],** foot-soldier; *collectively*, infantry.

**17. ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead to, bring to, induce.

**Ligurēs, -um, m.,** the Ligurians, a people on the northwest coast of Italy. Map II, A-B, 2.

**18. Gracchus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**19. adventus, -ūs, m. [ad+veniō],** coming, arrival.

**Ariminum, -ī, n.,** a town of Umbria, on the coast of the Adriatic. Map II, D, 3.

**trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. and intr. [trāns+iaciō],** transport, bring across; go over, cross.

## 22. HANNIBAL'S SUCCESSES IN ITALY

Hannibal invaded Italy by way of the Alps, and was met by Roman arms on the Italian side. Then followed the battles of the Ticinus (218 B.C.), the Trebia (218), Lake Trasimene (217), and Cannae (216), in which the Romans were constantly defeated.

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Hannibalī prīmus occurrit. Commissō proeliō, fugātis suis ipse vulnerātus in castra rediit. Sem-

**2. ipse vulnerātus:** he was saved from death by the bravery of his seventeen-year-old son Publius. This battle was fought on the banks of the Ticinus, a tributary of the Po (see Map II, B, 2).

**1. occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō],** meet, encounter, oppose.

prōnius Gracchus et ipse cōnfligit apud Trebiam <sup>nives</sup> amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Hannibali multī sē in Italiā dēdidērunt. Inde ad Tusciam veniēns Hannibal Flāminiō cōsuli occurrit. 5 Ipsum Flāminium interēmit; Rōmānōrum xxv milia caesa sunt, cēterī diffūgērunt. Missus adversus Hannibalem postea ā Rōmānīs Q. Fabius Maximus. Is eum differendō pugnam ab impetū frēgit, mox inventā occāsione vicit.

Quīngentēsīmō et quadrāgēsīmō annō ā conditā urbe L. 10

3. et ipse: lit., *himself also*, or *freely also*.

4. quoque: see on *quoque*, 6, 2.

5. Flāminiō . . . occurrit: this battle, known as the battle of Lake Trasumenus (see Map II, C, 3), was fought in the following spring.

7. diffūgērunt: note force of the prefix *dis-*, "in the different directions."

8. Q. Fabius Maximus: see Vocabulary, *Fabius* (3). He was chosen dictator after the battle of Trasumenus and inaugurated a plan of campaign, which is named after him the "Fabian policy," and which won for him the nickname *Cunctātor*, "the Delayer." His plan was to follow and annoy the Carthaginians, cutting off their supplies, but refusing all offers of battle. Although this policy was very unpopular at home he was vindicated in the outcome and earned the title "Savior of Rome."

differendō pugnam, *by putting off (or avoiding) battle*. The use of a gerund governing a direct object is not very common in the best Latin prose (except with a neut. pron. or adj.), the gerundive constr. being used instead.

eum . . . ab impetū frēgit, *prevented him from making a vigorous attack* (lit. *checked him from*, etc.).

10. quīngentēsīmō . . . annō: the date is wrong. It was 216, not 214.

3. cōnfligō, -ere, -fixī, -flictum, *intr.* [con+fligō, strike], contend, fight.

Trebia, -ae, *f.*, a small tributary of the Po. Map II, B, 2.

amnis, -is, *m.*, a river.

4. dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, surrender; devote.

5. inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; after that, next.

Tuscia, -ae, *f.*, Etruria. Map II, C, 3-4.

Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

6. interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [inter+emō], kill.

7. cēterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of, other; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the rest, the others.

diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.* [dis+fugiō], flee in various directions, scatter.

8. differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, *tr. and intr.* [dis+ferō], postpone, delay; differ.

10. quīngentēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīngentī], five-hundredth.

Aemilius Paulus P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mit-  
tuntur Fabiōque succēdunt, quī abiēns ambō cōsulēs monuit,  
ut Hannibalem, callidum et impatientem ducem, nōn aliter  
vincerent quam proelium differendō. Vērū, cum impatientiā  
15 Varrōnis cōsulis, contrādicente alterō cōsule, id est Aemiliō  
Paulō, apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpuliā pugnā-  
tum esset, ambō cōsulēs ab Hannibale vincuntur. In eā  
pugnā tria mīlia Āfrōrum pereunt; magna pars dē exercitū

12. **abiēns**, *retiring*; the term of his dictatorship had expired.

**ambō** is inflected like *duo*; see App. 49; A. 134; B. 80; H. 166; H.-B. 131, 2.

13. **ut . . . vincerent**, *that they should conquer*, etc., *i.e.*, that they must conquer by delay, if at all.

14. **proelium differendō**: see on *differendō pugnam*, l. 8.

**impatientiā**: ablative of cause.

15. **contrādicente . . . cōsule**: ablative absolute with adversative force. Varro, the plebian consul had no military experience; but, as the consuls held supreme command on alternate days, Paulus could only protest against the folly of his colleague in offering battle on unfavorable ground.

16. **pugnātum esset**: the Roman army numbered about 85,000 men including 6,000 cavalry; the Carthaginian about 50,000 men including 10,000 cavalry. Though largely outnumbered, Hannibal easily outmaneuvered the largest army that the Romans had ever gathered on a field of battle, and inflicted the most overwhelming defeat a Roman army ever suffered. "Never perhaps was an army of such size annihilated on the field of battle so completely and with so little loss to its antagonist as was the Roman army at Cannae" (Mommsen). The number of slain is variously estimated, by some as high as 70,000. 10,000 prisoners were taken. Hannibal's entire loss was less than 6,000. The splendid cavalry to which the victory was largely due lost only about 200 men.

11. **Aemilius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**Paulus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**Terentius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**Varrō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen.

12. **ab-eō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go away, retire.

**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, advise, warn, instruct, urge.

13. **callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**calleō**, be skillful], shrewd, skillful.

**impatiēns**, -entis, *adj.* [**in-** + **patiēns**], impatient, impetuous.

**aliter**, *adv.* [**alius**], otherwise, in any other way.

14. **vērū**, *adv.* [**vērū**], truly, certainly; but.

**impatientia**, -ae, *f.* [**impatiēns**], impatience, impetuosity.

15. **contrā-dicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dic-tum, *intr.*, contradict, oppose, speak against.

16. **vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village.

**Cannae**, -ārum, *f.*, a small town in Apulia. Map II, E, 4.

Hannibalis sauciātur. Nūllō tamen proeliō Pūnicō bellō Rōmānī gravius acceptī sunt. Periit enim in eō cōsul Aemi-  
lius Paulus, cōsulārēs aut praetōriī xx, senātōrēs captī aut  
occīsī xxx, nōbilēs virī ccc, militum xl milia, equitum iii  
milia et quīngentī. In quibus malis nēmō tamen Rōmānōrum  
pācis mentiōnem habēre dignāsus est. Servī, quod numquam  
ante, manūmissī et militēs factī sunt.

25

Post eam pugnam multae Italiae cīvitātēs, quae Rōmānīs  
pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hannibal Rōmānīs  
obtulit, ut captīvōs redimerent, respōnsumque est ā senātū eōs  
cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī, cum armātī essent, capī potuis-

20. *gravius acceptī sunt*, suffered more severely.

22. *nōbilēs virī*: men whose ancestors had held high office, as distinguished from the *cōsulārēs*, *praetōriī*, etc., who had themselves held office.

24. *quod* (supply *factum est*), a thing which; the antecedent is *servī* . . . *sunt*, hence the neuter singular.

26. *multae . . . cīvitātēs*: it was a part of Hannibal's plan to weaken the Romans by inducing their Italian allies to revolt, as he had their Gallic allies in his march through southern Gaul. He succeeded in winning over the Samnites, Apulians, Lucanians, Bruttians, and Capua, the second city in Italy; but the Latin tribes remained faithful to Rome.

27. *sē trānstulērunt*, went over.

28. *ut . . . redimerent*, permission to redeem, object of *obtulit*; see App. 228; A. 563; B. 295, 2; H. 565; H.-B. 531, 2.

29. *armātī*: adjective use of the participle.

19. *sauciō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [saucius], wound, hurt.

21. *cōsulāris*, -e, *adj.* [cōsul], of a consul, consular; *as subst.*, *m.*, a man of consular rank, ex-consul.

*aut*, *conj.*, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.

*praetōrius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor], of a praetor; *as subst.*, *m.*, a man of praetorian rank, ex-praetor.

23. *malum*, -ī, *n.* [malus], evil, misfortune, harm.

*nēmō*, *dat.*, *nēmīnī*, *acc.*, *nēmīnem*, *m. and f.* [ne+homō], nobody, no one:

24. *mentiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, mention; *mentiōnem habēre*, make mention.

*dignor*, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [dignus]; deem worthy, accept, deign, condescend.

*servus*, -ī, *m.*, slave.

25. *manūmittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -misum, *tr.* [manus+mittō], release, emancipate.

27. *pāreō*, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, obey, be subject to.

28. *re-spondeō*, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *intr.*, answer, reply.

29. *necessārius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse], necessary, urgent.

30 sent. Ille omnēs posteā variis suppliciis interfēcit et trēs modiōs ānulōrum aureōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs ex manibus equitum Rōmānōrum, senātōrum et militum dētrāxerat.

**31. ānulōrum aureōrum:** signet rings were commonly used among all classes of the Romans, but those of the common people were of iron.

**30. varius, -a, -um, adj.,** various, different.

ring, signet ring.

**31. modius, -ī, m. [modus],** a measure; peck.

**aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum],** of gold, golden.

**ānulus, -ī, m. [dim. of ānus, ring],**

**32. dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr.,** pull off, take away.

### 23. THE ROMAN RESPECT FOR AN OATH

The following incident of the days following the battle of Cannae is related by Aulus Gellius, and illustrates the Roman respect for an oath, recalling the story of Regulus as told in 19:

Post proelium Cannēse Hannibal ex captivīs nostrīs ēlēctōs decem Rōmam mīsit, mandāvitque eīs pactusque est, ut, sī populō Rōmānō vidērētur, permūtatiō fieret captivōrum et prō his, quōs alterī plūrēs acciperent, darent argentī pondō libram 5 et sēlibram. Hoc, priusquam proficiscerentur, iūs iūrandum

**1. Cannēse:** see on *rēs* . . . *Clūsīna*, 8, 4 and on *bellum contrā Afrōs*, 20, 2.

**3. vidērētur, seemed good;** see on *vocārētur*, 9, 11.

**4. his . . . acciperent, whatever number the one side should take in excess of the other;** for the subjunctive, see *vidērētur* above.

**5. proficiscerentur:** for the subjunctive see App. 236 b; A. 551 b; B. 292; H. 605; H.-B. 507.

**iūs iūrandum eōs adēgit:** the first accusative is governed by the preposition in *adēgit* and the second one by the verb.

**1. Cannēnsis, -e, adj.,** of Cannae.  
**ēlēgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [ex+legō],** pick out, choose; *pf. part. ēlēctī*, picked (men, etc.).

**libra, -ae, f.,** a balance; of weight, a pound.

**2. pacīscor, -ī, pactus, tr. and intr.,** agree, stipulate.

**5. sēlibra, -ae, f. [sē(=sēmi)+libra],** a half-pound.

**4. pondō, adv. [cf. pondus],** by weight, in weight.

**prius-quam, conj.,** sooner than, before.

**iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.,** an oath.



eōs adēgit, reditūrōs esse in castra Pūnica, sī Rōmānī captivōs nōn permūtārent.

Veniunt Rōmam decem captivī. Mandātum Poenī imperā-tōris in senātū expōnunt. Permūtatiō senātui nōn placet. Parentēs, cognātī adfinēsque captivōrum amplexī eōs postli-  
miniō in patriam redisse dicēbant, statumque eōrum integrum incolumemque esse, ac, nē ad hostēs redire vellent, ōrābant. Tum octō ex hīs postliminium iūstum nōn esse sibi respondē-  
runt, quoniam iūre iūrاندō vinctī forent, statimque, utī iūrātī erant, ad Hannibalem profectī sunt. Duo reliquī Rōmae  
mānsērunt solūtōsque sē esse ac liberātōs religiōne dicēbant,  
quoniam, cum ēgressī castra hostium fuissent, commentīciō

6. (*sēsē*) reditūrōs esse: the verb of saying is implied in *iūs iūrandum*.

10. cognātī, adfinēs: distinguish the meanings of these words.

postliminiō: the *iūs postlimini* was a legal fiction based on the assumption that during the period of enforced inactivity the captive had never been absent at all. See note on *ēgit*, 19, 24.

14. forent = *essent*; the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse.

16. religiōne, from their obligation.

17. ēgressī castra . . . fuissent, *had left the camp*. The use of the accusative with *ēgredior* is not very common in classical Latin.

6. adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ad + agō], urge, compel; iūs iūrاندum adigere, bind by oath.

7. per-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, interchange, exchange.

10. parēs, -entis, *m. and f.* [pariō], father or mother, parent.

cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com + (g)nāscor], related; *as subst., m.*, kinsman, blood-relation.

ad-finis, -e, *adj.*, adjacent to; *as subst., m. and f.*, a connection by marriage, connection.

amplector, -ī, -exus, *tr.* [ambi + plectō, weave], cling to, embrace.

postliminium, -ī, *n.* [post + limen, threshold], a return to one's old condition and privileges, right of return.

11. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched; whole, uninjured.

12. ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, entreat, beseech.

13. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs], just, righteous; right, proper.

14. quoniam, *conj.* [quom + iam], since, as.

iūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūrō, swear], sworn, bound by oath.

16. religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, piety; moral obligation, oath.

17. ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [ex + gradior], go out, leave; land, disembark.

commentīcius, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-minīscor, invent], pretended, false.

cōnsiliō regressi eōdem, tamquam ob aliquam fortuitam causam  
issent, atque ita rūrsum iniūrātī abissent. Haec eōrum fraudu-  
lenta calliditās tam esse turpis exisimāta est, ut contempti  
vulgō sint cēnsōresque eōs postea omnibus ignōminiae notis  
adfecerint.

Multis autem in senātū placuit, ut datis custōdibus ad Han-  
nibalem dēdūcerentur, sed ea sententia numerō plūrium, quibus  
id nōn vidērētur, superāta. Usque adeō tamen invisi erant, ut  
taediō vitae necem sibi cōnscivissent.

Instead of marching straight upon Rome from Cannae as his generals  
advised him to do, Hannibal remained in southern Italy, many nations  
of which joined his standard, and spent the winter at Capua.

18. eōdem = *in castra*.

19. issent . . . abissent: for form see App. 84; A. 203; H. 297; H.-B.  
194; for mood see on 11, 2.

21. notis, marks of disgrace. In addition to degradation in rank (see on  
cēnsor, 15, 6) the offenders were liable to deprivation of the right of voting  
and to increased taxation.

24. numerō plūrium: an expression of means, *by the majority*.

25. vidērētur: meaning as in l. 3; subj. in a descriptive clause.

ut . . . necem sibi cōnscivissent, *that they committed suicide* (lit.  
*that they decreed death to themselves*).

18. eōdem, *adv.* [idem], to the same  
place, thither.

fortuitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fors], ac-  
cidental.

19. rūrsum or rūrsum, *adv.* [reversus  
*pf. part. of revertō*], again.

in-iūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsworn,  
not bound by oath.

fraudulentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fraus],  
deceitful, fraudulent.

20. calliditās, -ātis, *f.* [callidus],  
cunning, shrewdness.

tam, *adv.*, so, so far; *correl. w. quam*,  
as much, so.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, disgraceful, shame-  
ful, dishonorable.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+  
aestimō], consider; suppose, be-  
lieve.

21. vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus], commonly,  
publicly, universally.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dis-  
honor.

nota, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], a mark.

23. custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard,  
guardian.

24. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentiō], opin-  
ion, decision; proposal.

25. invisus, -a, -um, *adj.* [invidēō],  
hated, hateful.

26. taedium, -ī, *n.* [taedet, it wea-  
ries], weariness, disgust.

vita, -ae, *f.*, life; manner of living.

nex, necis, *f.*, death, execution.

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.*  
[com-+sciscō, approve], decree;  
necem sibi cōnsciscere, commit  
suicide.

## 24. THE BATTLE OF THE METAURUS RIVER: THE BEGINNING OF THE END

Meanwhile, in Spain and Sicily affairs had been more favorable to the Romans, while in Italy Hannibal seemed to have reached the acme of his success at Cannae, and to be now on the decline. In 211 B.C. the Romans besieged Capua, captured it, and took a bloody revenge upon the inhabitants. Hannibal then summoned from Spain his brother Hasdrubal, who, meeting the Romans at the Metaurus river (B.C. 207), was defeated and slain and his army cut to pieces.

Dēspērāns Hannibal Hispāniās contrā Scīpiōnem diūtius posse retinērī, frātrem suum Hasdrubalem ad Italiā cum omnibus cōpiis ēvocāvit. Is veniēns eōdem itinere, quō etiam Hannibal vēnerat, ā cōsulibus Ap. Claudiō Nerōne et M. Liviō Salinātōre apud Sēnam, Picēnī cīvitātem, in insidiās composītās 5

1. **dēspērāns**: as a verb of emotion this governs indirect discourse.

**Scīpiōnem**: see Vocabulary, *Scīpiō* (4). This was *Āfricānus Maior*, the most brilliant of all the Scipios, and one of Rome's greatest heroes. He had been in the battle of the Ticinus with his father (see on *ipse vulnerātus*, 22, 2), had escaped from the slaughter of Cannae, and at the age of twenty-four had undertaken the command of the Roman army in Spain. Within four years he had expelled the Carthaginians and had made the Romans undisputed masters of the country.

3. **itinere, quō**: for the ablative see App. 144; A. 429, a; B. 218, 9; H. 476; H.-B. 426.

4. **ā cōsulibus**: construe with *composītās*.

**Salinātōre**: Livius was made censor a few years later and imposed a tax on salt. From this circumstance he was called in derision *Salinātor*, "the Salter," and the name remained in his family.

5. **insidiās**: the messenger sent to inform Hannibal of Hasdrubal's coming fell into the hands of the Romans. Claudius Nero, with a part of his forces, departed secretly from the neighborhood of Hannibal, joined Livius Salinator, and with his colleague fell upon the Carthaginians on the banks of the Metaurus (see Map II, D, 3), overwhelming them completely.

1. **dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** and *intr.*, give up hope, despair of.

2. **retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr.** [*re-+teneō*], keep back, retain, detain, hold.

3. **ē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, call forth, summon.

4. **Nerō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen.**

**Līvius, -ī, m., a Roman name.**

**Salinātor, -ōris, m., a cognomen.**

5. **Sēna, -ae, f., a town on the Umbrian coast.** Map II, D, 3.

**insīdiae, -ārum, f., ambush, stratagem.**

**com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr.,** unite; devise, contrive; place; lay away.

incidit. Strēnuē tamen pugnāns occīsus est; ingentēs eius cōpiaē captae aut interfectae sunt, magnum pondus aurī atque argentī Rōmam relātum est. Post haec Hannibal diffidere iam dē bellī coepit ēventū. Rōmānīs ingēns animus accessit; itaque et ipsī ēvocāvērunt ex Hispāniā P. Cornēlium Scipionem. Is Rōmam cum ingentī glōriā vēnit.

Q. Caeciliō L. Valeriō cōsulibus omnēs cīvitatēs, quae in Brutiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

6. occīsus est: the first intelligence of the disaster that reached Hannibal was the head of his brother, flung by the Romans into his outposts — an act in barbarous contrast with the magnanimity of the great Carthaginian, who had scrupulously given honorable burial to the Roman commanders Paulus, Gracchus, and Marcellus. When he recognized his brother's features he is said to have exclaimed sadly: "I see thy doom, O Carthage!"

10. et ipsī: like Hannibal the Romans called for help from Spain.

12. L. Valeriō: see Vocabulary, *Valerius* (3).

6. incidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [in+cādō], fall in, fall upon, fall; happen.

strēnuē, *adv.* [strēnuus, prompt], strenuously, promptly.

7. pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight, burden.

8. diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [dis-+fidō], distrust; lose confidence.

9. ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ex+veniō], outcome, result.

animus, -i, *m.*, soul, mind; feelings, heart, spirit; disposition, courage.

accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, [ad+cēdō], draw near, approach; be added, be inspired in.

11. glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, praise, renown.

12. Caecilius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

## 25. HANNIBAL RECALLED TO DEFEND AFRICA

This was the last of the war in Italy. In 204 B.C. the Romans under Scipio invaded Africa, and Hannibal was recalled from Italy to protect his own country.

Annō quārtō decimō posteāquam in Italiā Hannibal vēnerat, Scipiō, quī multa bene in Hispāniā ēgerat, cōsul est factus et

1. vēnerat: the past perfect is regularly used with *postquam* (*posteāquam*) in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (here *annō . . . decimō*).

2. cōsul est factus: at the age of thirty. The legal age was forty-three.

1. posteā-quam, *conj.*, after.

2. bene, *adv.* [bonus], well, suc-

cessfully, highly; *comp.*, *melius*; *sup.*, *optimē*.

in *Āfricam* missus. Cui virō divīnum quiddam inesse existimābatur, adeō ut putārētur etiam cum nūminibus habere sermōnem. Is in *Āfricā* contrā Hannōnem, ducem *Āfrōrum*, 5 pugnat; exercitum eius interficit. Secundō proeliō castra capit cum quattuor milibus et quīgentis militibus, XI milibus occisis. Syphācem, Numidiaē rēgem, quī sē *Āfris* coniūnixerat, capit et castra eius invādit. Syphāx cum nōbilissimis Numidīs et infinitis spoliis Rōmam ā Scipiōne mittitur. Quā rē audītā 10 omnis ferē Italia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēsisibus redire in *Āfricam* iubētur, quam Scipiō vāstābat.

**3. in *Āfricam* missus:** although opposed by the senate he succeeded in securing a sufficient equipment for his difficult task.

**divīnum quiddam:** Scipio never undertook any important business without going to the Capitol and sitting for some time alone in communion (as he professed) with the gods. He declared that he had the divine approval in all his acts, and his uniform success naturally deepened the popular belief in his assertion. A man of his ardent and hopeful temperament may well have believed it himself.

**4. putārētur:** for mood see App. 226; A. 537; B. 284; H. 570; H.-B. 521, 2.

**5. Hannōnem:** an error on the part of Eutropius. Hanno was the leader of the peace party at Carthage, and the political enemy of the Barca family, to which Hannibal belonged. The two forces which opposed Scipio in Africa were led respectively by Hasdrubal, the son of Gisco, and Syphax, king of Numidia.

**11. ipse . . . iubētur:** the story is told that Hannibal received the command with grief and rage. According to Livy he exclaimed, "Hannibal has been conquered, but not by the Roman people which he has defeated and routed a hundred times. It will not be Scipio that will exult in the disgrace of my return so much as Hanno, who, having no other means of overthrowing the power of my family, has done it by the ruin of his own country."

**3. divīnus, -a, -um, adj.** [divus, divine], divine, sacred.

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam, or quiddam, indef. pron.; as adj.,** certain, some; *as subst.,* a certain one, somebody, something.

**in-sum, inesse, infui, —, intr.,** be in; belong to.

**4. nūmen, -inis, n.,** will, divine will; divinity, god.

**5. sermō, -ōnis, m. [serō],** conversation, discourse.

**Hannō, -ōnis, m.,** a Carthaginian leader.

**7. XI = undecim, indecl. num. adj.,** [ūnus+decem], eleven.

**8. Syphāx, -ācis, m.,** a king of Numidia.

**Numidia, -ae, f.,** a country of northern Africa. Map I, D, 6.

**9. Numidae, -arum, m.,** the Numidians.

**11. dē-serō, -ere, -serui, -sertum, tr. [serō, join],** abandon, desert.

## 26. THE BATTLE OF ZAMA: THE END OF THE WAR

Efforts for peace made by the Carthaginians proved unsuccessful, and in 202 B.C. the opposing forces under Scipio and Hannibal met in the final and decisive battle of Zama, in which the army of Carthage was annihilated, and the long struggle ended.

- Ita annō septimō decimō ab Hannibale Italia liberāta est. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsium pācem ā Scīpiōne petivērunt; ab eō ad senātum Rōmam missī sunt. Quadrāgintā et quīque diēbus hīs indūtiae datae sunt, quousque ire Rōmam et regredi pos-  
 5 sent; et trīgintā milia pondō argenti ab hīs accepta sunt. Senātus ex arbitriō Scīpiōnis pācem iussit cum Carthāginiēnsibus fieri. Scīpiō hīs condiōnibus dedit: nē amplius quam trīgintā nāvēs habērent, ut quīngenta milia pondō argenti darent, captivōs et perfugās redderent.
- 10 Interim Hannibale veniente ad Āfricam pāx turbāta est, multa hostilia ab Āfris facta sunt. Lēgātī tamen eōrum ex urbe venientēs ā Rōmānīs captī sunt, sed iubente Scīpiōne

**3. ad senātum Rōmam**, *to the senate in (at) Rome*. In such expressions the Latin idiom requires the accusative of end of motion with both nouns where the English idiom would lead us to expect an accusative and a locative construction.

**4. possent**: anticipatory subjunctive.

**5. milia**: supply *librārū*.

**6. ex arbitriō**, *at the discretion*; to be taken with *fieri*.

**7. hīs condiōnibus**: he also demanded the surrender of the Spanish territory and the islands in the Mediterranean, and the transference of the kingdom of Syphax to his own ally Masinissa. The terms were not severe.

**nē . . . habērent**: for mood see App. 228; A. 563; B. 295; H.-B. 502, 3.

**11. ex urbe**: Rome was to the Romans *the* city.

**4. indūtiae, -ārū, f., truce, armistice.**

**quousque, adv.**, till when, until.

**6. arbitrium, -ī, n.** [arbitr], judgment, opinion.

**7. amplius, n. comp. adj. as adv.** [amplus], more; *as subst.*, more, a greater amount.

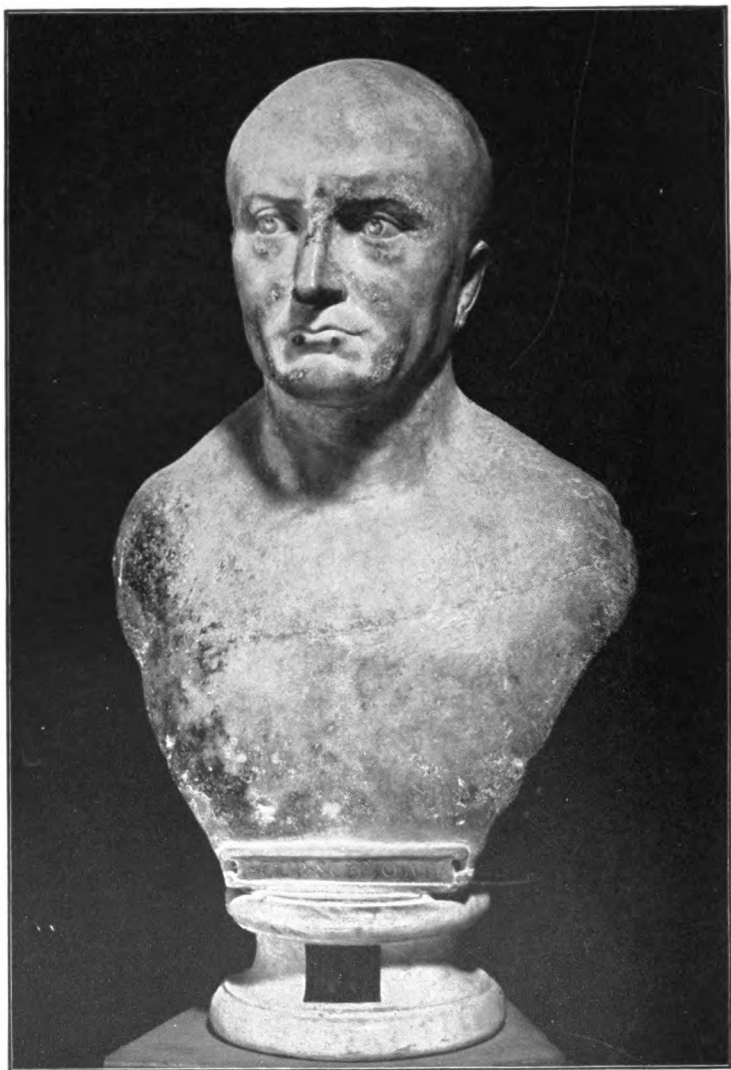
**9. perfuga, -ae, m.** [perfugiō, desert], deserter.

**10. interim, adv.**, in the meantime, meanwhile.

**turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** disturb, break.

**11. hostilis, -e, adj.** [hostis], of an enemy, hostile.





**PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS**



dīmissī. Hannibal quoque frequentibus proeliis victus ā Scīpiōne petit etiam ipse pācem. Cum ventum esset ad conloquium, isdem condiōnibus data est, quibus prius, additis quīngentis 15 milibus pondō argentī centum milibus librārum propter novam perfidiam. Carthāginiēnsibus condiōnēs displicuērunt iussēruntque Hannibalem pugnāre. Infertur ā Scīpiōne et Masinissā, aliō rēge Numidārum, quī amicitiam cum Scīpiōne fēcerat, Carthāginī bellum. Hannibal trēs explorātōrēs ad Scīpiōnis 20 castra mīsīt, quōs captōs Scīpiō circumdūcī per castra iussit ostendique hīs tōtum exercitum, mox etiam prandium darī dīmittique, ut renūtiārent Hannibālī quae apud Rōmānōs vīdissent.

Intereā proelium ab utrōque duce instrūctum est, quāle vix 25

**13. Hannibal . . . victus:** Hannibal himself did not engage with Scipio until shortly before the battle of Zama.

**15. quīngentis milibus:** the five hundred thousand pounds already demanded. The dative depends on *additis*.

**17. perfidiam:** "Punic faith" was a byword among the Romans, but it is safe to say that they themselves were no more scrupulous than their enemies. Scipio himself had broken a truce with Syphax in a manner that was much more shrewd than honorable.

**18. Masinissā:** he had fought on the side of the Carthaginians in Spain, but later joined the Romans. At the close of the war his services were rewarded with a large share of the territory that had belonged to Syphax.

**21. quōs captōs, and these men when they were captured.**

**25. proelium . . . quāle vix ūllā memoriā fuit, such a battle as had scarcely ever (ūllā memoriā, lit. at any time) been (fought);** for this meaning of *memoriā* see on *memoriam*, 5, 3. *Ūllā* is used on account of the negative implied in *vix*. Hannibal's force was uneven, for the Carthaginian militia was weak and untrustworthy; but his veterans of the Italian campaigns stood their ground till the Romans closed in and cut them to pieces.

**13. frequēns, -entis, adj.,** repeated, frequent; crowded.

**14. conloquium, -ī, n. [conloquor],** conversation, conference.

**15. ad-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** add.

**17. perfidia, -ae, f. [perfidus, faithless],** faithlessness, treachery, perfidy.

**18. Masinissa, -ae, m.,** a king of Numidia.

**19. amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus],** friendship, alliance.

**21. circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr.,** lead around.

**22. prandium, -ī, n.,** luncheon.

**25. uter-que, utraque, utrumque, adj.,** each of two, both.

ullā memoriā fuit, cum peritissimī virī cōpiās suās ad bellum ēdūcerent. Scīpiō victor recēdit paene ipsō Hannibale captō, quī primum cum multīs equitibus, deinde cum vīgintī, postrēmō cum quattuor ēvāsīt. Inventa in castrīs Hannibalis argenti 30 pondō vīgintī mīlia, aurī octōgintā, cētera supellectilis cōpiōsa. Post id certāmen pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit atque Āfricānus ex eō appellārī coeptus est. Finem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum post annum nōnum dēcimum, quam coeperat.

27. victor recēdit, *came off victorious.*

30. cētera, *other.*

32. ingentī glōriā triumphāvit: the people wished to place his statue in the senate house, the Rostra, and the Capitol and to make him dictator for life. He refused to accept these honors, however, and being conscious of the dislike and jealousy felt for him by a large number of the senators, he declined to take any active part at all in political affairs for several years.

The results of the second Punic war were that Carthage, the old rival of Rome, became a dependent state and bound herself to pay an annual war tax of two hundred talents for fifty years; that she also pledged herself to wage no war at home or abroad without the consent of Rome; that Rome became undisputed mistress of the sea; that Spain became a Roman province and the Roman power was extended over the native tribes of Africa; and that the Roman sway over Italy was still more firmly established.

33. coeptus est: for the passive form see App. 86, *a*; A. 205, *a*; B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; H.-B. 199, 2.

34. post annum . . . quam coeperat = *annō postquam coeperat*; for the past perfect see on *vēnerat*, 25, 1.

26. perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skillful, familiar with.

27. ē-ducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead out.

28. postrēmō, *adv.* [postrēmus], at last, finally.

29. ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *intr.*, go away, escape.

30. supellectilis (*more commonly supellex*), -is, *f.*, furniture, goods, furnishings.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia], rich, abundant.

32. Āfricānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or in Africa, African; *as subst., m., a cognomen.*

## 27. THE THIRD PUNIC WAR: DESTRUCTION OF CARTHAGE

Having got Carthage so far within her power, Rome was not content that her rival should ever again enjoy prosperity; and during the next fifty years she was by every means working toward that end which in 157 B.C. Cato began to voice with constant iteration, "Carthage must be destroyed." Upon the flimsy pretext that Carthage had banished some partisans of Masinissa, an ally of Rome, war was again declared, and after a three-years' siege (149-146 B.C.) Carthage was taken and completely destroyed, and Africa became a Roman province.

Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem suscipitur, sexcentēsīmō et alterō ab urbe conditā annō, L. Mānliō Cēnsōrīnō et M. Māniliō cōsulibus, annō quīnquāgēsīmō primō postquam secundum Pūnicum trānsāctum erat. Hī profecti Carthāginem oppugnāvērunt. Contrā eōs Hasdrubal, dux Carthāginiēnsium dīmīcābat. Famea, dux alius, equitātūi Carthāginiēnsium praeerat. Scīpiō tunc, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōs, tribūnus ibi militābat. Huius apud omnēs ingēns metus et

1. *tertium . . . bellum*: the rich Phoenicians, absorbed in commerce, had no desire for war. They tried every method of averting hostilities. But even Carthaginian patience gave way when Roman arrogance demanded that the city of Carthage should be razed to the ground and that the people, leaving the coast, should settle at least ten miles from the sea.

5. *Hasdrubal*: see Vocab., *Hasdrubal* (2).

7. *Scīpiō*: see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (5). This is Scipio Africanus Minor, the younger son of Lucius Aemilius Paulus the conqueror of Macedonia, and grandson of the Aemilius Paulus who fell at Cannae. He had been adopted into the family of the Scipios by the son of the great Africanus. He was a young man of varied ability, being no less remarkable for his literary tastes and love for Greek culture than for his skill in war.

8. *tribūnus (militum)*: there were six tribunes to each legion, two holding command for two months on alternate days. As a rule, young men were chosen who were of senatorial or equestrian rank.

1. *sexcentēsīmus*, -a, -um, *num.*  
*adj.* [sexcentī], six-hundredth.

2. *Cēnsōrīnus*, -ī, *m.*, a *cognomen*.

3. *Mānilius* -ī, *m.*, a *Roman name*.  
*quīnquāgēsīmus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.*  
[quīnquāgīntā], fiftieth.

4. *trānsigō*, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.*  
[trāns+agō], finish, bring to an end.

6. *Famea* -ae, *m.*, *surname* of Himilco, a *Carthaginian general*.

*equitātus*, -ūs, *m.* [equitō], *cavalry*.

7. *prae-sum*, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*,  
be in command of, be in charge of.

8. *ibi*, *adv.*, there, in that place.  
*militō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*  
[mīles], wage war.

*metus*, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.

reverentia erat, nam et parātissimus ad dīmicandum et cōn-  
 10 sultissimus habēbātur. Itaque per eum multa ā cōsulibus  
 prōsperē gesta sunt, neque quicquam magis vel Hasdrubal vel  
 Famea vitābant, quam contrā eam Rōmānōrum partem com-  
 mittere, ubi Scīpiō dīmicāret.

Per idem tempus Masinissa, rēx Numidārum, per annōs sexā-  
 15 gintā ferē amīcus populī Rōmānī, annō vitāe nōnāgēsīmō  
 septīmō mortuus quadrāgintā quattuor filiis relictis Scīpiōnem  
 dīvisōrem rēgnī inter filiōs suōs esse iussit.

Cum igitur clārum Scīpiōnis nōmen esset, iuvenis adhūc cōn-

9. **cōsultissimus**: the tribunes had usually served in at least one cam-  
 paign before they were raised to this rank. In Caesar's time owing to  
 their military incapacity they were made inferior to the *légātus*, and given  
 administrative and judicial functions.

10. **per eum . . . ā cōsulibus**: a good illustration of the difference  
 between the accusative with *per* and the ablative of agency. Scipio was  
 the only man who showed any real capacity for command. Even the  
 crabbed Cato was wont to quote in regard to him the Homeric verse,  
 "He only is a living man, the rest are gliding shades."

12. **vitābant**: irregular plural; see App. 180, a; A. 317, b; B. 255, 2, b;  
 H. 392, 5; H.-B. 329, 3. **committere**: supply *proelium*.

13. **dīmicāret**: for the mood see on 9, 11.

15. **annō . . . mortuus**, *dying at the age of ninety-seven*.

16. **filiis relictis**: ablative absolute, equivalent to a coördinate clause.

17. **dīvisōrem . . . esse**, *to divide*. A noun denoting agency with *esse*  
 is often best translated by the corresponding verb in English.

18. **iuvenis adhūc**: the term is loosely used with reference to one  
 between the ages of twenty and forty. Scipio was thirty-seven, six years  
 below the legal age for the consulship, but in spite of this and opposition  
 on the part of the presiding consul he was elected and intrusted with the  
 African war.

9. **reverentia**, -ae, *f.* [revereor, re-  
 vere], awe, reverence.

**parātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of*  
*parō*], prepared, ready.

**cōsultus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of*  
*cōsulō*], skillful, experienced.

11. **prōsperē**, *adv.* [prōsperus, as de-  
 sired], favorably, prosperously.

**vel**, *conj.* [volō], or; **vel . . . vel**,  
 either . . . or.

12. **vitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, shun.

15. **amīcus**, -ī, *m.*, friend.

16. **moriōr**, -ī, **mortuus**, *intr.*, die.

17. **dīvisor**, -ōris, *m.* [dīvidō], one  
 who divides, a distributor.

18. **iuvenis**, -is, *adj.*, young; as  
*subst.*, *m. and f.*, a young person,  
 youth, *esp. one between the ages*  
*of twenty and forty years; comp.*,  
*iūnior*, younger.

sul est factus et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is eam cēpit ac diruit. Spolia ibi inventa, quae variārum civitātum excidiis 20 Carthāgō conlēgerat, et ōrnāmenta urbium civitātibus Siciliae, Italiae, Āfricae reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsīmō annō, quam condita erat, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen, quod avus eius accēperat, meruit, scilicet ut propter virtutem etiam ipse Āfricānus iūnior vocārētur. 25

20. spolia . . . ōrnāmenta: objects of *reddidit*.

22. quae . . . recognōscēbant, which they recognized (i.e., could identify) as their own.

Carthāgō . . . dēlēta est: the noble-minded Scipio, it is said, recoiled from the task of destruction, but the senate was inexorable. The work was thoroughly done, and "where the industrious Phoenicians had bustled and trafficked for five hundred years, Roman slaves henceforth pastured the herds of their distant masters" (Mommsen).

23. quam = *postquam*.

24. scilicet ut, namely that, or so that.

25. etiam . . . vocārētur, he, too, was called Africanus, (that is) the younger.

20. dī-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, demolish, destroy.

21. ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō], adornment, decoration.

22. re-cognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum, *tr.*, recognize, recall.

23. septingentēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [septingenti], seven-hundredth.

24. avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *or* mereor, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, deserve, earn, acquire.

## 28. THE CONQUEST OF GREECE: DESTRUCTION OF CORINTH

But not Carthage alone during all these years was suffering under Roman aggression. One by one pretexts for war had been sought with the different states of Greece, and one by one they had been reduced to Roman dependencies; until at last the destruction of Corinth in the very year in which Carthage was destroyed (146 B.C.) completed the work of the conquest of Greece. In that year Macedonia became a Roman province, whose governor also had general supervision of all the communities of Greece.

Corinthiis quoque bellum indictum est, nōbilissimae Graeciae

1. Corinthiī, -ōrum, *m.*, Corinthians, people of Corinth.

civitātī, propter iniūriam lēgātōrum Rōmānōrum. Hanc Mummius cōsul cēpit et dīruit. Trēs igitur Rōmae simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt: Āfricānī ex Āfricā, ante cuius  
 5 currum ductus est Hasdrubal, Metelli ex Macedoniā, cuius currum praecessit Andiscus, idem quī et Pseudophilippus, Mummi ex Corinthō, ante quem signa aēnea et pictae tabulae et alia urbis clārissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

2. civitātī: in apposition with *Corinthūs*; see on *Gabiōs civitātem*, 7, 3.

iniūriam: despite the unusual leniency which the Romans had shown in their dealings with the Greeks, the latter displayed a foolish and ungovernable hostility toward their generous foes. In Corinth the Roman envoys were refused a hearing and even the mob in the street was allowed to insult them with impunity.

3. dīruit: the city was leveled to the ground. The glory of Greece had departed, but not her influence. Since the fall of Tarentum in 272 B.C., the Romans had felt the stimulus of her arts and letters, a power which was to grow greater as the Greeks and Romans came into closer relations.

6. idem . . . Pseudophilippus, the same who (was) also the pretended Philip. Andiscus, a fuller, had given out that he was a son of Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, and had succeeded in arousing a revolt among the Macedonian people. For more than a year he defied the Romans, but he was at last defeated and captured by Metellus.

7. signa aēnea: Corinthian bronzes were celebrated as the most beautiful in the world.

3. Mummius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

simul, adv., at the same time, together; as soon as.

4. celeberrimī, -bris, -bre, adj., frequented, thronged; celebrated. triumphus, -ī, m., triumph.

5. Metellus, -ī, m., a Roman name. Macedonia, -ae, f., a country lying north of Thessaly. Map I, G-H, 5.

6. prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr., go before, precede.

Andiscus, -ī, m., a Persian pre-

tender to the throne of Macedonia.

Pseudophilippus, -ī, m., the pretended Philip.

7. Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, a city of Greece. Map I, H, 5.

aēneūs, -a, -um, adj. [aes], of bronze or copper.

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum, tr., paint; pf. part. as adj., painted, ornamented.

tabula, -ae, f., plank; tablet; tabula picta, a painted tablet, painting, picture.

## 29. A CENTURY OF CIVIL STRIFE

Rome has now reached the summit of conquest. Other foreign wars there will be, but unimportant in comparison with those which have made Rome mistress not only of Italy, but also of Sicily, Spain, Africa, and Greece. And now the inevitable reaction is to be expected. The people of Rome have not prospered with her prosperity. Vast tracts of newly acquired land have not added to their estate, but have fallen under the control of the ruling nobles; vast numbers of captives have been brought to Rome as slaves only to displace the Roman peasants in all kinds of profitable employment. Now that Roman aggressive wars no longer occupy the interest and activity of the nation, the masses find themselves more and more unable to make an honest living. Hence the immemorial struggle between the masses and the classes breaks out anew, and civil dissensions ensue destined to last a full century. At first it is a struggle of the real champions of the people against the oligarchical senate, and later it is the clashing of rival leaders, each claiming to represent the interests of one or the other side, but in reality seeking to advance his own private ambitions.

Tiberius Gracchus, representing the people as one of their tribunes, attempted to gain relief for them by the passage of agrarian laws which should give the masses their share in the benefits of the public lands. The result of his agitations was that he was mobbed and killed in 133 B.C. by the senatorial party. Twelve years later, the same fate overtook his brother Gaius, who also championed the people against the senate.

---

## 30. GAIUS MARIUS

The popular party found its next leader in Gaius Marius. He, by bringing to a successful issue the war with the African prince Jugurtha (111-104 B.C.), a war which had been shamefully mismanaged by the oligarchy, and by annihilating the hordes of Cimbri and Teutons who threatened to overwhelm Italy from the north (102, 101 B.C.), became the first man of the state in popularity, and was repeatedly elected consul. But as a statesman he did not show the same strength and judgment which had made him great as a general. Gross errors of judgment lost him popularity with the people. The senate already hated him. In the civil struggle which followed between the popular party under Marius (88 B.C.) and the senatorial party headed by Sulla, the latter triumphed and Marius was outlawed. The following striking incident is told of his life in exile:

Marius *hostēs persequentēs fugiēns aliquamdiū in palūde*

1. *hostēs*: the forces of Sulla, who had captured the city and compelled Marius to take refuge in flight.

---

1. *Marius*, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.  
*per-sequor*, -ī, -*secūtus*, *tr.*, follow  
 after, follow, pursue.

*aliquamdiū*, *adv.*, for some time, for  
 a while.  
*palūs*, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus extractusque, ut erat nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum lōrō Minturnās raptus et in custōdiam coniectus est. Missus est ad eum  
 5 occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterruit. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vīdisset: "Tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occidere?" Quō auditō attonitus ille ac tremēns

2. ut erat, *just as he was.*

nūdō corpore: for the ablative see App. 141; A. 415; B. 224; H. 473, 2; H.-B. 443.

3. Minturnās: accusative of place to which.

4. raptus: supply *est*.

5. servus pūblicus: a slave who was the property of the state.

nātiōne: ablative of respect. The Cimbrian slave would naturally stand in awe of the general who had inflicted such a crushing defeat upon his people.

6. strictō gladiō, *with drawn sword.*

7. -ne: see App. 213 a.

inquit: only the forms of the present indicative singular are in common use.

2. dēlitiscō, -ere, -litui, —, *intr.* [dē+latēscō, hide], hide, lie hidden.

paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat.

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw, pull, or drag out; remove.

3. corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body.

caenum, -ī, *n.*, filth, mire.

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, *tr.* [linō, smear], smear.

in-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [in+iaciō], throw in or upon, put upon.

collum, -ī, *n.*, the neck.

lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

Minturnae, -ārum, *f.*, a town of southern Latium. Map II, D, 5.

5. Cimber, -brī, *m.*, a Cimbrian; *pl.*, Cimbri, a people from Jutland who invaded Italy. Map I, E, 1.

6. auctōritās, -ātis, *f.* [auctor],

authority, dignity, prestige.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter, prevent.

stringō, -ere, -inxi, -ictum, *tr.*, draw tight; strip off; *w.* gladium, unsheathe.

7. gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.

tū, tui, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

-ne, *encl. adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, in direct questions it is an untranslatable sign of interrogation; as *conj.*, in indirect questions, whether.

inquam, *intr.*, *defect.*, always placed after one or more words of a quotation, say.

8. audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *tr. and intr.*, dare, venture.

attonitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [attonō, stun], awestruck, amazed.

tremō, -ere, -ui, —, *intr.*, tremble, shudder.



abiectō ferrō fūgit, Marius sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab iis, quī prius eum occidere voluerant, ē carcere ēmissus est.

9. abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*  
[ab+iaciō], throw or cast away,  
cast.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
[freq. of clāmō], cry out, shout.

10. carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison, dungeon.

11. ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*,  
send forth; throw, hurl; let go,  
release.

### 31. SULLA SUPREME IN ROME

Once more, in the absence of Sulla upon his campaign in the east against Mithridates, Marius returned to Rome (86 B.C.) and was again, for the seventh time, elected consul. A bloody proscription of the senatorial party followed, a reign of terror. The first Mithridatic war concluded, Sulla hurried back to Rome (83 B.C.), and completely crushing the Marian party took bloody revenge upon them.

Interim eō tempore Sulla etiam Dardanōs, Scordiscōs, Dalmatās et Maedōs partim vīcit, aliōs in fidem accēpit. Sed cum lēgātī ā rēge Mithridātē, quī pācem petēbant, vēnissent, nōn aliter sē datūrum Sulla esse respondit, nisi rēx relictīs hīs, quae occupāverat, ad rēgnū suū redisset. Postea tamen ad conloquium ambō vēnērunt. Pāx inter eōs ordināta est, ut

2. *partim . . . aliōs*: used here correlatively.

3. *Mithridātē*: he was a man of remarkable ability and an implacable foe of Rome. He had enlarged the bounds of his kingdom till it extended almost around the Euxine; and in the year 88 B.C. he had overrun the Roman possessions in Asia, putting to death the Italian inhabitants of the country.

*nōn aliter . . . nisi*, on no other terms than that.

6. *ut . . . habēret*: purpose clause; *ut nōn* is used in a purpose clause instead of *nē*, when the *nōn* negatives a single word (here *habēret*).

1. *Sulla, -ae, m., a cognomen.*

*Dardanī, -ōrum, m., a people of southern Moesia. Map I, G, 4.*

*Scordisci, -orum, m., a people of Pannonia. Map I, G, 3.*

*Dalmatae, -ārum, m., the Dalmatians, people of Dalmatia. Map I, F-G, 4.*

2. *Maedī, -ōrum, m., a people of western Thrace.*

*partim, adv. [pars], partly; partim . . . partim, partly . . . partly, some . . . others.*

3. *Mithridātēs, -is (Greek acc. -ēn), m., a famous king of Pontus, a country in Asia Minor.*

- Sulla ad bellum cīvile festināns ā tergō periculum nōn habēret. Nam dum Sulla in Achaeā atque Asiā Mithridātēn vincit, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōn-
- 10 sulibus, bellum in Italiā reparāvērunt et ingressī urbem Rōmam nōbilissimōs ē senātū et cōsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt, multōs prōscripsērunt, ipsīus Sullae domō ēversā filiōs et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex urbe fugi-
- 15 ēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit, ōrāns, ut patriae subvenīret. Ille in Italiam trāiēcit, bellum cīvile gestūrus adversus Norbānum et Scīpiōnem cōsulēs. Et primō proeliō contrā

**8. in Achaeā:** Mithridates had tampered with the Greeks of Europe as well as of Ionia, and had been so successful that for a short time the eastern boundary of the Roman possessions was pushed westward as far as the Adriatic.

**9. Cinna:** the father-in-law of Julius Caesar.

**12. prōscripsērunt:** the *prōscriptiō* was so called because the names of those included were written out and posted in public places. Those whose names were written on the list were made outlaws and might be killed by any one, slave or free. Their property was confiscated to the state, and even their children and grandchildren were disfranchised and excluded from office.

**14. ad Sullam in Graeciam:** see on *ad senātum Rōmam*, 26, 3.

**15. gestūrus,** for the purpose of waging; the future active participle may be used to denote purpose.

**Norbānum et Scīpiōnem:** see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (6); both were incapable. Sulla defeated Norbanus and then blockaded him at Capua all winter, while, under the pretense of peace negotiations, the soldiers of Scipio were persuaded to desert in a body to Sulla's side.

**7. periculum, or pericūm, -ī, n.,** peril, danger.

**8. dum, conj.,** while, as long as; till, until.

**Achaea, -ae, f.,** the province of southern Greece. Map I, H, 6.

**Asia, -ae, f.,** Asia; Asia Minor. Map I, I-J, 4-6.

**9. Cinna, -ae, m.,** a cognomen.

**12. prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrip-**  
tum, *tr.*, proscribe, outlaw.

**ē-vertō, -ere, -ti, -sum, tr.,** over-throw, destroy, ruin.

**13. fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō],** flight.

**com-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr.,** collect, force, drive.

**ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus+versus],** all together, whole, entire, all in a body.

**14. sub-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, intr.,** come to aid, assist.

**15. Norbānus, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.





**CNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS**

Norbānum dīmīcāvit nōn longē ā Capuā. Tunc sex mīlia eius cecīdit, sex mīlia cēpit, cxxiv suōs āmīsīt. Inde etiam ad Scipiōnem sē convertit et ante proelium tōtum eius exercitum sine sanguine in dēditiōnem accēpit.

20

17. Capua, -ae, *f.*, a city in Campania. Map II, D, 5.

[com-+vertō], turn around, turn.

19. convertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.*

20. sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood, bloodshed.

### 32. THE RISE OF POMPEY

Sulla was now supreme in Rome and ruled, in the interests of the oligarchical party, as absolute monarch under the name of dictator until 79 B.C., when, to the surprise of all parties, he resigned his dictatorship and retired to private life. Reactionary movements against the oligarchy at once set in: the insurrection of Lepidus, one of the consuls opposed to the oligarchy, who, collecting an army in Etruria, actually marched upon Rome; the attempt of Sertorius, a representative of the Marian party, to make head against the senate in Spain; the war with the gladiators, who, under Spartacus, rose by thousands against their Roman masters. An additional source of trouble was the ever-increasing power and boldness of the pirates who infested the seas. The troubled times brought to the front another great figure in Roman history, Gnaeus Pompey. It was he who put down Lepidus, brought the war with Sertorius in Spain to a successful issue, followed up the victory of Crassus over the gladiators with a final crushing blow, and in a brilliant naval campaign of less than six months utterly swept the pirates from the sea (66 B.C.). He crowned this series of successes by the overthrow of Mithridates and the termination of that long-drawn-out war (63 B.C.).

Dum haec geruntur, pīrātae omnia maria infestābant ita ut Rōmānīs tōtō orbe victōribus sōla nāvigātiō tūta nōn esset. Quārē id bellum Cn. Pompeiō dēcrētum est, quod intrā pau-

1. *dum haec geruntur*, while these things were going on; during these events; meanwhile. Eutropius refers to the prosecution of the so-called third Mithridatic war, the conquest of Crete and Macedonia, and the addition of Libya to the Roman dominion.

2. *tōtō orbe*: for the omission of the prep. see on 21, 15.

1. pīrāta, -ae, *m.*, pirate.

a sailing, navigation, voyage.

infestō, -āre, —, —, *tr.* [infestus], disturb, infest.

3. Pompeius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

2. nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō],

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, decide; decree, allot.

cōs mēnsēs ingentī et fēlicitāte et celeritāte cōnfēcit. Mox  
 5 eī delātum etiam bellum contrā Mithridātē et Tigrānē  
 Quō susceptō Mithridātē in Armeniā Minōre nocturnō proeliō  
 vīcit, castra diripuit, quadrāgintā mīlia eius occīdit, vīgintī  
 tantum dē exercitū suō perdidit et duōs centuriōnēs. Mithri-  
 dātēs cum uxōre fūgit et duōbus comitibus. Neque multō  
 10 post, cum in suōs saeviret, Pharnacis, fili suī, apud militēs  
 sēditione ad mortem coāctus venēnum hausit. Hunc finem  
 habuit Mithridātēs. Rēgnāvit annis sexāgintā, vixit septuāgintā  
 duōbus, contrā Rōmānōs bellum habuit annis quadrāgintā.

4. cōnfēcit: this is the usual word meaning to end a war.

10. in suōs saeviret: Mithridates put to death the accomplices of his son, who had finally revolted against his father and joined the Romans.

Pharnacis: construe with *militēs*.

11. venēnum hausit: the story is sometimes told that he had so injured his constitution to poison that the draught failed to take effect, and he was obliged to call in a soldier to dispatch him with his sword.

12. annis: for the case see on *annis*, 7, 8.

13. quadrāgintā: an exaggeration. Mithridates had spent about twenty-five years at war with the Romans.

4. fēlicitās, -ātis, *f.* [fēlix], good fortune.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* [celer], speed, quickness.

5. Tigrānēs, -is (*Greek acc. -ēn*), *m.*, a king of Armenia.

6. Armenia, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia, divided into Armenia Major and Minor. Map I, J, 4.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small; *comp.*, minor, minus; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, very small.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], of night, at night.

7. diripiō, -ere, -rīpui, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], tear in pieces, plunder, ravage.

8. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centuria,

company of a hundred], centurion.

9. comes, comitis, *m.* and *f.*, companion, comrade.

multō, *adv.* [multus], much, far by far.

10. saevio, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus], rage, be furious, be violent.

Pharnacēs, -is, *m.*, son of Mithridates.

11. mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

cōgō, -ere, cōgēi, cōactum, *tr.* [com-+agō], collect; urge, compel, drive.

haurio, -ire, hausī, haustum, *tr.* drink, drink in, take in.

12. vivō, -ere, vixī, victum, *intr.* live.

## 33. THE CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE

The year 63 B.C. was made memorable at Rome by the conspiracy of Catiline during the consulship of Cicero.

M. Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et C. Antōniō cōsulibus, annō ab urbe conditā sexcentēsīmō octōgēsīmō nōnō, L. Sergius Catilīna, nōbilissimī generis vir, sed ingenī prāvissimī, ad dēlendā patriam coniūrāvit cum quibusdā clārīs quidem, sed audācibus viris. Ā Cicerōne urbe expulsus est. Sociī eius 5

**1. Cicerōne ōrātōre:** Cicero had already made himself famous by his ability as an orator and by his integrity in office. He had first brought himself prominently before the public in the year 70 B.C. by his prosecution of Verres, the dishonest governor of Sicily, and had then risen rapidly from one official honor to another till he reached the consulship in 63 B.C.

**3. Catilīna:** Catiline was a man of good family who had ruined himself by his spendthrift habits and dissolute living. He had put himself at the head of a large number of young men who were desperate like himself, and had planned to murder the consuls and chief men in authority, and to plunder and burn the city. He had collected weapons in various places, and made every preparation for an armed insurrection, when his plans were revealed to the consul Cicero. The senate acted promptly and clothed the consuls with dictatorial power. Precautions were taken; upon Catiline's entering the senate chamber Cicero eloquently denounced him and exposed the whole plot; the senate rose against him. He hurriedly left the city and, making his way to Etruria, joined the hostile bands collected there under the leadership of his lieutenant, Manlius.

**nōbilissimī generis:** the descriptive genitive or descriptive ablative does not usually depend upon a proper noun, but upon a generic noun in apposition with the proper noun.

**4. quidem, to be sure.**

**5. sociī . . . necātī sunt:** some years later Cicero was sent into exile for having put Roman citizens to death without trial. His banishment lasted about a year.

**1. Cicerō, -ōnis, m.** [cicer, chick-pea], a cognomen.

**ōrātor, -ōris, m.** [ōrō], orator.

**Antōnius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**2. octōgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [octōgīntā], eightieth.

**Sergius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**3. Catilīna, -ae, m.,** Catiline, a cognomen.

**ingenium, -ī, n.,** disposition, nature.

**prāvus, -a, -um, adj.,** vicious, bad.

**4. coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.** [com-+iūrō], league together, conspire.

**5. audāx, -ācis, adj.,** bold, daring.

dēprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōnsule, Catilīna ipse victus proeliō est interfectus.

6. in *carcere*, in the prison, that is, in the Tullianum, which is said to have been built by Ancus Marcius.

7. *Catilīna . . . victus*: this battle was fought in northern Etruria in March of 62 B.C.

6. dē-prehendō, -ere, -prehendī, necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nex], to  
-prehensum, *tr.*, seize, capture. kill, destroy.

### 34. THE FIRST TRIUMVIRATE: JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL

Pompey returned to Rome in 61 B.C. In the following year a coalition was formed by Pompey, Crassus, who was at that time one of the richest men in Rome, and Julius Caesar, who was then just coming into prominence because of his brilliant military successes in Spain. The object of this triumvirate (as it is called) was to obtain grants of land for Pompey's veterans, to secure official ratification of all his acts in the east, and to raise Caesar to the consulship. Of these three men, Caesar was, by early circumstances and family connections, of the Marian party; Crassus, the devoted friend of Caesar, naturally inclined to him; and Pompey, while having more affiliations with the senate than with the popular party, had present ends to gain which were not in favor with the senate.

Caesar was elected consul in 59 B.C., when, with much bitter opposition of the senate, he secured the passage of Pompey's agrarian law and the ratification of that general's acts in the east. Caesar, at the end of his consulship, secured the government of Gaul for five years.

Annō urbis conditae sexcentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō tertiō C. Iūlius Caesar, quī postea imperāvit, cum L. Bibulō cōnsul est factus. Dēcrēta est eī Gallia et Illyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is

1. *urbis conditae*: a variation from the more common *ab urbe conditā*.

2. *imperāvit*, held supreme power.

3. *dēcrēta est*: the verb agrees with the nearer subject; see App. 180, a; A. 317, n; B. 255, 2; H. 392; H.-B. 329, 2.

1. *Iūlius, -ī, m., a Roman name.*

2. *Caesar, -aris, m., a cognomen in the Julian gens; esp. C. Julius Caesar, the famous conqueror and dictator.*

*Bibulus, -ī, m., a cognomen.*

3. *Gallia, -ae, f., the country Gaul; also one of its divisions, Celtic Gaul. Map I, C-D, 2-4.*

*Illyricum, -ī, n., the country of Illyria. Map II, E-F, 2-3.*

*legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], a legion.*



primus vicit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī appellantur, deinde vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum 5 prōcessit. Domuit autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est et circuitū patet ad bis et trīciēs centēna mīlia passuum. Bri-

4. Helvētiōs . . . Sēquanī: two separate tribes in Caesar's time. Under the empire they were included in one province.

5. vincendō per bella gravissima, *conquering in hard-fought wars*; *vincendō* is a gerund used somewhat freely as an ablative of manner.

Ōceanum Britannicum, *the English Channel*.

8. circuitū, *in circumference*.

ad bis et trīciēs centēna mīlia passuum, *about 3200 miles*.

ad: *ad* is used adverbially with numerals, denoting an approach to the number, "to the number of," "about," without any influence on the case of the numeral. For the accusative see App. 130; A. 425; B. 181; H. 417; H.-B. 387 I.

centēna: distributives are regularly used with numeral adverbs in expressions of multiplication.

passuum: the *passus*, a pace or double step, measured 4 ft. 10½ inches (5 Roman feet). It was the distance from the point where the foot was raised to the point where the same foot was put down. A Roman mile (1000 paces) = 4854 English feet.

4. Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; *as subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the Helvetians, *a Celtic tribe occupying the country between Mt. Jura, Lake Geneva, the Rhine, and the Rhone*. Map IV, H-G, 3.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at this time.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, the Sequanians, *an important tribe of eastern Gaul*. Map IV, F-G, 3.

5. gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; troublesome, severe; serious.

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean.

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Britain, British. Map I, C, 1.

6. domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, conquer; destroy.

7. Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone, a

river of Gaul. Map I, D, 3-4.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine. Map I, D-E, 2-3.

8. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō], circuit, compass.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie open, stretch out, extend.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice.

trīciēs, *num. adv.* [trīgintā], thirty times.

centēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [centum], a hundred each, a hundred.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, a step, pace; stride; mille passuum, or passūs, a thousand paces, mile.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *as subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the people of Britain, Britons.

- tannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem  
 10 Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, eōsque victōs obsidibus acceptīs  
 stipendiariōs fēcit. Galliae autem tribūtī nōmine annuum  
 imperāvit stipendium quadringentiēs, Germānōsque trāns Rhē-  
 num adgressus immānissimīs proeliīs vicit. Inter tot successūs  
 ter male pugnāvit, apud Arvernōs semel praesēns et absēns in  
 15 Germāniā bis; nam lēgātī eius duo, Titūrius et Auruncu-  
 leius, per insidiās caesi sunt.

9. nē . . . quidem: the emphatic word stands between nē and quidem.

10. eōs . . . stipendiariōs fēcit, when he had conquered them he took hostages and made them tributary. This was a mere form, as the Britons paid little or nothing into the Roman treasury. Caesar's operations were confined to the southern part of the island, and it was not until more than a century later that the Romans became masters of the country.

11. tribūtī nōmine, as tribute. The ablatives locō, numerō, and nōmine are often used with the genitive with the force of as.

12. imperāvit, levied upon, with the accusative of the thing levied and the dative of the person levied upon.

quadringentiēs: sc. centēna mīlia sēstertium = about \$1,640,000.

13. immānissimīs proeliīs: Caesar crossed the Rhine twice, but neither expedition was marked by any important results. His great battles with the Germans were fought on the Gallic side of the river.

14. absēns: since the battles were fought under his command even when he was not present in person, the defeat may fairly be called his.

10. cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of cognōscō*], known.

obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage.

11. stipendiarius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium], tributary; as *subst.*, *m.*, a tributary.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [tribuō], a tribute, tax.

12. stipendium, -ī, *n.* [stips, gift + pendō], a tax, tribute.

quadringentiēs, *num. adv.* [quadringenti], four hundred times.

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; as *subst.*, *m.*, a German; *pl.*, the Germans.

13. immānis, -e, *adj.*, vast; fierce, savage.

successus, -ūs, *m.* [succēdō], approach; success.

14. ter, *num. adv.*, thrice, three times.

male, *adv.* [malus], badly, ill; unsuccessfully; *comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē.

Arvernī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Celtic Gaul. Map IV, E, 3-4.

semel, *num. adv.*, once, one time.

praesēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of praesum*], present, in person; aiding.

15. Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany. Map I, E-G, 1-3.

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Aurunculeius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

## 35. CIVIL WAR BETWEEN POMPEY AND CAESAR

In 53 B.C. occurred the death of Crassus, and in the following year owing to the anarchy that prevailed in Rome because of the conflict of classes, Pompey, who had inclined more and more to the senate, was elected sole consul. He now saw that with Caesar out of the way he himself would be sole ruler in Rome. His program was therefore to deprive Caesar of his army by recalling him from Gaul, and at the same time to prevent him from standing again for the consulship. This program was carried out by the senate through the influence of Pompey.

Caesar, instead of obeying the mandate of the senate to disband his army, crossed the Rubicon, which separated his province from Italy, and marched upon Rome. This meant another civil war, headed by Caesar, who claimed to represent the popular party, on the one side, and by Pompey, for the oligarchical party, on the other. It is clear that each had his own personal ambitions to serve, quite apart from people or senate. As Caesar marched upon the city (49 B.C.) Pompey fled to Greece, whither most of the nobles followed him.

Hinc iam bellum civile successit execrandum et lacrimabile, quō praeter calamitatēs, quae in proeliis accidērunt, etiam populi Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta est. Caesar enim rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōsulātum atque ita ut sine dubietāte aliquā eī deferrētur. Contrādictum est a Mār- 5

2. quō, *by which*.

3. populi Rōmānī . . . mūtāta est: *i.e.*, the Roman government was changed from a republic to an empire.

4. alterum cōsulātum: this had been one of the agreements of the triumvirate; besides, Caesar felt that his life would not be safe in Rome unless he were protected by the security of the consular office.

cōsulātum: it was necessary for his personal safety that he should have the protection of official position.

5. sine dubietāte aliquā, *without any hesitation*.

contrādictum est, *he was opposed*; the verb is impersonal.

1. execror, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [ex+sa-cer], curse, execrate; *part.* execrandus, *as adj.*, detestable, deplorable.

lacrimābilis, -e, *adj.* [lacrima], lamentable, mournful.

2. praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*; *as adv.*, besides; *as prep.*, beyond; besides, except.

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, misfortune,

calamity, defeat, disaster.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō], fall; happen, take place.

3. fortūna, -ae, *f.* [fors], fortune, fate; condition.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, change, transform.

5. dubietās, -ātis, *f.* [dubius], doubt, hesitation.

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

cellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompeiō, ā Catōne, iussusque dīmissīs exercitibus ad urbem redīre. Propter quam iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs congregātōs habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompeiō senātusque omnis  
 10 atque ūniversa nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Apud Ēpirum, Macedoniam, Achaeam Pompeiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

**6. Catōne:** great-grandson of Cato the Censor. He was celebrated for the purity of his life and his devotion to the traditions of the ancient republic; but he was a narrow-minded, fanatical man, too shortsighted to understand the political tendencies of the times and too stubborn, perhaps, to abandon his own position if he had been capable of understanding them. **dīmissīs exercitibus:** translate by a coördinate clause.

**7. iniūriam, affront.**

**ab Ariminō:** for the preposition see on ā *Tarentō*, 16, 62. It was high treason for a proconsul to cross the borders of his province; so that when Caesar passed over the little river Rubicon, which separated Cisalpine Gaul from Italy, it was, in effect, a declaration of war.

**8. milītēs congregātōs habēbat,** *had his troops collected*, stronger than *congregāverat*. The perfect participle with *habēō* and *teneō* emphasizes the result of a completed act rather than the performance of the act. This use of *habēō* is an anticipation of the use of "have" as an auxiliary verb.

**10. nōbilitās, nobles.**

**fūgit:** singular, to agree with the nearest part of the compound subject.

**11. Pompeiō duce,** *under the leadership of Pompey.*

**6. Catō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen.**

### 36. THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS

The two armies met in the decisive contest of the war at Pharsalus in Thessaly (48 B.C.), in which Pompey's forces, although greatly outnumbering those of his opponent, were defeated.

Caesar vacuum urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. Inde

**1. vacuum:** *i. e.*, without defenders.

**dictātōrem sē:** for two accusatives with a verb of making see App. 126; A. 393; B. 177; H. 410; H.-B. 392. Caesar was appointed dictator by the popular assembly, and only learned the fact after his victory over the Pompeian party in Spain. Upon his return to Rome he held the office about eleven days, and then left for Greece to complete the work of conquest.

**1. vacuus, -a, -um, adj** [vacō] empty, vacant; destitute.

Hispāniās petiit. Ibi Pompei exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus, L. Āfrāniō, M. Petreiō, M. Varrōne, superāvit. Inde regressus in Graeciam trāsiit, adversum Pompeium dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, 5 ēvāsīt tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompeius sequi nōluit, dixitque Caesar nec Pompeium scīre vincere et illō tantum diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde in Thessaliā apud Palaeopharsā-lum prōductīſ utrimque ingentibus cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt. Pompei aciēs habuit XL mīlia peditum, equitēs in sinistrō cornū 10 sexcentōs, in dextrō quīngentōs, praetereā tōtīus orientis auxilia, tōtam nōbilitātem, innumerōs senātōrēs, praetōriōs,

2. petiit, *went to (sought)*.

3. M. Varrōne: see Vocab., *Terentius* (2).

5. primō proeliō: at Dyrrachium. Caesar attempted to besiege Pompey's forces, but, as his lines were of great extent and his army comparatively small, Pompey was able to break through and inflict a serious blow upon him.

6. nocte interveniente, *as night had come on*.

7. nec . . . superārī, *that Pompey did not know how to conquer, and that he himself could have been conquered on that day only*. It was Pompey's one chance and he had lost it.

11. tōtīus orientis: Pompey's army included forces from various nations in Asia Minor.

12. auxilia: note difference in meaning in sing. and plural.

2. fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave, daring.

3. Āfrānius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

Petreius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

6. inter-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, intervene.

8. Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country of northeastern Greece. Map I, G-H, 5.

Palaeopharsālus, -i, *f.*, a city of Thessaly, Old Pharsalus. Map I, H, 5.

9. prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or bring forth, bring; *w.* cōpiās, draw up.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque], on both sides; from each side.

10. sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, left-hand, on the left.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing, flank.

11. sexcentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [sex+centum], six hundred.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right, right-hand, on or to the right; *as subst.*, *f.*, dextra, the right hand.

praeter-eā, *adv.*, besides, furthermore.

oriēns, -entis, *adj.* [pres. part. of orior], rising; *as subst.*, *m.*, the rising sun, east.

12. in-numerus, -a, -um, *adj.*, countless, innumerable.

cōsulārēs et quī magnōrum iam bellōrum victōrēs fuissent. Caesar in aciē suā habuit peditum nōn integra xxx milia, equitēs  
15 mille.

Numquam adhūc Rōmānae cōpiaē in ūnum neque maiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtū terrārum orbem facile subāctūrae, sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum  
20 tum est ingenti contentiōne, victusque ad postrēmum Pompeius et castra eius direpta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriam petiit, ut ā rēge Aegypti, cui tūtor ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenilem eius aetātem, acciperet auxilia. Quī fortūnam

13. quī . . . fuissent, *men who had been*; descriptive clause.

14. integra, *complete*; we say *quite*.

16. numquam . . . subāctūrae, *never before had larger or more skillfully commanded Roman forces assembled, forces which might easily have subdued the whole world*. The employment of the future active participle here is not according to the best Latin usage. The negatives *neque* . . . *neque* do not destroy the effect of the preceding negative, *numquam*.

18. dūcerentur: a somewhat irregular use of a condition. It is in sense contrary to fact in past time (*had been led*), but the form suggests merely anticipation from a past point of view.

pugnātum est ingenti contentiōne, *the battle was fought with great stubbornness*.

19. victus: supply *est*.

21. ā rēge Aegypti: *i.e.*, Ptolemaeus. Pompey had been the means of restoring the young king's father to the throne of Egypt, and naturally expected help from the son.

22. quī, *he*.

fortūnam . . . secūtus, *having regard for his own fortunes rather than for friendship*.

17. bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; *comp.*, melior, melius; *sup.*, optimus, -a, -um, best; excellent.

conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [com-+veniō], assemble, come to.

18. facile, *adv.* [facilis], easily, readily.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, barbarous; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, foreigners, barbarians.

19. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle, contest; strife.

20. Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, a city at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great. Map I, J, 7.

21. Aegyptus, -i, *f.*, Egypt, the country round about the lower Nile. Map I, J, 7-8.

tūtor, -ōris, *m.* [tueor], guardian.

22. iuvenilis, -e, *adj.* [iuvenis], youthful, juvenile.





CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR



*magis quam amicitiam secutus occidit Pompeium, caput eius et anulum Caesarī misit. Quō cōspectō Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur, tantī virī intuēns caput et generī quondam suī.* 25

**23. occidit Pompeium:** the Egyptians sent out a small boat, and took Pompey from his ship; but as he was about to land, in the sight of his wife and friends, he was stabbed in the back by Septimius, who had formerly been one of his centurions. His head was cut off and his body flung on the sands, where it lay till his freedman Philippus gathered together some wood and burned it on the shore.

**24. quō cōspectō, at the sight.**

**lacrimās fūdisse:** Caesar afterwards had the murderers put to death.

**25. generī:** in the year 60 B.C., when the triumvirate was formed, Pompey had married Caesar's well-beloved daughter Julia and had been tenderly attached to her. Her death in 54 B.C. broke the strongest link that had held her husband and her father together.

**24. cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-tum, tr.** [com-+speciō, spy], look at, perceive, observe, catch sight of.

**lacrima, -ae, f.,** tear.

**25. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, tr.,** pour forth, shed; rout, defeat.

**in-tueor, -ērī, -itus, tr.,** look upon, gaze at.

**quondam, adv.,** once, formerly.

### 37. CAESAR SUPREME IN ROME: HIS ASSASSINATION

Two other battles, at Thapsus in Africa (46 B.C.) and Munda in Spain (45 B.C.), crushed all opposition of the nobles and left Caesar absolute master of the Roman world. But the time was not yet ripe for a monarch at Rome; and in the following year (44 B.C.) Caesar was assassinated in the senate house.

*Inde Caesar bellis cīvilibus tōtō orbe compositis Rōmam rediit. Agere insolentius coepit et contrā cōsuētūdinem Rōmānae*

**1. bellis cīvilibus compositis,** *when the civil wars had been ended.*

**tōtō orbe:** for the omission of the preposition see App. 151, b; A. 429, 2; B. 228, 1, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436, a.

**2. insolentius, more arrogantly** (*than became a constitutional ruler*). Caesar's government was admirable, but his disregard of the old constitutional forms gave great offense to conservative Romans.

**contrā . . . libertātis,** *contrary to the traditions of Roman freedom, i.e., contrary to the Roman constitution.*

**2. insolenter, adv.** [insolēns], haughtily, insolently; *comp., insolentius.*

libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte praestāret, quī ā populō antea dēferēbantur, nec senātui ad sē venienti  
 5 adsurgeret aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius senātoribus equitibusque Rōmānīs. Praecipui fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, et C. Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergō Caesar, cum  
 10 senātūs diē inter cēterōs vēnisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōfossus est.

3. et: coördinate with *nec* and *-que*; omit in translation.

honōrēs, *offices*, the usual term.

5. *tyrannica*, like a usurper. The Greek word *tyrannos*, from which the adjective is derived, means rather one who gains power in an irregular way than one who wields it harshly.

coniūrātum est in eum, a conspiracy was formed against him; impersonal.

7. duo Brūtī: Decimus Brutus, who had been one of Caesar's most trusted officers, and Marcus Brutus, the nephew of Cato, who had been the object of Caesar's regard and the recipient of many favors at his hands.

8. primus . . . expulerat: see 9, 7.

9. C. Cassius: see Vocabulary, *Cassius* (2).

10. senātūs diē, on the day (of the meeting) of the senate.

3. libertās, -ātis, *f.* [līber], liberty, freedom.

voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [volō], will, wish, desire; good-will.

prae-stō, -āre, -stīti, -stitum, *tr. and intr.*, surpass; show; furnish, give, bestow.

4. antea, *adv.*, before, previously, formerly.

5. ad-surgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -sur-rēctum, *intr.*, rise, rise out of respect to.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēx], royal,

king's; befitting a king, kingly.  
 tyrannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tyrannus], tyrannical, despotic.

7. coniūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of coniūrō], conspiring; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, conspirators.

9. Servilius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

Casca, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

10. cūria, -ae, *f.*, curia; the senate house.

11. cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdi, -fossū, *tr.* [com-+fodiō], dig up; stab.

## 38. CAESAR AVENGED AT PHILIPPI

The conspirators, led by Brutus and Cassius, seem to have had no definite plan of action to follow the death of Caesar. But neither senate nor people ratified the act of the "liberators." Antonius, the chief supporter of Caesar, at the funeral of his leader so inflamed the people against the murderers that Brutus and Cassius fled from the city for their lives.

But Antonius, while professedly acting in the interests of the state, was in reality scheming to make himself master in place of Caesar, when the young Octavius, adopted son and heir of Caesar, arrived in Rome, and assumed the rights of his inheritance. He greatly strengthened his position with both senate and people by skillful diplomacy. Antonius on his way to Cisalpine Gaul to assume command of the province which had been given him by the people was opposed by Decimus Brutus, whom the senate had previously placed over that province. By a temporary combination between Brutus and Octavius, who offered his services to the senate, Antonius was defeated at Mutina and compelled to flee. Though Octavius thus had every reason to count Antonius his enemy, he formed with him and Lepidus in 43 B.C. that coalition known as the Second Triumvirate. Antonius and Octavius then crossed over to Greece, where, in the battle of Philippi (42 B.C.), they defeated the forces of Brutus and Cassius.

Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū cōnfūgit ad Lepidum, quī Caesarī magister equitum fuerat et tum militum cōpiās grandēs habēbat, ā quō susceptus est. Mox Lepidō operam dante Caesar pācem cum Antōniō fēcit et quasi vindicātūrus patris suī mortem, ā quō per testāmentum fuerat adoptātus, Rōmam cum exercitū profectus, extorsit ut sibi vicēsimo annō cōsulātus

1. **Lepidum**: he had been one of Caesar's officers and was consul in 46 B.C. He was governor of Gaul and Spain at the time of Caesar's death and was afterward made pontifex maximus. He had then left the city and repaired to Gaul, where Antonius met him.

2. **Caesarī**, *Caesar's* (lit. *for Caesar*); the dative of reference where we might have expected the genitive.

3. **Lepidō operam dante**, *with the assistance of Lepidus*.

4. **vindicātūrus**: see on *gestūrus*, 31, 15.

**patris suī**: Augustus was the son of Atia, Julius Caesar's niece.

6. **vicēsimo annō**: more than twenty-three years below the legal age.

1. **cōnfugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.* [com-+fugiō], flee, take refuge, resort.

**Lepidus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

2. **grandis**, -e, *adj.*, great, large.

3. **opera**, -ae, *f.* [opus], work, aid, assistance; **operam dare**, exert

oneself, give one's attention.

5. **testāmentum**, -ī, *n.* [testor], a will.

**ad-optō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, choose; adopt.

6. **ex-torqueō**, -ēre, -sī, -tum, *tr.*, extort, obtain by force.

darētur. Senātum prōscripsit, cum Antōniō ac Lepidō rem publicam armīs tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō ōrātor occīsus est multīque aliī nōbilēs.

- 10 Intereā Brūtus et Cassius, interfectōrēs Caesaris, ingēns bellum mōvērunt; erant enim per Macedoniam et Orientem multī exercitūs, quōs occupāverant; profectī sunt igitur contrā eōs Caesār Octāviānus Augustus et M. Antōnius, remānserat enim ad dēfendendam Italiam Lepidus. Apud Philippōs,  
 15 Macedoniae urbem, contrā eōs pugnāvērunt. Primō proeliō victī sunt Antōnius et Caesar, periit tamen dux nōbilitātis Cassius, secundō Brūtum et infinitam nōbilitātem, quae cum illis bellum gesserat, victam interfēcērunt. Ac sic inter eōs dīvisa est rēs pūblica, ut Augustus Hispāniās, Galliās et Ita-  
 20 liam tenēret, Antōnius Asiam, Pontum, Orientem. Sed in Italiā

7. cum Antōniō ac Lepidō: upon their reconciliation the three divided the government of the world among themselves. They also published a proscription which included nearly two thousand knights and three hundred senators, and confiscated the property of those who were proscribed, for the benefit of their own friends and partisans.

8. Cicerō . . . est: it had been agreed that each triumvir should give over to the sword any one of his friends who had earned the ill-will of either of the others. Under this arrangement Cicero, who was the friend of Octavianus, was sacrificed to the hatred of Antonius.

13. Caesar . . . Augustus: his original name was Gaius Octavius, but according to custom he had assumed the name of his adoptive father. To this was added as usual the gentile name of his own father in an adjectival form, making his name Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus. The name Augustus was conferred upon him in 27 B.C. by the senate and people as a title of honor.

17. secundō: supply *proeliō*.

infinitam nōbilitātem, *very many of the nobles*.

Brūtum: like Cassius, Brutus was driven to suicide to avoid falling into the hands of his conquerors.

10. interfectōr, -ōris, *m.* [interficiō], slayer, murderer.

13. Octāviānus, -ī, *m.*, a surname of the Emperor Augustus.

Augustus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen conferred on all the Roman emperors.

14. Philippī, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of Macedonia. Map I, H, 5.

19. dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -visum, *tr.*, divide; distribute, allot.

20. Pontus, -ī, *m.*, a country of Asia Minor. Map I, J, 4.

L. Antōnius cōsul bellum cīvile commōvit, frāter eius, quī cum Caesare contrā Brūtum et Cassium dīmīcāverat. Is apud Perusiam, Tusciae cīvitatē, victus et captus est, neque occīsus.

**21. L. Antōnius:** he and his brother Marcus had planned to unite against Octavianus, but a reconciliation had been effected which was further strengthened by the marriage of Antonius to Octavia, the sister of Octavianus.

**23. neque, but not;** see on *-que*, 16, 27.

**23. Perusia, -ae, f.,** a city of Etruria. Map II, C, 3.

### 39. BATTLE OF ACTIUM: END OF CIVIL STRIFE

After this battle the triumvirs divided the empire among themselves. But Lepidus was deposed from his position because of treachery in 36 B.C., and between the two remaining rivals constant quarrels and reconciliations continued, until in 31 B.C. the inevitable clash of ambitions came. The result of the battle of Actium in that year was that Octavianus was left where Caesar had stood after Pharsalus — master of the world.

Hic quoque ingēns bellum cīvile commōvit cōgente uxōre Cleopātrā, rēgīnā Aegyptī, dum cupiditāte muliebri optat etiam in urbe rēgnāre. Victus est ab Augustō nāvālī pugnā clārā et inlūstrī apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est, ex quā fūgit in Aegyptum et, dēspērātis rēbus, cum omnēs ad Augustum trāns- 5

**1. hic:** Marcus Antonius.

**2. dum . . . optat** = a causal clause.

**3. in urbe rēgnāre:** she wished to be queen at Rome also.

**4. quī locus:** see on *quae gēns*, 7, 2.

**quā:** supply *pugnā*.

**fūgit:** Cleopatra had fled in her galley during the fight and Antonius had followed her without waiting for the issue of the battle.

**2. Cleopātra, -ae, f.,** the last queen of Egypt.

**rēgīna, -ae, f. [rēx],** queen.

**cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus],** desire, longing.

**muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier],** a woman's, womanlike.

**optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** choose; desire, demand, wish for.

**3. nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis],** naval.

**4. inlūstris, -e, adj.,** distinguished, famous, memorable.

**Actium, -i, n.,** a promontory and town in Epirus. Map I, G, 5.

irent, ipse sē interēmit. Cleopātra sibi aspidem admīsit et venēnō eius exstincta est. Aegyptus per Ōctāviānum Augustum imperiō Rōmānō adiecta est praepositusque ei C. Cornēlius Gallus. Hunc primum Aegyptus Rōmānum iūdicem habuit.

**6. Cleopātra . . . exstincta est:** after Antonius had again been defeated by Octavianus at Alexandria he heard a false report of Cleopatra's death, and threw himself upon his sword. Cleopatra tried in vain the effect of her charms upon the conqueror. Unwilling to grace his triumph at Rome, she procured an asp, so the story goes, in a basket of figs brought to her by a countryman, and ended her life by its bite.

**8. ei:** dative with a compound verb.

**9. hunc primum . . . iūdicem:** Egypt had, however, submitted to a Roman protectorate ever since 168 B.C.

**6. aspis, -idis, f.,** a viper, asp.

*tr.*, place in command of, set over.

**8. prae-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum,**

**9. Gallus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

#### 40. AUGUSTUS EMPEROR

Augustus, warned by the example of Caesar, gradually but surely absorbed every power of the state, until he became in fact — though avoiding the form — an absolute monarch, the first Roman emperor.

Ita bellis tōtō orbe cōfectis Ōctāviānus Augustus Rōmam rediit, duodecimō annō quam cōsul fuerat. Ex eō rem pūblicam per quadrāgintā et quattuor annōs sōlus obtinuit, ante enim duodecim annis cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat. Ita  
5 ab initio principātus eius usque ad finem quinquāgintā et sex

**2. quam:** as in 27, 23.

**ex eō (supply annō):** after that.

**rem pūblicam . . . obtinuit,** administered the affairs of government. Augustus was very careful, however, to avoid the appearance of aiming at regal power. He ruled under the titles of *Imperātor*, or commander of the legions, *Augustus*, a mere honorary title with no invidious associations, and *Princeps*, which pointed him out only as the first citizen of a free republican state. He united in his own person the powers of consul, tribune, pontifex maximus, and censor; but he was very careful to leave undisturbed the forms and names of the republican magistracies and assemblies.

**5. initium, -ī, n. [in+eō],** beginning, origin.

**principātus, -ūs, m. [prīnceps],** chief authority, leadership.

annī fuērunt. Obiit autem septuāgēsīmō sextō annō morte commūnī in oppidō Campāniae Ātellā. Rōmae in campō Mārtiō sepultus est, vir quī nōn immeritō ex maximā parte deō similis est putātus, neque enim facile ūllus eō aut in bellis fēlicior fuit aut in pāce moderātor. Quadrāgintā et 10 quattuor annīs, quibus sōlus gessit imperium, civīlissimē vixit, in cūctōs liberālissimus, in amīcōs fidissimus, quōs tantīs ēvexit honōribus, ut paene aequāret fastigiō suō.

6. morte commūnī, a natural death.

9. deō: dative with the adjective *similis*.

neque enim implies an ellipsis, and (well he might be so considered) for hardly (nec facile) anyone, or and naturally, for, etc.

eō . . . fēlicior, more successful than he; eō is ablative of comparison.

13. paene aequāret (supply eōs), etc., he raised them almost to the level of his own preëminence.

6. ob-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr., perish, die.

7. commūnis, -e, adj., common; ordinary, natural.

Ātella, -ae, f., a town in Campania. Map II, D, 5.

campus, -i, m., plain, field; campus Mārtius, a plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars. Map III, C, 1-2.

8. immeritō, adv. [immeritus], undeservedly, unjustly.

10. fēlix, -icis, adj., successful, fortunate, happy.

moderātus, -a, -um, adj. [moderor],

self-controlled, temperate.

11. civīliter, adv. [civīlis], in a manner befitting a citizen.

12. cūctus, -a, -um, adj. [coniūctus], all together, all.

liberālis, -e, adj. [liber], liberal, generous.

fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō], faithful, loyal.

13. ē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr., elevate.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., [aequus], make equal, equalize.

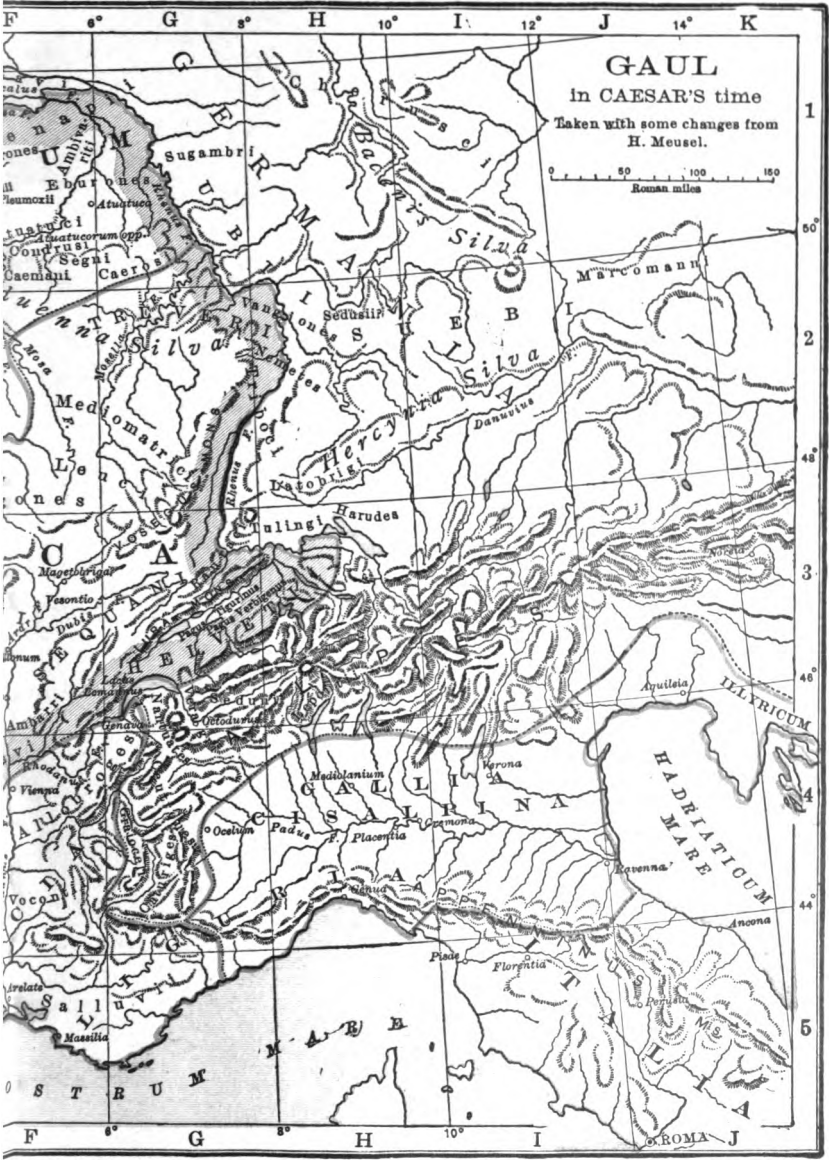
fastigium, -ī, n., roof, pinnacle; height, elevation; rank, dignity.











# GAUL

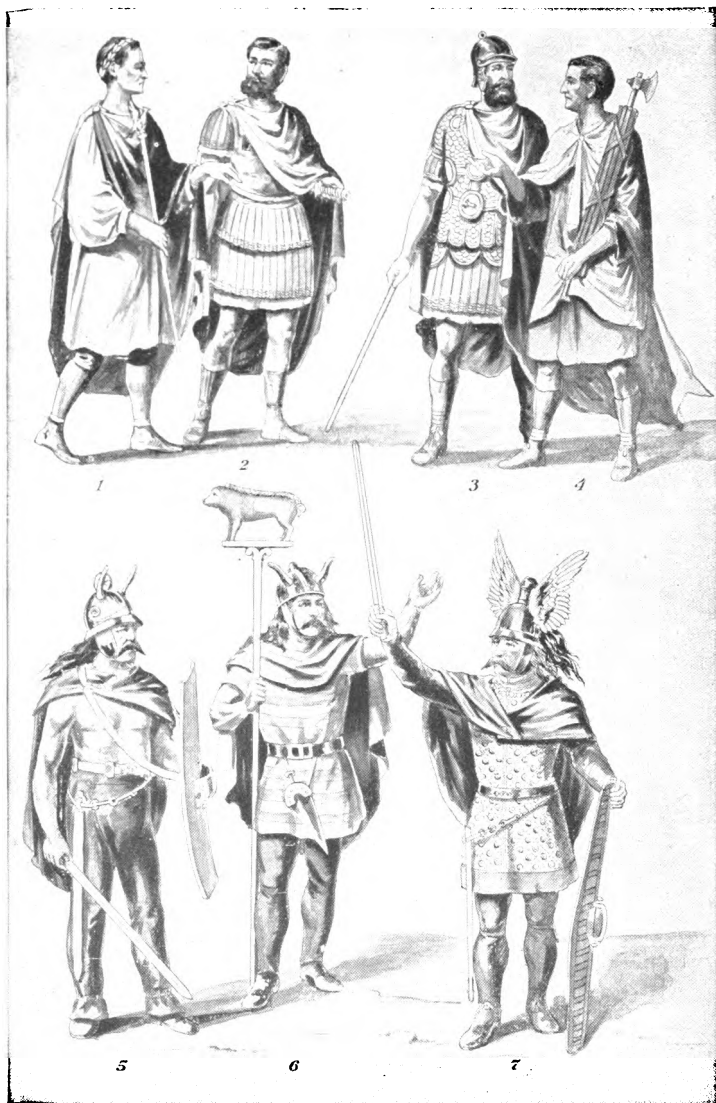
in CAESAR'S time

Taken with some changes from  
H. Meusel.

0 50 100 150  
Roman miles







1. *imperator*  
2. *legatus*  
3. *centurio*  
4. *lictor*

5. *Gallie warrior*  
6. *Gallie standard bearer*  
7. *Gallie chief*

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS

Digitized by Google

## PART II

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

### BOOK I

Among the great generals of the world, there is none who has left a more lasting impression upon the later course of history than Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul. He was born at Rome in 100 or 102 B.C.; it is not possible to determine with certainty which of the two dates is correct. His early life fell in the period of the civil strife between Marius and Sulla, and he became an adherent of the Marian party, later rising to a position of political leadership in this party. He held the offices of quaestor in 68, aedile in 65, and praetor in 62. He also obtained the office of pontifex maximus, thus becoming the formal head of the established religious organization of the state. In the year following his praetorship he went to Spain as governor (propraetor) of the division known as Farther Spain. He was chosen consul for the year 59, having the support of the influential leaders, Pompey and Crassus, with whom he had formed a political alliance — the First Triumvirate. In accordance with the terms of the coalition Caesar was appointed governor of Gaul at the end of his consulship, for the term of five years. This appointment was later extended for another five years. Soon after his arrival in the province he became involved in war with one of the Gallic tribes. This was the beginning of a series of campaigns which continued with only slight intervals for a period of nine years, and which resulted in the whole of Gaul being brought under Roman control.

During Caesar's absence from Rome his political enemies succeeded in organizing strongly the opposition to him, and in winning to their side his former associate, Pompey, who was jealous of the brilliant successes of Caesar. Civil war followed, in which Pompey was defeated and killed. Caesar was made dictator for life, and the foundation for the Roman imperial government was thus laid. But a conspiracy was formed against him by a group of leaders, some of whom were animated by a desire to restore the republican form of government, and he was assassinated in the year 44 B.C.

He was not only a great general, but also a statesman of large ability, and his plans for the reorganization of the government of Rome showed a clear understanding of the conditions and needs of the Roman State. His history of his campaigns in Gaul, from which the following selections are taken, was regarded by the Romans as an historical narrative of unusual merit.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garunna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et

5 *Description of the divisions of Gaul and their inhabitants.*

[For the convenience of teachers who may wish to vary the work of their classes at times by beginning with the selections from Caesar, notes referring to important points of grammatical usage which have appeared in Part I are repeated in Part II.]

1. *omnis, as a whole.* The word *Gallia* was sometimes applied to the entire region extending from the Rhine to the Pyrenees mountains. Again, it sometimes meant the central part of this larger area, lying between the Garonne river and the country of the Belgians. Caesar uses *omnis* here to indicate that he is employing the word in the first of these two meanings.

*est dīvisa*: to be translated by the English present tense, *is divided*. *dīvisa* serves to describe the condition of Gaul, and is not here used to form a true perfect passive with *est*.

*quārum . . . incolunt*: for the sake of clearer English, the verb may be changed to the passive in translation,—*one of which is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc. (lit. *one of which the Belgians inhabit*).—

2. *tertiam qui*: the antecedent of *quī* is the pronoun *ī*, understood, which is in the same construction as *Belgae* and *Aquitānī*. Continue the passive translation,—*the third (is inhabited) by those who are called*, etc.

*ipsōrum linguā*, in their own language; an ablative of means.

3. *Celtae, Gallī*: the predicate nominative may be used after the passive forms of verbs of *calling, naming, appointing*, and the like, as well as after forms of *sum*.

*nostrā*: supply *linguā*,—*in our language*.

*linguā*, in language; ablative of respect.

4. *inter sē*, from one another.

5. *Aquitānis*: ablative of separation. As may be seen by the map, the country of the Aquitanians was much smaller than the other two divisions of Gaul.

*Matrona et Sēquana*: the verb (*dīvidit*) used with this compound subject is in the singular number. The two rivers together formed one boundary.

2. *in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —, tr. and intr.*, dwell in, inhabit; dwell, live.

*Belgae, -ārum, m.*, the Belgians, a nation of northern Gaul. Map IV, D-G, 1-2.

*Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj.*, Aquitanian; as *subst., m.*, an Aquitanian; *pl.*, the Aquitanians, Aquitani.

*lingua, -ae, f.*, tongue; language.

3. *Celtae, -ārum, m.*, the Celts, a nation of central Gaul. Map IV, B-H, 1-4.

4. *institūtum, -i, n.* [institūō], custom, usage.

5. *Garunna (less correctly, Garumna), -ae, m.*, the Garonne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

*Matrona, -ae, m.*, the Marne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, E-F, 2.



Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui-  
buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē co-

6. *dīvidit*: in translating, supply *eōs* (referring to *Gallōs*) as object. Another *dīvidit* is also to be supplied in translation with *Garunna flūmen* as its subject and *Gallōs* as its object.

*hōrum*: genitive of the whole.

*Belgae*: names of tribes of the first declension are masculine.

7. *prōvinciae*: see Vocabulary under *Gallia* (2).

*longissimē absunt*, are the farthest away.

8. *minimē saepe*: modifies *important*, l. 9, as well as *commeant*,—very seldom (lit. least often), visit them and (hence) very seldom bring to them.

9. *ea quae*, the things which.

*ad effēminandōs animōs*, to make men unfit for war (lit. to weaken the courage).

10. *Germānīs*: dative with *proximī*. See App. 122; A. 384; B. 192; H. 434; H.-B. 362.

11. *quā dē causā*, for this reason.

12. *virtūte*: ablative of respect.

*ferē cotidiānis proeliīs*, in almost daily battles; abl. of means or manner.

6. *Sēquana*, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of Gaul. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

7. *propter-eā*, *adv.*, for this reason, therefore; *proptereā quod*, for the reason that, because.

*cultus*, -ūs, *m.* [*colō*], cultivation, training, civilization.

*hūmānitās*, -ātis, *f.* [*hūmānus*], civilization, refinement.

*prōvincia*, -ae, *f.*, province.

8. *mercātor*, -ōris, *m.* [*mercor*], merchant, trader.

*saepe*, *adv.*, often, frequently.

*com-meō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*meō*, go], go back and forth; with *ad*, visit.

9. *effēminō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ex+fēmīna*], make womanish, enervate, weaken.

*pertineō*, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [*per+teneō*], extend; tend, have to do with.

*importō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*in+portō*], bring in, import.

10. *proximus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of propior*], nearest, next, very near; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, neighbors.

11. *continenter*, *adv.* [*continēns*], continuously, without interruption, continually.

12. *cotidiānus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotīdiē*], daily; ordinary, usual.

- tidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.
- 15 Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem

13. suīs finibus, *from their own country*; ablative of separation.

14. eōs prohibent, *keep them out of*; *prohibēre* should never be rendered 'prohibit' in translating Caesar.

eōrum, *of the Germans*. It is sometimes necessary to translate a Latin pronoun into English by the noun to which it refers, in order to make the meaning clear.

15. eōrum ūna pars, *of these divisions, the one* (lit. *one part of these*).

quam . . . dictum est, *which, as has (above) been stated, the Gauls occupy*; *quam* is the object of *obtinēre*, the subject of which is *Gallōs*. The subject of *dictum est* is *Gallōs obtinēre*. See App. 279, a; A. 459; B. 331; H. 615; H.-B. 589. *initium capit ā*, *begins at* (lit. *takes its beginning from*).

16. continētur, *it is bounded*.

flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus: *ablatives of means*; supply *et* between *Ōceanō* and *finibus* in translating.

17. ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs, *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians*. It is not necessarily implied that these two tribes were the only ones whose lands bordered on the Rhine. They are probably referred to because their general location would be known to Roman readers.

18. ad septentriōnēs, *toward the north*.

Belgae oriuntur, *the country of the Belgians begins*. The use of the name of a tribe to denote the country in which the tribe lives is very common.

19. ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus, *at the farthest part of the country of Gaul*, i.e., of the country of the *Celtae*.

13. contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, *tr.* and *intr.* [com-+tendō], strive for, hasten; fight, contend.

14. prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prō+habeō], restrain, keep, prevent; hinder from.

16. contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [com-+teneō], keep together, keep, restrain, hem in; bound.

17. attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [ad+tangō], touch, reach; border upon, adjoin.

18. vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, be inclined, look toward; slope.

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [septem+triōnēs, plowing oxen], the stars of the Great Bear, *which were compared to oxen drawing a wagon, hence the north*.

19. inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, down, low; *comp.*, inferior, -ius, lower, inferior; *sup.*, infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest, at the foot of, at the bottom of.

partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

*The ambitious designs of Orgetorix. He persuades the Helvetians to emigrate.*

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte 5

20. spectant: keep the English verb in the singular number, as in the translation of *oriuntur* and *pertinent*.

orientem sōlem, the east.

22. est ad, lies next to.

23. inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs: i.e., to the northwest.

1. nōbilissimus, the most prominent.

2. M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso; ablative absolute. Since the term of the consul was for one year, the Romans regularly indicated the year in which an event occurred by mentioning the names of the consuls for that year.

3. rēgnī cupiditāte, by a desire for (lit. of) royal power; cupiditāte may be explained either as an ablative of cause or of means.

coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis, a league of chiefs (or of influential men).

4. cīvitatī persuāsit, persuaded his countrymen (lit. the state); cīvitatī is a dative depending on *persuāsit*. See App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426, 2; H.-B. 362.

ut exīrent, to emigrate; a substantive clause used as the object of *persuāsit*.

5. perfacile esse, (saying) that it was very easy; indirect discourse, depending on the word *bf* saying implied by the preceding statement.

20. spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [freq. of speciō, spy], look at, observe; face, lie, be situated.

21. Aquitānia, -ae, f., Aquitania, southwestern Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

23. occāsus, -ūs, m. [occidō], a falling, setting; occāsus sōlis and occāsus, sunset; the west.

1. dītissimus, -a, -um, sup. of dīves, rich.

2. Orgetorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

Messālā, -ae, m., a cognomen; esp.,

Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61 B.C.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen; esp. Marcus Pupius Piso, consul 61 B. C.

3. coniūratiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō], conspiracy, league.

4. per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr., persuade, induce.

5. ex-eō, -ire, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr., go out, go or come forth.

per-facilis, -e, adj., very easy.

omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius iis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit, alterā ex parte monte  
 10 Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā

**6. omnibus:** dative with a compound of *prae*.

**praestarent:** subjunctive in a *cum* causal clause.

**imperiō potiri,** to gain the control. What deponent verbs have their objects in the ablative?

**id . . . persuāsit quod,** he persuaded them (to do) this more easily because; hōc is an ablative of cause, explained by *quod* . . . continentur, line 7.

**7. loci nātūrā,** by the nature of the country; for the case of *nātūrā*, see note on *cupiditāte*, line 3.

**continentur:** the meaning is not the same as in ch. 1, line 16. See the Vocabulary.

**8. ūnā ex parte,** on one side.

**flūmine:** ablative of means, as is also *monte*, line 9, *lacū*, line 11, and *flūmine*, line 11.

**lātissimō atque altissimō,** very wide and deep.

**9. agrum,** country. **alterā ex parte,** on a second side.

**10. tertiā:** supply *ex parte*; the phrase is parallel to *alterā ex parte*.

**12. his rēbus fiēbat, ut,** freely, the result of all this was (lit. from these things it came about that).

**vagārentur:** subjunctive in a substantive clause used as the subject of *fiēbat*.

**13. finitimīs:** dative with *inferre*. See App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376. **quā ex parte,** and from this fact.

**6. potior, -iŕi, -itus, intr.** [potis, able], become master of, get possession of.

**7. undique, adv.** [unde+que], from all sides, on all sides.

**nātūra, -ae, f.** [nāscor], nature, character; appearance, shape.

**8. lātus, -a, -um, adj.,** broad, extensive.

**altus, -a, -um [pf. part. of alō],** high, lofty; deep.

**10. Iūra, -ae, m.,** the Jura mountains. Map IV, G-H, 3.

**11. lacus, -ūs, m.,** lake.

**Lemannus, -i, m.** (with or without lacus), Lake Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

**12. lātē, adv.** [lātus], widely, extensively, far and wide; longē lātēque, far and wide.

**vagor, -āri, -ātus, intr.** [vagus], roam about, roam, wander.

ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque 15 fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

*The Helvetians prepare to emigrate. The conspiracy of Orgetorix.*

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiēdum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās

14. hominēs . . . cupidī, (as they were) men fond of engaging in war; bellandī is a genitive of the gerund.

magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, they were greatly dissatisfied (lit. were affected by great unhappiness).

15. prō multitudīne hominum, in proportion to the great number of their people.

glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis, reputation for bravery in war (lit. of war and of bravery).

16. angustōs finēs, a small country.

sē habēre: indirect discourse with arbitrābantur.

17. milia: accusative of extent. passuum: genitive of the whole.

1. his rēbus adductī, influenced by these circumstances.

2. ea, those things; object of comparāre.

ad proficiēdum pertinērent, were needed in connection with (lit. pertained to) their departure; proficiēdum is a gerund; pertinērent is subjunctive because of the implied indirect discourse. See App. 273; A. 592; B. 323; H. 649, I; H.-B. 535, a.

4. quam maximum numerum, as large a number as possible.

sēmentēs quam maximās facere, to sow as large crops as possible. What is the literal translation of sēmentēs facere?

14. bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [bellum], wage war, fight.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō], desirous, eager, fond.

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō], pain, distress, vexation, grief.

16. fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis], bravery, courage.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined.

arbitror, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [arbitr], decide, think, believe.

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus], length, extent.

17. lātitudō, -inis, *f.* [lātus], width, extent.

2. per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, disturb, alarm; influence.

3. com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare, secure, obtain.

iūmentum, -i, *n.* [iungō], a yoke or draft animal, beast of burden.

carrus, -i, *m.*, cart.

4. coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [com-+emō], buy up, purchase.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], planting, sowing.

- 5 facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxerunt; in tertium annum perfectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,  
 10 Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupāret, quod

5. *suppeteret*, *might be on hand*; subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

6. *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, *to accomplish these things*; a gerundive phrase.

7. *sibi*, lit. *for themselves*; a dative of reference. The word may be omitted in translation. *dūxerunt*, *they considered*.

*in tertium annum*, *for the third year*.

8. *lēge*, *by law*; ablative of means.

*cōfirmant*: in Latin, a present tense is frequently used to refer to a past act, for the sake of making the event appear more vivid to the reader. This is called the Historical Present. It should generally be translated by an English past tense.

*dux*: predicate nominative; the case use is the same as that of *Cellae* and *Galli*, ch. 1, line 3.

9. *suscipit*, *took upon himself*. It was necessary that some one be sent to the neighboring tribes to make purchases and to arrange treaties. Orgetorix volunteered to do this.

*Casticō*: for the dative, see note on *cīvitātī persuāsit*, ch. 2, line 4.

10. *filiō*, *Sēquanō*: both words in apposition with *Casticō*.

11. *annōs*: accusative of duration of time.

*senātū*: ablative of agent.

*populī Rōmānī*: modifies *senātū*. The title, "friend," was a form of compliment intended to secure the favor of a foreign ruler.

12. *ut . . . occupāret*: a substantive clause, like *ut . . . exīrent* in ch. 2, line 4. *quod*: relative pronoun referring to *rēgnum*.

5. *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.* [fruor], grain.  
*suppetō*, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *intr.*  
 [sub+petō], be at hand, be in store, suffice.

6. *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
 [com+firmō], strengthen, establish; assert, declare.

7. *biennium*, -ī, *n.* [bis+annus], period of two years, two years.

*satis*, *indecl. adj.*, enough, sufficient; as *subst.*, enough; as *adv.*, enough,

sufficiently; rather, very.

*perfectiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor], a setting out, departure.

8. *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.*  
 [dē+legō], choose, select.

*lēgatiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, depute], embassy.

9. *Casticus*, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequanians.

10. *Catamantaloedēs*, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequanians.

pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque 15  
filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti 20

13. **Dumnorīgī**: in the same construction as *Casticō*, line 9, and *civitātī*, ch. 2, line 4.

14. **quī**: refers to *Dumnorīgī*. **eō tempore**, at that time.

15. **maximē plēbī acceptus erat**, was very popular with the common people.

**cōnārētur**: the same construction as *occupāret*, line 12.

16. **perfacile factū esse**, was very easy to do; the subject of *esse* is *perficere*, which has the object *cōnāta*; *factū* is a supine. It may be omitted in translation.

**illis**: refers to the two chiefs, Dumnorix and Casticus.

18. **obtentūrus**: for the translation of the future active participle, see App. 196; A. 195; B. 115; H. 236; H.-B. 162.

**nōn esse dubium, quā**, there was no doubt that; indirect discourse, with a word of saying implied in *probat*.

19. **plūrimum possent**, were the most powerful.

20. **conciliātūrum**: supply *esse*. With the forms of the future active and perfect passive infinitives the omission of *esse* is not uncommon.

13. **item**, *adv.*, also, likewise.

**Dumnorix**, -igis, *m.*, a *Haeduan* chief, brother of *Diviciacus*.

**Haeduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *Haeduan*; as *subst.*, *m.*, a *Haeduan*; *pl.*, the *Haedui*, or *Haeduans*, a powerful *Gallie* tribe. Map IV, E-F, 3.

**Diviciācus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the *Haedui*, friendly to the *Romans*.

15. **acceptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *accipiō*], acceptable, pleasing, popular.

**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, undertake, attempt.

16. **mātirimōnium**, -ī, *n.* [*māter*], marriage, matrimony: in *mātirimōnium dare*, give in marriage.

17. **probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, approve of, prove, demonstrate; adopt.

**cōnātum**, -ī, *n.* [*cōnor*], attempt, undertaking.

**perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*per+faciō*], accomplish, complete.

18. **dubius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.

**quā**, *conj.* [*quī+ne*], but, but that, so that not; after words of doubt or ignorance, that, but that; after words of hindering, from.

20. **conciliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*concilium*], conciliate, win, secure.

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*ōrō*], a speech, argument, words.

inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērānt.

*The conspiracy  
is discovered.  
Trial and death  
of Orgetorix.*

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominū milia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum

21. *inter sē . . . dant*, they bound themselves by a solemn pledge and an oath (lit. exchange a pledge and an oath).

*rēgnō occupātō*, when they had seized the royal authority: What is the construction?

22. *tōtīus Galliae potiri*, to make themselves the masters of all Gaul; *potiri* which usually has its object in the ablative (as in ch. 2, line 6) here governs a genitive.

1. *per indicium*, through informers (lit. by disclosure).

2. *mōribus suis*: for the case and the form of translation of this phrase, see App. 142, a; A. 418, a; B. 220, 3; H. 475, 3; H.-B. 414.

*causam dicere*, to plead his case.

3. *damnātum . . . cremārētur*, freely, if he should be condemned, the punishment to be inflicted would be death by fire; *damnātum* is a participle agreeing with *eum* understood, which is the object of *sequi*; the verb *oportēbat* has as its subject *poenam sequi*; *igni* is an ablative; *ut cremārētur* is a substantive clause, in apposition with *poenam*.

4. *causae dictiōnis*, for pleading the case; *causae* is a genitive depending on *dictiōnis*, and *dictiōnis* depends on *diē*.

5. *ad*, about; a common meaning of *ad* with numerals.

22. *firmus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, vigorous, firm.

23. *spērō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [spēs], hope, anticipate.

1. *indicium*, -ī, *n.* [cf. *indicō*, reveal], information, disclosure, proof.

*ē-nūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, report, disclose, reveal.

2. *vinculum*, -ī, *n.* [vinciō], a bond, fastening; *pl.*, bonds, chains.

3. *oportet*, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is best, ought.

4. *cremō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, burn.

*dictiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō], speaking, pleading.

5. *iudicium*, -ī, *n.* [iudicō], trial; judgment, decision.

*familia*, -ae, *f.* [famulus], slaves, a household; family.

6. *cliēns*, -entis, *m.*, dependent, vassal.

*obaerātus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+aes], in debt; as *subst.*, *m.*, debtor



magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

*The Helvetians complete their preparations for departure.*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunť, ut,

7. nē diceret: negative clause of purpose.

8. sē ēripuit, *escaped*.

9. armīs, *by (force of) arms*; modifies *exsequī*.

cōnārētur, cōgerent: subjunctives in a descriptive clause of situation.

11. ut: what is the meaning of *ut* when it introduces an indicative?

quī . . . cōnscīverit, *that he committed suicide*; for the subjunctive, compare App. 229, d; A. 558; B. 298; H. 594, II; H.-B. 521, 3, b).

1. id: object of *facere*.

2. ut . . . exeant, (*namely*) *to go forth*; a substantive clause, in apposition with *id*.

4. oppida, vicōs, aedificia: objects of *incendunt*.

ad: in the same meaning as in ch. 4, line 5.

5. frūmentum: object of *combūrunť*.

6. portātūrī erant, *they were going to carry*.

7. condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [com-+dūcō], bring together, assemble.

8. ēripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [ex+rapīō], snatch away, take away; rescue.

in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [citō, put in quick motion], urge on, impel; arouse.

9. iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; authority.

ex-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow out; enforce, assert.

10. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister],

magistracy; government; magistrate.

11. suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+speciō, spy], suspicion, distrust.

1. nihilum, -ī, *n.* [nihil], nothing; nihilō minus, none the less.

5. aedificium, -ī, *n.* [aedificō], a building.

incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsūm, *tr.*, set fire to, burn.

6. portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry; transport.

combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mēsum molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suis vicisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

7. domum: accusative of Place to Which, depending on *reditiōnis*.

spē: ablative absolute. sublātā: from *tollō*. parātiōrēs, better prepared. ad omnia pericula subeunda, to face all dangers; gerundive construction.

8. essent: subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

trium mēsum molita cibāria, a three months' supply of ground grain; *mēsum* is a genitive of measure.

9. domō efferre, to take from home; the subject of *efferre* is *quemque*.

10. utī . . . proficiscantur, to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out along with them; *oppidīs* is ablative absolute; *cōnsiliō* is an ablative, depending on *ūsī*. What is the literal translation of these words?

11. Boiōs: the country of Bohemia derives its name from the name of this tribe.

13. receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt, they accept as allies and join to their number; *receptōs* agrees with *Boiōs*, the object of *adsciscunt*.

7. reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō], a returning, return.

8. sub-eō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *tr.*, go under; take the place of; endure, submit to.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [mola, mill], grind.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions.

quis-que, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, each one, every one; as *adj.*, each, every.

9. efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex+ferō], bring or carry out, bring; spread abroad.

Rauraci, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. Map IV, G, 3.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, G-H, 3.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, H, 2.

10. ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *intr.*, use, employ; adopt, observe, exercise.

11. ex-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*, burn up, consume.

ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus], together, along with, at the same time.

Bōi (Boīi), -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe. Map IV, E, 3.

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Norican, belonging to the Norici.

Nōreia, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Norici.

13. ad-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, approve], take to oneself as allies, admit, receive.

*The two routes.  
The Helvetians  
determine to  
march through  
the Roman  
Province.*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī 'prohibēre 5 possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis

1. **itineribus**: omit in translation. The antecedent of a relative pronoun in Latin is not infrequently thus repeated in the relative clause.

2. **domō**: translated like the same form in ch. 5, line 9.

**possent**: subjunctive in a relative clause of description (or clause of characteristic).

3. **inter**, etc.: the narrowest point is the modern Pas de l'Écluse.

4. **vix quā**, where with difficulty.

**dūcerentur**, could be taken; for the subjunctive, see App. 230, c; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 1; H.-B. 517, 2.

5. **altissimus**: a Latin superlative is sometimes translated by *very* with the positive degree of the adjective or adverb.

**prohibēre**, prevent (any one from passing).

6. **possent**: in a clause of result.

**alterum**, the other, of the two roads above referred to.

7. **expeditius**, freer from obstacles.

8. **pācātī erant**, had been brought under Roman authority; this is the regular meaning of *pācāre* in Caesar.

**Rhodanus fluit**: Caesar's statement that the second of these two routes was the easier turns on the fact that the Rhone was so easily crossed as to afford no serious obstacle, and that the Helvetians looked for no opposition from the Allobroges.

1. **omnīnō**, *adv.* [omnis], entirely, in all, only; with negatives, at all.

3. **difficilis**, -e, *adj.* [dis-+facilis], hard, difficult.

4. **quā**, *adv.* [quī], where; by which way.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one by one, one at a time.

5. **impendeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [in+pendeō], overhang.

**per-paucī**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few.

7. **expeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of expediō], unimpeded, free, easy; light-armed.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic tribe. Map IV, F-G, 4.

8. **nūper**, *adv.*, lately, recently.

**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pāx], make peaceful, subdue, pacify.

**fluō**, -ere, flūxi, —, *intr.*, flow.

**nōn-nūllus**, or **nōn nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulis.

9. vadō, *by fording*; ablative of means.

extrēmum oppidum, etc., *the farthest town of the Allobroges is Geneva, and it lies next to the country of the Helvetians.* The modern city of Geneva is built on both sides of the Rhone.

11. sēsē persuāsūrōs existimābant, *they thought that they would persuade.*

12. bonō animō, *in a friendly attitude*; descriptive ablative.

vidērentur: what do the passive forms of *videō* generally mean?

13. vel vī coāctūrōs, *or that they would compel (them) by force*; with coāctūrōs (and also with persuāsūrōs, line 11) *esse* is understood.

ut paterentur, *to allow*; a substantive clause depending on persuāsūrōs and coāctūrōs.

14. omnibus rēbus comparātis: ablative absolute.

15. dīcunt, *appointed*; historical present.

quā diēs: another instance of a repeated antecedent. See note on *itineribus*, line 1. The noun *diēs* is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular; in the plural it is always masculine.

conveniant, *they were to meet*; a relative clause of purpose.

16. a. d. v. Kal. Apr. = ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilis, *the fifth day before the Kalends of April*, the 28th of March.

L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō: for the form of translation and for construction see note on ch. 2, line 2.

9. vadum, -ī, *n.* ford, shoal.

10. Genava, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Allobroges, modern Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

12. nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

13. vīs, *acc. vim., abl. vī, f.*, force, violence; great number; *pl.*, virēs, -ium, strength.

14. patior, -ī, passus, *tr.*, endure, permit, allow.

15. ripa, -ae, *f.*, the bank of a river.

16. V = quintus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fifth.

Kalendae, -arum, *f.*, the first day of the month, the Kalends.

Apr., *abbr. for Aprilis, -e, adj.* [aperiō], of April, April.

Gabinus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Aulus Gabinus, consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C.

*Caesar hastens into Gaul and delays the Helvetians by pretzls.*

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat 5 (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgatiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine 10 ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod

1. Caesarī . . . esset, when it had been reported to Caesar; id is explained by the indirect discourse, eōs . . . cōnārī.

3. urbe: meaning Rome.

quam maximis potest itineribus, by as long marches as possible. Compare the translation of quam maximum numerum, in the note on ch. 3, line 4.

4. ad Genavam, in the neighborhood of Geneva. If Caesar had wished to say "arrived at Geneva" he would have omitted ad.

prōvinciae tōtī imperat, he levied on the whole province.

5. quam maximum potest numerum: see note on line 3 of this chapter.

6. Galliā ulteriōre: the region commonly known as "the Province" and also independent Gaul were included under this name. Gallia citerior lay south of the Alps and extended some distance south of the Po.

legiō ūna: this was the tenth legion.

7. ad Genavam, at Geneva. Notice the difference between this phrase here and in line 4.

8. certiōrēs factī sunt, were informed. lēgātōs, as envoys.

10. quī dicerent, who were to say; a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, that they intended; sibi is dative of possession.

11. per prōvinciam: apparently, they intended to march south along the east side of the Rhone, and then recross and turn toward the west.

2. mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [mātūrus], make ripe; make haste, hasten.

4. ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., farther, beyond, ulterior.

per-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., arrive, reach, come.

8. certus, -a, -um [pf. part. of cernō], certain; exact, trustworthy.

9. Nammeius, -ī, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

prīnceps, -īpis, adj. [prīmus+capiō], first, foremost; as subst., m., leader, chief.

11. maleficiū, -ī, n. [maleficus, wicked], harm, mischief.

aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et  
 15 sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.  
 20

**12. rogāre, (and) that they asked;** infinitive in indirect discourse, depending on *dicerent*, like *esse*, line 10.

**ut liceat, that it be permitted;** a substantive clause, object of *rogāre*.  
*voluntāte, with his consent;* ablative of attendant circumstance.

**13. memoriā tenēbat, remembered;** followed by indirect discourse.

**14. occīsum:** supply *esse* (also with *pulsum* and *missum*).

**15. sub iugum:** for a description of the 'yoke' here referred to, see note on *sub iugum mīsil*, page 72.

**concēdendum (esse), that the request ought to be granted.**

**hominēs:** subject of *temperātūrōs (esse)*.

**16. animō:** descriptive ablative; what English preposition is generally used in translating this class of ablatives? See App. 141; A. 415; B. 224, 1; H. 473, 2; H.-B. 443.

**17. faciundī = faciendī.**

**18. posset:** in a clause of purpose.

**dum . . . convenirent, until the soldiers should assemble;** *convenirent* is an anticipatory subjunctive.

**19. diem sē sūmptūrum, that he would take time (lit. a day).**

**20. ad Id. Apr. (ad Idūs Aprilis) on the Ides of April, April 13th.**

**reverterentur, they should return;** a command in indirect discourse. Caesar said *revertiminī* (imperative), *return*.

**12. rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** ask, request; ask for, beg, implore.

**15. concēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [com-+cēdō], yield;** concede, permit, grant.

**16. inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+amicus], unfriendly, hostile; as subst., m., an enemy (personal, or not in war).**

**facultās, -ātis, f. [facilis], opportunity, power; supply.**

**17. temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**

[tempus], restrain one's self, refrain.

**18. spatium, -i, n., space, interval;** period of time, time.

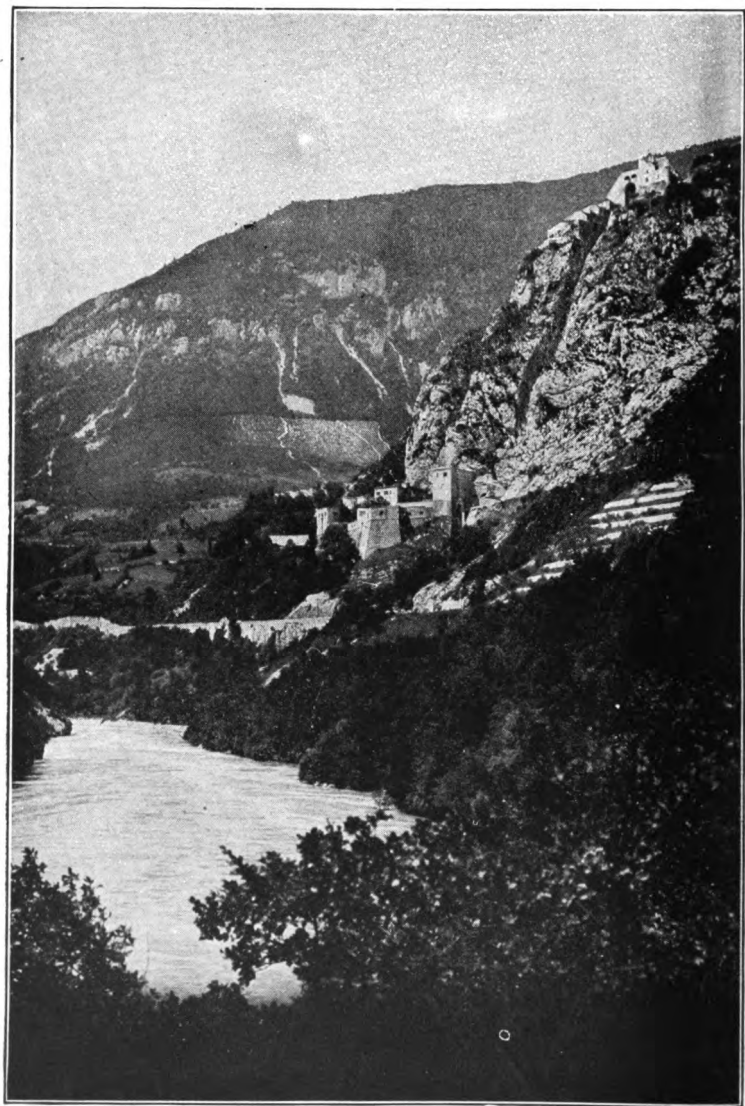
**inter-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., intervene; pass; occur.**

**19. dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** deliberate, consider.

**20. sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr. [sub+emō], take, assume; undertake.**

**quis, quae (qua), quid, indef. pron.,** anybody, anyone, anything, any.



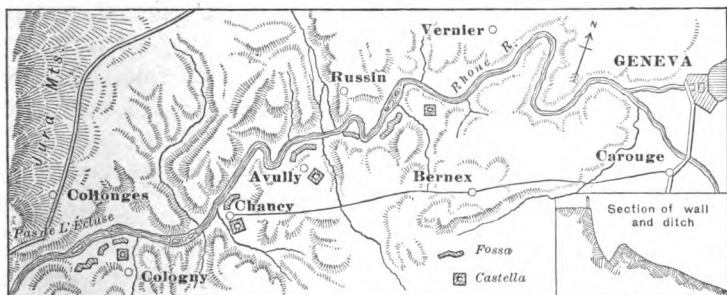


**PAS DE L'ECLUSE**



*Caesar fortifies the left bank of the Rhone and prevents the Helvetians from crossing.*

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire



MAP OF CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

1. eā legiōne, militibusque, with that legion and the soldiers; ablative of means.

5. milia passuum XVIII (ūndēvigintī), a distance of nineteen miles.

mūrū . . . fossamque, a wall sixteen feet in height, and a ditch. These defenses were not continuous. The left bank of the Rhone is in most places so steep as to render fortifications unnecessary. Only the points where the bank is low needed to be protected by the wall and ditch.

pedum: genitive of measure.

7. quō . . . posset, that he might be able. A clause of purpose containing a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is introduced by quō instead of ut. sē invītō, against his will; ablative absolute.

3. in-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr., flow into, flow, empty.

5. XVIII = ūndēvigintī, indecl. num. adj. [ūnus + dē + vigintī], nineteen.

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], height, depth. pēs, pedis, m., foot; a foot (as a measure).

6. sēdecim, indecl. num. adj. [sex + decem], sixteen.

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,

tr., lead through, bring, lead; extend; construct.

7. dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., distribute; arrange, place at intervals, station.

com-mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr., fortify strongly; construct.

quō, conj., in order that, that.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., against one's will, unwilling.

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē  
 10 mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere  
 15 possent, cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā

9. negat sē posse, *he said that he could not.*

10. mōre et exemplō, *in accordance with the usage and precedent.*  
 iter, *a right of way.* ūllī: indirect object of dare.

11. vim facere, *to employ force.*

prohibitūrum (*esse*): supply sē as subject.

12. eā spē dēiectī, *disappointed in that hope; spē is ablative of separation.*

14. sī . . . cōnātī, *tried (to see) if they could break through; cōnātī is a participle, agreeing with Helvētiī, as is also repulsi, line 16. It is best translated by an English indicative, as above. Supply the conjunction "but" to connect with the translation of dēstitērunt.*

16. hōc cōnātū, *from this attempt.*

1. ūna via, *only the road.* Sēquanīs invītis: for construction and form of translation see note on sē invītō ch. 8, line 7.

2. his cum, etc.: order for translation, *cum nōn possent persuādere his. suā sponte, through their own influence.*

10. exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent.

12. dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [dē+iaciō], throw down; cast down, disappoint; drive.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft, boat.

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), *adj.*, several, many, a great many.

14. nōn-numquam or nōn numquam, *adv.*, sometimes, at times.

interdiū, *adv.* [inter+diēs], in the daytime, by day.

noctū, *adv.* [nox], by night.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,

*tr. and intr.*, break through, force one's way.

15. mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō], fortifications, intrenchments.

conkursus, -ūs, *m.* [concurrō], running together; attack, onset.

16. re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.*, drive back, repel.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor], attempt, undertaking.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, stop, desist; desist from, abandon.

2. angustiae, -ārum, *f.* [angustus], narrowness, narrow place, defile.

sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgēm Hæduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

*The Helvetians obtain permission to march through the country of the Sequanians.*

Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et

quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesarī nūtiātūr, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum

4. eō dēprecātōre, *with him as mediator*; ablative absolute.

5. grātiā et largitiōne, *because of his popularity and generosity. plūrimum poterat, was very influential.*

8. cupiditatē rēgnī: for translation of this phrase see note on ch. 2, line 3. novīs rēbus, *a revolution*; dative, depending on *studēbat*. See note on *civitātī*, ch. 2, line 4. quam plūrimās, *as many as possible*.

9. suō beneficiō obstrictās, *under obligation because of his favors* (lit. *bound by his kindness*).

10. ut . . . patiantur, *permission for the Helvetians to pass through their country*.

11. utī inter sēsē dent, *that they exchange*; a substantive clause, object of *perficit*.

12. nē . . . prohibeant, *that they will not prevent*; a purpose clause. itinere, *from the journey*.

1. Helvētiīs esse in animō, *that the Helvetians intended*; the same form of phrase as *sibi esse in animō*, ch. 7, line 10.

3. spontis, sponte, *gen. and abl. sing. from an obsolete nom. spōns, f. [cf. spondeō], of one's own accord, voluntarily; suā sponte, of one's own accord.*

4. dēprecātōr, -ōris, *m. [dēprecor], mediator, intercessor.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. [in+patrō, effect], obtain (by request), accomplish; gain one's request.*

5. grātiā, -ae, *f. [grātus], favor, gratitude; friendship; influence. largitiō, -ōnis, f. [largior], giving freely, liberality.*

8. studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr., be eager, desire, wish.*

9. beneficium, -ī, *n. [bene+faciō], benefit, favor, kindness.*

ob-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr., bind, place under obligations.*

Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prō-vinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit

Caesar brings up reinforcements to oppose their passage.

3. quae civitās, a state (or tribe) which. The Roman province included the territory inhabited by a number of different Gallic tribes which had submitted to Rome.

4. id: subject of *fieret*; we should expect *sī* to stand first in the sentence. One or more words of a subordinate clause sometimes precede the conjunction.

magnō . . . futūrum, that it would be a very dangerous thing for the province (lit. would be with great danger); prōvinciae is a genitive; perīculō is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

6. locis: dative depending on *finitimōs* (neighbors to).

7. ei mūnitiōnī T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit, placed Titus Labienus, the lieutenant, in command of the fortification; mūnitiōnī is a dative, depending on a compound of *prae*. Observe that in addition to the dative, an accusative (here T. Labiēnum) may be used with a compound if the uncompounded verb is transitive.

9. magnīs itineribus, by forced marches; ablative of manner.

10. trēs: object of *ēdūcit*.

2. Santonī, -ōrum, or -um, m., a people between the Loire and Garonne. Map IV, C-D, 4.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., the people of Tolosa, modern Toulouse. Map IV, D, 5.

4. intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. and intr. [inter+legō], perceive; understand, comprehend.

5. bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellicus], warlike, fierce.

6. patēns, -entis, adj. [pateō], open, exposed, unprotected.

7. frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum], pertaining to grain; fertile; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions.

8. Labiēnus, -ī, m., a cognomen; esp. Titus Atius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [prae+faciō], place over, place in command of.

9. cōnscrībō, -ere, -īpsī, -īptum, tr. [com+scribō], enroll, levy, enlist.

10. Aquileia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name. Map II, D, 1.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [hiems], winter, pass the winter.

hibernus, -a, -um, adj. [hiems], of winter, winter; hiberna, -ōrum, (sc. castra), winter-quarters.

et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidū citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs 15 Vocontiorum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*The Helvetians devastate the country of the Haeduan. Gallic tribes seek aid from Caesar.*

11. *Helvētīi* iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omni 5

11. *quā proximum iter erat*, by the most direct route (lit. where the nearest road was.)

13. *itinere*: translated like the same word in ch. 9, line 12.

14. *complūribus . . . pulsīs*: order for translation, *his pulsīs complūribus proeliis*. Of these ablatives, *his pulsīs* is an ablative absolute, and *proeliis* is an ablative of means.

15. *citeriōris prōvinciae*: commonly called Nearer Gaul, or Cisalpine Gaul. See note on ch. 7, line 6.

4. *sē suaque*, themselves and their possessions.

*possent*: subjunctive in a *cum* causal clause.

5. *rogātum*: a supine, expressing purpose. For translation, see App. 295; A. 509; B. 340, 1; H. 633; H.-B. 618.

*auxilium*: object of *rogātum*. The supine of a transitive verb, like any other of its forms, may govern an object.

*ita sē . . . meritōs esse*, they had at all times deserved such treatment from the Roman people (lit. had so deserved); indirect discourse, depending on a word of saying implied by *rogātum*.

12. *Ceutronēs*, -um, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

*Graioceli*, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

13. *Caturigēs*, -um, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

14. *Ocelum*, -i, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul. Map IV, G, 4.

15. *citerior*, -ius, comp. adj. [*citer*, on this side], on this side, nearer;

*Gallia Citerior*, Cisalpine Gaul.

16. *Vocontii*, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

17. *Segusiāvī*, -ōrum, m., a tribe west of the Rhone, about modern Lyons. Map IV, E-F, 4.

2. *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [*trāns*+*dūcō*], lead across or over, bring over.

tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, neces-sārī et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt,  
 10 sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium pro-hibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs posses-siōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōn-strant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus

6. ut . . . dēbuerint: a clause of result.

7. agrī vāstārī: supply nōn dēbuerint (also with liberī abdūcī),—that their lands ought not to have been laid waste.

9. certiōrem faciunt, informed; the same phrase as in ch. 7, line 8.

10. dēpopulātīs: the perfect participle of a deponent verb is sometimes used with passive meaning.

nōn facile . . . prohibēre, had difficulty in defending their towns against the violence of the enemy (lit. were not easily keeping the violence of the enemy from their towns).

12. fugā, in flight; the ablative may be regarded as expressing either means or manner.

13. sibi . . . reliquī, that they had nothing left but the bare ground; reliquī is a genitive depending on nihil. The Helvetians had swept away in their march the crops and herds of the unfortunate tribes which lay in their path, leaving only desolation.

14. nōn exspectandum sibi, that he ought not to wait; sibi is a dative of agent.

dum, until; introducing an anticipatory subjunctive.

6. cōnspectus, -ūs, m. [cōnspicīō], the same blood, related; as subst., sight, presence.

7. servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], slavery, servitude.

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead away, take away.

8. ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., take by storm, capture.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. [dē+ habeo], owe, be under obligation; ought, must.

Ambarri, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe. Map IV, F, 3-4.

9. cōsanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [com-+sanguineus, of blood], of

the same blood, related; as subst., m., kinsman, relative.

10. dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus, tr., lay waste, ravage; pf. part. with pass. force, ravaged.

11. possessiō, -ōnis, f. [possidō], possession, occupation; property.

12. dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., point out, show; state.

13. solum, -i, n., the bottom, ground; earth, soil.

14. ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., wait for, await, wait to see.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. [status], set up; place; resolve; decide.

fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūptīs in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent. 15

*Caesar destroys  
the rear guard  
of the Helve-  
tians as they  
cross the Saône.*

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduō-

rum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrē-

dibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem  
fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus

iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior 5

factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētīōs id flūmen

trādūxisse, quārtam vērō partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam

esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus

ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs adgressus magnam partem 10

15. fortūnis cōnsūptīs: ablative absolute.

1. flūmen est Arar, *there is a river (called) the Saône.*

2. incrēdibili lēnitāte, *of an exceedingly sluggish current*; ablative of description.

3. oculis iūdicārī nōn possit, *one cannot judge by the eye* (lit. *it cannot be judged*); a clause of result.

4. fluat: subjunctive in an indirect question.

ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs, *by means of rafts and boats fastened together.*

6. trēs . . . trādūxisse, *that the Helvetians had already led three fourths of their number across that river*; partēs and flūmen are objects of trādūxisse, the former depending on the verb element of the compound and the latter on the prepositional element; cōpia usually means *troops or forces*, but here it refers to the whole body of the migrating Helvetians.

7. reliquam esse, *still remained* (lit. *was remaining*). Supply a conjunction to connect the two clauses of the indirect discourse.

8. dē tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch.*

15. cōsumō, -ere, -sūpsī, -sūptum, *tr.* [com-+sūmō], consume, destroy; use up, spend.

1. Arar, -aris, *m.*, a tributary of the Rhone, the modern Saône. *Map IV, F-G, 3-4.*

2. in-crēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [crēdibilis, believable], incredible, extraordinary.

3. lēnitās, -ātis, *f.* [lēnis], smoothness, gentleness.

uter, utra, utrum, *interrog. pron.*, which of the two? which?

4. iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [iūdex], judge, think, consider.

linter, lintris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

7. citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [citer, on this side], on this side of.

8. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a watching, watch.

10. impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of impediō], hindered, impeded; difficult, impassable.

in-opināns, -antis, *adj.* [opinor, think], unawares.

eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerať et eius exercitum subiugum mīserať. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum públicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est,

11. *sēsē fugae mandārunť*, took to flight; *mandārunť* is a contracted form of *mandāvērunt*.

*in proximās silvās*: we should expect the ablative with *in* here, as the phrase seems to denote Place Where. But with the verb *abdō* the Romans commonly used the accusative, as if to express the idea of going to a place for the purpose of concealment.

12. *Tigurīnus*: a predicate nominative, like *Cellae* and *Gallī*, ch. 1, line 3, and *dux*, ch. 3, line 8.

14. *domō*: with what words is Place from Which expressed by the ablative without a preposition?

*exisset*: subjunctive in a descriptive clause of situation.

17. *quae . . . persolvit*: order for translation, *ea pars civitātis Helvētiae quae intulerat insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō prīnceps*, etc. The antecedent of the relative is put in the relative clause, and is represented in the main clause by the demonstrative, *ea*. Note the force of *per-* in *persolvit*.

*populō*: dative with *intulerat*, in the same construction as *fīnitimīs*, ch. 2, line 13.

19. *ultus est*: perfect of *ulcīscor*.

11. *concidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr.* [*com-+caedō*], cut down, cut to pieces, kill.

12. *silva, -ae, f.*, woods, forest.

*ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.*, withdraw; conceal, hide.

*pāgus, -ī, m.*, a district, canton.

*Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj.* belonging to the Tigurini; *m., pl. as subst.*, the Tigurini. *Map IV, G, 3.*

16. *si-ve, or seu, conj.*, or if, or; *seu . . . seu or sive . . . sive*,

either . . . or, whether . . . or.

*immortalis, -e, adj.* [*in-+mortālis*], immortal.

17. *insignis, -e, adj.* [*in+signum*], marked, memorable, conspicuous.

18. *per-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr.*, pay in full, pay.

19. *solum, adv.* [*sōlus*], only, merely; *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.

*ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, tr.*, take vengeance on, punish, avenge.



quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī 20  
eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

*Caesar crosses  
the Saône.  
The Helvetians  
sue for peace.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvē-  
tiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faci-  
endum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī  
repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx  
aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē 5  
fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis  
Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum  
fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmā-

20. quod . . . interfēcerant, *because the Tigurini had killed Lucius Piso, the lieutenant, grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law, in the same battle in which (they had killed) Cassius.*

2. ut . . . posset: a clause of purpose; cōpiās is the object of cōsequī, which depends on posset. We should expect ut to stand before reliquās.

pontem faciendum cūrat, *he caused a bridge to be made.* See App. 285, b; A. 500, 4; B. 337, 7, 2); H. 622; H.-B. 612, III.

Ararī: this word, like a few other *i*-stem proper nouns, usually has the ablative ending in *-ī*, and the accusative in *-im*.

4. repentinō eius adventū, *by his sudden arrival*; ablative of cause.

cum . . . intellexerent, *when they realized.* id: object of fēcisse.

diēbus: ablative of Time within Which.

5. aegerrimē, *with the greatest difficulty.*

ut flūmen trānsīrent, *(that is) the crossing of the river*; substantive clause explaining *id*.

7. bellō Cassiānō: ablative of Time When. This was the war referred to in ch. 7, line 13 and ch. 12, line 14. The defeat of Cassius occurred in the year 107 B.C.

8. cum Caesare ēgit, *addressed Caesar.* The remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. Therefore all main verbs which expressed statements in the direct form of Divico's speech will be represented by infinitives, all verbs which expressed commands and exhortations by subjunctives, and all verbs in subordinate clauses by subjunctives.

2. cōsequor, *-ī, -secūtus, tr.* [com-+sequor], follow after, follow up, follow, overtake; gain.

3. cūrō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.* [cūra], care for, take care, provide, cause to be done.

4. repentinus, *-a, -um, adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected.

XX = viginti, twenty.

5. aegrē, *adv.* [aeger], with difficulty, scarcely; aegrē ferre, feel distress at, be annoyed at.

7. Dīvicō, *-ōnis, m., a chief of the Helvetians.*

Cassiānus, *-a, -um, adj.* [Cassius], of or with Cassius.

nus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi  
 10 futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse volu-  
 isset; sīn bellō persequi persevēraret, reminiscerētur et vete-  
 ris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvēti-  
 ōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,  
 quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē  
 15 ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret aut ipsōs  
 dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse, ut

9. itūrōs . . . Helvētiōs, *the Helvetians would go into that region and there remain*; esse is understood with itūrōs and futūrōs.

10. eōs cōstituisset atque esse voluisset, *should establish them and should wish them to remain*. In the direct discourse, these past perfect subjunctives would be future perfect indicatives.

11. bellō persequi, *in forcing war upon them* (lit. *to follow them up with war*); bellō is ablative of means.

reminiscerētur, *he should remember, or let him remember*; a command in indirect discourse.

12. incōmodi, virtūtis: genitives depending on reminiscerētur. See App. 107; A. 350; B. 206; H. 454; H.-B. 350.

13. quod, *as to the fact that*. iī: subject of possent.

14. suis, *to their comrades*.

nē . . . dēspiceret, *he should not (or let him not) on that account take great credit for his own valor or scorn them* (the Helvetians); a negative command in indirect discourse.

16. sē ita ā patribus, etc., *freely, their fathers and ancestors had taught them to fight courageously rather than to rely on treachery or ambushade, lit., they had so learned from their fathers*. Divico implies that Caesar's surprise attack on the Tigurini was an act which was unworthy of a spirit of fair fighting, and that the Romans were displaying a cowardly attitude by such methods of warfare.

11. sīn, conj. [sī+ne], if however, but if.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., persist, persevere.

reminiscor, -ī, —, intr., recall, remember.

12. incommodum, -ī, n. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, loss, harm; disaster.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former, preceding, previous.

13. imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus], suddenly, without warning.

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus, tr., fall upon, attack, assail.

15. magnopere (magnō opere), adv., greatly, exceedingly.

16. dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. and intr. [dē+speciō, spy], look down upon, scorn, despise.

discō, -ere, didici, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught.

magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis niterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

20

*Caesar offers terms to the Helvetians, which they refuse.*

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile 5

18. nē committeret, *he should not cause*; the same construction as *dēsperet*, line 16 of this chapter.

19. nōmen caperet, *to become celebrated*. Such places as Thermopylae, Waterloo, and Gettysburg would be little known but for the fact that they were the scenes of important battles. Divico suggests that the location of the Helvetian and Roman armies may become famous as the scene of a great Roman defeat.

1. his: masculine, referring to the envoys.

eō . . . dari, freely, *his determination was all the stronger, i.e., to compel the Helvetians to accept such terms as the Romans saw fit to impose*; eō is ablative of cause, explained by the *quod* clause which follows; *dubitātiōnis* is genitive of the whole depending on *minus*.

3. atque . . . accidissent, *and he felt deeper indignation from the fact that this misfortune had happened to the Roman people undeservedly* (lit. *the less they had happened in accordance with the deserts of the Roman people, the more he felt resentment*); eō and quō are ablatives of degree of difference.

5. quī . . . fuisset, *if they had been aware of any unjust act*. Observe that the English usage requires the translation of *quī* by a plural because it refers to the collective noun *populus*; *sibi* is a dative of reference, with *cōsciū*, and is to be omitted in translation.

fuisse: in the direct form, *fuit*.

17. dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, artifice, trickery.

nitor, -ī, nixus or nixus, *intr.*, rely upon; strive, endeavor.

18. cōsistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.* [*com*-+*sistō*], stand, halt, make a stand, take position; consist in.

19. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*inter*+*necō*], extermination, annihilation.

20. prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, make known, hand down; betray.

2. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*dubitō*], doubt, uncertainty.

3. com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, remind one of, speak of, state.

4. meritum, -ī, *n.* [*meritus*], a merit, desert, benefit.

5. cōsciū, -a, -um, *adj.* [*com*-+*sciō*], conscious; aware.

cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās-  
 10 sent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexās-  
 sent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam

6. eō, for this reason, explained by quod . . . intellegeret neque putāret. commissum ā sē, that they had done anything; the verb is impersonal.

7. timēret, should fear. Occasionally the subjunctive conveys the idea of obligation.

timendum (esse): supply sibi,—that they ought to fear.

quod sī, but if.

8. contumēliae: for case see note on incommodī, ch. 13, line 12.

vellet: the subject probably refers to Caesar.

num: a negative answer is implied by the use of this interrogative particle,—he could not forget (lit. lay aside the memory), could he?

9. iniūriarum: depending on memoriam, line 11.

quod, (namely) that; the quod clauses are in apposition with iniūriarum. In place of et after Haeduōs and Ambarrōs, quod is repeated for rhetorical effect. The last two occurrences may be omitted in translation.

eō invītō, against his (Caesar's) will; it is however possible that eō may refer to populus Rōmānus.

temptāscent: contracted form of temptāvissent.

10. Allobrogas: a few third declension nouns, especially names of peoples, have the Greek accusative plural ending -as instead of the regular -ēs.

11. posse: a rhetorical question in indirect discourse may have its verb in the infinitive. Such a question is equivalent to a statement in vivid form, and so follows the usage of the quoted statement.

quod, the fact that; the two clauses which follow are subjects of pertinēre.

victōriā: ablative of cause.

6. caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, tr. and intr., beware, be on one's guard.

7. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, dread; be anxious.

8. contumēlia, -ae, f., insult, affront, outrage, injury.

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus, tr. and intr., forget, disregard.

num, interrog. adv.; with a direct question to which an answer in the negative is expected, often best

untranslated; not so . . . is it? with indirect question, whether.

recēns, -entis, adj., new, fresh, recent.

9. temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [tendō], make trial of, attempt.

10. vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of vehō], harass, overrun.

11. dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., lay down, lay aside, put away; give up.

insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs 15 interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: 20

**12. iniūriās tulisse**, *had inflicted injuries*; indirect discourse depending on *admīrārentur*.

**13. eōdem pertinēre**, *tended to the same result*. Their boastful attitude and their self-satisfaction merely added to the account which they would have to settle.

**cōnsuēsse**: contracted form of *cōnsuēvisse*; the subject is *deōs*.

**14. quō . . . doleant**, *in order that men might suffer more keenly from a change of circumstances*, or better, represent *hominēs* by the pronoun *they*, and translate the noun in place of the pronoun *hīs*, line 15.

**15. quōs . . . velint**: translate after *hīs*.

**secundiōrēs rēs**, *a high degree of success*; *rēs secundae* means "prosperity." Caesar is ascribing to the gods a sort of malicious delight in intensifying the suffering of those whom they punish by the contrast between the unusual success in life which is granted them for a little while, and the ruin of their hopes which follows.

**16. concēdere**: depending on *cōnsuēsse*, which may be represented by an adverb,—*the gods usually grant*. **cum**, *although*.

**18. factūrōs**: supply *eōs* as subject,—*that they would do*; the object is *ea*.

**sī Haeduīs**: supply *satisfaciant*, parallel to the use of the word in the clause beginning *sī Allobrogibus*, line 19.

**12. glōrior, -āri, -ātus, intr.** [glōria], glory in, boast of.

**impūne, adv.** [impūnis, unpunished], unpunished, with impunity.

**13. cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, intr.** [com-+suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *in the pf. tenses*, be accustomed or wont.

**14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, f.** [commūtō], a change, turn.

**15. doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr.**,

grieve, be sorry, suffer; be grieved, be afflicted.

**16. inter-dum, adv.**, meanwhile, in the meantime.

**diūturnus, -a, -um, adj.** [diū], of long duration, long.

**impūnitās, -ātis, f.** [impūnis, unpunished], freedom from punishment, impunity.

**19. satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, intr.**, give satisfaction to, apologize, make amends.

Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*Caesar follows  
the Helvetians.  
His cavalry are  
defeated.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tan-

21. utī . . . cōnsuērint, *that they were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them; cōnsuērint is a contracted form of cōnsuēverint, perfect subjunctive.*

4. coāctum habēbat: the English past perfect, *had collected*, may be used to translate this phrase. But to the Roman the phrase meant *had (at hand)*, *having been collected*; coāctum agrees with equitātum.

5. quī videant: a relative clause of purpose.

quās . . . faciant, *in what direction the enemy were marching*; an indirect question.

quī, *these*. A relative pronoun which refers to an antecedent in a preceding clause is translated by a demonstrative or a personal pronoun.

cupidius, *too eagerly*. A comparative adjective or adverb is frequently translated by a phrase with *too* or *rather*.

6. novissimum agmen, *the rear line*.

7. dē nostris, *of our men*. The ablative with *dē* or *ex* is sometimes employed instead of the genitive of the whole.

8. quō proeliō sublātī, *elated by this battle*.  
equitibus: ablative of means.

23. testis, -is, *m. and f., witness*.  
dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*,  
go away, withdraw.

4. prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*,  
send forward or in advance.

5. cupidē, *adv. [cupidus], eagerly*.

6. agmen, -inis, *n. [agō], a marching  
army or column; army, line*;

*in agmine, on the march*.

īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr. and intr.*,  
follow up, pursue.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj. [alius], of another, of others; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable*.

7. cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, *intr.*,  
fall; fall dead, be slain.

tam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere  
 nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere 10  
 coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habē-  
 bat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis populātiōibusque prohibēre.  
 Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium  
 agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus  
 passuum interesset. 15

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent  
 pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia  
 sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn

10. nōn numquam, at times or from time to time.

novissimō . . . lacessere, to harass our men by attacks (lit. by battle)  
 from their rear line; agmine is ablative of means; proeliō may be classified  
 either as means or manner.

11. satis habēbat, considered that it was sufficient.

12. rapīnis, populātiōibus: ablatives of separation.

13. diēs: accusative of duration; circiter is an adverb.

14. primum: supply agmen. quīnis aut sēnis, five or six miles each day.

1. Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, demanded of the Haeduans the grain;  
 flāgitāre is an historical infinitive. See App. 281; A. 463; B. 335; H. 610;  
 H.-B. 595. Some words of demanding, like flāgitāre, take two objects, one  
 naming the thing demanded, the other naming the person on whom the  
 demand is made.

3. sub septentriōnibus, toward the north. Caesar is writing from the  
 point of view of Italy. posita est, is situated.

9. prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*,  
 drive forward, put to flight, rout.

audācter, *adv.* [audāx], boldly,  
 bravely, fiercely.

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*,  
 stand, remain; hold out, hold firm.

10. lacessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*,  
 harass, provoke, attack.

12. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns],  
 presence, the present; in prae-  
 sentia, for the present.

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [rapīō], robbery, pillage.

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor], rav-  
 aging, pillaging.

13. circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*

[circus]; as *adv.*, about, nearly; as  
*prep.*, near, about.

XV = quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*  
 [quīnque+decem], fifteen.

14. sēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*  
 [sex], six each.

15. inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*,  
 be between, intervene; be present;  
*impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is  
 important.

1. cotidiē, *adv.* [quot+diēs], every  
 day, daily.

2. flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, de-  
 mand.

frigus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather,  
 cold; *pl.*, cold.

- modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem  
 5 *The Haeduans fail to furnish Caesar supplies. Caesar complains to their leaders.* satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō,  
 quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā  
 ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverte-  
 rant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere  
 Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius  
 10 dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus  
 mētīri oporteret, convocātis eōrum pīncipibus, quōrum mag-

4. *nē . . . suppetēbat, there was not a sufficiently large supply even of forage. A word standing between nē and quidem is emphasized.*

5. *frūmentō: ablative depending on ūtī.*

6. *flūmine: ablative of route.*

*nāvibus: denotes the means used in conveying the grain.*

*proptereā: translate with quod after poterat,—for the reason that.*

8. *ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat, and he did not wish to cease following (lit. to withdraw from) them.*

*diem . . . Haeduī, the Haeduans put him off day after day; dūcere is used like flāgitāre in line 2 of this chapter; dicere in line 9 is another example of the same construction.*

9. *cōferri, comportārī, adesse, that it was being collected, that it was being brought, that it was at hand; referring to the grain.*

*diūtius: for the translation of the comparative, see note on cupidius, ch. 15, line 1.*

10. *dūcī: in the same meaning as in line 8.*

*diē: omit in translation; a repeated antecedent, like itineribus, ch. 6, line 5.*

11. *oporteret, it would be necessary; the word would be future in direct discourse.*

4. *modo, adv. [modus], only, merely; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also or even.*

*mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., mature; early.*

*pābulum, -i, n., fodder, pasture, forage.*

6. *sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr., bring up, transport.*

9. *cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr. [com-+ferō], bring together, collect; sē cōferre, betake one's self, go, withdraw.*

*com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., bring together, collect.*

*ad-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr., be at, near, or by, be at hand, be present.*

10. *in-stō, -āre, -stiti, -stātūrus, intr., press on, approach, be at hand.*

11. *mētior, -iri, mēnsus, tr., measure, deal out, distribute.*

*convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+vocō], call together, call, summon.*



nam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque 15 ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit.

*Liscus lays the blame on the party of Dumnorix, which is hostile to the Romans.*

17. Tum dēmum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magis-

12. Dīviciācō, Liscō: in apposition with *prīncipibus*. When a noun in the singular is thus used to denote one of the group referred to by the word which it explains, it is sometimes said to be in partitive apposition.

13. magistrātui: dative with a compound of *prae*.

15. cum . . . possit, when grain could not be purchased or taken from the fields.

16. tempore, hostibus: ablatives absolute.

17. sublevētur: Caesar is here quoting the reason which he gave for his censure of the Haeduan leaders, and therefore uses the subjunctive. See App. 244; A. 540; B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; H.-B. 535, 2, a.

2. esse nōn nullōs, that there were some.

3. plūrimum valeat, was very powerful.

4. plūs possint: see phrases under *possum* in Vocabulary.

12. Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate of the Haeduans.

13. vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, the chief magistrate of the Haeduans.

15. accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ad+causa], accuse, blame, censure.

emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum, tr., buy, purchase.

16. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope], near; as subst., m. and f., a relative, kinsman.

17. sub-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., lift up, help, support.

praesertim, adv., especially, particularly.

18. prex, precis, f., prayer, request, entreaty.

1. dēmum, adv. [dē], at length, at last.

2. taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. and intr., be silent, keep silent.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., set forth, explain, state, represent; display.

4. valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr., be strong, be powerful, have strength, have weight or influence.

prīvātīm, adv. [prīvātus], privately, individually.

5 'trātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētios superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs 10 libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari

5. hōs: subject of *dēterrēre*.

6. nē frūmentum cōferant, *from collecting the grain*. A clause with the subjunctive is used after words of hindrance, etc.

praestāre, (*they said*) *it would be better*. The main body of the indirect discourse gives the statement of Liscus, and is introduced by *prōpōnit*. But the words *praestāre* . . . *ēreptūrī* (line 10) give the statements which Liscus ascribes to those of the Haeduans who opposed helping the Romans, and depend upon an understood word of saying implied by *dēterrēre*.

7. iam nōn, *no longer*.

principātum: in a later part of the narrative, Caesar tells of the rivalry between the Haeduans and the Sequani for leadership among the nations of Gaul.

8. neque dubitāre quīn, *and they did not doubt that*. Words and phrases of doubt, if modified by a negative, take a dependent clause introduced by *quīn*, with its verb in the subjunctive.

9. Haeduīs: a dative, but translated *from the Haeduans*. This use of the dative with words of taking away is sometimes called the "dative of separation."

10. sint ēreptūrī, *would take away*; the first periphrastic conjugation. See note on *obtentūrus*, ch. 3, line 18.

quaeque, *and the things which*; *quae* is a relative pronoun, with an antecedent, *ea*, understood.

11. hōs . . . coērcērī: change to active in translation,—*he could not restrain them*.

12. quīn etiam, quod ēnūntiārīt, *and furthermore, as to the fact that he had disclosed*; for the *quod* clause, see note on ch. 13, line 13; *ēnūntiārīt* is a perfect subjunctive, contracted from *ēnūntiāverīt*.

5. sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditiō], rebellious, seditious.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+probus, good], bad, shameless, wicked, disloyal.

8. per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear; endure, submit to; announce, report.

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [dubius], doubt; hesitate, delay.

ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisset.

*The influence of Dumnorix. His treachery to the Romans.*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter libērālītātē grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālīa parvō pretiō

13. quantō: modifies *periculō*.

14. quam diū, as long as.

1. hāc ōrātiōne, by this statement; to be taken with *dēsīgnārī*.

3. plūribus praesentibus, while so many were present; ablative absolute.

4. dīmittit: supply a conjunction between this word and *retinet*.

quaerit ex sōlō ea, he questioned him when alone about these things.

5. dicit liberius: in spite of the fact that Liscus was the official head of the state he was apparently afraid to oppose Dumnorix openly.

6. ipsum . . . grātiā, that it was indeed Dumnorix, (a man) of the greatest daring, of great influence among the common people on account of his generosity; *audāciā* and *grātiā* are ablatives of description; *magnā* is separated from the noun which it modifies by two prepositional phrases which also modify *grātiā*.

8. annōs: accusative of Duration of Time.

9. portōria, vectīgālīa: objects of *habēre*.

parvō pretiō, for a small price.

2. dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out, mean, designate.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive, realize, know; observe.

3. iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of *iaciō*], throw about; discuss, consider; charge.

celeriter, *adv.* [*celer*], quickly, rapidly, speedily.

4. concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, assembly, council.

5. conventus, -ūs, *m.* [*conveniō*], assembly, meeting.

libērē, *adv.* [*libēr*], freely, without restraint.

6. sēcrētō, *adv.* [*sēcrētus*, separated], separately, apart, privately, secretly.

vērū, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; reasonable, right.

7. libērālītās, -ātis, *f.* [*libērālis*], generosity, liberality.

9. portōrium, -ī, *n.* [*portus*], import or export tax, duty.

vectīgāl, -ālīs, *n.* [*vectīgālīs*], tax, revenue, tribute.

- 10 *redēpta habēre*, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter  
15 posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex

**10. redēpta habēre**, *had bought up*; the participle *redēpta* agrees with the objects of *habēre*. The construction is the same as *coāctum habēbat*, ch. 15, line 4. The taxes in ancient times were usually collected, not by government officials, but by private individuals or by corporations who obtained the contract by bidding. The highest bidder, that is, the one who offered to pay the highest sum to the government, would naturally be awarded the contract. But Dumnorix offered low bids, and obtained the contracts through intimidation.

**illō licente**, *when he bid*; ablative absolute.

**11. et . . . et**: correlatives.

**12. ad largiendum**, *for lavish giving*. Dumnorix maintained his popularity among the lower class by making presents and doing favors.

**comparāsse**: contracted form of *comparāvisse*.

**numerus**: object of *alere* and *habēre*.

**13. suō sūmptū**, *at his own expense*; ablative of means.

**14. domī**: locative case.

**15. causā**: this ablative form, meaning *for the sake of*, always follows the genitive which depends upon it.

**mātrem conlocāsse**, *had arranged a marriage for his mother*.

**10. liceor**, -ērī, *licitus*, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*).

**11. familiāris**, -e, *adj.* [*familia*], pertaining to the household, private; *rēs familiāris*, property, estate.

**augeō**, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*, *tr.*, increase, augment.

**12. largior**, -irī, -ītus, *tr.* [*largus*, abundant], give freely, give generously, bestow.

**13. sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [*sūmō*], expense, cost.

**alō**, -ere, *alūī*, *altum* (*alitum*),

*tr.*, nourish, support; increase.

**14. largiter**, *adv.* [*largus*, abundant], abundantly, much; **largiter posse**, have great influence.

**15. potentia**, -ae, *f.* [*potēns*], power, might; influence.

**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother.

**Biturīgēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul. Map IV, D-E, 3.

**16. conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*com*-+*locō*, place], place, arrange.

Helvētiis uxorem habēre, sororem ex mātē et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et 20 Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

**17. uxorem habēre:** his wife was the daughter of Orgetorix. Her marriage to Dumnorix is referred to in ch. 3, line 16.

**sororem ex mātē et propinquās suās,** *his half-sister and the women of his kindred.*

**18. nūptum conlocāsse:** translate liké *conlocāsse* above; *nūptum* is a supine.

**cupere,** *wished well to.* **Helvētiis:** dative with *favēre* and *cupere*.

**19. ōdisse:** this word, like *meminī*, has only the tenses of the perfect system. The perfect is used as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

**suō nōmine,** *on his own account.* His opposition to the Romans had been first explained (ch. 17, lines 6-10) as arising from fear that the Haeduan state would be deprived of influence through the development of Roman power. Caesar here points out that in addition to this patriotic motive there were personal considerations which weighed strongly with Dumnorix.

**20. eōrum adventū,** *by their coming.* **dēminūta:** supply *sit*.

**22. sī quid,** *if anything.* The forms of *quis* are used as indefinites after *sī nisi, nē,* and *num.*

**summam in spem venīre,** *he was coming to hold the highest hopes.* This idiom should be carefully learned.

**23. imperiō populī Rōmānī,** *under the authority of the Roman people;* ablative of attendant circumstance.

**24. grātiā** is the object of *dē* and is modified by *eā*.

**17. soror, -ōris, f.,** sister.

**18. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum,** *intr.,* veil oneself, be married, marry (*of the woman only*).

**faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, intr.,** be favorable or friendly to, favor.

**cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, tr.,** wish, desire, be eager; wish well to.

**19. adfinitās, -ātis, f. [adfinis],** relationship by marriage, alliance; relationship.

**ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, tr.,** *defect.,* hate.

**20. dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr.,** lessen, diminish, impair.

**21. antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante],** old, belonging to former times.

- 25 *Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.*

*Caesar plans to punish Dumnorix. He summons Diviciacus to an interview.*

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo  
5 in iussū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē

25. in quaerendō, on investigating; gerund.

quod . . . esset factum, as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry battle had occurred a few days before. This was described in chapter 15, lines 5-7.

26. diēbus: ablative of degree of difference, used with the adverb ante. See App. 148; A. 414; B. 223; H. 479; H.-B. 424.

initium factum (esse): indirect discourse depending on reperiēbat.

27. equitātui: why dative?

28. auxiliō Caesarī, as additional forces for Caesar; auxiliō is a dative of purpose, Caesarī is a dative of reference.

2. certissimae rēs accēderent, quod, the most definite facts were added, (namely) that; the clauses which follow, introduced by quod, are substantive clauses in apposition with rēs; their verbs are in the subjunctive by attraction because they depend closely upon accēderent of the cum causal clause.

3. obsidēs . . . cūrasset, had brought about an exchange of hostages between them.

5. iniussū suō et cīvitatīs, without his order or that of the state.

inscientibus ipsis, without their knowledge; ablative absolute.

6. satis esse causae, that there was sufficient reason; causae is genitive of the whole.

7. in eum animadverteret, should punish him; animadvertere with a direct object means observe, with in and the accusative it means punish.

25. equester, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques], of cavalry, cavalry.

29. per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.

5. iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. [in-+iussus, order], without command or order.

in-sciēns, -entis, adj., unaware, ignorant.

7. animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [animum advertō], turn the mind to, give attention to, observe; with in and accusative, punish.

animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, 10 temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius supplicio Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium 15 rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in concilio dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et

8. his . . . repugnābat, to all these facts there was opposed one consideration, (namely); rēbus is a dative with repugnābat. See note on civitatī, ch. 2, line 4.

9. quod . . . cognōverat: a clause of the same kind as the quod clauses in line 2. Diviciāci: modifies studium.

in populum Rōmānum, toward the Roman people.

11. nē . . . offenderet, that he would offend Diviciacus by the punishment of Dumnorix; a clause of fear. The Latin expression meaning offend the mind of Diviciacus is put more briefly in English. It is necessary for the sake of clearness to translate the pronoun eius by the noun Dumnorix, for which it stands.

12. priusquam cōnārētur, before he should attempt or before attempting; cōnārētur is an anticipatory subjunctive.

14. per, by means of. Diviciacus had been in Rome, but he did not understand Latin.

15. cui . . . habēbat, in whom he had the fullest confidence in all matters; cui is a dative depending on fidem habere, which is equivalent to cōfidere.

17. ipsō praesente, when Diviciacus was present; ablative absolute. For the translation of the pronoun, compare the note on line 11.

8. re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., oppose, resist.

9. studium, -ī, n. [studeō], eagerness, enthusiasm; good-will, devotion; desire.

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ex+grex], extraordinary, remarkable; unusual.

iūstitia, -ae, f. [iūstus], justice, uprightness.

11. temperantia, -ae, f. [tempe-

rāns], moderation, self-control.

12. vereor, -ēri, -itus, tr., fear, dread.

13. interpres, -pretis, m., interpreter.

14. Troucillus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

16. conloquor, -ī, -locūtus, intr. [com+loquor], talk (with), confer.

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [moneō+faciō], remind.

ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

*Diviciacus  
intercedes for  
his brother.  
Caesar yields,  
but decides to  
watch Dum-  
norix.*

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scire sē illa esse vērā, neque quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, prop-  
5 tereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē

18. *apud sē dixerit*, had stated before him (Caesar); *dixerit* is subjunctive in an indirect question, as is also *sint dicta* in line 17.

19. *ut . . . statuāt*, that he (Caesar) might, after investigating the case himself, decide regarding Dumnorix without giving offense to Diviciacus.

2. *nē . . . statueret*, that he would not decide upon too severe measures (lit. upon anything too severe); the use of *quid* as an indefinite is explained in the note on ch. 18, line 22. The clause is a substantive clause, used as the object of *obsecrāre*.

3. *sē*: subject of *scire*. The indirect discourse depends on a word of saying implied in *obsecrāre*.

*neque . . . capere*, and no one felt more regret over this situation than he did.

4. *dolōris*: genitive of the whole depending on *plūs*.

5. *cum . . . posset*: the full expression of the thought (from an English point of view) would require another *posset* supplied after *Galliā* as the verb of which *ipse* is the subject, then *et* to connect the two clauses, and another *cum* to introduce the *posset* of line 6, of which *ille* is the subject. *ipse* refers to Diviciacus, *ille* to Dumnorix.

*grātiā plūrimum* (*posset*), had great popularity and influence (lit. was very influential through popularity).

6. *minimum posset*, had very little influence.

*per sē crēvisset*, he (Dumnorix) had gained influence (lit. increased) through him. The prominence of Diviciacus in the state naturally gave a certain amount of prestige to his family, and the younger brother profited by this in his efforts to gain a personal following.

18. *sēparātim*, *adv.* [sēparō], apart, separately.

19. *hortor*, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, encourage, urge.

*offēnsiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō], a giving offense, offense.

2. *complector*, -ī, -plexus, *tr.* [com-+plector, embrace], embrace.

*obsecrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+sacrō], implore, entreat.

6. *adulēscēntia*, -ae, *f.* [adulēscēns], youth.



crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae 10 apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et reī 15 publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus

7. quibus opibus ac nervīs, *these resources of power* (lit. and power); ablatives with ūteretur.

ad minuendam grātiā, *to diminish his influence*; gerundive construction.

9. quod, *but or now*.

10. eī: dative with accidisset. *gravius*, too severe.

11. apud eum: the pronoun refers to Caesar.

suā voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

12. factum: supply esse.

utī . . . āverterentur: substantive clause, subject of futurum (esse). Translate freely, *that he would lose favor throughout all Gaul*.

13. haec cum peteret, *when he made this request*. Observe that cum is not a preposition. The ablative, verbīs, may be regarded either as means or manner.

14. finem ōrandī faciāt, *that he make an end to his plea*; the clause is used without a conjunction, as the object of rogat. See App. 228, a; A. 565, a; B. 295, 8; H. 565, 4; H.-B. 502, 3. ōrandī is a gerund.

15. tantī . . . esse, *that his good will was of so much importance to him* (Caesar); freely, *that he valued his good will so highly*; tantī is a genitive of indefinite value. reī publicae: genitive.

16. voluntātī, *at his request*; dative depending on condōnet.

7. crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, *intr.*, increase, grow, thrive, prosper.

ops, opis, *f.* (without *nom.* or *dat. sing.*), aid; power; *pl.*, power, influence, resources.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, energy, power, strength.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* and *intr.*, lessen, diminish.

9. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō], love.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter], of a brother, brother's, brothers'.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō], opinion, judgment.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, crowd; the rabble.

13. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

fleō, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, *tr.* and *intr.*, weep, lament.

14. prēndō (prehendō), -ere, prēndī, prēnsūm, *tr.*, grasp, seize.

cōsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+ sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort.

condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. 20 Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

*Caesar plans to surprise the Helvetians.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent, mīsīt. Renūtiātum est 5 facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō

17. condōnet: in a clause of result.

18. reprehendat: in an indirect question; so also *intellegat* and *querātur*.

19. ut . . . vitet: substantive clause, object of *monet*.

in reliquum tempus, for the future.

20. Diviciācō, out of regard for Diviciacus; dative of reference.

21. Dumnorīgī, over Dumnorix; the same case use as Diviciācō.

agat, loquātur: the same construction as *reprehendat* in line 18.

2. sub monte, at the foot of a mountain.

3. quālis (esset) in circuitū ascēsus, what was the character of the ascent from all sides; the indirect question is object of *cognōscerent*.

4. quī cognōscerent, to find out; a relative clause of purpose.

5. facilem esse: the subject of the infinitive is *ascēsum* understood.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see note on ch. 12, line 8.

lēgātum prō praetōre, lieutenant with pretorian power; that is, in the absence of the commanding general he would have complete control of the military (and probably of the civil) affairs of any region under his charge.

17. condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [com-+dōnō], give up, forgive, pardon.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. [ad+ha-beō], summon, invite; employ.

18. re-prehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehensum, tr., draw back; blame, censure.

19. queror, -ī, questus, tr. and intr., complain; complain of, find fault with.

20. praeter-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum, tr., go by, pass by; pf. part. as adj., past; as subst., the past.

21. loquor, -ī, locūtus, tr. and intr., say, speak, talk.

2. cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [com-+sidō, sit], sit down, halt; encamp; settle.

4. ascēsus, -ūs, m. [ascendō], a way up, ascending, ascent, approach.

praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur 10 et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

*Caesar's plan fails through the mistake of Considius.*

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem 5 ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs

7. quid . . . sit, *what his plan was*; cōnsilī is a genitive of the whole.

8. eōdem . . . contendit, *hastened toward the enemy by the same road by which they had gone*; itinere and quō are ablatives of route. Notice that the English interchanges the place of the noun *hostēs* and the pronoun *eōs* in translation.

10. quī . . . habēbātur, *who was considered to be thoroughly familiar with military affairs*; the adjective *perītus* takes a dependent genitive. Since Considius blundered in carrying out his orders, Caesar thinks it necessary to explain in a somewhat apologetic manner why he had supposed him to be capable.

11. M. Crassī: supply *exercitū*.

1. primā lūce, *at daybreak*.

cum: introduces *tenērētur*, *abesset*, and *cognitus esset*. Supply and in translation after *tenērētur*. summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*.

3. neque, aut . . . aut Labiēnī, and (when) *neither his approach nor that of Labienus*.

5. equō . . . accurrit, *came galloping up to him*. Supply *et* in translation after *accurrit*.

6. id: object of *cognōvisse*.

6. praetor, -ōris, *m.* [for praetor from prae-eō, go before], general, praetor.

10. Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers*.

1. lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, *at daybreak*.

5. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.

accurrō, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō], run to, hasten to.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic.

armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi  
 10 ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinēbat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movere et Considium timore perterritum, quod  
 15 non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consueerat intervallō, hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

8. *subducit, instruit*: another example of the omission of a conjunction. This usage of employing words in a sentence in the same construction without a connective is called *asyndeton*.

*ut . . . praeceptum*, as he had been instructed; the verb is impersonal. *ei* is its indirect object, and the subject is the clause *ne . . . committeret*.

9. *ne . . . committeret*, not to begin battle.

10. *visae essent*: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse. See App. 273; A. 592; B. 323; H. 649, I; H.-B. 536, a.

11. *fieret*: subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

12. *proelio*, from battle. *multo die*, late in the day.

13, 14. *et . . . et . . . et*: correlatives. The first should be omitted in translation.

14. *Considium . . . renuntiavisse*, that Considius had become panic-stricken and had reported to him something that he had not seen in place of what he had seen. He had actually seen the Roman force under the command of Labienus, but had mistaken their standards and arms for Gallic emblems and equipment.

15. *pro viso*: literally for the thing seen.

*quo consueerat intervallō*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed (to follow them), that is, five or six miles in their rear; *intervallō* is an ablative of degree of difference. *consueerat* is a contracted form of *consueverat*.

16. *milia*: accusative of extent.

7. *insigne, -is, n.*, mark, signal; decoration.

8. *collis, -is, m.*, a height, hill.

*sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, tr., draw or lead up, withdraw, remove.

10. *prope, prep. with acc. and adv.*;

as *prep.*, near, near to; as *adv.*, near, nearly, about.

12. *denique, adv.*, at last, finally.

14. *timor, -ōris, m.* [timeō], fear, alarm.

16. *inter-vallum, -i, n.*, interval, distance.

*Caesar marches  
for Bibracte.  
The pursued  
become the  
pursuers.*

**23.** Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāns, iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētii, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā

**1.** postridiē eius diēi, *on the next day*; the genitive used with the adverb postridiē (and prīdiē) is not translated.

**2.** cum . . . oportēret, *before the time when it would be necessary to serve out rations* (lit. *measure out grain*) to the soldiers. Occasionally, as here, the anticipatory subjunctive is used with cum.

**3.** Bibracte: with names of cities, the ablative with a preposition is used to denote the point from which distance is measured.

**4.** nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII, *not more than eighteen miles*.

**5.** reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum (*esse*), *that he ought to make provision for* (lit. *look out for*) grain supplies.

**6.** Bibracte, *to Bibracte*; accusative of Place to Which. The nominative, accusative, and ablative forms of this word are the same.

**8.** seu quod, *either for the reason that*.

**9.** exīstimārent, cōfiderent: for these subjunctives, see App. 244, 273; A. 592, 3; B. 286, a; H. 649, I; H.-B. 535, 2, a.

eō magis, quod, *and the more so because*.

**10.** commīsissent: subjunctive by attraction. The clause quod . . . commīsissent is not parallel in construction to quod . . . exīstimārent and quod . . . cōfiderent. sive eō, quod, *or for the reason that*.

rē frūmentāriā: ablative of separation.

**1.** postridiē, *adv.* [locative posterī+diē], next day; postridiē eius diēi, the next or following day.

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [bis+diēs], period of two days, two days.

**2.** super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be left, survive.

**3.** Bibracte, -is, *n.*, a city of the Haedui. Map IV, E-F., 3.

**4.** XVIII = duo-dē-vigintī, *indecl.*

*num. adj.*, eighteen.

**5.** prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr. and intr.* [prō+speciō, spy], look forward; observe; look out for.

**6.** fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō], fleeing, fugitive; *as subst.*, *m.*, runaway slave.

**7.** decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem], decurion, a cavalry officer.

**9.** prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.

interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacescere coepērunt.

*Preparations  
for the battle.*

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterā-  
 5 nārū; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocāvit, ita utī suprā sē tōtum montem hominibus complēret; impedimenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omni-  
 10 bus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt;

11. posse: supply *Rōmānōs* as subject.

12. ā novissimō agmine, *in the rear*.

1. id animum advertit: the phrase *animum advertere*, meaning *to observe*, takes an object (here *id*) like a simple verb form.

2. collem: see Plan, p. 182.

3. quī sustinēret: a relative clause of purpose.

in colle mediō, *half way up the hillside*.

4. triplicem aciem: this order, which was the order commonly employed by Caesar in battle formation, was an arrangement of three lines of maniples (groups roughly corresponding to companies in a regiment), so that the second and third lines could relieve the first. The ranks in a manipule were about eight or ten men deep. See *aciēs*, Vocabulary.

8. cōferri, mūniri: these infinitives, with their subjects, depend upon *iussit*. eum: refers to *locum*.

11. interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [inter+claudō], cut off, shut off, block.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [com+fidō], be confident, believe, trust.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, change.

1. ad-vertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, *tr.*, turn or direct toward; *animum advertere*, observe, notice.

4. triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, triple.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus], old, veteran.

8. sarcina, -ae, *f.*, baggage, pack, load.

9. mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.* [moenia], fortify, defend.

10. impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [impediō], a hindrance; *pl.*, baggage of an army.

ipsi cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

*The battle.  
The Helvetians  
are forced  
to retire.*

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fecērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere

11. cōnfertissimā aciē, in a very compact array.

equitātū, phalange: ablatives absolute.

12. sub . . . successērunt, advanced close to our first line; sub and the compound successērunt are used because the Helvetians were coming up from the lower level. The verb means literally come up under.

1. suō: supply equō remōtō; an ablative absolute, parallel to remōtīs equīs. omnium: modifies equīs. Only the officers are meant.

3. tolleret, take away; purpose.

6. Gallis . . . impedimentō, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the battle (lit. for battle); impedimentō is dative of purpose.

7. quod, that; the clause quod . . . poterant is the subject of erat.

8. conligātis: as the Gauls advanced in close array with overlapping shields, sometimes two shields would be pierced by a single javelin.

sē: omit in translation. The Latin verb inflectere requires an object, but the English verb which is most naturally used as its equivalent in translation is intransitive. ēvellere: depends on poterant.

11. cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of cōnferciō, press close], crowded, closely crowded.

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [re-+iaciō], throw back, drive back. phalanx, -ngis, f., phalanx.

3. cohortor, -āri, -ātus, tr. [com-+hortor], encourage, address.

4. pilum, -i, n., javelin.

5. perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum, tr. [per+frangō], break through.

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [dis-+iaciō], rout, scatter.

dē-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr., draw off, draw; unsheathe.

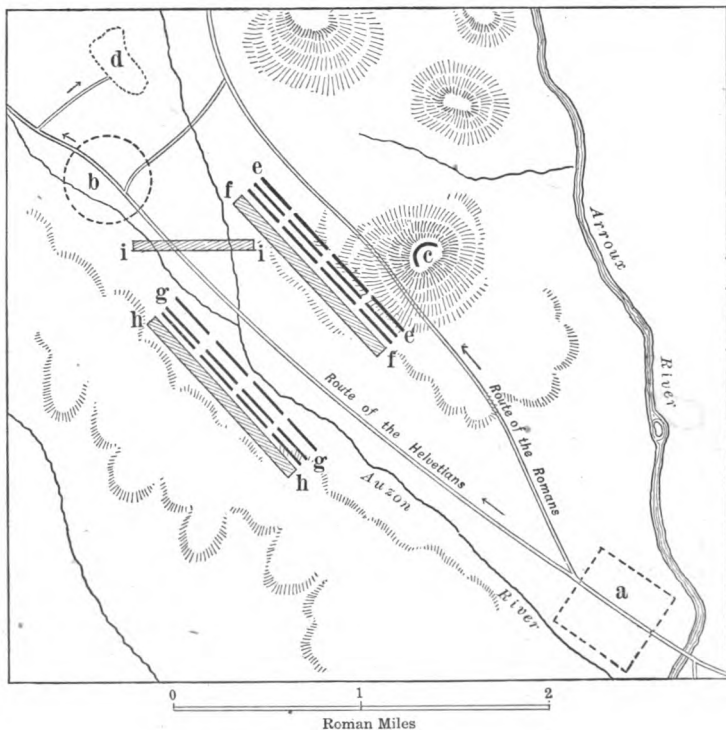
7. scūtum, -i, n., shield.

ictus, -ūs, m. [icō], a stroke, blow. trāns-fīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., pierce through, transfix.

8. conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together.

in-flectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, tr., bend down, bend.

ē-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck or pull out.



### THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

- a. *Camp of the Romans on the morning of the battle.*
- b. *Camp of the Helvetians on the morning of the battle.*
- c. *Roman intrenchments and baggage.*
- d. *Helvetian baggage.*
- ee. *Roman lines in first battle.*
- ff. *Helvetian lines in first battle.*
- gg. *Roman lines in second battle.*
- hh. *Helvetian lines in second battle.*
- ii. *Boii and Tulingi.*



neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-  
tere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī  
et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum  
spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēden-  
tibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter  
xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant,  
ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenire et id  
cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rursus  
instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī signa

9. *satis commodē, effectively.*

10. *multī*: subject of *praeoptārent*, made emphatic by position. We should expect *ut* to precede. The clause expresses result.

*iactātō brachiō*, after jerking their arms about, in trying to pull their shields loose from the shields of their fellow soldiers to which they had been fastened by the Roman javelins. *manū ēmittere*, to let go of.

11. *nūdō corpore*, with their bodies unprotected.

12. *referre*: depends on *coepērunt*.

13. *captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs*, when they had reached the mountain and when our men were advancing; ablatives absolute.

15. *agmen claudēbant*: see Vocabulary.

16. *ex itinere*: that is, they began the attack without halting to rearrange their forces. For position of the two armies at this stage of the battle, see Plan.

*ab latere apertō*, on the unprotected side; this was the right, since the shield was carried on the left arm and protected the left side of the body. *adgressī*, having attacked.

*circumvenire*: depends upon *coepērunt*, supplied from *coepērunt* of line 18.

18. *signa bipertitō intulērunt*, advanced in two divisions.

9. *commodē*, *adv.* [commodus], conveniently, easily; efficiently, well.

10. *bracchium*, -ī, *n.*, forearm, arm. *prae-optō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, choose, prefer.

11. *tandem*, *adv.*, at length, finally. *dēfessus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *dēfetiscor*, grow tired], exhausted, worn out.

12. *sub-sum*, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be under; be near or close at hand.

13. *eō*, *adv.* [is], to that place, there.

15. *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausum*, *tr.*, shut, close; shut in.

16. *latus*, -eris, *n.*, side, flank. *apertus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *aperiō*], uncovered, exposed, open.

*circum-veniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, surround, outflank.

17. *cōspicor*, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, get sight of, see.

18. *red-integrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.

bipectitō intulērunt; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac  
20 submōtis resisteret, certia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

*After a stubborn resistance the Helvetians are routed. Caesar pursues them.*

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācritē pug-  
nātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum im-  
petūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in mon-  
tem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs  
5 sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad  
vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.  
Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,  
proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre  
in nostrōs venientēs tēla cōniciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs  
10 raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulne-

19. victis ac submōtis, the defeated and dislodged (portion of the enemy);  
dative with resisteret. These were the Helvetians who had at first given way.

20. venientēs, those who were coming up; the Tulingi and Boii.

1. ancipiti proeliō: ablative of manner. The battle was "double"  
in that there were two fronts, one the line on which the Tulingi and Boii  
were attacking, the other that on which the Helvetians were rallying, after  
their retreat.

pugnātum est, they fought; the Latin verb is impersonal.

3. alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other party; the first alteri refers  
to the Helvetians, the second to the Tulingi and Boii.

5. proeliō: ablative of time. cum, although.

6. pugnātum sit: see note on pugnātum est, line 1 of this chapter.

āversum hostem, a fleeing enemy.

7. ad multam noctem, till late in the night.

ad impedimenta, about the baggage.

8. prō vāllō, as a rampart.

19. bipectitō, adv. [bis+partior], in  
two parts or divisions, in two ways.

20. sub-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mō-  
tum, tr., dislodge, drive back.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, intr.,  
resist, withstand, oppose.

1. anceps, -cipitis, adj. [an=ambi-  
+caput], with two sides or fronts,  
double.

ācritē, adv. [ācer], sharply, fiercely,  
vigorously; comp., ācrius, sup.,  
ācerrimē.

5. hōra, -ae, f., hour.

6. vesper, -erī (-eris), m., evening;  
sub vesperum, toward evening.

8. vāllum, -ī, n. [vāllus], earth-  
works, intrenchments, rampart.

10. raeda, -ae, f., wagon.

matera, -ae, f., javelin, pike.

trāgula, -ae, f., a light javelin or  
dart, used by the Gauls.

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.  
[sub+iaciō], hurl under; cast,  
throw.

rābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostri eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

20

*The Helvetians  
surrender. Six  
thousand  
attempt to  
escape.*

27. Helvētiū omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīserunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent

11. diū cum: translate diū within the cum clause.

impedimentis castrisque: ablative with potior.

12. ē filiis: translate like a genitive of the whole.

14. eā tōtā nocte, through that entire night; this idea of time is usually expressed by the accusative.

15. cum . . . potuissent: a cum causal clause.

17. nē . . . iuvārent: a substantive clause, giving the substance of Caesar's messages.

18. iūvissent, should help; in the direct discourse the tense would be future perfect.

sē . . . habitūrum, he would regard them as deserving the same treatment as the Helvetians.

2. quī cum, when they.

3. convēnissent: this verb is usually intransitive, but it is here used with transitive meaning. ad pedēs, at his feet.

14. Lingonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe of the Vosges Mountains. Map FV, F, 2.

16. sepultūra, -ae, f. [sepeliō], burial.

17. littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; pl., writing, letter, dispatch.

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger; message, news.

18. nē-ve or neu, conj., and not, nor, and not to, and that . . . not.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., aid, help.

19. trīduum, -ī, n. [trēs+diēs], period of three days, three days.

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. and intr., send between; interrupt; let pass, allow to elapse.

1. inopia, -ae, f. [inops], want, scarcity, lack; poverty.

3. prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [prō+iaciō], throw away, abandon; throw down, cast.

suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō  
 5 locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset,  
 pārūerunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma,  
 servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur  
 et cōferuntur, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbi-  
 10 genus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppli-  
 ciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multi-  
 tudine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō  
 ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum  
 ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

**28.** Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,

**4. flentēs, with tears.** What form of the verb is *flentēs*?

**eōs:** subject of *exspectāre*.

**7. perfūgissent:** subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

**conquīruntur:** for the tense, see App. 234, a; A. 556; B. 293, 1; H. 604, 1; H.-B. 559.

**9. timōre . . . adficerentur, panic-stricken for fear that they would be subjected to punishment when their arms had been given up.**

**12. existimārent:** Caesar is not giving this reason on his own authority, but is implying that it was the thought of the Helvetians. See note on ch. 16, line 17. **primā nocte, at nightfall.**

**1. quod, this; object of rescit.**

**quōrum, etc.:** order for translation, *imperāvit hīs per finēs quōrum (or per quōrum finēs) ierant.*

**2. utī conquīrerent et redūcerent:** subjunctive clause, object of *imperāvit*. Translate by English infinitives.

**sibi:** a dative of reference; it may be omitted in translation.

**vellent:** implied indirect discourse.

**4. suppliciter, adv. [supplex], as a suppliant; humbly.**

**7. per-fūgiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr., flee for refuge, desert.**

**conquīrō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [com-+quaerō], search out, collect.**

**8. Verbigenus, -ī, m., one of the four divisions of the Helvetians.**

**11. dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], that has surrendered, surren-**

**dered; as subst., m. pl., prisoners of war, captives.**

**occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum tr. [freq. of occultō, hide], hide, conceal.**

**12. ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., not know, be ignorant of or unacquainted with.**

**1. re-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, tr. [sciscō, approve], find out, learn.**

**2. pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [pūrus+agō], excuse, exonerate.**

*Punishment of the fugitives. The rest of the Helvetians are sent back to their own country.*

imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, La- 5 tobriḡōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 10 eum locum, unde Helvētīi discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus

3. reductōs . . . habuit, *when they had been brought back, he treated them as enemies*, that is he either put them to death or sold them as slaves. Probably the latter fate would be the lot of the greater number.

4. reliquōs omnēs in dēditionem accēpit, *he granted terms of surrender to all the rest*. A literal translation of the phrase *in dēditionem accipere* makes impossible English.

7. omnibus frūgibus āmissīs: render by a clause with *since*, and translate after *tolerārent*. domī: case?

quō famem tolerārent, *with which to keep off starvation* (lit. *with which they could keep off starvation*); a descriptive clause expressing possibility.

8. ut iīs cōpiam facerent, *to furnish them a supply*.

10. eā maximē ratiōne, *for this reason especially*; ratiōne is explained by quod . . . nōluit.

11. nē . . . trānsīrent: a negative clause of purpose.

13. in Helvētiōrum finēs: the ability of the Helvetians to hold their own against the Germans in war had helped to keep the latter in check. Caesar had reason to fear that with this barrier removed the Germans would establish themselves in the fertile Swiss valleys and would in time come to be the dominant power in Gaul.

14. Galliae: dative.

Boiōs: object of *conlocārent*.

6. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence, from which.

7. frūx, frūgis, *f. (generally pl.)*, fruit, produce; grain, crops.

8. tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, bear up under, endure; sustain.

10. ratiō, -ōnis, *f. [ratus]*, reckoning; plan, method, way; reason, ground.

11. vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied, lie waste.

12. bonitās, -ātis, *f. [bonus]*, goodness, fertility.

- 15 Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsi erant recēperunt.

*The number of the Helvetians and their allies.*

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex his, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii.
- 10 Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar impe-rāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

15. **Haeduīs**: either an ablative absolute or a dative with *concessit*. **virtūte**: ablative of description. **erant**: the subject refers to *Boiōs*.

16. **conlocārent**: subjunctive in a substantive clause which may be regarded as the object either of *concessit* or of *petentibus*. It is really felt with both. **quibus**, *them*; referring to the Boii.

**quōsque . . . recēperunt**, and placed them on an equality of privileges and freedom with themselves (lit. the same condition of privilege and freedom as they were).

2. **litteris Graecis cōfectae**, made out in Greek characters; the Gauls had become acquainted with the Greek alphabet through traders. The city of Marseilles was originally a Greek settlement, and traders from there reached many parts of Gaul. **relātae**: *sunt* is understood.

3. **ratiō**, an account. **quī**: an interrogative adjective, with *numerus*.

4. **exisset**: subjunctive in an indirect question.

**possent**: subjunctive in a descriptive relative clause.

6. **capitum**: omit in translation; literally *heads*, as we speak of so many head of cattle.

8. **possent**: the same construction as *possent* in line 4.

10. **cēnsū habitō**, when an enumeration was made.

17. **pār**, *paris*, *adj.*, equal, similar.

2. **Graecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

3. **nōminātīm**, *adv.* [nōminō], by name.

5. **quot**, *indecl. adj.*; *rel.*, as many as, as; *interrog.*, how many?

**puer**, -i, *m.*, boy, child; *ā pueris*, from childhood.

**mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman.

6. **summa**, -ae, *f.* [summus], the top; sum total, aggregate; general management.

**30-54.** Ambassadors now came from many Gallic states to congratulate the victor and look after their own interests. Caesar, they thought, was the man to help them. With Gallic emotion they disclosed their troubles. Two factions, they said, had rent the peace of Gaul for many years, one headed by the Haedui, the other by the Arverni. The latter and their allies, the Sequani, in an evil hour had called upon the Germans for aid. The Germans had come, had put down the Haedui, and finding the Gallic lands to their liking, had continued to come in ever-increasing numbers. Now the tyranny of Ariovistus, their king, had grown unbearable. Would Caesar aid the Gauls? Caesar would; he asked no better opportunity.

An embassy was at once sent to the German king to ask a conference. Ariovistus replied haughtily; Caesar sent an ultimatum; Ariovistus must bring no more Germans into Gaul; he must give back his hostages and leave the Haedui unmolested. Ariovistus replied more haughtily; he had conquered the Gauls, and would act as he pleased. If the Romans wanted to fight, said he, let them try it; they would soon learn the prowess of the valorous Germans. Complaints kept coming in from the harassed Gauls; Caesar saw that war was inevitable. Preventing a mutiny which threatened to arise among his men, on account of their fear of the German warriors, he marched toward the army of Ariovistus, which was advancing southward from the Rhine. The German king now demanded a conference in his turn. Caesar acceded, but negotiations were abruptly broken off by the seizure and detention of two Roman envoys. Nothing was left but a resort to arms.

After some maneuvering, a bloody conflict took place, in which the Germans were totally routed. Caesar's envoys were rescued; Ariovistus, however, escaped across the Rhine. The result was decisive. The hordes of the Suebi, hurrying to enter Gaul, turned back disheartened from the river. Another campaign was finished; a second blow had been struck for Rome. Caesar led his army into winter quarters, and himself went south to Cisalpine Gaul, to hold the proconsular courts for the winter.

## BOOK II

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs adferēbantur litterisque  
*The Belgae form a "conspiracy" against the Romans.* item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam  
 5 tertiam esse Galliæ partem dixerāmus, contrā  
 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter  
 sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verēren-  
 tur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;

1. **cum esset**: a descriptive clause of situation. Occasionally, as here, *cum* introducing a clause of this kind is best translated *while*.

**Galliā**: for the different senses in which this word is used, see Vocabulary.  
**ita utī**: in place of the more usual *ut*. Notice that the indicative follows.

**suprà**: at the close of Book I. The duties of the proconsul were judicial as well as military, and Caesar usually devoted his winters to holding the proconsular courts.

**dēmōnstrāvimus**: Caesar speaks of himself as general in the third person; when he refers to himself as the author of the Commentaries he uses the first person, usually employing the plural in the latter case.

2. **litterisque . . . fiēbat**, and he was informed from time to time by letters from Labienus; the imperfect is used to denote repeated action.

3. **quam**: the antecedent is *Belgās*, but the pronoun is attracted into the gender and number of the pred. noun *partem*;—*who, as we had said, constitute the third part of Gaul*.

5. **coniūrāre . . . dare**: indirect discourse after *certior fiēbat*. Caesar uses the words *cōspīrāre* and *coniūrāre*, for every attempt of the Gauls to defend their freedom against the Romans.

**inter sē dare**, were giving to one another, were exchanging; *inter* is used with reflexive pronouns to express the reciprocal idea, "each other," "one another."

6. **hās esse causās**: continuation of indirect discourse. Two reasons are given, (1) *primum quod verērentur nē . . . addūcerētur* and (2) *deinde quod ab nōn nullīs . . . sollicitārentur*. These *nōn nullī* consist of three classes, (1) *partim quī*, l. 8, (2) *partim quī*, l. 11, and (3) *nōn nullīs*, l. 12.

**verērentur**: in a subordinate cl. in ind. discourse; so *sollicitārentur*, l. 8.

7. **nē, that. pācātā**: see on Bk. I, ch. 6, 8. **Galliā**: *i.e.*, Celtic Gaul. **ad eōs**: *i.e.*, *Belgās*; *ad sē* would be more regular.

2. **crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.**, thick, repeated, numerous, frequent.  
**rŭmor, -ōris, m.**, hearsay, rumor.

**ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum, tr.**, bring to, carry to, present; cause.



deinde, quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē 10 ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur; quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi poterant.

15

Caesar  
marches  
against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā

8. partim (sc. ab eīs) quī . . . partim quī, some of whom (lit. partly by those who) . . . others of whom. Note the change to the indicative. Caesar passes from a statement of rumors to the statement of facts within his own knowledge.

9. ut . . . ita, as before . . . so now.

10. hiemāre . . . molestē ferēbant, resented it that . . . should winter; the infinitive is in indirect discourse with molestē ferēbant.

11. mōbilitāte . . . levitāte: ablatives of cause.

novīs imperiīs, a new form of government; for case see note on Bk. I, ch. 9, 8.

12. ab nōn nūllis: supply sollicitābantur. There were two political parties in Gaul, one of which, the "popular" or Romanizing party, was opposed to the concentration of power in the hands of a few of the stronger chiefs, and was inclined to look to Rome for help in the struggle; the other, the so-called "patriotic" party, was bitterly hostile to the presence of the foreigners, and was strong in its allegiance to various chiefs or heads of clans. The Haedui were the leaders of the popular side, and the Arverni and the Sequani of the patriotic party.

13. ad . . . hominēs, for hiring mercenaries.

14. rēgna: there was no hereditary monarchy in Gaul, but the stronger chiefs often assumed unlimited powers.

imperiō nostrō, under our sovereignty; abl. of attendant circumstance.

1. duās: the XIIIth and XIVth.

2. initā aestāte: abl. abs., at the beginning of summer.

9. versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of vertō], turn; pass. as deponent, live, dwell, remain, be, be occupied, be busy.

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, —, intr. [veterāscō, grow old], grow old, become established, gain a foothold.

molestē, adv. [molestus], with trouble or difficulty; molestē

ferre, be annoyed or vexed (at).

11. mōbilitās, -ātis, f. [mōbilis], movableness, activity; changeableness.

levitās, -ātis, f. [levis], lightness; restlessness, fickleness.

2. in-eō, -ire, -iī and -ivī, -itum, tr., go into, enter upon; begin; w. cōsiliū, form.

aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad  
 5 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōs-  
 cant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter  
 omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum  
 condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad  
 10 eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet  
 diēbusque circiter xv ad finēs Belgārū pervenit.

3. in ulteriōrem Galliam: depends on *dēdūceret*.

quī dēdūceret: a relative clause of purpose, to be translated after the main clause.

4. cum primum . . . inciperet, as soon as, etc. The usual construction with *cum primum* is the indicative, but the clause is here made a descriptive clause of situation.

pābuli: grass and other food for the animals of the baggage train and for the cavalry horses.

ad exercitum vēnit: at Vesontio (Map IV, F, 3). Caesar now had eight legions, which with his auxiliaries made a force of about 60,000 men.

5. dat negōtium, he employs. What is it literally?

6. utī . . . cognōscant . . . certiōrem faciant, to find out . . . to inform; substantive clauses in apposition with *negōtium*.

7. certiōrem: for constr. see App. 126; A. 393, note; B. 177, 2; H. 410; H.-B. 392. The corresponding passive constr. is given in ch. 1, 3.

cōstanter: i.e., their accounts all agreed.

8. manūs: small bodies of troops, which made up the *exercitus*.

9. (sibi) dubitandum nōn . . . quīn . . . proficīscerētur, that he ought not to hesitate to set out (lit. but that he should set out). With *dubitō* meaning "hesitate" Caesar uses the complementary infinitive, except when the verb, as in this instance, is in the passive periphrastic form (future passive participle with *esse*).

dubitandum (*esse*): impersonal.

11. ad finēs: about 145 miles northwest of Vesontio.

3. Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name, esp. Quintus Pedius, Caesar's grand-nephew and legate.

4. incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* and *intr.* [in+capiō], begin.

5. negōtium, -ī, *n.* [nec+ōtium], business, undertaking; negōtium

dare, to assign a task.

7. cōstanter, *adv.* [cōstāns, firm], uniformly, consistently.

9. vērō, *adv.* [vērus], postpositive, in truth, indeed; however, but, even.

10. prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, *tr.*, see beforehand, foresee, provide.

*The Remi  
surrender to  
Caesar.*

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium  
opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex  
Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs  
civitātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaeque omnia in fidem atque  
potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs 5  
Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,  
parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs  
recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs  
Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,

1. eō: depends on *vēnisset*.

omnium opīniōne, *than any one anticipated* (lit. *than the expectation of all*);  
for case see App. 139; A. 406; B. 217; H. 471; H.-B. 416.

2. Rēmī: after his defeat of Ariovistus, Caesar gave the Remi a large  
part of the territory of the Sequani, and as a result of his support their  
power had increased until they were second only to the Haedui.

Galliae (sc. *Celticae*): dative, depending on *proximī*.

ex Belgīs: translate like a genitive of the whole; see on Bk. I, ch. 15, 7.

4. sē suaeque omnia, *themselves and all their possessions*; object of *per-  
mittere*. The subject *sē* is omitted to avoid a repetition of the word.

in fidem atque potestātem . . . *permittere*, *put . . . under the protec-  
tion and sovereignty*.

5. neque sē, etc., *and that they had not*, etc.

7. parātōs may govern the infinitive, as here, or *ad* with the gerund or  
gerundive construction.

imperāta facere, *to obey his orders* (lit. *to do the things commanded*).

oppidīs: the ablative denotes both place and means.

8. recipere: supply *eōs*, i.e., *Rōmānōs*.

frūmentō: *frūmentum* in the plural is regularly used of grain in the field,  
“crops”; in the singular it refers to grain as food, “harvested grain.”

cēteris . . . rēbus, *with everything else*.

9. cis: i.e., the Gallic side.

1. imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+  
prōvisus, foreseen], unforeseen;  
dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, with-  
out warning.

2. opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opīnor, think],  
way of thinking, belief, opinion;  
expectation.

Rēmī, -ī, *m.*, one of the Remi; *pl.*,  
the Remi, a Belgic tribe. *Map*  
*IV, E-F, 2.*

3. Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi.

Andebrogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the  
Remi.

5. per-mittō, -ere, -misi, -misum,  
*tr.*, let go, permit, intrust.

6. cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsi, -sēnsū,  
*intr.* [com-+sentiō], agree, com-  
bine, conspire.

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part.* of im-  
perō], an order, command.

9. cis, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side of.

- 10 sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quī cum hīs cōsentirent.

*The origin of the Belgae and their forces.*

4. Cum ab iīs quæreret quæ civitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse

10. sēsē: omit in translation. While the Latin verb *coniungere* requires an object, the English verb, which is here most naturally used to translate it, does not.

tantum esse furōrem, *such was the insane folly*; the Remi wish to assure Caesar that they regard the Belgian league as facing certain defeat and disaster, and so have tried to prevent their friends from joining it.

11. nē . . . quidem: the emphatic word stands between these two adverbs. Suessiōnēs: object of *dēterrēre*.

12. iūre . . . lēgibus, *rights . . . laws*. imperium: in war.

13. magistrātum: in peace.

cum ipsīs: *i.e., cum Rēmīs*, more emphatic than *sēcum*.

habeant: supply *et quī* before *ūnum* in line 12.

potuerint: the verb of the result clause introduced by *ut*.

14. quī . . . cōsentirent, *from conspiring*; for mood see App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 295, 3; H. 596, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

1. iīs: the envoys of the Remi.

quæ . . . possent, *what states were in arms and how large they were and what was their military strength*; *quantae essent* refers to the extent of territory occupied, while *quid possent* refers more specifically to the number of soldiers available for war.

2. sic reperiēbat, *he obtained the following information*. What literally? The imperfect, indicating repeated action, is used because he gained his information at various times; compare *frēbat*, ch. 1, 3. This word, taken up again by *Rēmī dicēbant*, l. 10, governs the ind. dis. to the end of the chapter.

3. Germānīs: for case see App. 135; A. 403, a, n. 1; B. 215, 2; H. 469, 1; H.-B. 413, b; *ab* is sometimes used with this abl. to denote remote origin.

Rhēnum: depends on *trāns* in *trāductōs*.

10. furor, -ōris, *m.* [furō], rage, frenzy, madness.

11. Suessiōnēs, -um, *m., a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons*. Map IV, E, 2.

3. plērique, -aeque, -aque, *adj.*

[plērus, very many], very many, the greater part or most of.

4. antīquitus, *adv.* [antīquus], from early times, long ago.

fertilitās, -ātis, *f.* [fertilis], fertility, productiveness.

Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse sōlōsque esse, quī 5  
 patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs  
 Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī,  
 utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque  
 spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē  
 habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā quod propinquitā- 10  
 tibus adfinitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multi-  
 tūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus

5. **Gallōs**: object of *expulisse*, which has the same subject as the other infinitives of the passage through *esse*.

6. **memoriā**, in the time.

**Galliā vexātā**: the Cimbrī and the Teutons, German tribes from the shores of the Baltic, moving southward through Europe, had overrun Celtic Gaul, and were driven out only after a most determined resistance and great suffering on the part of the Gallic towns. They defeated several Roman armies, and were a constant menace to the safety of Rome itself till they were at last overthrown by Marius in the decisive battles of Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and Vercellae (101).

7. **ingredi prohibuerint**, prevented from entering. The subjunctive with *quōminus*, which might have been expected with a verb of hindering, is never used by Caesar with *prohibere*; for the mood of *prohibuerint*, see on *possent*, Bk. I, ch. 6, 2.

**quā ex rē**, and so (lit. from which circumstance). A monosyllabic preposition is often thus placed between an adj. or pronoun and its substantive.

**fieri utī**, the result was that; the subject of *fieri* is *utī sūmerent*.

8. **memoriā**: abl. of cause; contrast the meaning of this word in l. 6.

9. **spīritūs . . . sūmerent**, assumed great haughtiness; compare English "put on airs." The pres. subj. would stand in direct discourse.

**omnia . . . habēre explōrāta**, they had complete information; see on Bk. I, ch. 15, 4.

10. **propinquitātibus . . . coniūctī**, closely connected by ties of blood and by intermarriage.

11. **quisque**: supply *lēgātus*, i.e., each delegate to the council.'

12. **pollicitus sit**: an indirect question.

6. **Teutonī, -ōrum (-um)**, *m.*, the Teutons, a people from northern Germany.

9. **spīritus, -ūs, m.** [*spīrō*], breath, life; airs, pride.

10. **explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, investigate, examine, find out.

**propinquitās, -ātis, f.** [*propinquus*], nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.

sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere  
 15 armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia LX, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum  
 20 regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nervīos, quī maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv mīlia

13. *plūrimum . . . valēre* (= *plūrimum posse*), *were the strongest*. For the accusative see App. 128; A. 390, c; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; H.-B. 387, III. *virtūte . . . auctōritāte . . . numerō*: ablatives of specification.

15. *armāta mīlia* = *armātōrum mīlia*, so also *ēlēcta* (sc. *mīlia*).

*pollicitōs*: supply *esse*.

16. *suōs*: refers to the Remi.

18. *Dīviciācum*: not to be confused with the Haeduan of the same name who was mentioned in Bk. I.

19. *cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also*.

20. *Britanniae*: probably only that part of the island nearest to Gaul. This is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman writer.

22. *habēre*: supply *Suessiōnēs*.

24. *maximē feri*: *ferus* has no comparative or superlative form.

*longissimē . . . absint*: i.e., from the Province; it explains *ferī*. In Book I the Belgae are described as the bravest people in Gaul because they are farthest from the civilizing influences of the Province. The Nervii were one of the northernmost tribes of the Belgae.

13. *Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe about modern Beauvais. Map IV, D-E, 2.*

16. *postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., ask, demand, ask for.*

17. *ferāx, -ācis, adj. [ferō], fertile.*

20. *regiō, -ōnis, f. [regō], direction, region, country; situation.*

*Britannia, -ae, f., Britain. Map IV, A-D, 1.*

21. *Galba, -ae, m., a king of the Suessiones.*

*prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], discretion, prudence.*

23. *totidem, indecl. adj., just as many, the same number.*

*Nervii, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe between the Sambre and Scheldt. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.*

24. *ferus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, cruel.*

Atrebātēs, Ambianōs x milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs 25  
vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem,  
Atuatucōs xviii milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs,  
Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī  
ad xl milia.

*Caesar  
encamps on  
the river  
Aisne.*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrā-  
tione prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre  
principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit.  
Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse  
Diviciacum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantō 5

27. Condrūsōs, etc.: subjects of *pollicērī* understood, the construction depending on *arbitrārī* of the next line.

28. quī . . . appellantur: a remark of Caesar, not a part of the report of the Remi; hence the indicative.

arbitrārī: supply sē (= Rēmōs) as subject.

1. liberāliter . . . prōsecūtus, addressing them with kindly words.

2. senātum: Caesar uses a Roman term to designate the Gallic council.

3. obsidēs: hostages were usually the chief men of a state or their children. They might be tortured or put to death if their tribe failed to keep its agreements.

4. ad diem, on the appointed day.

5. quantō opere . . . intersit, how greatly it concerned. The subject of the verb is manūs . . . distīnērī.

25. Atrebās, -ātis, m., an Atrebatian; Atrebātēs, -um, a Belgic tribe. Map IV, E, 1.

Ambianī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe about modern Amiens. Map IV, D-E, 1-2.

Morini, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of modern Picardy. Map IV, E, 1.

Menapii, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. Map IV, F-G, 1.

26. Caleti, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), m., a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

Vellocassēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe on the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

Viromandui, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe of modern Picardy. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.

27. Atuatuci, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutons. Map IV, F, 1.

XVIII = ūndēvigintī, indecl. num. adj. [ūnus+dē+vigintī], nineteen.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe about modern Condroz. Map IV, F, 1.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Rhine. Map IV, F-G, 1.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe. Map IV, G, 1.

28. Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe. Map IV, F, 1.

1. liberāliter, adv. [liberālis], graciously; generously.

5. doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, tr., teach, inform, show.

opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distinēri nē cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datis  
 10 mandātis, eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in unum locum coāctās ad sē venire vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs  
 15 et latus unum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque cīvitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum supportārī

**6. rei publicae:** *i.e.*, the Roman state; for case see App. 110; A. 355, a; B. 210, 211; H. 449; H.-B. 345.

**communis:** *i.e.*, of the Romans and Haedui.

**7. nē cōfligendum sit,** *that they* (the Romans and their allies) *might not be compelled to fight.*

**9. intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint:** future perfects in direct discourse.

**11. neque . . . cognōvit,** *and after he had learned from the scouts whom he had sent and from the Remi that they* (the forces of the Belgians) *were now not far distant.*

**13. flūmen . . . exercitum:** see note on Bk. I, ch. 12, 6. The corresponding passive construction is given in ch. 4, 3, 4.

**in extrēmīs . . . finibus,** *in the most remote part of the territory, i.e.*, most remote from the Province.

**14. ibi:** near the modern Berry-au-Bac, on the north side of the Aisne. Traces of the work were discovered by the engineers of Napoleon III. in 1862. See Plan. **quae rēs,** *this measure.*

**15. et . . . et:** correlatives; omit the first *et* in translation.

**post . . . reddēbat,** *made his rear* (lit. [those places] *which were behind him*) *safe from the enemy.*

**16. commeātūs . . . ut . . . possent efficiēbat:** a simpler order would be *efficiēbat ut commeātūs . . . possent*; for mood of *possent* see App. 229, a; A. 568; B. 297; H. 571, 3; H.-B. 521, 3.

**7. distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *tr.* [dis-+teneō], hold apart, keep apart.

**9. intrō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [intrō, within], lead into; introduce.

**13. Axona, -ae, m.,** *a river of Belgic*

*Gaul, the Aisne. Map IV, E-F, 2.*

**16. commeātus, -ūs, m.** [commeō, go and come], communication; supplies, provisions.

**17. supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [sub+portō], bring up, convey to, furnish.



possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīri iubet.

*Bibrax, being attacked by the Belgae, appeals to Caesar for aid.*

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī

19. in alterā parte, *on the other side, i.e., the south.* By thus guarding both ends of the bridge, Caesar was sure of a safe passage for supplies, and a means of escape in case of defeat.

20. pedum XII: to be taken with *vāllō*; a descriptive genitive expressing measure.

21. duodēvigintī pedum: *i.e., in width, measured at the top, the most important dimension.*

1. nōmine: ablative of respect. We should say *a town called Bibrax.*

2. ex itinere, (*immediately*) from the march, *i.e., without stopping to make the usual preparations for an assault.*

3. aegrē: emphatic, *only with difficulty.*

4. sustentātum est: translate by the personal construction

*eadem . . . haec: (is) the same as (that) of the Belgae and is as follows; atque* is used with words of likeness and unlikeness with the meaning of "as" or "than."

5. circumiectā multitūdine, etc.: translate by a coördinate clause, *when a great number of men have been stationed round the whole of the fortifications and, etc.*

6. coeptī sunt: see App. 86, a; A. 205, a; B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; H.-B. 199, 2.

18. efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ex+faciō], make out; make, accomplish, finish; bring about render.

19. Sabīnus, -ī, m., *cognomen of the legate Quintus Titurius*

20. cohors, -rtis, f., cohort, the tenth part of a legion.

2. Bibrax, -ctis, f., a town of the Remi. Map IV, E, 2.

4. sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.

and intr. [freq. of sustineō], sustain, withstand; hold out.

5. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō], a storming, besieging, attack.

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [circum+iaciō], hurl around, place around.

6. moenia, -ium, n., city walls, walls.

lapis, -idis, m., stone.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, tr., throw, hurl.

sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō  
 10 cōsistendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

*Caesar compels  
 the Belgae to  
 raise the siege.*

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas

7. dēfēnsōribus: ablative of separation.

testūdine factā, making a testudo; for illus. see Vocabulary.

8. tum, on this occasion. The description of a siege above given is general; Caesar now applies it to the particular siege of Bibrax.

9. cum . . . multitudō . . . conicerent: a causal clause. The verb is plural by a construction according to sense; see App. 179, a; A. 317, d; B. 254, 4; H. 389; H.-B. 331.

10. cōsistendī . . . nūlli, it was not possible for any one to stand; nūlli is a dative of possession. Caesar regularly uses this form for the dative of nēmō.

cōsistendī: genitive of the gerund, depending on potestās.

11. nōbilitāte . . . grātiā: see on Bk. I, ch. 7, 16.

12. oppidō: what is the reason for the case?

lēgātī: predicate appositive,—as envoys.

13. nūntiōs . . . mittit . . . nōn posse, sends a message (saying) that he can not.

1. eō: to Bibrax. dē, immediately after.

ducibus: predicate appositive,—as guides; so also nūntiī.

2. nūntiī: for construction, see note on lēgātī, ch. 6, 12.

Crētas: the word is here used like an adjective; Numidās is not to be taken with sagittariōs.

7. nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [nūdus], to strip, uncover; deprive of.

testūdō, -inis, f. [testa], tortoise; shed; testudo, covered column.

porta, -ae, f., a gate, city gate.

8. sub-ruō, -ere, -uī, -utum, tr., undermine, dig under.

13. subsidium, -ī, n. [sub+sedeō], reserve, assistance; reinforcement.

14. sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, tr., send up, send to one's assistance.

2. Crētēs, -um, m., Cretans. Map IV, H-I, 6.





1. *funditor*  
 2. *levis armaturae milites*  
 3. *legionarii*  
 4. *signiferi*

5. *bucinator*  
 6. *tubicen*  
 7. *vexillum*  
 8. *aquila*

# ROMAN SOLDIERS

sagittariōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quō adire potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs

**3. subsidiō oppidānis:** freely, to help the townspeople; *subsidiō* is a dative of purpose, and *oppidānis* is a dative of reference.

**4. quōrum adventū, upon their arrival;** like the English expression, the abl. denotes time and cause. *et . . . et, on the one hand . . . on the other.*

**cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, along with the hope of (making a successful) defense.**

**studium prōpugnandī, an eagerness to take the offensive.** The forces under Iccius, who had scarcely been able to maintain the defense of the town from within the walls, were so encouraged by the arrival of the reinforcements that they were eager to sally out and attack the besiegers.

**5. accessit . . . discessit, was aroused in . . . abandoned, contrasted** (lit. *came to . . . departed from*). *Rēmīs* depends upon *accessit* and *hostibus* upon *discessit*; *hostibus* is a dative of reference.

**potiundī oppidi:** only verbs that govern the accusative have the gerundive construction; *potior, ūlor*, etc., are only apparent exceptions, because they governed accusatives in early Latin.

**7. dēpopulātī . . . incēnsīs, after ravaging the fields and burning the villages, etc.** Remember that the Latin has no perfect active participle. The perf. participle of a deponent is, however, regularly active in meaning (as here *morātī* and *dēpopulātī*). With other verbs the abl. abs. with the verb in the passive (here *vicīs . . . incēnsīs*), or a clause, must be used.

**vicīs:** unprotected groups of dwellings.

**aedificiūs:** isolated dwellings, farmhouses.

**quō = ad quae** (i. e. *vicōs aedificiaque*).

**8. cōpiūs:** with the ablative of accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is sometimes omitted in military expressions if the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

**3. sagittarius, -ī, m. [sagitta], bowman, archer.**

**funditor, -ōris, m. [funda], slinger.**

**Baleāris, -e, adj., Balearic, of the Balearic isles. Map I, C-D, 5.**

**oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town; as subst., m. pl., townspeople.**

**4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō], defense.**

**5. prō-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., sally; fight for.**

**6. paulisper, adv. [paulum], a short time, a little while.**

**moror, -āri, -ātus [mora], tr. and intr., delay, wait; retard, hinder.**

**8. ad-eō, -ire, -iī or -ivī, -itum, tr. and intr., go to, approach, reach; apply to; attack, assail; visit.**

contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum VIII in lātitudinem patēbant.

*The armies are encamped facing each other. Description of Caesar's defenses.*

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellexit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex

9. **milibus**: abl. of measure of difference, depending on ā, "off," "away," which is used adverbially.

**minus**: for the construction used with this word, see App. 139, b; A. 407, c; B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; H.-B. 416, d.

**castra posuērunt**: see Plan.

11. **milibus**: ablative of comparison.

2. **opiniōnem virtūtis**, *their reputation for valor*; *virtūtis* is an objective genitive.

**proeliō**, *decisive battle*; ablative of separation.

4. **quid . . . posset . . . periclitābātur**, *he tested in cavalry battles what the courage of the enemy was and what our men dared to do.*; how lit? Compare *quid in bellō possent*, ch. 4, 2. *virtute* is an abl. of specification.

5. **ubi . . . intellexit**: the narrative may be made clearer in English by omitting *ubi* and translating the clause as coördinate with *periclitābātur*, supplying *and*;—*he tested . . . and he found (intellexit)*.

6. **locō . . . idōneō**: the ablative absolute is causal, but it is best translated by a main clause, with *quod . . . poterat . . . habēbat . . . redibat* dependent upon it;—*the place in front of the camp was naturally suitable and advantageous for drawing up a line of battle because, etc.*

7. **ex plānitie ēditus**, *rising above the plain, about 80 feet.*

10. **fūmus, -ī, m.**, smoke.

**significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [*signum*+*faciō*], show, indicate.

1. **primō, adv.** [*primus*], at the beginning, at first; first.

2. **eximius, -a, -um, adj.** [*eximō*], superior, remarkable.

3. **super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -ses-**

**sum, intr.**, refrain or desist from.

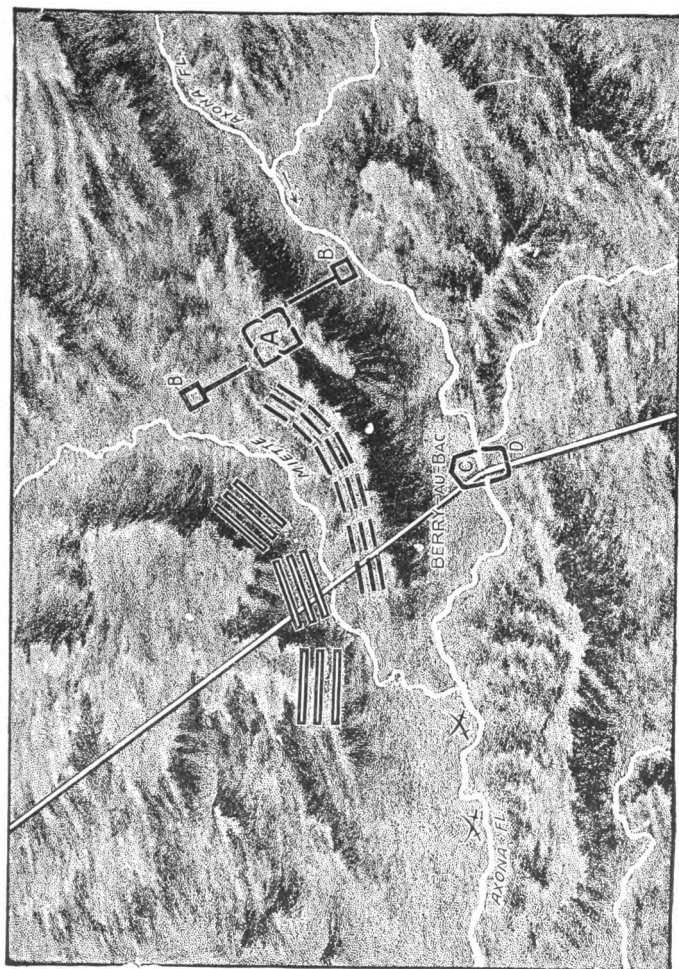
5. **periclitor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr.** [*periculum*], try, test.

6. **opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.** [*ob*+*portus*], convenient, opportune.

7. **idōneus, -a, -um, adj.**, suitable, adapted, fit.

**paululum, adv.** [*paululus*, very little], a very little, somewhat.





**— Romans**  
**A. Roman Camp**  
**B. B. Castella**

**Belgae**  
**C. Castellum and Bridge**  
**D. Position of Titurius**

## BATTLE ON THE AISNE



plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātītūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulūtīm 10 ad plānitēm redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum cccc et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnāntēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, 15

8. tantum . . . quantum, *over only as much space as.*

adversus: adjective, *in front, i.e., facing the enemy.*

in lātītūdinem: from the camp southwestward toward the junction of the Aisne and Miette.

9. locī: genitive of the whole with *quantum*, the object of *occupāre*; it is to be translated with *tantum*, however.

ex utrāque parte, *on both sides.*

10. lateris dēiectūs, *steep slopes* (lit. *slopes of the side*).

in frontem expresses the same direction that has already been expressed by *in lātītūdinem*.

11. redībat, *came down.*

ab utrōque, etc.: the main clause of the Latin sentence begins at this point. Make a separate English sentence.

trānsversam fossam: *i.e., at right angles to the ridge*; see Plan.

12. ad . . . fossās, *at the ends of the ditches*; see Plan. This was done to protect his flank and rear from attack.

13. tormenta: see Vocabulary.

14. instrūxisset stands for a fut. pf. in the unattracted form.

quod . . . poterant: parenthetical.

tantum multitūdine: compare *quid . . . virtūte*, line 4.

15. pugnāntēs suōs, *his (soldiers) while fighting.*

8. plānitēs, -ēī, *f.* [plānus], level ground, a plain.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of ēdō], elevated.

10. dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēiciō], slope, descent.

frōns, frontis, *f.*, the brow, forehead; front.

lēniter, *adv.* [lēnis], gently, gradually, moderately.

fastīgātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of

fastīgō, make pointed], inclined, sloping.

paulūtīm, *adv.* [paulum], little by little, gradually.

11. trāns-versus, -a, -um, *adj.*, across, transverse, at right angles.

12. ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead forward or toward; extend.

13. tormentum, -ī, *n.* [torqueō], an engine for hurling missiles; pl., artillery; torment, torture.

duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās vi legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

*The Belgae attempt to cross the river.*

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trāseundi fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur, parātī in armīs erant.
- 5 Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutrī trāseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum
- 10 cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent

16. duābus legiōnibus: the XIIIth and XIVth; see ch. 2, 1, 2.

17. si . . . esset, *if they should be needed anywhere, lit. if it should be necessary (for them to be led) anywhere.*

18. legiōnēs . . . cōstituit: see Plan.

19. ēductās: translate in the active,—led out and.

1. palūs: the marshy ground along the Miette.

nostrum: supply *exercitum*.

2. si, etc., *in case our men should cross or to see if, etc.*

3. si . . . fieret, *if they should begin to cross; how literally?*

4. ut . . . adgrederentur depends on parātī . . . erant,—stood ready in order to, etc. impeditōs: *i.e.*, by the crossing of the swamp.

5. inter, *(in the space) between.*

6. secundiōre . . . nostris, *and when the cavalry battle had resulted favorably for our men; ablative absolute suggesting cause; nostris is dative.*

9. ibi vadīs repertīs: just below the confluence of the two streams.

10. eō cōnsiliō ut, etc., *with the design of storming, etc.*

si possent . . . si . . . potuissent, *if possible . . . if not; how literally? potuissent represents a future perfect in the direct form of the thought which Caesar ascribes to the Belgians, while possent represents a future.*

11. castellum: see on *in alterā parte*, ch. 5, 19.

17. quō, *adv.* [quī]; *interrog.*, whither? where? *rel.*, whither, where; *indef.*, anywhere.

6. neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [ne+

uter], neither; *pl.*, neither side or party.

7. prōtinus, *adv.* [prō+tenus], next, then; at once, immediately.

pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostrōs prohibērent.

*They are repulsed and determine to return to their homes.*

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī 10

13. populārentur . . . prohibērent: in the same constr. as *expugnārent*.

2. levis armātūrae Numidās, the Numidian light infantry; how literally? *armātūrae* is a descriptive genitive.

3. ponte: abl. of route.

4. eō locō: at the fords.

hostēs . . . interfēcērunt: *nostrī* is the subject of the entire period. Translate *impeiditōs* and *cōnantēs* as relative clauses, and *adgressī* and *circumventōs* as main verbs.

5. per, over.

7. equitātū: Caesar uses the abl. of this word to denote either means or agency. Which is it here?

9. spem sē fefellisse, that they were deceived in their hope (lit. that their hope had deceived them); observe carefully the principal parts of *fallō*.

10. neque nostrōs . . . prōgredi = et nostrōs nōn prōgredi (*vīdērunt*).

in locum inīquiōrem, into a less favorable position than they then occupied, i.e., in *paludem*. Cf. the beginning of ch. 9.

12. inter-scindō, -ere, -scidi, -scisum, *tr.*, tear or break down, cut off.

13. ego, mei, *pers. pron.*, I, I myself.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtōr], use, control; management; service, advantage, practice, skill, experience; occasion, need.

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight, small.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō], armor, equipment.

9. fallō, -ere, fefelli, —, *tr. and intr.*, deceive, disappoint.

10. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus], uneven, steep; unequal, unfair; unfavorable.

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [prō+gradiōr], go forward, advance, proceed.

causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut  
 15 potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium  
 20 ferrent nōn poterat.

11. **ipsōs:** *i.e.*, the enemy. The Gauls, who were accustomed to short predatory expeditions, had not learned the necessity of attending to their supplies; and on this account they were often compelled to abandon their undertakings.

12. **esse:** the subject is *quemque . . . revertī*.

13. **quōrum in finēs**, *into whose territory*; the antecedent of *quōrum* is *eōs*, line 14.

15. **potius . . . finibus**, *in their own territory rather than in foreign territory*.

**dēcertārent**, *should fight a decisive battle, or, should fight it out*.

16. **cum**, *in addition to*.

17. **haec quoque ratiō**, *this further consideration*; the adverb *quoque* emphasizes the word immediately preceding. The fact to which *haec ratiō* refers is contrasted with *reliquīs causīs*.

**quod:** for translation when introducing a substantive clause, see App. 248; A. 572; B. 299; H. 588, 3; H.-B. 552.

**Dīviciācum . . . adpropinquāre:** according to the instructions of Caesar, as given in ch. 5, 4-9; *finibus* is dative with *adpropinquāre*, not because of the *ad* in composition, but because the verb expresses the idea of nearness, which when expressed by an adjective requires a dative.

19. **hīs . . . poterat**, *these (i.e., the Bellovaci) could not be persuaded to remain longer and refrain from rendering assistance to their fellow-countrymen (lit. it could not be made agreeable to them)*.

11. **dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**, *tr. and intr.* [dē+faciō], be wanting, fail, be insufficient; revolt; desert.

15. **potius**, *comp. adv.* [potis, able], rather, preferably.

**dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *tr. and intr.* [certō, fight], fight to the

end, fight out, fight, contend.

**domesticus, -a, -um**, *adj.* [domus], of or belonging to the home, home; one's own.

18. **ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *intr.* [propinquō, approach], approach.

*The Romans pursue them and inflict heavy losses.*

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressī nūllō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per 5 speculātōrēs cognitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. T. 10

1. **secundā vigiliā**: from sunset to sunrise the Romans reckoned four watches, two before midnight and two after. The length of a watch would of course vary with the time of the year.

2. **ēgressī . . . fēcērunt** = *ēgressī sunt . . . et . . . fēcērunt*.

**nūllō . . . imperiō**, with no definite order or leadership; ablative absolute denoting manner, explained by the causal cl. *cum . . . properāret*.

3. **sibi quisque**: the Latin frequently groups pronouns together, especially when they are of different kinds.

4. **fēcērunt ut**, etc., *made their departure seem*, etc.; for the use of the *ut* clause see on *commeātūs*, ch. 5, 16.

5. **fugae**: may be either a genitive or a dative.

**hāc rē . . . cognitā**: translate by a clause with *although*.

6. **speculātōrēs**: see Vocabulary. **veritus**, *fearing*.

**discēderent**: subjunctive in an indirect question.

7. **castris**: for case see on *oppidīs*, 3, 7.

9. **novissimum agmen**, the rear, lit. the newest (*i.e.*, the last) part of the line of march. *Extrēmō agmine* of l. 13 refers to the last files of the rear-guard.

**morārētur**: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

**hīs**: why dative?

2. **strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make noise], a confused noise, noise.

**tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion; disturbance.

**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, a row, rank of soldiers; order, arrangement; rank.

4. **properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry.

6. **speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout.

7. **perspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [per+speciō, spy], perceive, see; observe, ascertain; examine, inspect.

10. **Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, cognomen of one of Caesar's legates, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum  
 15 nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub  
 20 occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

11. **cum legiōnibus**: observe that the preposition is not omitted here, because the modifier is a numeral.

13. **fugientium**, in *their flight*.

**conciderunt**: distinguish carefully between the forms of *concidō* and of *concidō*.

**cum . . . cōsisterent**, since those in the extreme rear, whom our men had overtaken, made a stand. The resistance of the scattered bands along the rear line could accomplish little against the Roman legionaries:-

14. **quōs** refers to *agmine* as *hīs*, l, 9, does to *equitātum* (= *equitēs*).

15. **priōrēs** (*hostēs*), etc.: this clause, though having the same constr. as the preceding, marks a contrast between the van and the rear guard of the Belgians. Translate, *while those in front*, etc.

16. **vidērentur . . . continērentur**: for mood see App. 274; A. 593; B. 324; H. 652; H.-B. 539.

17. **exaudītō . . . ordinibus**, with *their ranks thrown into confusion from the shouting which they heard*; the first of these ablatives absolute conveys an idea of time and cause, and is subordinate to the second.

in *fugā* . . . **pōnerent**, *sought safety in flight*.

19. **quantum . . . spatium**, as *the length of the day allowed*.

20. **sequi dēstitērunt**, *they desisted from the pursuit*; *dēstitō* is frequently used with a complementary infinitive.

11. **sub-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.* and *intr.*, follow on, follow.

14. **fortiter**, *adv.* [fortis], bravely.

15. **prior**, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, first; superior; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, those in advance.

17. **ex-audiō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.*, hear, discern.

**clāmōr**, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō], an outcry, shouting; clamor, din.

**per-turbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, disturb, throw into confusion.

*The Suesiones, defiant at first, soon surrender.*

**12.** *Postridiē eius diēi* Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum,

**1. diēi:** genitive depending on *postridiē*; the phrase = "on that day's next day."

**priusquam . . . reciperent,** *before . . . should recover*; the subjunctive is anticipatory.

**2. in finēs:** Caesar had accomplished his design of breaking up the allied forces, and could now subdue the various tribes one at a time.

**4. magnō itinere,** *by a forced march*, from 25 to 30 miles. An ordinary day's march was from about 15 to 17 miles.

**ex itinere:** see on *ex itinere*, ch. 6, 2.

**5. vacuum . . . esse,** *was without defenders*; *dēfēnsōribus* is an ablative of separation.

**6. lātitudinem fossae:** the Romans attempted to fill up the ditch and, by employing the *testūdō*, to break down the gates and scale the walls.

**paucīs dēfendentibus** = an adversative clause, *although there were only a few defenders*.

**7. vīneās:** see Vocabulary.

**8. agere,** *to move up, to advance*.

**quaeque = et (ea) quae;** see Vocab., *oppugnātiō*, for a description of siege operations. **ūsui erant,** *were necessary*; *ūsui* is a dative of purpose.

**11. aggere iactō,** *after an earthwork had been constructed*.

**turribus:** see Vocabulary.

**magnitūdine, celeritāte:** ablatives of cause, depending on *permōtī*.

**4. Noviodūnum, -ī, n.,** *a town of the Suesiones, modern Soissons. Map IV, E, 2.*

**7. vīnea, -ae, f.,** *a shed for the defense of a besieging party.*

**11. agger, -eris, m.** [*ad+gerō*], *ma-*

*terials for making a mound or earthwork; mound, rampart, earthwork.*

**turris, -is, f.,** *tower.*

**magnitūdō, -inis, f.** [*magnus*], *greatness, size, extent.*

quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who offer to surrender.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē  
5 suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs  
10 contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi

12. quae . . . audierant, such as Gauls had neither seen nor heard of before.

14. petentibus Rēmīs: abl. abs., at the request of the Remi, to whom they were related by ties of blood; see ch. 3, 11.

ut cōservārentur depends on *petentibus*.

impetrant: used absolutely, as often, — they obtain their wish.

1. obsidibus, as hostages.

primīs, the leading men; see on ch. 5, 3.

3. in dēditiōnem . . . accipit: see on Bk. I, ch. 28, 4. He took them as a conquered people under his protection.

4. in Bellovacōs, into the country of the Bellovaci; the name of the people instead of that of their country, as often in Caesar.

cum . . . contulissent, when they had gathered in the town of Bratuspantium with all their possessions.

6. mīlia: accusative of extent.

7. maiōrēs nātū, the old men; nātū is an ablative of respect.

8. vōce significāre, to make known by their words (or cries).

in . . . fidem . . . venīre, gave themselves up to his protection and submitted to his authority.

10. ad oppidum accessisset, had approached the town; observe the difference between the tense of the two verbs in the cum clause.

14. cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+servō], save, spare; protect.

5. Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci. Map IV, E, 2.

7. nātus, -ūs, m. [nāscor], only in abl. sing., birth, age.

8. tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, tr., stretch, stretch out, extend, hold out.



pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

*Diviciacus  
pleads for them.*

14. Prō his Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō his Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac

11. puerī, *children*.

passis: study the principal parts of *pandō* and *patior*; the sense will make it possible to decide from which verb a doubtful participle comes.

mōre: for the ablative see on Bk. I, ch. 4, 2.

1. prō his, *in behalf of these, i.e., the Bellovaci*.

2. eum: Caesar.

3. facit verba, *spoke as follows*; introducing indirect discourse.

in fidē, etc., *had enjoyed the confidence and friendship*. They were clients of the Haedui.

4. impulsōs: participle; sc. *eōs* as subject of *dēfēcisse* and *intulisse*.

ab suīs prīncipibus: like Diviciacus the Haeduan (see Bk. I, 17), these leaders were doubtless more concerned over the menace to their personal power than over the national peril. See Caesar's statement in ch. 1, lines 12-15 with reference to this class of "patriots."

5. redāctōs perferre, *had been reduced and were enduring*.

omnēs, *all sorts of*.

7. quī: supply as antecedent *eōs*, the subject of *profūgissee*.

8. cīvitātī: why dative?

9. petere: the subject is *Bellovacōs* and *Haeduōs*.

10. ut . . . ūtātur, *to exercise*. suā, *his well known*.

11. pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread, stretch out; passis manibus, with outstretched hands.

1. discessus, -ūs, *m.* [discēdō], departure.

4. impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō], drive or urge on, in-

cite, impel, arouse, instigate.

6. indignitās, -ātis, *f.* [indignus], outrage, disgrace.

9. pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee, escape.

10. clēmētia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, mild], mercy, clemency.

mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.

*Caesar receives their surrender and that of the Ambiani. The customs of the Nervii.*

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvītās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multītūdine praestābat, 5 dc obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trādītis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nullum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil

11. in eōs (not in sē), toward them, referring to the more distant subject *Bellovacōs*.

quod sī fēcerit, if he should do this; Diviciacus's words were quod sī fēceris, "if you shall have done this."

12. amplificātūrum: supply *eum* (i.e., *Caesarem*) as subject.

quōrum . . . cōsuērunt, freely, upon whose assistance and resources they always relied whenever any war broke out. What is it literally? The ablatives denote means. The direct form would be *sī qua bella inciderunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt*.

1. honōris . . . causā, out of respect for; depending on the infinitives. Diviciāci: objective genitive.

2. in fidem receptūrum (sc. *esse*), would take under his protection.

3. magnā . . . auctōritāte: descriptive ablative in the predicate.

4. multītūdine: ablative of respect.

7. finēs: the order of words in this sentence, in which the object precedes the subject, serves to give prominence to the subject. The Nervii were especially important in the narrative which was to follow.

8. sīc reperiēbat: see on ch. 4, 2.

9. nullum . . . nihil: emphasized by their position.

esse . . . mercātōribus: traders had; *mercātōribus* is dative of possession. The Greek and Roman traders carried on a rather extensive commerce throughout Gaul and parts of Germany, and along the coast of Britain. See on Bk. I, ch. 29, 2.

nihil . . . rērum, they do not permit any wine or anything else.

11. mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tamed], gentleness, compassion.

12. amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*

[amplūs+faciō], extend, increase.

7. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō], access, approach; way of approach.

patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, 10  
quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existi-  
mārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis, increpitāre  
atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent  
patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque  
lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis acceptūrōs. 15

*The Nervii,  
encamped on  
the Sambre,  
are ready  
for battle.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset,  
inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis  
nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id  
flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmā-  
nōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs 5  
suis (nam hīs utrisque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortunam  
experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque

10. vīnī, rērum: genitives of the whole, depending on *nihil*.

11. relanguēscere . . . virtutem, freely, the warlike spirit was weakened and courage was diminished.

12. magnaē . . . virtūtis is equivalent to an adj. and is therefore connected with *ferōs* by *-que*.

13. dēdidissent . . . prōiēcissent: these would be subjunctive in the direct form; see App. 245; A. 535, e; B. 283, 3; H. 592; H.-B. 523.

14. patriam, inherited from their ancestors.

(eōs) cōfirmāre, etc., they asserted that they would, etc.

1. trīduum: accusative of duration of time.

3. amplius does not influence the construction of *mīlia*; see on *minus*, ch. 7, 9.

6. hīs utrisque, these two tribes. According to the report given by the Remi (ch. 4) the combined force, together with the Atuatici, would amount to about 90,000.

7. ab iīs, i.e., the Nervii.

10. vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.* [lūxus, excess], luxury, high living.

11. re-languēscō, -ere, -guī, —, *intr.*, grow faint or weak.

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send back, throw back; relax, weaken.

12. increpitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of increpō*], taunt, blame.

13. incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*in+causa*], bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid.

14. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, father's; ancestral.

2. Sabis, -is, *m.*, a tributary of the Meuse, the modern Sambre. Map IV, E-F, 1.

7. exprior, -iri, -pertus, *tr.*, make trial of, try.

esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniecisse quō propter palūdēs  
 10 exercitū aditus nōn esset.

*They plan a surprise.*

17. His rēbus cognitis explorātōrēs centuriō-  
 nēsque praemittit, quī locum castris idōneum dēligant.  
 Cum ex dēditiciis Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem  
 secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex captivīs  
 5 cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris nostrī  
 exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque his  
 dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum  
 numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prima  
 legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium  
 10 abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque

8. quīque, and those who, i.e., the old men and children; the antecedent of *quī* is an understood *eōs*, object of *coniecisse*, coördinate with *mulierēs*.  
*per*, on account of.

9. *eum locum . . . quō* (= *ad* or *in* *quem*), etc., a place to which an army had no access.

2. *locum . . . idōneum*: where fuel and water were abundant. High ground was chosen, if possible.

*dēligant*: see on *quī dēdūceret*, ch. 2, 3.

3. *ex . . . Belgīs*, etc.: equivalent to a genitive of the whole, depending on *complūrēs*. *ex his*, line 4, is similarly used with *quīdam*.

5. *diērum*, etc.: of this group of genitives, *diērum* may be regarded as a loosely used genitive of description modifying *itineris*, which is also modified by the subjective genitive *exercitūs*; *itineris* is a genitive of connection modifying *cōnsuetūdine*.

*cōnsuetūdine itineris*, the usual order of march; see Introduction §22 for the arrangement of the army on the march.

7. *inter . . . legiōnēs*, between every two legions.

*impedimentōrum . . . numerum*, a large amount of baggage, i.e., a long train of baggage; *numerus* is used because the baggage animals are thought of.

8. *neque . . . negōtī*, and it would be no trouble.

9. *castra*, camping ground. *spatium*: accusative of extent of space.

10. *sub sarcinīs*: i.e., while they were yet burdened with their heavy packs. See Vocabulary, *sarcina*. *adoriri*: subject of *esse*, l. 8.

9. *in-ūtilis*, -e, *adj.*, useless, worthless, unserviceable.

dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuuābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs) quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī 15 causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant ut īstar mūrī hae saepēs

11. futūrum ut . . . audērent = *ausūrās esse. futūrum esse ut or fore ut* with the present or imperfect subjunctive is often used for the future infinitive, active or passive. This construction is necessary when the verb has no supine stem.

12. adiuuābat . . . quod, freely, the advice of those who brought this report was reēnforced by the fact that; the subject of adiuuābat is quod . . . effēcerant. In translating, make the ablative absolute *arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs* coordinate with *effēcerant*;—*had slashed (or notched) and bent down young trees*.

13. cum . . . possent, since they had no strength in cavalry; for construction compare quid . . . virtūte posset, ch. 8, 4.

14. eī rei = *equitātū*.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, freely, their whole strength is in their infantry.

15. quō facilius, that they might the more easily, the more easily to; for the mood see App. 225, a, 2; A. 531, a; B. 282, 1, a; H. 568, 7; H.-B. 502, 2, b.

17. crēbrisque . . . interiectīs, and when the branches had grown out thick from the sides and briars and brambles had been planted among them.

18. īstar mūrī, like a wall; īstar is in apposition with mūnīmentum. Such hedges are said to have hampered military operations in this region at the beginning of the European war in 1914.

12. ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtum, *tr.*, help, assist, support.

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs], on foot; pedestrēs cōpiaē, infantry.

15. praedor, -āri, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [praeda], plunder, pillage.

16. impediō, -ire, -ivī, -ītum, *tr.* [in+pēs], entangle, hamper, interfere with; prevent; delay, detain.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, young.

incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [in+caedō], cut into, notch.

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, twig.

ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, *intr.*, be born from, spring or sprout up.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble.

18. sentēs, -ium, *m.*, thorns, thorn-bushes, briars.

īstar, *n.*, *indecl.*, likeness; with *gen.*, like, in the manner of.

saepēs, -is, *f.* [saepiō], hedge.

- 20 mūnimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervī existimāvērunt.

*Description of  
the battle  
ground.*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter cc infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō

19. quō = *in quod, i.e., mūnimentum.*

1. locī: on the heights of Neuf-Mesnil, on the north or left bank of the Sambre.

locum: another example of a repeated antecedent; omit in translation.

2. ab . . . dēclīvis, *descending evenly from the summit.*

4. parī acclivitatē, *with an equal upward slope; acclivitās* is used of a slope from bottom to top, *dēclivitās* of a slope from top to bottom.

collis: Hautmont, on the south or right bank.

adversus (adj.) . . . contrārius, *(with its slope) facing this hill and opposite to it.*

5. passūs . . . CC: modifying *apertus*. The hill was bare of trees (*apertus*) at its base (*infimus* = *ab infimā parte*) for 200 paces from the river's edge.

ab superiōre parte, *on the summit*; the Latin frequently employs the ablative denoting the point of view from which something may be regarded, instead of the ablative of place.

6. nōn . . . perspicī posset, *one could not see.*

19. mūnimentum, -i, *n.* [mūniō], fortifications, defense.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prae+habeō], offer, furnish, afford.

21. omittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō], let go, neglect, omit.

2. aequālīter, *adv.* [aequālis], equally, uniformly, evenly.

3. dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [dē+clīvus], sloping downward, descending.

4. acclivitās, -ātis, *f.* [acclīvus], an ascent, upward slope.

nāscor, -i, nātus, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise.

5. contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā], opposite, contrary, parallel.

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva], of a wood or forest, wooded.

intrōrsus, *adv.* [intrō, within+versus], inside, within.

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of occultō, cover], covered, concealed; *as subst., n.*, in occultō, in concealment.

secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

*The attack is sudden and the surprise complete.*

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam

8. vidēbantur: a true passive, not "seemed."

9. pedum trium: a descriptive genitive in the predicate.

1. subsequēbātur: the descriptive impf. is continued from the preceding chapter.

2. ratiō ōrdōque, *plan and arrangement*; the verb with these nominatives is in the singular because the compound subject is thought of as expressing two phases of one idea, i.e., "organization" (of the line of march).

aliter, etc., *was different from what the Belgae, etc.* For the force of *ac (alque)* see on *eadem* . . . *haec*, ch. 6, 4.

4. cōsuētūdine suā, *according to his custom*. The usual order, when not close to the enemy, had been correctly reported to the Nervii, ch. 17, 7, 8.

5. expeditās, *in light marching order*, i.e., without their packs, so that in case of a sudden attack they could fight unhindered.

6. inde = *post impedimenta*.

duae legiōnēs: the XIIIth and XIVth. According to his usual practice, Caesar put his recruits in the place of least danger.

7. agmen claudēbant, *brought up the rear*.

praesidiō erant, *served as a guard*; *praesidiō* is a dative of purpose.

10. cum: see on ch. 1, 1.

silvās refers to the different parts of the forest to which the enemy fled, *silvā* to the forest as a whole.

11. neque = *et nōn*. longius: modifies *insequi*.

8. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [secundus], by, along.

statīō, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], sentry, guard, outpost.

9. trāsgredior, -i, -gressus, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+gradior], step across, pass over, cross.

10. identidem, *adv.*, again and again.

quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs  
 insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs vi, quae primae vēnerant,  
 opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedi-  
 15 menta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, qui in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa  
 sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut  
 intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sē cōn-  
 firmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque  
 in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis,  
 20 incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō

**12. quem ad finem** = *ad eum finem ad quem*.

**porrēcta**, *extended*, is little more than a repetition of the idea of *pertinēbant*, and need not be translated. **cēdentēs**: supply *illōs*.

**14. opere**, *the works*, the rampart and ditch with which every Roman camp was surrounded.

**dimēnsō**: the perfect participle of deponent verbs may be used passively.

**prima impedimenta**, *the head of the baggage train*. The imprudence of Caesar in not keeping a part of the six legions under arms when the enemy was so near proved very costly, and almost fatal in its consequences.

**15. abditī**, like *porrēcta*, line 12, is a repetition of the thought of the verb, and need not be translated.

**16. tempus**, in apposition with *ubi . . . vīsa sunt*, is attracted into the relative clause. Translate the clause, *the time which had been agreed upon for*, etc. (lit. *which time of beginning battle had been agreed upon*).

**committendī proeli**: a genitive (usually translated with "for") is sometimes used as a modifier of a word denoting time, to name an event which takes place at the time specified. This usage may be regarded as an extension of the idea of the possessive genitive.

**ut . . . cōstituerant**, *just as they had formed*, etc., *i.e.*, without changing their formation.

**17. ipsī . . . cōfirmāverant**, *they had mutually resolved*. Caesar lays stress on the unusual forethought and system displayed in the attack of the barbarians, as it justifies to some extent the completeness of the surprise and confusion of his soldiers, and reflects additional credit on the final triumph of Roman discipline and courage.

**12. porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr.**  
 [por = prō + regō], reach, extend.

**cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum, intr.**, give way, retreat, yield.

**14. di-mētiōr, -iri, -mēnsus, tr.**, measure out, measure.

**15. lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.**, lie hidden, lurk, be concealed.

**18. prō-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**, fly or rush forth.

**19. prō-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse.

**20. dē-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, tr. and intr.**, run down, hurry off.



tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere oꝓcupātī erant contendērunt.

*Caesar's hands are full, but the well-disciplined soldiers know what to do.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda; vexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri

22. adversō colle, *up the hill*; ablative of route (lit. *by way of the hill facing them*).

1. Caesarī, etc., *Caesar had to do everything, etc.*; dative of agent.

2. vexillum prōpōnendum (*erat*); with the future passive participle in the clauses following, *erat* or *erant* is to be supplied. A red flag was raised at the general's tent as a signal of an approaching battle.

3. signum . . . dandum, *the signal had to be given*, to form ranks.

4. quī, *those who*; supply as antecedent *ī*, the subject of *arcessendī* (*erant*).

paulō longius, *some distance away* (lit. *a little too far*).

aggeris: here the material for building the rampart, timber, sod, etc.

6. signum, *the signal* (for the attack).

8. hīs difficultātibus subsidiō: dative of reference and dative of purpose; translate, *helpful in these difficulties*.

scientia atque ūsus, *theoretical and practical knowledge*, together making the first of the *duae rēs*.

9. quid . . . oportēret: indirect question, depending on *praescribere* and *doceri*.

2. vexillum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of vēlum*], banner.

3. concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [*com-+currō*], run or rush together, encounter; hasten; assemble.

3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.

5. arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, summon, send for.

7. brevitās, -ātis, *f.* [*brevis*], short-

ness, short stature.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [*incurrō*, run into], rush, dash, onset.

8. difficultās, -ātis, *f.* [*difficilis*], difficulty, trouble.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [*sciēns*], knowledge, skill.

9. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train], trained, experienced.

- 10 oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur  
15 administrābant.

*Caesar  
inspects his  
lines. The  
time is short.*

21. Caesar, necessariīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs militēs, quam partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis  
5 memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum

10. ipsī sibi: the Latin connects the forms of *ipse* with the subject rather than with the oblique cases.

sibi praescribere, *decide for themselves*, depending on *poterant*.

11. et quod, *and the fact that*, introducing the second of the *duae res*.

singulis . . . lēgātōs, *the several lieutenants from their respective legions*. It was not until a later time that the *lēgātī* were permanently assigned to particular legions.

12. nisi mūnītis castrīs, *unless (i.e., until) the camp had been fortified*.

13. nihil: = an emphatic *nōn*.

14. quae vidēbantur, *what seemed best*.

1. necessariīs . . . imperātīs, *after giving the necessary orders*.

ad . . . militēs: depends on *dēcucurrit*.

2. quam . . . obtulit, *to the part which happened to be near (lit. which chance brought in his way)*.

3. ad . . . decimam: Caesar's favorite and most famous legion. It was stationed on the left wing.

nōn . . . quam (sc. *hāc*, i.e., *ōrātiōne*) utī, *without making a longer speech than to urge that*.

6. sustinērent: repeat *utī* from l. 4.

quod . . . aberant gives the reason for *signum dedit*.

7. quam quō, *than (the distance) to which*.

posset: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 6; H.-B. 521, 2, c.

10. prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum, *tr.*, order, direct, pre-scribe.

15. ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ministrō, serve], manage, attend to, carry out, do.

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; *abl.* forte as *adv.*, by chance, perhaps, accidentally.

3. dē-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come down, go or come to, reach.

dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus pugnantis occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostium-  
que tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insig-  
nia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque  
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere  
in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec  
cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

*The nature of  
the ground adds  
to Caesar's  
difficulties.*

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut loci nātūra  
et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō  
atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae

8. in alteram partem: i.e., to the right wing. What legions were stationed here?

9. pugnantis occurrit, he finds them (already) fighting; occurro is a compound of ob and takes a dependent dative.

temporis, etc., freely, the time was so short.

10. insignia, decorations, especially crests and plumes worn to distinguish the soldier's rank, and possibly the legion to which he belonged.

11. galeās: for illius. see Vocab. On the march the helmet was suspended on the breast or back, and the soldier went bareheaded. When working at the intrenchments, he laid his armor aside.

scūtis: abl. of separation. They were protected on the march by a leather covering; for illius. see Vocabulary.

12. tempus dēfuerit, time was lacking; for the tense see App. 204, a (last part); A. 485,c; B. 268, 6; H. 550; H.-B. 478.

quam . . . in partem, to whatever place.

13. quaeque, and whatever.

prima: an adjective modifying signa, but to be translated by an English adverb. signa, standards of the maniples. ad haec, by these.

14. suis: supply signis.

1. ut: as. nātūra et necessitās: supply a verb from postulābat of line 3.

2. rei . . . ōrdō, rules of military science.

3. cum . . . impedirētur gives the reason for the main clause, neque . . . neque . . . poterant.

diversae, separated, further explained by aliae . . . parte,—some in one place, others in another.

9. exiguitās, -ātis, f. [exiguus], scantiness, shortness.

11. accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., arrange, adjust, put on.

galea, -ae, f., helmet, usually of leather strengthened with brass.

12. tegimentum, -ī, n. [tegō], covering.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —, intr., be wanting, fail.

3. di-versus, -a, -um, adj., opposite, different; opposed, separate.

aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs,  
 5 ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur,  
 neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte  
 opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia adminis-  
 trārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae  
 quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The Roman  
 left and centre  
 rout their op-  
 ponents. The  
 Nervii advance  
 on the right.*

23. Legiōnis VIII et X militēs, ut in sinistrā parte  
 aciēi cōstitēbant, pilīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine  
 exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam  
 hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre  
 5 in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs mag-

4. *hostibus*: for the dative, see App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426, 1; H.-B. 362.

5. *ante*: ch. 17, 15-20.

6. *certa*, definitely, i.e., at definite places, with definite instructions.

*subsidia*, reserves, subject of an understood *poterant* which has *conlocārī* as its complementary infinitive. Similarly *poterat* is understood with *prōvidērī*, the subject being the indirect question, *quid . . . esset*.

7. *opus esset*, was necessary.

*ab ūnō*: naturally Caesar could not personally direct the battle front, as it was over two miles in length.

8. *in tantā . . . inīquitāte*, in such an unfavorable situation.

1. *VIII et X*: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. *pilīs ēmissīs*: this was the usual method of beginning an engagement; cf. Bk. I, ch. 25, 4.

*cursū . . . compulērunt*, quickly drove the Atrebates, who were exhausted and breathless from running and disabled by wounds, from the higher ground into the river—for that division (of the Roman forces) had chanced to meet these.

4. *ea pars*: the left wing of the Romans.

5. *cōnantēs*, as they were attempting.

4. *dēnsus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, dense.

5. *prōspectus*, -ūs, *m.* [*prōspiciō*], view, prospect.

8. *inīquitās*, -ātis, *f.* [*inīquus*], unevenness, unfairness, unfavorableness.

2. *lassitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [*lassus*], weariness, exhaustion.

3. *exanimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*exanimus*, breathless], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; *pf. part.*, *exanimātus*, breathless, exhausted.

4. *ob-veniō*, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come in the way, meet; fall to the lot of, be allotted; be revealed.





*A. Roman Camp  
B. Belgian Camp  
C. Nervii*

*D. Viromandui  
E. Atrebatii  
F. Roman Baggage*

**BATTLE ON THE SABBES**

nam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentēs hostēs redintegratō proeliō in fugam coniecērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, XI et VIII, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in 10 ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō XII et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō VII cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī

6. *impeditam*: explained by *transire cōnantēs*.

*ipsi*: i.e., *legiōnis* . . . *militēs*, l. 1.

*transire*: the regular construction after *dubitāre* when it means "to hesitate"; see on ch. 2, 9.

7. *in locum iniquum*: i.e., up the hill on which the Belgian camp stood.

8. *resistentēs hostēs*: accusative.

9. *diversae*, *separated from the others*.

XI et VIII: where were these legions stationed?

10. *ex locō superiōre*: to be construed with *prōfligātis*.

11. *ipsīs*, *very*.

*rīpīs*: only the left (Roman) bank is meant, the plural being used to denote various points along the river.

*proeliābantur*: the impf. is used because the fight was still going on when the following event took place.

*castrīs* . . . *nūdātis*: translate by a clause with *while*. As a result of the advance of the four legions, as just described, the camp was left exposed except on the right wing, where the XIIth and VIIth were. The Nervii took advantage of the situation. To the number of 60,000 they advanced in two divisions, and while one division engaged the two legions by an attack on the right flank (*apertō latere*) the other advanced between the Roman right and center to the camp on the top of the hill. See Plan.

12. *cum* . . . *cōstitisset*: a causal clause.

*nōn magnō* . . . *intervallō*, *at no great distance*.

14. *summam imperī*, *the chief command*.

9. *prōfligō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr*  
*overthrow, put to flight*.

10. *congregior*, -ī, -gressus, *intr.*  
[*com*-+*gradior*], *meet, encounter,*  
*contend*.

11. *proelior*, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [*proe-*

*lium*], *join battle, fight*.

*at* (ast), *conj.* with *stronger adversa-*  
*tive force than autem or sed*, but,  
*yet*.

14. *Boduognātus*, -ī, *m.*, *a leader of*  
*the Nervii*.

- 15 tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*They capture the Roman camp. Flight of the Treveri.*

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in  
5 partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē man-

15. apertō latere: the right side, not protected by the shield.

16. summum . . . locum, the height on which the camp stood.

1. levis armātūrae, light armed.

2. quī cum iīs . . . quōs: quī refers to peditēs, iīs to equitēs, and quōs to both.

peditēs: these are the slingers and archers mentioned in ch. 19, 8.

ūnā: adverb; omit in translation.

quōs . . . dixeram, and who, as I had said, were routed by the enemy's first attack, described in ch. 19, line 14, ff.

4. adversīs . . . occurrēbant, met the enemy face to face; for the case of adversīs see on pugnātibz, ch. 21, 9. Caesar's cavalry and light armed foot soldiers, who had been defeated and dispersed in the skirmish on the right bank, recrossed the river, and returning to the camp, entered it from the left as the Nervii poured in from the right.

5. ab decumānā portā: in this case the rear gate was on the highest point of the hill (summō iugō), and offered a good view of the battle.

6. nostrōs: the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.

victōrēs, as victors.

7. cum respexissent et vīdissent, on looking back and seeing.

8. versārī: translate as if esse; the Latin word, however, suggests action and cannot here be rendered exactly by any one English word.

5. cālō, -ōnis, m., a soldier's servant, camp follower.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus], decuman; decumāna porta, the rear gate or main entrance near which the tenth cohort of each legion was stationed.

7. respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. and intr. [re-+speciō, look], look back, look at; regard.

8. praeceps, -cipitis, adj. [prae+caput], head foremost, headlong; steep.



dābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliūque aliam in partem perterriti 10 ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēveri, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxili causā ā civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipa- 15 tōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāverunt.

9. eōrum quī: the slowly moving baggage train, whose appearance had been the signal for beginning the battle (see ch. 19, 14-19) was only now arriving on the scene, while the XIIIth and XIVth legions, which served as the rear guard, were still some distance from the camp.

10. aliī . . . partem, some in one direction, and others in another, or in every direction; compare *aliae* . . . parte, ch. 22, 3, 4.

11. ferēbantur, fled (lit. were carried away). The imperfects of this chapter describe the side events taking place simultaneously during the main action of the battle. In the following sentence Caesar returns to the story of the main action, hence the perfects.

equitēs Trēveri . . . cum . . . vīdissent . . . contendērunt is the framework of the sentence.

14. paene . . . tenērī, were almost completely surrounded; this phrase is of the same nature as *habeō* with the past participle; see note on *coactum habēbat*, Bk. I, ch. 15, 4.

15. dispersōs dissipātōsque: i.e., completely disorganized.

16. dēspērātis: Caesar uses this verb transitively only in the abl. abs. construction; otherwise he makes it govern the abl. with *dē* or the dative.

18. civitātī, to their people.

Caesar now resumes the narrative of his own movements, broken off in ch. 21, 9. The events described in the intervening chapters occurred while Caesar was hurrying from the left to the right wing.

10. fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [fremō, roar], confused noise, uproar.

11. Trēveri, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie* people about modern Treves. Map IV, F-H, 2.

12. singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singulī],

singular, unusual, remarkable.

15. dispersō, -ere, -persi, -persum, *tr.* [dis-+spargō], scatter; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, scattered, dispersed.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, scatter, disperse.

*The Romans are "in a tight place." Caesar takes a hand in the battle and checks the attack.*

25. Caesar ab x legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum conlātis xii legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis  
 5 omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs prīcipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfertō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab  
 10 novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs

1. Caesar . . . possent (l. 17): this is a fine example of the Latin period, in which the circumstances leading up to the action of the main verb *prōcessit*, l. 15, are first introduced by participles, ablatives absolute, etc. The introductory part of the sentence is *Caesar . . . profectus, ubi . . . vidit . . . vidit . . . quod . . . posset*. The vigor of the Latin would be but feebly expressed in English if we attempted to retain the sentence structure in translating. The complex sentence should be broken up into shorter ones, as for example: (1) *Caesar . . . profectus est*, (2) *ibi vidit suōs . . . urgērī . . . impedimentō*, (3) *occīsī erant . . . interfectus erat . . . āmissum erat . . . aut vulnerātī aut occīsī erant*, (4) *reliqūi erant tardiōrēs et nōn nullī . . . excēdebant ac tēla vitābant*, (5) *hōstes (autem) neque . . . intermīttēbant et . . . īnstābant*, (6) *rēs erat in angustō (omit vidit) neque . . . erat subsidium*.

2. signis . . . conlātis, because the standards of the maniples had become concentrated in one place.

3. sibi . . . impedimentō, were a hindrance to one another.

5. signō āmissō: the loss of the standard was a great disgrace.

8. multīs gravibusque: when a noun is modified by a form of *multus* and also by a descriptive adjective, the Latin regularly joins the two adjectives by a conjunction—which, however, must be omitted in translation.

9. tardiōrēs, somewhat dispirited.

ab novissimis, in the rear ranks.

10. dēsertō locō, leaving their posts.

vitāre: i.e., were getting out of range of the javelins.

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor], exhortation, encouragement.

2. urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press on, press hard.

5. signifer, -ī, *m.* [signum+ferō], standard-bearer.

7. prīcipilus, -ī, *m.* [prīmus+pīlus],

the first or chief centurion.

Sextius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

9. tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tardy, slow.

10. excēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go out or away, withdraw, retire.

neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi detractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminatim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus, militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

20

*Labinus, a mile off, sees the danger and saves the day.*

26. Caesar cum VII legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstitierat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum

11. neque . . . et: correlative.

12. vidit is a mere repetition of vidit, l. 4.

13. scūtō . . . detractō: introduce the main statement by *in this crisis he seized, etc.*

14. militi, *from a soldier*; for case see on Bk. I, ch. 17, 9.

16. signa . . . laxāre, *to advance and to open out the ranks*. This would give the soldiers greater freedom of movement.

17. spē . . . animō, *hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed*.

19. etiam . . . rēbus, *even in the utmost personal danger*.

1. iūxtā: *i.e., next to the XIIth legion*.

2. tribūnōs . . . coniungerent, *directed the military tribunes to have the legions draw together gradually*; for the use of sēsē see on sēsē ch. 3, 10.

4. conversa signa . . . inferrent, *to face about and advance, etc.* The "facing about" applies only to the VIIth legion, which was now stationed behind the XIIth, facing in the opposite direction in order to meet the attack of that division of the Nervii which had gone around the right Roman flank.

16. manipulus, -i, *m.* [manus + -pleō, fill], a handful of hay about a pole, anciently used as a standard; a company of two centuries, maniple.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [laxus, loose], extend, open; relax.

19. nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nāvus, busy], do zealously; operam

nāvāre, *to act vigorously, do one's best*.

20. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little; a little while.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus], retard, hinder, check.

1. iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near, near by, by the side of.

- 5 aliis aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T.
- 10 Labiēnus castris hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur, cōspicātus, x legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsīt. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātē sibi
- 15 reliquī fēcērunt.

*The tenth legion to the rescue. After desperate resistance, the Nervii are routed.*

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs

5. aliis . . . ferrent, afforded protection to each other, by rendering an attack upon the rear impossible. āversī, in the rear.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, quickened their pace on receiving the news of the battle.

9. summō colle: this was the site of the Roman camp; see on *ab decumānā portā*, ch. 24, 5.

T. Labiēnus: in ch. 23, 1-8 it was related how Labienus, with the IXth and Xth legions, had routed the Atrebatēs. He then took the enemy's intrenchments on the hill of Hautmont, which was over forty feet higher than the Roman camp. From here he saw his general's peril and sent his best legion to the rescue.

11. gererentur: in an indirect question.

12. quī: the soldiers of the Xth legion; for translation see on *quī*, Bk. I, ch. 15, 5.

quō . . . esset, in what a situation matters were.

14. versārētur, were involved; the Latin verb is singular to agree with the last part of the compound subject, but English usage requires a plural verb with a subject of this kind.

nihil . . . reliquī fēcērunt, made all possible haste (lit. left nothing undone in the way of speed). The Latin likes to separate the genitive of the whole and the governing word.

2. etiam quī, even those who.

3. scūtīs: the ablative is used with *innitor* and *nitor*.

3. prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [-cumbō, recline], lean in-nitor, -i, -nixus, *intr.*, lean upon, support oneself upon.  
over, fall prostrate, fall, sink. 4. inermis, -e, *adj.* unarmed.

armātis occurrerent, equitēs vērō ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte 5  
dēlerent, omnibus in locis pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriis  
militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis  
tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent,  
proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus  
pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī super- 10  
essent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pila intercepta  
remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs  
iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere  
altissimās ripās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex  
difficillimis animī magnitudō redēgerat. 15

**5. occurrerent:** in the result clause introduced by *ut*, coördinate with *redintegrarent*, as is also *praeferrent*.

**vērō**, even; used in a climax.

**6. sē praeferrent**, tried to surpass.

**7. in extrēmā spē salūtis**, even though their hope of success was almost gone (lit. at the end of their hope of safety).

**9. iacentibus insisterent**, stood upon their prostrate bodies; *iacentibus* is dative.

**10. his dēiectis**, when these (i.e., *proximī*) were struck down.

(i) **quī superessent**, the survivors; sc. *ut* with *conicerent* and *remitterent*.

**11. ut**, as.

**12. ut iūdicārī dēberet**, so that one must admit.

**nōn nēquiquam**, not without prospect of success; to be taken with *ausōs esse*.

**14. quae**, exploits which.

**facilia**: predicate adjective.

**ex difficillimis**, though naturally very difficult (lit. from having been very difficult).

**15. redēgerat**: = *reddiderat*, a rare meaning. The usual meaning, "reduce," will be found in the next chapter.

**5. turpitudō**, -inis, *f.* [turpis], disgrace.

**6. legiōnārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō], of or pertaining to a legion, legionary.

**9. in-sistō**, -ere, -stiti, —, *tr. and intr.*, stand upon, keep one's footing.

**10. coacervō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+acervō, heap up], heap or mass together, pile up.

**cadāver**, -eris, *n.* [cadō], dead body, corpse.

**11. tumulus**, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell], a mound, hill.

**intercipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], interrupt, cut off; take away.

**12. nēquiquam**, *adv.* [nē+old *abl.* of quisquam], in vain, to no purpose.

**14. facilis**, -e, *adj.*, easy, without difficulty.

*The survivors  
surrender and  
are kindly  
treated.*

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrarentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte ex dc ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redactōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligētissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūtī iussit et finitimis imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suosque prohibērent.

*The Atuatici  
prepare for  
resistance.  
Their origin*

29. Atuaticī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis.

2. ac, and even; ac is often thus used to add a stronger expression.

redactō: see on redēgerat, ch. 27, l. 15.

3. aestuāria: swamps connected with the sea and partly flooded at high tide.

5. nihil impeditum (sc. esse), there was no obstacle (lit. nothing hindered). victis, the vanquished. nihil tūtum, no safety.

6. omnium: depends on cōnsensū.

8. vix ad D: this account must have been exaggerated, for three years later they were in revolt against the Romans, and in 52 B.C. they sent 5000 men to Vercingetorix.

9. possent would be subj. in the direct form; why?

10. ūsus (sc. esse), to have shown. vidērētur: a true passive, be seen.

11. ūtī, to keep, retain possession of.

12. ut . . . prohibērent, to refrain from doing them any injury or harm and also to restrain their dependents. Even the small tribes might feel that they could now safely attack the remnant of the Nervii.

1. suprā: see ch. 16, 7. cum: see on cum esset, ch. 1, 1.

2. auxiliō Nervii: for constr. see on subsidiō oppidanis, ch. 7, 3.

hāc pugnā . . . revertērunt, learned of this battle and immediately (ex itinere) returned home. Literally?

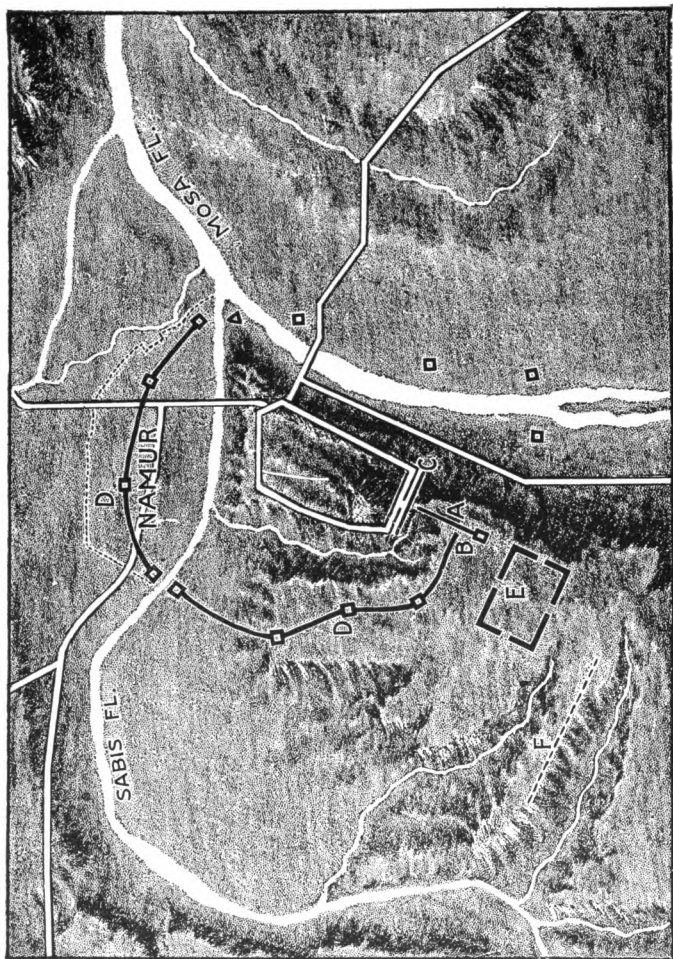
3. aestuārium, -ī, n. [aestus], low marsh-land, tidal swamp, marsh.

10. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, unfortunate.

supplex, -icis, adj., suppliant; as subst., m., a suppliant.

misericordia, -ae, f. [misericors, merciful], mercy, clemency.





*A. Roman Agger  
B. Turreted Ambulatoria  
C. Vallum and Fossa*

*D. Roman Line of Contravallation with Castellum  
E. Roman Camp  
F. Old Wall*

SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI



oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum  
 ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus <sup>5</sup>  
 in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā  
 ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius  
 pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō  
 mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs  
 in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque <sup>10</sup>  
 prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam  
 facerent, iīs impedimentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn  
 poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiae ac praesidiō  
 vi milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum

4. **oppidum**: probably the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Sambre (*Sabis*) and the Maas or Meuse (*Mosa*); see Plan. Others place it further down the Meuse; see Map IV, F, 1.

5. **quod cum**, *although this or while this*; the adversative *cum* as well as *cum* in a descriptive clause of situation may occasionally be translated *while*. **ex omnibus . . . partibus**, *on all (the other) sides*.

8. **pedum**: genitive of measure depending on *aditus*; *amplius* does not affect the construction.

9. **tum . . . conlocābant** emphasizes, in contrast to the preceding past perfects, what the Atuatici were then doing, hence the imperfect.

**ponderis**: genitive of description.

11. **iter**: see on *Galliā vexātā*, ch. 4, 6.

12. **agere ac portāre**: the *impedimenta* included cattle as well as portable effects.

13. **citrā**: on the left (west) side.

**custōdiae**: guards who had the immediate care of the baggage.

**praesidiō**: a garrison to protect the place; *praesidiō* and *custōdiae* are datives of purpose.

14. **ūnā**, *with them, i.e., the custōdia*.

**eōrum**, *of the others*, their countrymen who had invaded Italy and the Province.

5. **ēgregiē**, *adv.* [ēgregius], excellently, admirably.

6. **rūpēs**, *-is, f.* [rumpō], rock, cliff.

7. **acclīvis**, *-e, adj.* [ad+clīvus], sloping upward, rising, ascending.

8. **duplex**, *-icis, adj.* [duo+plicō], fold], twofold, double.

9. **saxum**, *-ī, n.*, a rock.

**prae-acūtus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, sharpened, pointed.

**trabs, trabis**, *f.*, a beam, timber, log.

11. **prō-gnātus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, born, descended.

14. **obitus**, *-ūs, m.* [obeō], destruction, overthrow.

- 15 multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

"Pride goeth  
before de-  
struction."

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv mīlium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vineis āctīs aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōstituī vīdērunt, primum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur:

16. inlātum (sc. sibi bellum) dēfenderent, waged defensive war (lit. warded off war waged against them).

cōnsēnsū eōrum (finitimōrum) omnium depends on dēlēgerant.

17. hunc . . . locum: not merely the oppidum of l. 4, but the surrounding country between the Meuse and the Sambre.

domiciliō: why dative?

1. ac resumes the narrative interrupted in l. 10 of chapter 29.

primō adventū exercitūs, immediately after the arrival of our army; primō is an adjective.

3. pedum XII: i.e., in height. in circuitū: see Plan, d.

4. mīlium: sc. passuum.

oppidō: for case see on oppidīs, ch. 3, 7.

5. vineis . . . exstrūctō: the first abl. abs. is subordinate to the second, but both may be translated as coördinate with cōstituī.

6. inrīdēre and increpitāre are historical infinitives.

7. ā tantō spatiō, so far off; for case see on mīlibus, ch. 7, 9.

instituerētur: for mood see App., 244; A. 540; B. 286; H. 588, II; H.-B. 535, 2, b.

15. ex-agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., stir up; disturb, harass.

17. domiciliū, -ī, n. [domus], home, dwelling.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run out], sally, sortie.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus], little; slight, insignificant.

4. circum-mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr., fortify around, fortify, protect.

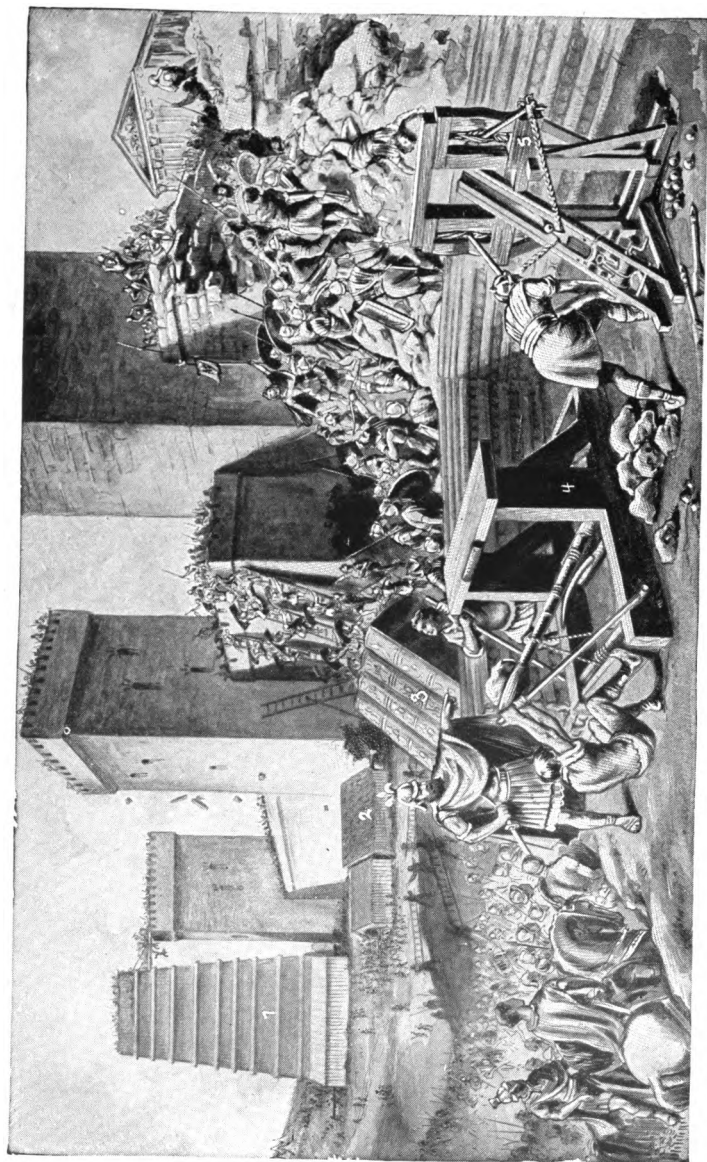
5. ex-struō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, tr. [struō, heap up], heap up, erect, construct.

procul, adv., at a distance, distant, far, at some distance.

6. in-rideō, -ēre, -rīsi, -rīsum, tr. and intr., laugh at, ridicule; jeer.

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [māchinor, devise], a mechanical device, machine.





1. *turris ambulatoria*  
2. *testudo arictaria*

3. *testudo*  
4. *onager*

5. *ballista*

THE STORMING OF A DESIGNED CITY

quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptuī est) 10 tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfiderent?

*They propose  
surrender, but  
beg to retain  
their arms.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā 5 celeritātē prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī

8. quibusnam manibus, *with what hands, pray?* The sarcasm is increased by the contrast between *tanta*, l. 7, *tantō*, l. 7, *tantulae*, l. 9, and *tantī*, l. 11.

vīribus: what is the nominative singular of this word? What the nominative plural?

praesertim, etc., *especially (as they were) men of such short stature.*

9. plērumque: neuter accusative used as an adverb.

10. contemptuī est, *is an object of contempt; contemptuī* is a dative of purpose.

11. in mūrō . . . cōfiderent: for the subj. see App. 268, 1; A. 586; B. 315, 1; H. 642; H-B. 537. The Gauls had no knowledge of movable towers, but only knew of such as were built upon walls, so they naturally believed that this one, too, was to be placed on the wall.

1. vērō, *however.*

movērī: supply *turrim* as subject.

2. speciē, *spectacle.*

4. locūtī governs the indirect discourse through *possent*; the rest of the sentence is governed by *dixērunt*.

5. quī . . . possent: relative causal clause.

8. quis-nam, quāenam, quidnam, *interrog. pron., who or what then? pray who or what?*

9. tantulus, -a, -um, *adj. [dim. of tantus], so small or little, so trifling.*

statūra, -ae, *f. [stō], stature.*

plērumque, *adv. [plērusque, most], for the most part, commonly, frequently.*

prae, *prep. with abl., before; in comparison with.*

10. contemptus, -ūs, *m. [contemnō],*

*contempt, an object of contempt.*

11. onus, -eris, *n., load, burden; weight.*

2. in-ūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj. [ūsītātus, wonted], unusual, strange, startling.*

speciēs, -iēi, *f. [speciō, spy], a sight, shape, form.*

4. modus, -i, *m., measure, limit, amount; way, manner; kind, sort,*

6. prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr., move forward, advance.*

permittere dixerunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret.

- 10 Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

Caesar  
receives their  
surrender, but  
demands  
their arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōn-  
suētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōn-  
servātūrum, sī prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset,  
sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condiціōnem nisi

7. ūnum, *only one favor.*

petere, "to make a request," is more exactly defined by dēprecārī, "to beg a person not to do something"; tr. the two verbs, *they earnestly begged for*. prō, *in accordance with, i.e., as was to be expected from.*

8. suā: meaning as in ch. 14, 10.

audirent, *they were (constantly) hearing of*; audīmus in the direct discourse.

9. nē . . . dēspoliāret: a substantive clause explaining ūnum.

armīs: ablative of separation.

11. ā quibus, *from them.* trāditīs armīs = sī arma trādidissent.

sibi praestāre, *that it was better for them*; praestāre is similarly used in Bk. I, ch. 17, 6.

12. in eum cāsum, *to such an extremity.*

13. per cruciātum denotes manner and = cum cruciātū.

1. cōnsuētūdine suā, *according to his custom.*

2. meritō eōrum: equivalent to a causal cl.,—*because they deserved it.*

3. ariēs: for illius. see Vocabulary.

attigisset . . . dēdidissent: fut. pf. in the direct form.

4. nisi armīs trāditis: abl. abs.; cf. *nisi mūnītis castris*, ch. 20, 12.

7. dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., beg off, beseech; plead for.

9. dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., plunder, despoil, deprive.

10. in-videō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, tr. and intr., be envious of, grudge.

12. qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis (adj., quodvis), indef. pron., who or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any.

13. cruciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, crucify], crucifying, torture, torment.

14. dominor, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [dominus], to be master, exercise authority, rule.

3. ariēs, -ietis, m., ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head.

armis trāditis. Sē id, quod in Nerviiis fēcisset, factūrum 5  
 finitimisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiciis populū Rōmānī  
 iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, illi sē quae impe-  
 rārentur, facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multitudine dē  
 mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope  
 summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adae- 10  
 quārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est,  
 cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce  
 sunt ūsī.

*A desperate  
 attempt to es-  
 cape by night  
 and a dread-  
 ful punishment.*

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque  
 ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā  
 militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut

5. in Nerviiis, in the case of the Nervii.

6. nē . . . inferrent, not to inflict any injury, etc.; quam is an indefinite pronoun.

7. rē, decision, answer.

imperārentur: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; quae is a relative with an antecedent understood.

8. facere: the ambassadors, returning to Caesar, reported that their people had accepted his terms and were already obeying his commands. This accounts for the pres. inf. when we might have expected the future factūrōs esse.

multitudine . . . iactā . . . parte . . . cēlātā: translate in the active voice, after they (the Atuatici) had, etc.

9. ante oppidum: we are told in ch. 29, 6-9 that the wall and ditch were about 200 feet in length.

sic . . . adaequārent, so that the piles of weapons were almost on a level with the highest point of the wall and the earthworks.

10. mūrī: the wall of the oppidum and the agger, which had been extended up to the edge of the ditch in front of the oppidum, formed the sides of a deep trench into which the weapons were thrown.

12. portis patefactis = portās patefēcērunt et.

pāce sunt ūsī, they remained peaceable.

1. sub vesperum, toward evening.

2. quam: see on nē inferrent, ch. 32, 6 (last part).

3. ante initō . . . cōnsiliō, according to a pre-arranged plan; how literally?

10. acervus, -ī, m., heap.

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and  
 intr., equal; make level with or

equal to; keep up with.

12. cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., hide,  
 conceal.

- intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia  
 5 dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,  
 partim cum iīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim  
 scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut  
 temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā  
 10 vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus  
 vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcē-  
 runt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus signifi-  
 cātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellis eō concursum est, pugnā-  
 tumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā  
 spē salutīs iniquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla  
 15 iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsis-

4. dēditionē factā, *after the surrender.*

praesidia, *outposts* stationed in the *castella* (cf. ch. 30, 4) guarding the line of circumvallation.

7. scūtīs depends on *cum*.

vīminibus: ablative of means or material, depending on *intextīs* (supply *scūtīs*). Translate, *woven from osiers*. subitō, *hurriedly*.

9. quā, *where*; the feminine form of this adv. is to be explained by supplying a word like *viā*, *parte*, or *regiōne*.

mūnitiōnēs: the line of circumvallation, which was higher than the ground at the foot of the plateau on which the *oppidum* was situated.

11. ignibus, *signal fires*.

12. ex . . . castellis: construe with *concursum est*.

concursum est, pugnātum est: translate by personal verbs in the active voice.

13. ā virīs fortibus pugnārī dēbuit, *freely, as one should have expected brave men to fight*.

14. iniquō: because of the *ascēsus*, l. 9; for the omission of the prep. with *locō* see App. 151, b; A. 429, 1; B. 228, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

turribus: *i.e., castellis*.

15. iacerent: in a relative clause of description.

5. in-diligenter, *adv.*, carelessly, heedlessly.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, watch, keep, save; keep guard.

7. cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, pliant twig, withe, osier.

in-texō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.*

[texō, weave], weave together.

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.

9. arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep, difficult, lofty.

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērumpō], sortie, sally.

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō], signal, sign.



teret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diē, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs, quī ēmerant, caputū numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

20

*The maritime states are subdued by Crassus.*

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

16. ad: for meaning see on Bk. I, ch. 4, 5. When thus used it does not influence the case of the numeral.

18. dēfenderet, *made a defense.*

sectiōnem: not merely the property of the Atuatucae, but the people themselves, who were sold as slaves.

20. mīlium: as a predicate.

2. Coriosolitas: for the ending -as, see on Bk. I, ch. 14, 10.

3. quae: the relative is attracted to agree with cīvitatēs; translate *tribes which.*

Many of these ancient names are retained in a modified form in the modern ones.

17. refringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [re-+frangō], break in or open, break.

18. intrō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *tr.*, let go in, send into, admit.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō], a cutting, parcelling out; booty, spoil.

19. vēndō, -ere, -didī, —, *tr.* [vē-num, sale+dō], sell, sell at auction.

2. Venetī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of Brittany, near modern Vannes. *Map IV, B, 3.*

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Normandy. *Map IV, C, 2.*

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Brittany. *Map IV, B, 2.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Brit-

tany near Corseult. *Map IV, B, 2.*

3. Esuvii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people living near modern Essey. *Map IV, C-D, 2.*

Aulerci, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people having several branches: (1) Aulerci Brannovices, *Map IV, F, 3*; (2) Aulerci Cenomani, *Map IV, D, 2*; (3) Aulerci Ebuovices, *Map IV, D, 2*, and perhaps (4) Aulerci Diablintes, *Map IV, C, 2.*

Redonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe living near modern Rennes. *Map IV, C, 2-3.*

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare], of the sea, sea-; maritime, on the sea coast.

5. diciō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō], dominion, sway.

Arrival of  
embassies.  
Caesar's  
departure.  
Winter-  
quarters.  
Thanksgiving.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iis nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur, quae sē obsidēs  
5 datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īlyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque cīvitatēs propinquae iis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est; ob  
10 eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

1. his . . . gestīs: abl. abs. denoting the cause or means of *omnī Galliā pācātā*.

pācātā: for other references to the "Roman peace," see on Bk. I, ch. 6, 8 and Bk. II, ch. 1, 7.

2. ad . . . perlāta est, was spread abroad among the barbarians, referring both to the Germans and the Gauls.

opīniō, impression.

3. nātiōnibus: only the Ubii, as Caesar himself says in Bk. IV, ch. 16.

incolerent: subjunctive by attraction. What kind of clause is the *ut* clause on which it depends?

6. Īlyricum belonged to Caesar's province.

7. in Carnutēs: construe with *dēductīs*.

8. quaeque = *et eās* . . . quae.

10. ex litterīs, in consequence of the dispatches.

supplicātiō: a public thanksgiving to the gods, decreed by the senate in honor of a victory.

11. quod, (an honor) which.

accidit nullī: the length of the *supplicātiō* was supposed to be determined by the value of the victory. The usual time was from three to five days, though one of twelve days had been decreed in honor of Pompey's victory over Mithridates. The verb *accidō* is more commonly used of an unforeseen or unfavorable event, *contingō* being regularly used of good fortune.

7. Carnutēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe between the Seine and Loire, near modern Chartres. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

Andēs, -ium, *m.*, a people of Anjou Map IV, C, 3.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Touraine. Map IV, D, 3.

10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [supplicō, kneel], public prayer in times of calamity or rejoicing; thanksgiving.

## BOOK III

1. Cum in Italiam proficiscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, 5 quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērāt, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque 10 datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus

*Galba prepares  
to winter in  
Octodurus.*

1. **Galbam**: afterwards one of the assassins of Caesar. He was the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba.

3. **-que**: see on *duplicāvit*, etc., page 56.

quī . . . **pertinent**: i.e., whose country extends; see on in *Bellovacōs*, Bk. II, 13, 4.

5. **causa** . . . **quod**, the reason for sending him was, that; the substantive *quod* clause is here used as a predicate.

**iter**: subject of *patefierī*.

6. **quō**: refers to *itinere*.

**portōriis**: import and export duties, collected by the natives on goods passing through their country.

7. **opus esse**: see on Bk. II, 22, 7

8. **arbitrārētur**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

9. **Galba** . . . **cōstituit**: translate all the ablatives abs. by active forms; the first and second as subordinate clauses, and the third, fourth and fifth (which give the result of the first and second) as principal clauses:—*After Galba . . . they sent . . . (and so) he determined*, etc.

**castellis**, fortified villages.

10. **eōrum**: the tribes mentioned in ll. 2, 3.

1. **Ser.**, abbr. for *Servius*.

2. **Nantuātēs**, -ium, m., a Gallic tribe on the Loire about Nantes. Map IV, G, 3-4.

**Veragrī**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 3-4.

**Sedūnī**, -ōrum, m., a people living

about modern Sitten. Map IV, G-H, 3.

7. **patefiō**, -fierī, -factus sum, [pass. of *patefaciō*], be made open, be opened.

9. **aliquot**, indecl. num. adj., several, some.

conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

15 2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque, quī impendē-

5 rent, ā maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, detractīs cohortibus duābus

*The Alpine  
tribes revolt.  
The reasons.*

13. quī vicus, *this village.*

14. nōn . . . plānitīē: abl. abs., *with a small plain adjacent.*

15. continētur, *is hemmed in.* hic: supply vicus.

flūmine, *by a river, the Drance.*

16. vacuum ab . . . relictam, *left unoccupied by* (lit. *left free from*).

17. vāllō fossāque: for illud. see Vocab., vāllum.

1. diēs: nominative. hibernōrum, *in winter quarters.*

trānsissent, *had passed.*

2. eō = *in hiberna.*

3. quam . . . concesserat: an explanatory statement of the author, and not a part of the ind. dis., hence the indicative.

6. aliquot dē causīs: these are explained in *primum quod*, l. 7, . . . *tum etiam quod*, l. 10, . . . *Accēdēbat quod*, l. 13.

ut . . . caperent: this clause explains *id*.

8. neque eam plēnissimam, *and that, too, not complete.*

detractīs . . . absentibus: the ablatives absolute explain why the legion was not *plēnissima*. This legion had also lost heavily in the battle with the Nervii, as told in Bk. II, 25.

13. Octodūrus, -ī, *m., a town of the Veragri, modern Martigny. Map IV, G, 3.*

14. vallēs (-is), -is, *f., valley.*

17. attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [ad+tribuō], allot to, assign make over.

6. re-novō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [novō, make new], renew.

7. opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], crush, overpower, destroy.

8. plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full; complete; filled.

et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpiū occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

*The legions in peril. They decide to hold their ground.*

3. His nūntiis acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, 5

9. singillātim, *individually*, as opposed to the detachments.

11. propter inīquitātem locī belongs with *impetum sustinēri*.

cum, *when*. ipsī: *i.e., Galli*.

13. accēdēbat quod, *an additional reason was that*; the quod clause is the subject of accēdēbat.

14. liberōs abstractōs (*esse*): infinitive and its subject acc. with a verb of emotion (*dolēbant*).

obsidum nōmine, *as hostages*.

17. prōvinciae: not genitive.

sibi . . . habēbant, *they had persuaded themselves*.

persuāsum: neuter, agreeing with the infinitive clause Rōmānōs . . . adiungere.

1. opus hibernōrum includes marking off the ground for the camp, erecting huts, etc.

2. mūnitiōnēs refers to the wall and rampart; see ch. 1, 17.

3. neque . . . prōvisum, *and he had not made sufficient provision*, etc.

5. cōnsiliō: the council of war was composed of tribunes, centurions of the first rank, and cavalry officers, making from fifteen to twenty men.

9. singillātim, *adv.* [singulī], *singly*, one by one.

10. paucitās, -ātis, *f.* [paucus], *scarcity*, small number.

14. abs-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, *tr.*, *drag away*, *carry away*.

15. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *contin-uous*, *perpetual*, *permanent*.

16. culmen, -inis, *n.*, *top*, *summit*, *ridge*.

2. plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus], *fully*, *entirely*.

- sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentini periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō veniri neque commeātūs supportari interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modi sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōri tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

*The assault upon the Roman camp.*

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iis rēbus quās cōstituissent, conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcur-

6. quō in cōnsiliō: for translation of relative see note on *quī vīcus*, ch. 1, 13.

cum . . . accidisset, since such a perilous situation had suddenly developed contrary to expectation; *periculī* is genitive of the whole.

8. complēta, filled, covered; predicate with *cōspicerentur*.

9. neque . . . neque, and neither . . . nor; the first *neque* serves both as a connective and a correlative.

veniri: impersonal; sc. *posset* from the following *possent*. Translate, and neither could aid reach them.

10. dēspērātā salūte: translate as a main clause; for construction see on *dēspērātis*, Bk. II, 24, 16.

11. eius modi, of this sort, to this effect, a descriptive genitive.

13. maiōri parti placuit, the majority thought it best.

hōc reservātō . . . cōnsiliō = *hoc cōnsilium . . . reservāre et*.

14. ad extrēmum cāsum, for a last resort.

1. brevi spatiō interiectō . . . ut, after an interval so short that.

vix is placed first for emphasis.

2. conlocandis atque administrandis, for arranging and carrying out these measures; the dative in the gerundive construction is rare. The genitive or the accusative with *ad* would be more common.

3. signō datō, at the signal.

dēcurrere . . . conicere: historical infinitives; so also *prōpugnāre*, l. 5, *millere*, l. 6, *occurrere*, l. 7, *ferre* and *superāri*, l. 8.

6. exquirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [ex+quaerō], search out, inquire, investigate.

14. re-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., keep back, reserve.

1. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief.

rere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum 5 ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī sī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, 10 ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstitēbat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

*A long contest.  
Baculus sug-  
gests a sally.*

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pug-  
nārētur ac nōn solum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs

5. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute, as long as, etc.

6. ex locō superiōre: i.e., ex vāllō. This, of course, was higher than the plain into which the enemy had descended.

7. premī: what are the principal parts of *premō*?

vidēbātur . . . excēdēbant: descriptive imperfects.

occurrere: in a hostile sense, they rushed up, to oppose the enemy.

8. hōc superārī, in this they were at a disadvantage, explained by quod . . . succēdēbant.

diūturnitāte: ablative of cause, with dēfessī.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative with aliī; contrast the construction of the same words in l. 5.

10. quārum rērum . . . nihil, while nothing of the sort, see on nihil . . . reliquī, etc., Bk. II, 26, 14.

11. nōn modo = nōn modo nōn, —not only was the opportunity not given, etc. The second nōn is omitted only when a negative follows (as here nē . . . quidem) and then only when the predicate is common to both clauses.

dēfessō, sauciō: datives depending on dabātur.

12. suī recipiendī: meaning as in Bk. II, 12, 2; for constr. see App. 291, a; A. 504, c; B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; H.-B. 614.

1. hōrīs: why ablative? The Romans counted twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, the length of the hour varying with the length of the day at different seasons of the year.

cum . . . pugnārētur: translate by a past perfect, when the battle had been going on.

4. gaesum, -ī, n., a heavy Gallic javelin.

without effect.

5. frūstrā, adv., vainly, in vain;

11. saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded, injured.

dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque  
 5 esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfec-  
 tum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque  
 10 ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum  
 auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus ce-  
 leriter militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium  
 ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex-labōre reficerent,

3. languidiōribus . . . nostris: abl. abs. denoting cause.

4. vāllum scindere: *i.e.*, to tear out the palisades in order to make a breach.

fossās, *the ditch* in several places; see on *rīpīs*, Bk. II, 23, 11.

5. ad extrēmum . . . cāsum, *to the last extremity*.

6. quem . . . diximus: see Bk. II, 25, 8.

7. Volusēnus: "the only tribune of whom Caesar makes honorable mention." He appears again in Books IV and V, and was a commander of cavalry in the Civil War.

8. cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, *of great resourcefulness and bravery*.

9. docent, *told him*.

sī . . . experirentur: the clause is somewhat loosely used to explain *spem*.

11. certiōrēs facit, *he informs them (of his will that), he orders them, governing intermitterent and the other subjunctives which follow, which would be in the imperative in direct discourse*.

12. tēla . . . exciperent: *i.e.*, they were merely to protect themselves against the missiles of the enemy.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, spiritless, faint.

4. scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy.

6. pīlus, -ī, *m.*, a maniple of the triarii, who formed the third line of the Roman legion; primī pīlī centuriō, the centurion of the first maniple, chief centurion.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Nervii, Nervian.

7. Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volu-

senus Quadratus, a tribune of Caesar's army.

12. tantummodo, *adv.*, only, merely.

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ex+capiō], take up, catch, capture; intercept, withstand; meet, receive.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, exertion, labor, hardship.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [re+faciō], renew, refresh, repair.



post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

*The tables are turned and the Gauls routed. Galba returns to the Province.*

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs, quī in spem potiū-dōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs intercipiunt <sup>5</sup> et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō <sup>10</sup> proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset rēbus viderat, maximē frumentī inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiis incēnsis, in prōvinciam

13. post: an adverb.

1. quod iussī sunt, as (lit. *what*) they were commanded.

2. portis: ablative of route.

cognōscendī: depending on *facultātem*.

3. suī colligendī, of rallying; for the construction see on *suī recipiendī*, ch. 4, 12.

4. in spem . . . vēnerant: see on Bk. I, 18, 22.

5. circumventōs intercipiunt, *outflank and cut off*.

6. ex . . . mīlibus depends on *tertiā parte*.

amplius . . . plūs: neither affects the construction.

quem . . . cōstābat, the number of barbarians who were known to have taken part in the attack on the camp. Literally?

10. armīs . . . exūtis, *stripped of their arms, i.e., compelled to throw away their arms in flight; exūtis agrees with cōpiis; armīs is an ablative of separation.*

11. saepius, too often.

12. aliis . . . viderat, (but) saw that he had met a different state of affairs.

13. ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr., burst forth, rush out, sally.

7. cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, intr. [com-+stō], stand firm; agree; cōnstat, it is known, it is ascer-

tained, it is evident.

10. exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., draw or strip off, strip, despoil; lay aside.

12. meminī, -isse, tr., defect., remember.

- 15 reverti contendit ac, nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

*A prospect  
of peace  
rudely  
shattered.*

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque  
5 nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coōrtum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne vii proximus Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās  
10 cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dimisit; quō in numerō est T. Terrac

15. prohibente, *offering resistance.*

16. incolumem: translate by an adverb.

17. hiemāvit: the campaign was therefore a complete failure. This is the only instance where one of Caesar's legions wintered in the Province.

The events related in chapters 1-6 occurred in the winter of 57-56 B.C. The campaign of the year 56 begins here.

1. omnibus dē causis . . . exīstimāret, *had every reason to believe.* Translate the following ablatives absolute as causal clauses.

2. superātis Belgis: see Bk. II, 1-33.

3. expulsis Germānis: see p. 189.

4. initā hieme: see on *initā aestāte*, Bk. II, 2, 2.

5. subitum: translate by an adverb.

7. adulēscēns: added to distinguish him from his father the triumvir and his elder brother who was quaestor in Caesar's army.

proximus Ōceanum: for case see App. 122, b; A. 432, a; B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; H.-B. 380, b.

9. praefectōs: Roman officers in command of auxiliary forces furnished by allies.

10. quō in numerō = *quōrum in numerō.*

15. dē-moror, -āri, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, delay, retard; hinder.

4. hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter, winter season; storm.

5. subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.

6. coōrior, -iri, -ortus, *intr.* [*com-+ orior*], arise, spring up, break out.

7. adulēscēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of adolēscō*], young; as *subst.*, *m.*, youth, young man.

9. praefectus, -i, *m.* [*prae-ficiō*], commander, captain of cavalry.

10. Terrasidius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune.

sidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Veneti take the lead in seizing the Roman ambassadors.*

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī, 5 paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōsuērunt, habent vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Silī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cō-

1. huius . . . cīvitātis: i.e., the last named tribe, the Veneti.

2. omnis . . . maritimae: genitive of the whole depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum eārum modifies *ōrae*.

4. atque ūsū: see on *scientia atque ūsus*, Bk. II, 20, 8.

5. in magnō impetū, etc., freely, in the vast sweep of stormy and open sea, with its few scattered ports.

7. ūtī, to sail.

vectigālēs: pred. appositive with *omnēs*, which is the object of *habent*. Other coast tribes were compelled to use the harbors of the Veneti, and to pay toll for the privilege. The commerce of the maritime Gauls extended from Ireland to Spain.

ab hīs fit . . . retinendī, these began by detaining. The Veneti set the example of detaining the Roman *lēgātī* by seizing Silius and Velanius.

10. ut . . . cōnsilia: this is a characteristic of the Gauls of which Caesar often speaks; cf. Bk. II, 1, 11.

11. Trebius, -i, m., a Roman name; esp. Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune.

12. Velānius, -i, m., a Roman name; esp. Quintus Velanius, a military tribune.

Silius, -i, m., a Roman name; esp. Titus Silius, a military tribune.

1. amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, of large extent; renowned, splendid, noted.

2. ōra, -ae, f., coast, shore.

4. nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [nāvis+agō], set sail, sail.

nauticus, -a, -um, adj. [nauta], naval, nautical.

6. portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port.

7. vectigālis, -e, adj. [vectigal], tributary.

9. recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., win back, recover.

- silia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortunāe exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitatēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertāte
- 15 quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.
- Preparations for the war. The advantage is with the Veneti.* 9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī
- 5 iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquae-

11. eādem dē causā: i.e., quod . . . exīstimābant, ll. 8, 9.

12. inter sē coniūrant, they made a solemn agreement; the chiefs were given authority to act on behalf of the different tribes.

13. commūnī cōnsiliō, in accordance with the general plan, i.e., by common consent.

eundem . . . lātūrōs, they would all share the same fate.

14. ut . . . permanēre . . . mālint, to choose to continue . . . rather than.

18. sī velit . . . remittat: in the direct form, sī vīs . . . remitte.

2. aberat longius, was too far away, i.e., to take command in person. Where was he? See text of ch. 7, 4.

nāvēs longās, war-ships, in contrast to the nāvēs onerāriae, which were made shorter and broader.

4. institui, to be procured.

5. cum primum . . . potuit, as soon as the time of the year permitted. He probably joined the army early in May. For mood of potuit see App. 237; B. 287, 1; H.-B. 557, a.

13. exitus, -ūs, m. [exeō], exit; result, end, outcome.

16. mālō, mälle, mālui, —, tr. [magis+volō], prefer, choose.

3. Liger, -eris, m., the river Loire. Map IV, C-F, 3-4.

4. rēmex, -igis, m. [rēmus+agō], rower, oarsman.

nauta, -ae, m. [=nāvita, from nāvis], sailor.

gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernō, steer], helmsman, pilot.

que item cīvitātēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīssissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vīcula coniectōs, prō magnitudīne 10 periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs 15 propter inopiam frūmentī diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōn-

7. *simul*: the words that follow, through *coniectōs*, form a semi-parenthetical addition to *cognitō adventū*. The Veneti were stirred to activity not only by Caesar's arrival, but also by the realization of the extent of their offense.

8. *quantum . . . admīssissent*, how great an outrage they had committed, indirect question, explained by *lēgātōs . . . coniectōs (esse)* which likewise depends on *intellegēbant*.

*lēgātōs*: they were not ambassadors in the strict sense. They were Caesar's lieutenants, collecting supplies for the army; see ch. 7, 8-10.

*quod nōmen*, a name which; the expression is condensed. What Caesar means is "a name whose bearers had always been sacred and inviolate."

9. *ad* = *apud*.

10. *retentōs et coniectōs*, freely, in arresting and throwing in chains.

12. *instituunt*: with the infinitive, this verb means "to make preparations," "to begin."

*hōc . . . quod*, with the greater hope (of success) because; *hōc* is an ablative of measure of difference, with which the idea of cause also came to be associated.

*multum*: adverbial accusative, expressing degree.

13. *nātūrā*: for case see App. 143, a; A. 431; B. 219, 1; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 437.

*pedestria itinera*, approaches by land.

*esse concīsa . . . impeditam*, were intersected . . . was difficult.

*aestuāriis*: see on Bk. II, 28, 3.

15. *neque* = *et nōn*. The negative belongs only to *posse*.

8. *facinus*, -oris, *n.* [faciō], misdeed, outrage, crime.

9. *sānctus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *sanciō*], sacred, inviolable.

*in-violātus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, unharmed, inviolate.

14. *in-scientia*, -ae, *f.*, lack of knowledge, ignorance.

fidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse; Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. Hīs initīs cōsiliīs, oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

17. iam, even.

ut: adversative, *although*; for the mood of *acciderent* see App. 247; A. 527, a; B. 308; H. 586, II; H.-B. 532, 2, b.

18. posse . . . habēre . . . nōvisse: supply some word like *sciēbant* from the context.

Rōmānōs, etc., *while the Romans*, etc., adversative asyndeton.

facultātem = *cōpiam*.

20. nōvisse: for the perfect with pres. force see App. 193, I, a; A. 476; B. 262; H. 538, 4; H.-B. 487.

longē aliam . . . atque, *far different from what it was*; for this use of *atque* see on *eadem* . . . *haec*, Bk. II, 6, 4.

21. conclūsō marī, *inland sea*, such as the Mediterranean.

22. hīs . . . cōsiliīs, *after forming these plans*. The plans are mentioned in lines 10-12; the following lines (12-22) give the grounds for their hope of success in carrying them out.

23. cōnstābat: for the translation, see on *quem* . . . *cōnstābat*, ch. 6, 6.

24. primum: an adverb.

20. insula, -ae, f., island.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted with; *pf. tense*, have learned and hence know.

21. conclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr. [com-+claudō], shut up, close; conclūsum mare, an inland sea.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., vast, immense.

23. Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of the Veneti. Map IV, B, 3.

25. Lexovii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe southwest of the Seine, about modern Lisieux. Map IV, C-D, 2.

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe about modern Nantes. Map IV, C, 3.

26. Ambiliatī, -ōrum, m., a people of Picardy. Map IV, C, 3.

Diablintēs, -um, m., probably a division of the Auleri. Map IV, C, 2.

*Caesar's reasons  
for undertaking  
the war.  
His plan.*

10. Erant hae difficultatēs belli gerendī, quās  
suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad  
id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum

Rōmānōrum, rebellio facta post deditiōnem, defectiō datīs  
obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūratiō, in primīs, nē hāc parte 5  
neglētā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque  
cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad  
bellum mōbilitē celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs  
nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, prius-  
quam plūrēs civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius 10  
distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

*He distributes  
his forces.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs,  
quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū  
mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque

2. multa, many considerations, explained by *iniūria*, *rebellio*, *defectio*,  
*coniūratiō*, and the clause *nē . . . arbitrarentur*.

3. *iniūria . . . Rōmānōrum*, the wrong done by detaining, etc.

*equitum*: i.e., *praefecti tribūnique militum* of ch. 7, 9, who were of  
equestrian rank.

5. in primis, etc., and especially, etc., the strongest reason of all.  
*nē*, the fear that.

*hāc . . . neglētā*: ablative absolute, equivalent to a conditional clause.

7. novis . . . studēre, desired a change of government.

9. nātūrā, by nature, ablative of cause.

ōdisse: see App. 86; A. 205; B. 133; H. 299, 2; H.-B. 199, 1.

10. cōspirārent: i.e., with the Veneti.

*partiendum sibi*, that he ought to divide; construction of *sibi*?

2. flūminī: for a different construction with *proximus* see on ch. 7, 7.

3. adeat, contineat, prohibeat: volitive subjunctives in substantive  
clauses; *ut* might have been used to connect them with *mandat*; translate  
by infinitives.

4. rebellio, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellis, re-  
volted], a renewal of war, revolt.

defectio, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō], desertion,  
revolt.

6. neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.*  
[nec+legō], disregard, neglect,  
not heed.

8. mōbilitē, *adv.* [mōbilis], rapidly,  
easily.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of  
exciō], arouse, rouse; excite, incite.

10. cōspirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*  
[com-+spirō], breathe together;  
agree together, combine, conspire.  
partior, -īrī, -ītus, *tr.* [pars], divide,  
distribute.

11. dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*,  
assign, apportion, distribute.

in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī  
 5 dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, pro-  
 hibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō  
 numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs  
 nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs  
 coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus  
 10 tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam  
 manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī  
 Gallicisq̄ue nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquisque  
 pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum  
 possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs  
 15 contendit.

*Situations of  
the towns of  
the Veneti.*

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita  
 in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiisque neque pedibus

4. in officiō contineat, *hold them to their allegiance.* auxiliō: dative.

6. legiōnāriīs: Roman legionary soldiers, in contrast to *equitātūs*, which consisted only of foreign allies.

7. ex hīs nātiōnibus: *i.e.*, of Aquitania.

8. Galliam: *i.e.*, Celtic Gaul, as often.

10. quī eam (= *eārum cīvitatū*) . . . cūret, *to see that these forces should be kept separate, i.e.*, from those of the Veneti. For the gerundive see note on *pontem*, etc., Bk. I, 13, 2.

11. D. Brūtum: see Vocab., *Brūtus* (3).

classī: the fleet which had just been built; see ch. 9, 1-5.

14. pedestribus cōpiīs: of the eight legions, three were now stationed in Aremorica (see Map IV, B-D, 2), twelve cohorts were in Aquitania, two legions and eight cohorts were with Caesar, and one legion was with the fleet.

1. eius modī ferē, *usually such.* sitūs: translate as a singular.

posita, *since they were located.*

2. extrēmīs, *the ends of.*

pedibus, *on foot, i.e.*, on the land side; ablative of means, as is also *nāvibus*, line 4.

4. officium, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], al-  
 legiance, duty; obedience.

11. D., *abbr. for Decimus*, -ī, *m.*, a  
*praenomen.*

12. Pictonēs, -um, *m.*, a *Gallīc* tribe  
*south of the Loire.* Map IV,  
 C-D, 3.

1. situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, po-  
 sition.

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of lingua*],  
 tongue of land, a small pen-  
 insula.

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.* [prōmineō],  
 headland, promontory.



aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis adflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē 5 oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, omnia sua dēportābant sēque in proxima 10

3. cum . . . incitāvisset, *when the tide had rushed in from the deep.* The high tide inundated the low land lying between the *oppida* and the mainland, and cut off all communication.

5. adflictārentur, *would be damaged* if they should be caught in the shallows at ebb tide.

utrāque rē: *i.e.*, by the danger attending an attack by land at flood tide, and an attack by sea at the ebb. Of course a combined attack by land and sea was out of the question.

7. operis, *siege works*; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

superātī . . . coeperant, *had been put at a disadvantage . . . and had begun.* extrūsō marī, *when the sea had been shut out.*

8. his (*i.e.*, *aggere ac mōlibus*) . . . adaequātīs, *when these had been raised to a level with.* moenibus: dative.

The Romans, working when the tide was low, extended two parallel dikes along the tongue of land from the mainland to the town. During the construction of the works, the space between the dikes was covered with water at high tide; but when their labor was nearly finished, the soldiers waited for the ebb and rushed the work to completion before the tide turned, thus securing a permanent dry connection with the mainland. The ends of the dikes nearest the town were then built up to serve as *aggerēs*. When the Romans had thus completed their preparations for attack, the Veneti brought up their ships to the opposite side of the town, and embarking with all their possessions, sailed to another stronghold.

fortūnis suis, *freely, of a successful defense*, dative; the abl. with *dē* is more common with *dēspērō*.

9. cuius rei = *quārum (nāvium).*

10. facultātem, as in ch. 9, 18.

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging tide.

5. adflictō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of adfligō*], damage, injure, shatter; wreck.

6. quandō, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

7. ex-trūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.*

[trūdō, shove], thrust out, shut out.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dam, dike.

9. ad-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr. and intr.*, drive to, land, bring up.

10. dē-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry away, remove.

oppida recipiebant; ibi sē rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciebant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestatibus detinebantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, magnis aestibus, rāris ac  
 15 prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

*Description of  
their ships.*

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item  
 5 puppēs ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumē-

11. **oppida**: the pl. is used because the act was often repeated; hence also the imperfects *dēportābant*, etc.

12. **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

13. **summa**: modifies *difficultās*.

14. **rāris . . . portibus**, since the harbors were widely scattered and, in fact, there were almost none at all.

1. **namque . . . erant**, (but navigation was less dangerous to the Veneti) for; *namque* implies an ellipsis, that is, the omission of something which the writer has in mind but which he does not fully express.

3. **nostrārum nāvium**: supply *carinae*.

4. **excipere**, to withstand.

**ērēctae**: used as a predicate adjective, modifying *puppēs* as well as *prōrae*; *erant* is to be supplied with the nominatives throughout this passage.

6. **tōtae**, entirely.

**ex rōbre**: for constr. see App. 136; A. 403; H. 467; H.-B. 406, 4.

**quamvis** (acc. of *quīvis*) . . . **contumēliam**, any violence and rough treatment whatever.

11. **opportunitās**, -ātis, *f.* [opportūnus], favorable position, advantage.

13. **dē-tineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [dē+teneō], keep back, delay.

14. **rārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart, here and there, few.

1. **nam-que**, *conj.*, for, for in fact, inasmuch as.

2. **carina**, -ae, *f.*, hull, bottom of a ship.

**aliquantō**, *adv.* [aliquantus], in some degree, somewhat, considerably.

**plānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat.

3. **dēcessus**, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō], departure of tide, ebb or fall.

4. **prōra**, -ae, *f.*, the bow of a ship, prow.

**ad-modum**, *adv.*, very, very much, quite.

**ērigō**, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [ex+regō], lift, raise; *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high.

5. **puppis**, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship.

**fluctus**, -ūs, *m.* [fluō], wave.

**accommodātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accommodō*], adapted, fit.

6. **rōbur**, -oris, *n.*, oak, oak-timber.

liam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnis revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs 10 inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī con-

7. *trānstra*, cross-beams, on which the deck rested, not "benches" for the rowers, the usual meaning. The Veneti had no oarsmen.

*pedālibus . . . trabibus*, made of beams a foot in thickness.

8. *digitī pollicis crassitudine*, of the thickness of a thumb, descriptive ablative.

9. *pellēs*, raw hides. *prō*, (were used) instead of.

*alūtae . . . cōnectae*, leather tanned thin, instead of the canvas sails used by the Romans.

11. *eō quod . . . quod*, for this reason, which is more probable, that.

13. *tanta . . . nāvium* = *tantī oneris nāvēs*; cf. *tantī oneris turrim*, Bk. II, 30, 11.

*regī . . . posse*, could not very easily be managed with sails.

*vēlis . . . commodē* belongs with both infinitives.

14. *nostrae classī*, etc., the encounter of our fleet was of such a nature that it had the advantage, etc.

7. *trānstrum*, -ī, *n.*, a cross-beam or timber; bench for rowers.

*pedālis*, -e, *adj.* [pēs], of a foot in thickness or diameter.

8. *cōnfigō*, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [com-+figō], fasten together, fasten.

*clāvus*, -ī, *m.* [claudō], nail, spike.

*ferreus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum], of iron, iron.

*digitus*, -ī, *m.*, finger; toe; inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot.

*pollex*, -icis, *m.*, the thumb; *digitus pollex*, the thumb.

*crassitudō*, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness.

*ancora*, -ae, *f.*, anchor.

9. *fūnis*, -is, *m.*, cable, rope.

*re-vinciō*, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctum, *tr.*, fasten, bind.

*vēlum*, -ī, *n.*, veil; awning, sail.

*alūta*, -ae, *f.*, tanned leather, leather.

10. *tenuiter*, *adv.* [tenuis], thinly, slightly.

*linum*, -ī, *n.*, flax, linen, canvas.

12. *ventus*, -ī, *m.*, wind.

13. *regō*, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum*, *tr.*, rule, guide, control.

14. *congressus*, -ūs, *m.* [congre-dior], a meeting, encounter, conflict.

- 15 gressus erat, ut *unā celeritāte* et *pulsū rēmōrum* praestāret, reliqua *prō locī nātūrā*, *prō vī tempestātum* illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim iis nostrae rōstrō nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē
- 20 cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat, ut cum sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

15. *pulsū rēmōrum*, in the fact that it was propelled by oars.

16. *prō*, in view of.

17. iis = *hīs nāvibus* of l. 14; for case see note on *cīvitātī persuāsit*, Bk. I, 2, 4.

*rōstrō*: ablative of means.

18. *neque . . . tēlum adigēbātur*, nor could a javelin be thrown.

19. *minus commodē* (= *nōn facile*) . . . *continēbantur*: part of the tactics of Roman sea fighting was to row alongside the enemy's ship, fasten the two vessels together by a stout iron hook, and then attack in hand to hand combat. The fact that the sides of the boats of the Veneti were so high made this method of fighting almost impossible.

20. *accēdēbat ut*, there was the additional advantage that.

*sē ventō dedissent*, ran before the wind.

21. *ferrent*: observe that the imperfects are introduced by *ut* and the past perfects by *cum*. In translating, omit the *et* before *tempestātem*.

*cōsisterent*, ran aground.

22. *quārum rērum . . . cāsus*, all these contingencies.

23. *nāvibus*: a dative of agent. Caesar is thinking of the crews of the boats, and so uses a construction which would naturally be used to refer only to persons.

15. *pulsus*, -ūs, *m.* [pellō], a stroke, beat; *pulsus rēmōrum*, rowing.

*rēmus*, -ī, *m.*, oar.

16. *aptus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted.

17. *rōstrum*, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship.

*noceō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.*, injure, do harm.

18. *firmitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [firmus], strength, solidity.

20. *cōpula*, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook, fastening.

21. *tūtō*, *adv.* [tūtus], safely, securely.

22. *cōtēs*, -is, *f.*, sharp rock, reef.

23. *ex-timēscō*, -ere, -timuī, —, *tr.* and *intr.* [timēscō, fear], be afraid; fear greatly, dread.

*The first naval battle on the Atlantic. Roman ingenuity again triumphant.*

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx 5 nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtac, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō 10 enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitudō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs

1. **Caesar ubi:** in translating expressions of this type, when the subordinate verb and the main verb refer to the same subject, the noun should usually be translated in the subordinate clause.

2. **sūmī, was being spent.**

**neque . . . neque:** see on *neque . . . neque*, ch. 3, 9.

3. **neque . . . posse, nor could they be damaged;** why is the infinitive *nocērī* impersonal?

4. **quae . . . vīsa est, as soon as this arrived and was seen by the enemy.**

6. **omni . . . ōrnātissimae, thoroughly provided with every kind of equipment, including arms, tackling etc.**

7. **nostrīs:** supply *nāvibus*. **neque, etc., but it was not clear to Brutus.**

10. **quid agerent:** the direct form would be *quid agāmus?* "what shall we do?" For the deliberative question see App. 210, 263; A. 444; B. 277; H. 559, 4; H.-B. 503.

11. **nocērī nōn posse, that no damage could be done (to the enemy's boats).**

**turribus . . . excitātīs, even though towers were erected.**

12. **hās . . . superābat:** in this case the *turrēs* were merely platforms on the decks of the Roman vessels, which could not be built to any considerable height.

14. **missa, those thrown. gravius acciderent, struck with greater force.**

**ūna . . . rēs, only one measure was of great service.** In reality this device saved the day for the Roman fleet.

3. **reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [re-+premō], keep back, check, restrain.**

6. **ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ōrnō], furnished, fitted out, well equipped.**

- 15 praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae insertae adfixaeque longuriīs, nōn absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs, quī antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprēhēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō prae-rumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum  
 20 omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs

15. **praeparāta**: participle equivalent to a relative clause.

16. **nōn absimili fōrmā**, etc., of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks; *fōrmā* is ablative of description; a dative, *fōrmae*, is understood before *mūrālium*.

**mūrālium falcium**: somewhat resembling the hooks used by fire companies in pulling down walls; for *illus.* see *Vocab.*, *falx*.

**hīs**: ablative of means, with *comprēhēnsī adductīque*.

17. **comprēhēnsī . . . erant . . . prae-rumpēbantur**: both tenses of the indicative denote repeated action in past time. The past perfect is used because the action of the *cum* clause ("whenever," etc.) preceded that of the main clause. For the mood see App. 241, b; A. 548; B. 288, 3; H. 601, 4; H.-B. 579.

18. **adductī**: i.e., toward the Roman ships.

**nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō**, the boats were rowed swiftly away and, etc.

20. **nāvibus**: a dative of reference, to be translated like a genitive.

15. **prae-parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare beforehand, provide.

**falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, hook.

**in-serō**, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [*serō*, entwine], thrust into, insert.

**ad-fixō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fasten to, attach.

16. **longurius**, -i, *m.* [*longus*], a long pole.

**ab-similis**, -e, *adj.*, unlike.

**fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, form, shape; appearance, beauty.

**mūrālis**, -e, *adj.* [*mūrus*], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrālis falx**, a wall-hook.

17. **antenna**, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard.

**mālus**, -i, *m.*, pole, mast.

**dēstinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, fasten, make fast.

**com-prehendō**, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsūm, *tr.*, seize, catch; arrest.

18. **nāvigiūm**, -i, *n.* [*nāvīgō*], a vessel, ship, boat.

**prae-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.*, break off, tear away.

19. **abscidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [*abs+caedō*], cut off, tear away.

**necessāriō**, *adv.* [*necessārius*], unavoidably, necessarily.

**concidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [*com+cadō*], collapse; fall, fall dead.

20. **armāmenta**, -ōrum, *n.* [*armō*], implements, esp. tackle or rigging of a ship.

facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque ōmnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, 25 unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

*An attempted flight prevented by a calm. A complete victory.*

15. Dēiectis, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperīrētur auxili- 5 um, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae

23. superābant: intransitive, equivalent to *superiōrēs erant*.

in cōnspectū: Caesar, with his land force, was encamped on the heights of St. Gildas.

24. paulō fortius: of unusual bravery; paulō is an ablative of measure of difference.

26. unde = ē quibus.

1. singulās: supply nāvēs hostium.

2. bīnae ac ternae nāvēs, our vessels by twos and threes.

circumsteterant, had assailed; for mode, see on ch. 14, 17.

4. quod fieri, that this was taking place.

5. eī rei, for this situation, referring to militēs . . . contendēbant.

6. contendērunt: the perfect denotes a single act, as opposed to *contendēbant*, expressing continued endeavor.

7. quō = in quam. ferēbat, was blowing.

malacia (sc. ventī) ac tranquillitās (sc. maris), calm of the wind and sea. The prevailing winds of this region at this season are east and northeast, the only ones which would allow the enemy to reach port readily. When the winds blow in the morning, a dead calm usually comes on about noon, which is just what happened in this battle.

25. factum, -ī, *n.* [faciō], deed, act.

26. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō], a view, outlook.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each or apiece; three by three.

3. trāscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+scandō,

climb], climb across or over into, board.

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea.

8. tranquillitās, -ātis, *f.* [tranquillus, calm], stillness; calmness of mind or weather.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.*, stand forth, appear; ensue.

- quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna;  
 10 nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae  
 ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenirent, cum  
 ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

*The Veneti sur-  
 render and pay  
 a heavy penalty.*

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque  
 ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis  
 iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid  
 cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod  
 5 ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī  
 neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida  
 dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdi-  
 dērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō  
 diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōn-  
 10 servārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā  
 vēndidit.

9. ad . . . cōficiendum: colloquial, like our "to finish up the business"  
 but translate, *for making the victory complete.*

10. singulās, *one after another.*

11. interventū: ablative denoting time and cause.

pervenirent: note the different forces of *per* in *perpaucae* and *pervenirent*.

cum . . . pugnārētur, *since the battle continued*, explains *noctis interventū*.

12. hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M.

2. cum . . . tum (l. 4): correlative, *not only . . . but also.*

3. etiam, *and in addition.* graviōris aetātis, *of more advanced age.*

in quibus . . . fuit, *who possessed.*

4. nāvium quod . . . fuerat, *whatever ships they had anywhere.*

5. quibus, *i.e., iuventūte et nāvibus.*

6. quō . . . reciperent . . . quem ad modum . . . dēfenderent, *any place in which they could take refuge* (lit. "whither they could," etc.) . . . *any means by which they could defend their towns.*

8. eō gravius . . . quō, *the more severely . . . so that.*

10. sub corōnā, *as slaves* (lit. *under the crown*). As in the case of animals intended for sacrifice, so in early times prisoners of war about to be sold as slaves were crowned with garlands.

10. cōsector, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sector, *freq. of sequor*, follow eagerly], follow eagerly, pursue, chase, hunt down.

11. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [interveniō],

intervention, interposition.

5. ubique, *adv.*, in any place, everywhere.

10. corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, wreath, garland.



*Sabinus advances into the country of the Venelli, but acts on the defensive.*

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum iis cōpiis, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēceraut, ex quibus exercitum coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum

4. ac, and also.

summam imperi, the chief command, as in Bk. II, 23, 14.

6. his paucis diēbus: after the arrival of Sabinus, just mentioned.

Aulerci, etc.: observe that only two tribes are named in this line.

7. auctōrēs . . . nōlēbant, were unwilling to sanction the war; the subject is supplied from senātū.

9. perditōrum, desperate.

10. quōs: the antecedent is an understood hominum (or eōrum).

12. omnibus rēbus, in every respect. cum: adversative, while contrā, opposite.

13. duōrum, only two.

spatiō: a loose use of the ablative of measure of difference.

14. potestātem faceret, offered him an opportunity.

iam, finally, even, so also in l. 17.

hostibus . . . venīret, came to be an object of contempt to the enemy; a clause of result.

3. Viridovix, -icis, m., a chief of the Venelli.

6. Eburovicēs, -um, m., a division of the Aulerci. Map IV, D, 2.

7. auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō], originator, instigator, author; cause.

11. cultūra, -ae, f. [colō], cultivation; agrī cultūra, agriculture.

sē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call aside, call away, withdraw.

15. contemptiō, -ōnis, f. [contemnō], disdain, contempt.

vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudinē hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi  
20 aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn exīstimābat.

*By a stratagem  
he induces the  
enemy to attack  
his camp.*

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēligit, Gallum, ex iīs, quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat,  
5 et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est,  
10 conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam

16. nōn nihil, *not a little*, adverbial accusative.

tantam . . . praebuit, *inspired such a belief* (on the part of the enemy) in his fear.

18. id refers to castrīs . . . tenēbat, l. 12.

eā dē causā, quod, *for the reason that*; sometimes the forms of the demonstrative *is* are equivalent to the definite article.

19. eō . . . tenēret, *in the absence of the commander-in-chief*.

20. lēgātō: dative of agent, with dīmīcandum (*esse*).

1. cōfirmātā, *strengthened*.

3. auxiliī causā, *as auxiliaries*.

5. quid . . . ēdocet, *explained what he wished him to do*.

prō perfugā, *as a deserter*.

6. quibus . . . premātur, like abesse, depends on docet.

7. neque longius, etc., *and that not later than the next night Sabinus would lead out, etc., lit. and it was no further distant (i.e., no longer time intervened), etc.* The quā cl. is an extension of the construction described in App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 298; H. 594, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

10. negōtī . . . gerendī, *freely, of making a successful attack*.

16. carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, *tr.*, pluck; pick; carp at, censure.

4. praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize. pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pollicitor, promise], a promise, offer.

5. ē-doceō, -ēre, -cuī, -ctum, *tr.*,

inform in detail, explain.

8. clam, *adv.*, secretly.

10. conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+clāmō], cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim, shout.

nōn esse; ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallōs hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabīni cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquosque ducēs ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab iis sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut exploratā victoriā, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

*The assault is repulsed. A sally and pursuit. Only a few escape.*

19. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendos armandosque Rōmānis darētur, exanimatique per-

11. *iri oportere*: supply a conjunction, *but*, to connect with the preceding, and translate by the personal construction.

12. *superiorum dierum*, *during the preceding days*; for the double gen. cf. *eōrum dierum*, etc., Bk. II, 17, 5.

14. *spēs . . . bellī*, *the hope (of a fortunate outcome) of the war with the Veneti*; the gen. is objective. They had probably heard of Caesar's failures as told in ch. 14, 1-4, but they had not yet learned the results of the war.

*et quod*, *and the fact that*; the presents *volunt* and *crēdunt* are not historical presents, but are used because the clause states a general fact. English uses the present in the same way.

15. *prius . . . quam . . . sit concessum*, *until they had given their consent*; the subjunctive is anticipatory.

18. *ut exploratā victoriā*: abl. abs., *as if the victory were already assured*.

19. *compleant*: why subjunctive?

2. *passūs mille*: acc. of extent with *acclivis*; cf. *passūs . . . apertus*, Bk. II, 18, 5.

3. *quam . . . spatī*, *as little time as possible*.

4. *darētur*: purpose.

*exanimatique*: *-que* adds the results of what precedes, "and so," etc.

12. *cunctatio*, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor], delay, hesitation.

13. *cōfirmatio*, -ōnis, *f.* [cōfirmō], assurance, evidence.

14. *Veneticus*, -i, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Veneti.

*libenter*, *adv.* [libēns], willingly,

with pleasure.

18. *laetus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful, glad, rejoicing.

*sarmentum*, -i, *n.*, twig, fagot.

*virgulta*, -ōrum, *n.*, sprouts, brushwood.

2. *hūc*, *adv.*, to this place, hither.

- 5 *vēnērunt*. *Sabīnus* *suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat*. *Impeditis* *hostibus* *propter ea quae ferēbant onera*, *subitō* *duābus portis ēruptiōnem fieri iubet*. *Factum est opportūnitate loci*, *hostium īnscentiā ac dēfatigātiōne*, *virtūte militum* *et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne*, *ut nē primum quidem*
- 10 *nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent*. *Quōs integris viribus militēs nostrī cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt*; *reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs*, *quī ex fugā ēvāserant*, *reliquērunt*. *Sic unō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā* *Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā* *Caesar est certior factus*
- 15 *civitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt*. *Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus*, *sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs ferendās mēns eōrum est*.

20. *Eōdem ferē tempore* *P. Crassus*, *cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset*, *quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae*,

5. *cupientibus*, as they eagerly desired; dative.

6. *onera*: the brush and other material with which they intended to fill the Roman trenches.

8. *hostium īnscentiā*: opposed to *militum . . . exercitātiōne*.

10. *ac*, but.

12. *equitēs*: subject of *reliquērunt*.

15. *Titūriō*: i.e., *Sabīnō*; the *nōmen* is used in place of the *cognōmen*.

*nam ut*, etc., freely, for while the Gauls are by disposition very ready to begin a war, they lack firmness of character and a resolute spirit to face disasters. Literally?

1. *P. Crassus*: see ch. 11, 6-9.

*cum . . . pervēnisset*: translate as an independent clause, beginning the second clause at *cum intellegeret*;—*Crassus arrived . . . and, since he understood . . . he thought*.

2. *ut ante dictum*: in Book I, 1.

8. *dēfatigātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*dēfatigō*], weariness, exhaustion.

9. *exercitātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*exercitō*, practice frequently], exercise, practice.

10. *vertō*, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.*, turn; *tergum vertere*, flee.

16. *alacer*, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, eager,

active, ready.

*prōptus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of prōmō*, bring out], evident; ready; quick, prompt.

17. *mollis*, -e, *adj.*, soft, delicate; yielding; inconstant.

*mēns*, *mentis*, *f.*, mind, thought; purpose, resolution; feelings.

*Crassus makes careful preparation for the war. A cavalry skirmish with the Sotiates.*

cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. 5 Mānlius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, 10 nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō, Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās 15 in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. *paucis ante annis*: this was twenty-two years before.

5. *L. Mānlius*, governor of the province, was defeated in Spain by one of the quaestors of Sertorius, and during his retreat was ambushed in Aquitania.

7. *nōn mediocrem*, *unusual*.

9. *Tolōsā . . . Narbōne*: construe with *ēvocātīs*.

10. *civitatēs*, *cities*; the towns usually exercised authority over a certain extent of the adjacent territory.

*finitimae* agrees with *civitatēs*, and governs the dat. *regiōnibus*.

11. *ēvocātīs*: these were veterans, mostly petty officers, who had served their terms of enlistment. They were often invited in special emergencies to reënter the service, with extra pay and privileges.

12. *equitātūque*: sc. *coāctō*.

13. *quō plūrimum valēbant*, *in which they were very strong*.

14. *primum*: an adverb.

4. *Praecōninus*, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate.

6. *prō-cōnsul*, -is, *m.*, the governor of a province, proconsul.

7. *mediocris*, -e, *adj.* [medius], ordinary, moderate.

*dīligentia*, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], care, diligence.

9. *Tolōsa*, -ae, *f.*, a town on the Garonne, modern Toulouse. Map IV, D, 5.

*Carcasō*, -ōnis, *f.*, a town of the Province, modern Carcassonne. Map IV, E, 5.

*Narbō*, -ōnis, *m.*, a town of the Province, modern Narbonne. Map IV, E, 5.

11. *Sotiātēs*, -ium, *m.*, the most powerful people of Aquitania. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

16. *convallis*, -is, *f.* [com-+vallis], valley, defile.

*A defeat, a  
siege, and a  
surrender.*

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs  
superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquī-  
tāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine  
imperātore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulescentulō duce efficere  
5 possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs  
terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō, Crassus  
ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus  
fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne  
temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius  
10 rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multis  
locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt) ubi diligentiā nos-  
trōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad  
Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat, petunt.  
Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

2. victōriis: the adjective *frētus* takes a dependent ablative expressing a figurative idea of place (*on*).

3. quid . . . possent: indirect question, subject of *perspicī*.

4. imperātore, *commander-in chief, i.e., Caesar.*

adulescentulō, *freely, scarcely more than a boy.*

5. cuperent: coördinate with *putārent*; supply *et* in translation before *nostrī*, of line 3.

7. ex itinere: see on *ex itinere*, Bk. II, 6, 2.

8. aliās . . . aliās: as in Bk. II, 29, 15, 16. Translate the ablatives absolute as main clauses, and begin a new sentence with *ubi*,—*but when*, etc.

9. cuniculis: subterranean passages by which the Gauls attempted to undermine the Roman *agger*.

11. aerāriae sectūraeque, *copper mines and quarries*. Traces of these ancient mines have been found.

diligentiā: abl. of cause.

14. faciunt, *they do so*.

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon, confiding in.

4. adulescentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of adulescēns*], a very young man, a mere boy.

9. cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, rabbit-burrow; tunnel, mine.

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aerārius, of copper], copper mine.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō], a cutting; mine, quarry.

12. prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.* [prō+faciō], make progress, accomplish.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animīs, *An unsuccessful attempt to escape.* aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtīs, quōs illi soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruuntur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

1. in eam rem . . . animīs, while the attention of all our men was directed toward this matter.

2. aliā ex parte belongs with ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, l. 9. The main cl. is Adiatunnus . . . cum de dēvōtīs . . . ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus . . . repulsus . . . impetrāvit, a part of which is repeated in cum hīs Adiatunnus, l. 9, on account of the long parenthesis quōrum, l. 4, . . . recūsāret.

3. soldūriōs: keep the word in translating.

4. condiciō, terms of service.

ut belongs with fruuntur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant.

commodis: abl. with fruuntur.

5. sī quid . . . accidat, if anything happens, i.e., if any disaster happens; a common form of expression in English also.

6. unā ferant, share.

sibi . . . cōnsciscant: compare the same phrase in Bk. I, 4, 11.

7. neque . . . quisquam = et nēmō; quisquam is in the emphatic position. hominum memoriā, within the memory of man.

9. recūsāret: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 1; H.-B. 521, 1.

12. tamen, nevertheless, i.e., in spite of his attempt to escape.

1. in-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, tr., extend, direct; pf. part. as adj., intent, absorbed.

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, m., a leader of the Sotiates.

3. soldūrii, -ōrum, m., vassals, retainers.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr., devote, consecrate; pf. part. dē-

vōtus as subst., a sworn follower.

4. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus], an advantage, privilege.

5. fruor, -ī, fructus, intr., enjoy, have the benefit of.

9. recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causa], refuse, decline.

11. vehementer, adv. [vehemens, violent], violently, powerfully.

*Enemies that fight according to Roman tactics.*

- 23.** Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmīttēre, conīrārē, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parārē coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum alacritāte et magnā hominum multitudīne bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō īī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuetūdīne populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus

**3. oppidum:** subject of *expugnātum* (*esse*).

et nātūrā . . . mūnitum, protected both by the nature of its location and by artificial means, by a wall and probably a moat: The efforts of Crassus to take the town by assault were unsuccessful, as stated in ch. 21, lines 7, 8.

**4. quibus . . . ventum erat,** after (lit. within which) he arrived there.

**7. citeriōris Hispāniae:** *Hispānia Tarraconēnsis*, extending from the Pyrenees to the Ebro.

**8. Aquitāniae:** for case, see on *finitimae*, ch. 20, 10.

**9. adventū:** see on *quōrum adventū*, Bk. II, 7, 4.

**10. ducēs,** as leaders.

**11. ūnā cum . . . fuerant,** had served under.

**Sertōriō:** he had formerly been a lawyer and orator. He won his first laurels against the Cimbri. As a supporter of Marius, he had gone to Spain in 82 B. C., and, putting himself at the head of the revolting Lusitani, began a destructive warfare against the Romans that continued until his assassination in 72.

**omnēs annōs,** continuously, i.e., during all the years of his military career in Spain.

**-que, and therefore;** compare *exanimātique*, ch. 19, 4.

**13. loca capere,** to choose suitable positions for encampment.

**2. Vocātēs, -ium, m.,** an Aquitanian people south of the Garonne. Map IV, C-D, 4.

**Tarusātēs, -ium, m.,** a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania, neighbors of the Vocates. Map IV, C, 4-5.

**5. quōque versus, adv.,** in every direction.

**9. alacritās, -ātis, f. [alacer],** eagerness, readiness.

**11. Sertōrius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; esp. Quintus Sertorius, a partisan of Marius.



nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadver-  
tit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūcī, hostem 15  
et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidi relinquare, et  
ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque  
sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūnc-  
tandum existimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōn-  
silium dēlātā ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem 20  
pugnae cōstituit.

*They adopt  
the "Fabian  
policy" and  
Crassus  
decides to attack  
their camp.*

24. Primā lūce, prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplici  
aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs,  
quid hostēs cōsili caperent, exspectābat. Illī,  
etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam  
paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, 5  
tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs commeātū inter-

14. quod, *this*, explained by the following infinitives, or it may be regarded as a mere connective, *therefore*. (Compare *quod sī*.)

15. didūcī, *could be divided*.

18. in diēs, *daily, from day to day*.  
nōn cūncandum (= *dubitandum*) . . . dēcertāret: see on (*sibi*) *dubi-*  
*tandum*: nōn, etc., Bk. II, 2, 9.

19. ad . . . dēlātā, *brought before the council of war*.

20. idem sentīre, *held the same opinion*.

21. pugnae: dative.

1. duplici . . . institūtā (= *instrūtā*): Crassus's scanty force would have presented too small a front if it had been drawn up in the usual *triplex aciēs*.

2. auxiliīs . . . coniectīs (= *conlocātīs*): they were usually placed on the wings, but Crassus, knowing he must depend on his legionaries, stationed the auxiliary troops in the centre, in order to give them the support of the legionaries, and to prevent the possibility of their running away.

6. tūtius, *a still safer course*, predicate adjective with *esse*, which has the infinitive *potīrī* as its subject.

obsessīs . . . interclūsō: the first ablative absolute, denoting means, is subordinate to the second. Translate both in the active voice, as coordinate with *potīrī*.

15. dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
*tr.*, separate, divide.

18. cūncator, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, delay,

hesitate.

4. et-sī, *conj.*, even if, although,  
though.

- clūsō sine vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant.
- 10 Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā, Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra irētur,
- 15 cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

*The attack.  
The rear gate  
is not well  
defended.*

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsorēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, ad pugnam lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis

7. sine vulnere, *without bloodshed.*
8. in agmine: *i.e., not in battle array.*
9. cōgitābant, *planned.*
11. suā refers to the subject *hostēs.*
12. opīniōne timōris: caused by their *cūctātiō*; for translation, see on *tantum . . . praebuit*, ch. 17, 16.
14. exspectārī . . . nōn oportēre (= *dubitandum nōn esse*) quā, *that they should not hesitate to attack (lit. go to), etc.*
15. omnibus cupientibus: *abl. abs., to the delight of all.*
- ad . . . castra: this is the only instance in the Gallic war in which the Romans made an attack on a fortified camp.
1. multīs . . . coniectīs: *abl. abs., by a shower of javelins.*
2. mūnitiōnibus: the towers and breastworks on the *vāllum*.
3. quibus: *cōnfidō* takes sometimes the dative and sometimes the ablative, but usually the dative to refer to persons.
4. lapidibus tēlis . . . comportandis: *gerundive construction, expressing means.*

- 
9. in-firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not strong, weak, feeble.
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*com- + agitō*], consider thoroughly, reflect, ponder, think, intend, plan.
3. dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,

- tr.*, drive from, ward off.
- auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [*auxilium*], auxiliary; *m. pl. as subst.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
4. sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*ministrō*, serve], furnish, supply, give.

et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinio- 5  
nem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac  
nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn  
frustrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castris Crassō  
renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentia ab decumānā portā  
castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre. 10

*The camp is  
captured and  
the enemy  
flee. The  
usual pursuit  
and slaughter.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut  
magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suis excitarent,  
quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum,  
eductis iis cohortibus, quae praesidio castris relictæ  
intritæ ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, nē 5  
ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque  
ad pugnam intentis celeriter ad eas quas diximus munitiōnes  
pervēnerunt atque his proutis prius in hostium castris cō-  
stitērunt, quam planē ab his vidēri aut, quid rei gereretur,  
cognōsci posset. Tum vērō clamōre ab eā parte auditō nostri 10  
redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spē victoriæ accidere

5. ad aggerem: the Romans constructed a sloping mound leading up to the high earthworks of the Gauls; *ad* here means *for*, not *to*.

6. cōstanter . . . timidē, *stubbornly and fearlessly*.

9. ab, *on the side of*, a common use.

decumānā portā: the camp was built *cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī*; compare ch. 23, 12.

4. ēductis: translate as a principal clause.

relictæ gives the reason for *intritæ* . . . *erant*.

5. longiore, *roundabout*.

8. prius . . . quam: when this word is separated, as here, it should be translated in the position in which *quam* stands in the sentence.

9. vidēri: supply *possent* from the following *posset*.

quid . . . gereretur, *what was going on*; subject of *posset*.

10. nostri: *i.e.*, the Romans who were attacking the front of the camp.

11. quod, *a thing which*, referring to *redintegratis viribus*.

accidere cōsuēvit, *usually happens*; for tense of *cōsuēvit* see on *nōvisse*, ch. 9, 20.

5. caespes, -itis, *m.* [caedō], sod, turf.

7. timidē, *adv.* [timidus], timidly, with fear.

8. circum-eō, -īre, -iī or -iīvi, -itum, *tr.*, go around, march around.

5. in-tritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not exhausted, unwearied.

8. prō-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, tear or pull down, demolish.

9. planē, *adv.* [planus], plainly, clearly, distinctly.

cōnsuēvit, ācrius pugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circum-  
ventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et  
fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis  
15 campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā  
Cantabrisque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā,  
multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*The surrender  
of the Aquitani.*

27. Hāc auditā pugnā, maxima pars Aquitāniae  
sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō  
in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs,  
Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garunnī, Sibusātēs, Co-  
5 cosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae quod  
hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

13. *per, over.*

14. *apertissimis campīs, over quite open, level ground, which greatly  
aided the pursuit.*

15. *quae:* neuter, with *mīlium* as antecedent. English usage requires  
a masculine because of the thought of "men" with "thousand."

16. *relictā:* translate as a main verb in the active voice, with *equitātus*  
as subject, and make a separate sentence of *multā . . . recēpit*.

17. *multā nocte, late at night.*

2. *quō in numerō:* see on *quō in numerō*, ch. 7, 10.

5. *paucae . . . nātiōnēs, only a few tribes, the most remote.*

*tempore:* see on *quibus*, ch. 25, 3.

16. *Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of  
northern Spain. Map IV, A-B, 5.*

2. *ultrō, adv., to or on the farther  
side; of one's own accord;  
actually.*

3. *Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., an Aquita-  
nian tribe about modern Tarbes.  
Map IV, C, 5.*

*Bigerriōnēs, -um, m., an Aquita-  
nian people in modern La Bigorre.  
Map IV, C-D, 5.*

*Ptianiī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian  
tribe about modern Pau. Map  
IV, C, 5.*

4. *Elusātēs, -um, m., an Aquita-*

*nian tribe about modern Eauze.  
Map IV, D, 5.*

*Gatēs, -um, m., a tribe south of the  
Garonne. Map IV, D, 4-5.*

*Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central  
Aquitania. Map IV, D, 5.*

*Garunnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe living  
about the sources of the Garonne.  
Map IV, D, 5.*

*Sibusātēs, -um, m., a tribe living  
near the Pyrenees, about modern  
Saubusse. Map IV, C, 5.*

*Cocosātēs, -um, m., a tribe of north-  
western Aquitania. Map IV,  
C, 4.*

*Caesar advances  
against the  
Morini and  
Menapii.  
They retreat  
into the forests.*

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope  
exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā  
pācātā Morinī Menapiique supererant, quī in armīs  
essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce  
mīsissent, arbitratūs id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exer- 5  
citurū dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere  
coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs, quae  
proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque  
silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt.  
Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque 10  
mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs  
in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt  
et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt  
eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius  
impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt. 15

2. exācta . . . erat, *was at an end.*

omni . . . pācātā: *adversative, while all the rest of the Gauls had been subdued.*

4. essent: for mood see note on ch. 22, 9.

5. eō = *in Morinōs Menapiōsque.*

exercitur: the army with which Caesar had made the campaign against the Veneti was now reduced to three legions and eight cohorts, as he had detached several divisions under the command of his lieutenants, as narrated in ch. 11.

6. quī, *but they.*

longē aliā . . . ac, *by a plan very different from; see on longē aliam . . . atque, ch. 9, 20.*

8. proeliō contendissent. *had fought in open battle.*

10. initium, *edge.*

12. in opere = *in castris mūniendīs.*

14. longius . . . locīs, *too far, over rather unfavorable ground.*

8. continēns, -entis, *adj. [pres. part. of continēō], continuous, extensive; as subst., f., mainland, continent.*

12. ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr., fly or rush forth.*

15. dē-perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *tr., destroy utterly, lose.*

*Caesar attempts to hero his way through the forests, but storms prevent.*

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et  
 5 prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, uti opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius  
 10 sub pellibus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviis reliquīsque item cīvitatibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernis conlocāvit.

1. reliquīs . . . diēbus, *in the days immediately following; deinceps* denotes an uninterrupted series, "without intermission."

silvās caedere: that is, to cut a road through the forest.

2. inermibus . . . militibus: abl. abs., *while the soldiers*, etc.

4. conversam ad hostem, (*with the tops*) turned toward the enemy.

5. prō vāllō, *as a breastwork*.

6. cōfectō, *cleared* (lit. *completed*).

7. ipsi, (*while the enemy*) themselves, as opposed to their beasts and baggage.

9. continuātiōne imbrium, *on account of the continuous rain storms*.

10. sub pellibus: the tents of the summer camp were made of leather. In winter quarters the soldiers lived in huts.

11. vicīs aedificiisque: see on vicīs and aedificiis, Bk. II, 7, 7.

13. in hibernis conlocāvit: the forces which had been under Sabinus and Crassus are of course included.

1. deinceps, *adv.* [dein+caput], one after another, successively; without intermission; next.

2. imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+prūdēns], not foreseeing, off one's guard.

4. māteria, -am, and māteriēs, -em, *f.* [māter] (*only in nom. and acc.*

*sing.*), material, timber.

6. pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, flock, herd.

9. continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continuō, connect], continuance, series, succession.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rain, hard rain, storm.

## BOOK IV

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencteri magnā multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trāns-  
*German tribes cross into Gaul. Customs of the Suebi.* ierunt, nōn longē ā mari, quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs 5 annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quot- annīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; 10 hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.

1. quī fuit, etc.: we should say "which was in the year of the consul- ship," etc.

Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō: Pompey, Crassus, and Caesar had made an agreement by which they planned to unite their political influence and to control the affairs of Rome for their own benefit. This combination was known as the First Triumvirate. In the year to which Caesar here refers, 55 B.C., the two triumvirs who had been elected consuls used their influence to obtain for Caesar an extension of his control of Gaul for five years longer. His first appointment, which had been for a period of five years, would have ended the next year.

2. Germānī, a tribe of Germans.

4. quō = *in quod*.

5. causa trānseundi, etc.: see on Bk. III, 1, 5.

trānseundi: give all the case forms of the gerund of the verb *eō*.

6. bellō: to be taken with *exagitātī*.

8. pāgōs: in Caesar, *pāgus* means a subdivision of a Gallic or a German state; not the country, but its inhabitants.

ex quibus, etc., *from each of which they call out a thousand men every year*.

10. alunt: by agriculture.

11. rūsus refers to the repetition of the act, while *in vicem* refers to the change of persons.

annō post, *the following year*. illī, *while the former*.

2. Usipetēs, -um, m., a German tribe beyond the Rhine, below Cologne. Map IV, F-G, 1.

Tencteri, -ōrum, m., a German tribe living east of the Usipeles. Map IV, G-H, 1.

5. Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people of central Germany. Map IV, H-I, 2.

8. quot-annis, adv., annually.

11. vicis, f., gen. (no nom.), change; in vicem, in turn, alternately.

Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum  
 15 frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs  
 20 efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxerunt, ut locīs

**12. ratiō atque ūsus belli**, *military training*.

**13. privātī**: *i.e.*, belonging to individuals.

**sēparātī** (sc. *ab agrō commūnī*): all the land was held as the property of the state. At this time the Germans were in a state of transition from the nomadic life to an agricultural, settled condition.

**longius**: *diūtius* is the more usual word to denote time.

**14. annō** = *ūnō annō*. The number *ūnus* is not used in expressions of time or place unless emphatic.

**15. frūmentō**: ablative of means, similar in character to the ablative used with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc.

**maximam partem**, *for the most part*; adverbial accusative expressing degree.

**pecore**: the eating of flesh almost exclusively was to the Romans a sign of barbarism. The agriculture of the Germans was very primitive, and their crops were small.

**16. sunt**, *are (engaged)*.

**quae rēs**, *this practice*, subject of *alit* and *efficit*.

**17. ā puerīs**, *from childhood*.

**18. officiō . . . adsuēfactī**, *trained to* (lit. *by*) *no obedience or discipline*; for the ablative see App. 143, a; B. 218, 7; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 431.

**19. immānī . . . magnitūdine hominēs efficit**, *makes them men of giant stature*; *magnitūdine* is an ablative of description used predicatively with *hominēs*.

**20. in eam . . . addūxerunt**, *they have carried their training to such a point*.

**locīs frigidissimis**: ablative absolute,—*though their country is very*

**13. sē-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *tr.*, separate; *pf. part. as adj.*, separated, marked off, separate.

**15. lāc, lactis**, *n.*, milk.

**16. vēnatiō, -ōnis**, *f.* [vēnor], hunting.

**cibus, -ī**, *m.*, food.

**18. disciplina, -ae**, *f.* [discipulus, learner], instruction, training, discipline.

**adsuēfactiō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum**, *tr.* [adsuētus+faciō], accustom.



frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

*Their commerce with other tribes. Their cavalry tactics.*

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēdant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt 5

*cold.* It is probable that the climate, both of Gaul and Germany, has become milder since Caesar's time, as a result of clearing away the forests and draining the swamps.

21. *neque*: correl. with *et*.

*vestītūs*: genitive, depending on *quicquam*.

22. *aperta* = *nūda*.

1. *mercātōribus est*: see on *esse . . . mercātōribus*, Bk. II, 15, 9.

*magis eō ut . . . quam quō* (= *quam eō quod*), rather in order that . . . than (on this account) because.

(*ea*) *quae . . . cēperint* depends on *vēdant*, which stands in a relative clause of description denoting possibility and depends on *habeant*; *cēperint* is subjunctive by attraction. Translate, *that they may have buyers for their booty*.

3. *dēsiderent*: the subjunctive is regularly used to express a reason which may exist in another's mind, but which is rejected by the writer.

*quīn etiam nōn ūtuntur*, in fact, they do not even use; the phrase *quīn etiam* introduces an addition to a preceding statement, suggesting that the fact or idea stated has a wider application than the reader might have expected.

4. *iūmentīs*: here = *equīs*. Why ablative? *quaeque* = *et quae*.

5. *pretiō*: ablative of price.

*quae sunt . . . efficiunt*, by daily training they render those (horses) which are bred in their own country capable of enduring the hardest labor, though they are small and ill-formed; *labōris* is a genitive of description used in the predicate.

21. *frigidus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*frigus*], cold.

*vestitus*, -ūs, *m.* [*vestiō*], clothing.

23. *lavō*, -āre (-ere), *lāvī*, *lautum* (*lōtum*), *tr.*, wash, moisten; *pass.*, be washed, bathe.

3. *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,

desire, miss.

4. *dēlectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight or take pleasure in.

*impēnsus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impendō*, weigh out], expensive, high, great.

- apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitā-  
 tiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs  
 saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque  
 eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter,  
 10 cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quic-  
 quam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad  
 quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adire  
 audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod  
 eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmi-  
 15 nārī arbitrantur.

*Their neigh-  
 bors the Ubii.*

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam  
 lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sig-  
 nificārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn  
 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum c  
 5 agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii,

8. pedibus, *on foot*; ablative of manner.

10. cum ūsus est, *whenever it is necessary*.

neque . . . habētur quam, etc., *according to their standard, nothing is considered more unmanly than to use, etc.*

12. quamvīs paucī, *however few (they may be)*.

13. vinum, etc.: compare a similar description of the Nervii, who were partly German, Bk. II, 15, 9-12.

14. ad labōrem . . . effēminārī, *that men are made too weak and too effeminate to endure vigorous exertions*.

1. pūblicē, *for the state*. quam . . . agrōs: subject of esse.

4. ā Suēbīs: i.e., ā Suēbōrum finibus. The extent of 'waste land is certainly exaggerated. mīlia: accusative of extent.

5. ad . . . succēdunt, *come close to, not attingunt*, "border on," because of the vacant land that intervenes.

6. dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [dē+fōrma], ill-shaped, unsightly, ugly.

9. vestigium, -i, *n.* [vestigō], foot-step, step, footprint; trace, spot, place.

11. iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in+ars], unskilled; shiftless, unmanly.

ephippium, -i, *n.*, a horse-cloth, saddle.

12. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.*

[ephippium], caparisoned; using saddles.

14. re-mollēscō, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [mollēscō, become soft], grow soft; be enervated or weakened.

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory; a title to praise, merit.

5. Ubii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ubii, a German tribe on the east bank of the Rhine, near Cologne. Map IV, G-H, 1-2.

quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmīōrēsque redēgērunt.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri surprise the Gauls and cross the Rhine.*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tenctērī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum dispositis

6. fuit: emphatic position;—was, i.e., used to be.  
ut . . . Germānōrum, according to the capacity of the Germans, i.e., as far as the Germans are capable of prosperity.

7. eiusdem generis: i.e., Germānōrum.

8. hūmāniōrēs, more civilized.

10. mōribus: for case compare officiō, ch. 1, 18.

cum: determine its force from tamen.

11. saepe expertī, in spite of many attempts.

13. redēgērunt: see on redēgerat, Bk. II, 27, 15.

1. causā, situation.

3. ad extrēmum = postrēmō; to be taken with pervēnērunt.

8. cis: i.e., the western side; so citrā, l. 18.

dispositis praesidiīs, by means of guards stationed at different (dis-) points.

6. flōrēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of flōreō], flourishing, prospering.

captus, -ūs, m. [capiō], taking; capacity.

7. quam-quam, conj., although.

8. hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō], human; civilized, refined.

9. ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [double freq. of veniō], keep com-

ing, be wont to come, resort.

11. amplitūdō, -inis, f. [amplus], importance, consequence.

gravitās, -ātis, f. [gravis], weight; power, dignity, importance.

13. humilis, -e, adj. [humus], on the ground, low, humble.

4. triennium, -ī, n. [trēs+annus], a period of three years, three years.

- praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti  
 10 cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam  
 trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in  
 suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̄ simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressi  
 rūrsus revertērunt atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū  
 cōnfectō, insciōs inopināntēsq̄ Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē  
 15 Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū  
 trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectis  
 nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum  
 quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque,  
 omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis sē  
 20 eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

*The fickle  
 character of  
 the Gauls.*

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmi-  
 tātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis  
 capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs  
 committendū exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētū-

9. prohibēbant: conative imperfect,—*tried to prevent.*

10. vī contendere, *to force a passage.*

12. viam: for case see App. 130; A. 425; B. 181; H. 417; H.-B. 387, I.

13. equitātū: see on *equitātū*, Bk. II, 10, 7.

19. partem: accusative of duration of time.

20. cōpiis, *supplies*, which the Menapii had in store.

3. mōbilēs: Caesar often mentions the weakness of purpose shown by the Gauls, and their restless desire for change; compare Bk. II, 1, 11 and Bk. III, 10, 7, 8. This characteristic was indeed one of the great factors in their downfall.

nihil hīs committendū (esse), *that no confidence should be placed in them.*

4. est . . . cōsuētūdinis, *it is a Gallic custom*; for the genitive see App. 103; A. 343, c; B. 198, 3; H. 439; H.-B. 340.

12. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō], seat; settlement; abode.

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [similis], make like, imitate; pretend.

14. īn-scius, -a, -um, *adj.* [scius, knowing], not knowing, ignorant, unaware.

16. re-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [migrō, move], *intr.*, move or go back, return.

1. infirmitās, -ātis, *f.* [infirmus], weakness, inconstancy.

3. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō], changeable, inconstant, hasty.

dinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid 5  
 quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant  
 et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex  
 regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūtiāre  
 cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs  
 saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre 10  
 necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad  
 voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

*The restless  
 Gauls seek help  
 from the Ger-  
 mans. Caesar  
 determines to  
 attack the  
 latter.*

6. Quā cōnsuetūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī  
 bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad  
 exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae  
 fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit: missās lēgā-

5. uti . . . cōgant etc.: the clauses with the verbs *cōgant*, *quaerant*, *circumsistat*, and *cōgat*, are in apposition with *hoc*.

7. mercātōrēs: object of *circumsistat*.

*circumsistat* is connected with *cōgat* by *-que* in *quibusque*.

9. hīs rēbus, *such information*.

10. quōrum . . . necesse est, *which they are immediately compelled to regret*; for the cases of *quōrum* and *eōs* see App. 109; A. 354, b; B. 209; H. 457; H.-B. 352; *vestigiō* is used in a literal sense in ch. 2, 9.

11. serviant, *are guided by* (lit. *are slaves to*); *rūmōribus* is a dative.

ad voluntātem . . . respondeant, *freely, answer them with tales which are made up to satisfy them* (lit. *shaped to their wish*) i.e., to escape the persistent questioning of the crowd, the traders invent such stories as will gratify them most easily; *ficta* is a participle, used as a noun, object of *respondeant*.

2. occurreret, *become involved in*. Literally?

3. ea . . . facta (*esse*), *that those things had happened which he had suspected would happen*.

4. fore: future infinitive of *sum*, here used instead of *futūra esse*, with *quae* as its subject. These happenings are mentioned in *missās (esse)*, etc.

5. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via], a traveler.

8. prō-nūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, relate, report.

9. auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō], hearing, hearsay, rumor.

10. paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *tr.*, *impers.*, with *acc. of person and gen. of thing*, it makes (one) repent of, one repents of, one is sorry for or regrets.

11. necesse, *indecl. adj.*, unavoidable-

able, necessary.

in-certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, indefinite; doubtful; untrustworthy.

12. fingō, -ere, finxi, fictum, *tr.*, form, invent, imagine; *pf. part. as adj.*, pretended, false.

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus], early, speedily.

4. suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [cf. suspiciō, look up], suspect.

- 5 *tiōnēs* ab *nōn* *nūllis* *cīvitātibus* ad *Germānōs* *invītātōsque* *eōs*  
*utī* ab *Rhēnō* *discēderent*, *omnia* *quae* *postulāssent* ab *sē* *fore*  
*parāta*. *Quā* *spē* *adductī* *Germānī* *lātius* *iam* *vagābantur* *et*  
*in* *finēs* *Eburōnum* *et* *Condrūsōrum*, *quī* *sunt* *Trēverōrum*  
*clientēs*, *pervēnerant*. *Prīncipibus* *Galliae* *ēvocātis*, *Caesar*  
 10 *ea* *quae* *cognōverat* *dissimulanda* *sibi* *existimāvit* *eōrumque*  
*animīs* *permulsis* *et* *cōfirmātis* *equitātūque* *imperātō*, *bellum*  
*cum* *Germānis* *gerere* *cōstituit*.

*The Germans  
 send ambassa-  
 dors to Caesar  
 with a boastful  
 message.*

7. *Rē frūmentāriā comparātā* *equitibusque* *dēlēc-*  
*tis*, *iter* *in* *ea* *loca* *facere* *coepit*, *quibus* *in* *locis* *esse*  
*Germānōs* *audiēbat*. *Ā* *quibus* *cum* *paucōrum*  
*diērum* *iter* *abesset*, *lēgātī* *ab* *hīs* *vēnērunt*, *quōrum* *haec* *fuit*  
 5 *ōrātiō*: *Germānōs* *neque* *prīorēs* *populō* *Rōmānō* *bellum* *īferre*,  
*neque* *tamen* *recūsāre*, *sī* *laccessantur*, *quīn* *armīs* *contendant*,  
*quod* *Germānōrum* *cōnsuetūdō* *sit* *ā* *maiōribus* *trādita*, *quicū-*

6. *ab Rhēnō discēderent*: *i.e.*, advance farther into Gaul.  
*omnia . . . parāta* depends on a verb of saying implied in *invītātōs*.  
*postulāssent* represents a future perfect in the direct form.  
*ab sē*: the pronoun refers to the Gauls.

8. *quī*: *i.e.*, *Condrūsī*.

9. *clientēs*: the weaker Gallic tribes often attached themselves to a stronger one for the sake of protection.

*prīncipibus*: they were not officials, but men who had gained a prominent position by personal influence.

10. *eōrum . . . animīs* = *eīs*, a common circumlocution in Latin.

12. *cōstituit*, expressed his determination. Of course he had resolved upon war before the council met.

1. *equitibus . . . dēlēctis*: as the result of the levy upon the Gauls, ch. 6, 11, Caesar had a cavalry force of about 5,000 men.

3. *quibus*: *sc. locis*.

4. *iter*: see on *viam*, ch. 4, 12.

5. *Germānōs . . . īferre . . . recūsāre*, that the Germans were not beginning a war on the Roman people, but they would not refuse etc.; *neque* = *sed nōn*.

6. *quīn . . . contendant*, to fight; for mood see App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 298; H. 595, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

7. *trādita*: not a part of the predicate.

*quicūque* = *omnibus* (dat. with *resistere*) *quī*.

10. *dis-simulō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  
*tr.* and *intr.*, disguise, dissemble.

11. *per-mulceō*, -ēre, -mulsī, -mul-  
*sum*, *tr.*, appease, conciliate.

que bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse sē invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dīi quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar, in  
reply, demands  
their with-  
drawal from  
Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit orātiōnis: sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

8. haec, etc., *this, however, they would say*; supply sē as subject of *dicere* and *posse* (l. 10).

9. invītōs: distinguish between *invītus* and *invītātus*.

grātiā = amīcitiā.

10. vel . . . vel: used to indicate the free choice of the Romans in the matter. Note the derivation of *vel*.

attribuant, patiantur: for imperatives in the direct form.

12. concēdere, *were inferior to*.

13. reliquum . . . nēminem, *no one else in the world*. The boastful tone of the Germans' speech is like that of other speeches of the barbarians reported by Caesar.

1. quae vīsum est, *what seemed best*; sc. *respondēre* to govern *quae*.

2. exitus, *conclusion, substance*.

3. vērū, *right*.

4. quī: supply eōs as antecedent.

neque . . . vacāre agrōs, *and there were no unoccupied lands in Gaul* (lit. *no lands were lying vacant*).

6. licēre: translate by a personal verb.

8. hoc: *i.e., ut eōs suis finibus recipiant*.

9. ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ex+iaciō], drive out, expel, cast up.

10. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor], useful, serviceable.

11. possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por=prō+sidō, settle], take possession of, occupy, seize.

4. tueor, -ēri, tūtus, *tr.*, look at, watch over; defend, protect.

*The Germans  
plead for delay.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et, rē dēlibērātā, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cognōverat  
5 enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrabātur.

*Description of  
the Meuse and  
the Rhine.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādā ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus insulamque efficit Batāvōrum, in Ōceanum influit neque longius ab Ōceanō milibus passuum

2. *post diem tertium*: i.e., two days later, as the Romans would include both the first and last days in counting.

3. *sē*: the comparative adverb *propius* frequently governs the accusative.

*castra movēret*: as the Romans fortified a camp at the end of each day's march, *castra movēre* is here equivalent to *prōgredi*.

4. *ab sē . . . posse*, he could grant; how literally?

6. *trāns Mosam*: i.e., on the west side of the river.

7. *equitēs*: the German cavalry was far superior to the Gallic, that of the Tencteri being famous even in the time of Tacitus, 150 years later.

1. *ex monte . . . quī*, from that part of the Vosges mountains which.

2. *parte*, branch.

3. *quae . . . efficit*, which is called the Waal, and which forms the island.

*Vacalus*: the modern Waal is in fact the main (south) branch of the Rhine, carrying more than two-thirds of the water.

6. *frūmentor*, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [frūmentum], get grain, forage.

*Ambivaritī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. Map IV, F, 1.

*Mosa*, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas, a river of Belgic Gaul. Map IV, F, 1-2.

8. *inter-pōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place or put between, insert, interpose; cause, occasion.

1. *prō-fluō*, -ere, -flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow forth, issue, rise.

*Vosegus*, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges Mountains, west of the Rhine. Map IV, G, 2-3.

3. *Vacalus*, -ī, *m.*, the Waal, a branch of the Rhine near its mouth. Map IV, F, 1.

*Batāvī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe living about the mouths of the Rhine. Map IV, F, 1.



LXXX in Rhēnum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, 5  
 quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātiūm,  
 Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticōrum, Tribocōrum,  
 Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in  
 plūrēs diffluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis,  
 quarū pars magna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, 10  
 ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere existi-  
 mantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Further nego-  
 tiations. A  
 truce is  
 declared.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII  
 milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī  
 revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere, nē  
 longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent,

5. ex Lepontiis, in the country of the Lepontii.

6. spatiō, course.

Nantuātiūm, etc.; the list of tribes is not complete and is incorrect in including the Nantuates.

8. citātus fertur, flows rapidly.

9. multis . . . effectis: translate in the active voice; making, etc.; for the -que see on Bk. II, 25, 8.

11. ex quibus sunt quī, among whom are those who. The relative clause is descriptive, and in the classic Latin of Caesar's period a subjunctive would have been expected. This chapter and also a number of other passages which deal with geography or natural history (e.g., Bk. I, 1, 15-23, Bk. V, 12-14, Bk. VI, 25-28), were probably not written by Caesar, but are interpolations, the work of some unknown writer of a much later time.

piscibus: see on frūmentō, ch. 1, 15.

12. capitibus, mouths. The more usual meaning, as applied to rivers, is "sources."

3. congressī: sc. cum eō; the word is more often used to denote a hostile meeting.

5. Lepontii, -ōrum, m., an Alpine tribe. Map IV, H, 3.

7. Mediomatici, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people about modern Metz. Map IV, F-G, 2.

Triboci, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the neighborhood of modern Strasburg. Map IV, G-H, 2.

8. citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of

citō, put in quick motion], rapid, in a rapid course.

9. diffuō, -ere, -flūxi, —, intr. [dis-+ fluō], flow in different directions, branch.

11. piscis, -is, m., a fish, used collectively, fish.

ōvum, -i, n., egg.

avis, -is, f., bird.

- 5 petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrāndō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi  
 10 trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē  
 15 ceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

5. *praemitteret*: used here without an object; translate *send word ahead*.

6. *potestātem faceret* = *permitteret*.

7. *quōrum . . . fēcisset*, and if their leading men and senate would give them sworn assurance (of safety); the verb is singular, to agree with the nearer part of the compound subject.

8. *eā condiciōne*: the terms given in ch. 8, 6, 7, which were regarded as still open for their consideration.

10. *daret* would be *dā* in the direct form.

*eōdem . . . pertinēre*, had the same purpose (lit. tended to the same point) as the proposal made in ch. 9. It is further explained by *ut . . . reverterentur*.

13. *hūc*: i.e., to the place where he should encamp for the night.

14. *quam frequentissimī*: this expression is thought by some to be an indication of Caesar's design to seize the envoys next day.

*convenirent*: for mood cf. *daret*, l. 10.

*ut cognōsceret*, in order that (after investigation) he might come to a decision.

16. *nūntiārent nē*, give orders not to.

*proeliō*: abl. of means.

17. *sustinērent*: i.e., they were merely to defend themselves.

10. *illō*, adv. [ille], thither, there.

13. *aquātiō*, -ōnis, f. [aquor, fetch water], getting water.

14. *postulātum*, -ī, n. [pf. part. of *postulō*], demand, request.

17. *quo-ad*, adv., as far as, till, until.

*A treacherous  
attack and a  
brave deed.*

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ii quī frūmentandī causā erant trāns Mosam profectī nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare 5 discesserant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rursus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, 10 quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquitānus amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, 15 illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est. 20

1. ubi primum, *as soon as.*

2. quōrum depends on *numerus*, to which also belongs the descriptive gen. *V milium*.

cum: adversative.

4. nihil . . . nostrīs, *while our men were not anticipating any danger.*

6. indūtiis: dat. of purpose.

8. subfossis, etc., *stabbing our horses underneath and (so) dismounting a number of our men.*

10. ita perterritōs ēgērunt, *drove them before them in such a panic.*

prius . . . quam: see on Bk. III, 26, 8.

12. in, *among.*

14. rēgnū: see on *rēgna*, Bk. II, 1, 14.

16. cum . . . ferret: translate by a main clause coördinate with *ēripuit*, supplying *and* to connect the two clauses.

19. incitātō equō, *at full speed.*

---

8. sub-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, stab or pierce underneath.

*Caesar arrests the ambassadors and determines to repay treachery with treachery.*

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrabātur ab iis, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; expectāre vērō, dum  
5 hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spātī dandum exīstimābat. His cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum  
10 lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēi māne eādem et simulatiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī

1. neque iam, *no longer*; repeat *iam* with the second *neque*.

4. ultrō here = *sine causā*.

expectāre: subject of *esse*, with *summae dēmentiae* (*the height of folly*) as the predicate genitive of description.

5. equitātusque reverterētur, *freely, by the return of the cavalry*, added to explain the preceding clause.

6. infirmitāte: see on *mōbīlēs*, 5, 3.

7. auctōritātis: genitive of the whole, modifying *quantum*, which is the object of *essent cōnsecūtī*.

8. quibus . . . exīstimābat gives the result of what precedes.

nihil spātī, *no time*.

9. cōsiliō . . . nē . . . praetermitteret, *his design not to*, etc.

10. quaestōre: the quaestor occasionally acted as a commanding officer of a legion; for his regular duties see Vocabulary.

pugnae: for the case see on *committendū proeli*, Bk. II, 19, 16.

11. quod, (*namely*) *that*.

13. omnibus . . . adhibitīs explains *frequentēs*.

14. simul . . . simul: omit the first of these correlatives and translate the second, *and at the same time*. pūrgandī suī: see on Bk. III, 4, 12.

6. dē-mentia, -ae, *f.* [dēmēns], madness, infatuation, folly.

10. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō], quaestor.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [commūnis], make common, communicate, share; add. connect.

11. praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send or let go by; let pass, overlook.

12. māne, *adv.*, early in the morning, in the morning, early.

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō], simulation, pretense, deceit.

causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium 15  
 prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiis  
 fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs  
 retinērī iussit; ipse om̄nēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,  
 quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen  
 subsequī iussit. 20

*The Germans  
 offer little  
 resistance.  
 Butchery of  
 the women and  
 children.*

14. Acīē triplici institūtā et celeriter viii milium  
 itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit  
 quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī  
 omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti et celeritāte adventūs  
 nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma 5  
 capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpiāsne adversus hostem

15. contrā atque, *contrary to what.*

16. ut . . . dē indūtiis fallendō impetrārent, *to gain their request in regard to a truce by (again) deceiving (him).*

sī quid possent, *if possible; how literally?*

17. quōs . . . oblātōs (esse): translate in the active,—*that they had fallen into his hands.* For the constr. compare *liberōs abstractōs* (esse), Bk. III, 2, 14.

illōs is not necessary after *quōs*, except as a contrast to *ipse*.

Cato bitterly attacked Caesar in the senate for violating the law of nations, and demanded that he should be handed over to the Germans as a reparation for the crime committed against them. Caesar had, however, reason to doubt the good faith of the Germans, and he was in no position to run any risks in dealing with an army of 100,000 men, when even a reverse might have aroused the Gauls to revolt.

3. quid agerētur, *what was going on.*

4. omnibus rēbus: explained by the two ablatives following.

5. suōrum: *i.e., principum et maiōrum nātū.*

cōsili habendī, *for taking counsel*; observe that with the singular noun *cōsili* the gerundive is used, while the plural *arma* is made the object of the gerund. This basis of choice between gerund and gerundive construction is frequently observed, especially in the genitive, but it is not an invariable rule.

6. perturbantur, etc., *did not know, in the confusion, whether it was better . . . or, . . . or, etc. (lit. are confused as to whether, etc.).* For the particles see App. 214; A. 335; B. 162, 4; H. 380; H.-B. 234.

17. gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *intr.*, rejoice, be delighted, be glad.

dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō  
 10 locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equi-  
 15 tātum misit.

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōn-  
 5. *"A man-hunt rather than a battle." Many are drowned. Only a few escape.* fluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpē-  
 10 runt. Caesar iis quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestā-

10. quī = *īi quī*.

1. Germānī: *i.e.*, those who were fighting in the camp.

clāmōre: of the women and children who were being killed by the pursuing cavalry.

3. sē ēiēcērunt, *rushed*.

4. Rhēnī: Caesar seems to mean the Waal (*Vacalus*); see on *Vacalus*, ch. 10, 3.

reliquā fugā, *further flight*.

7. oppressī, *overwhelmed*.

ad ūnum incolumēs, *without the loss of a single man*.

8. ex: (*immediately*) *after*, or more freely, *freed from*.

9. capitum depends on *mīlium*.

7. *an, conj.*, introducing the second part of a double question, or.

9. *in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr.*, break into, storm.

14. *passim, adv.* [*passus*], hither and thither, in every direction.

3. *cōfluēns, -entis, m.* [*pres. part. of cōfluō*], a flowing together, confluence.

6. *praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.* [*praeceps*], throw headlong, throw.

tem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatē concessit.

*Caesar's reasons for crossing the Rhine. The Sugambri are insolent, and the Ubii offer assistance.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegent et posse et audere populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum his coniūnixerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūtiōs mīsisset quī postulārent, eōs quī sibi Galliaequē bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns

11. *supplicia cruciātūsque*: the figure hendiadys, in which two words connected by a conjunction are used instead of a modified noun. Translate, *death by torture*. *Gallōrum*, at the hands of the Gauls.

3. *illa*, the following. *iūstissima*, most valid.

5. *suis . . . rēbus*, for their own security. Notice that *timeō* is here used with a dative of reference, and without a direct object. *cum intellegent*, when they should realize.

6. *trānsire*: complementary to *posse* and *audere*.

*accessit . . . quod*: see on *accēdēbat quod*, Bk. III, 2, 13.

9. *proeliō*: dative.

12. *eōs*: object of *dēderent*.

13. *dēderent*: occasionally, as here, Caesar uses the subjunctive without *ut* after *postulō*. Compare note on Bk. III, 11, 3.

14. *aequum*, fair; supply *esse*.

15. *suī . . . imperī aut potestātis*: pred. genitive of possession with *esse*,—should belong to his military or civil power.

*esse*: the subjunctive, either with or without *ut* (as in line 13), is the commoner construction after *postulō*.

1. *Germānicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*Germānus*], of or pertaining to the Germans, German.

10. *Sugambrī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, G, 1.

15. *cūr*, *adv.*, why? wherefore?

Rhēnum postulāret? Ubi autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei  
 20 pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad praesēns auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī  
 25 tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

*Description of  
the bridge  
across the  
Rhine.*

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibūs trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī

16. (cūr) postulāret, *why should he demand?*

Observe that *cūr . . . quicquam . . . postulāret* is in thought equivalent to *eum postulāre nōn dēbere*; hence *quicquam* is used instead of *aliquid*, *quisquam* being used in sentences which are negative in force.

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae, *affairs of state.*

20. trānsportāret: parallel in construction to *ferret*.

21. reliquī temporis, *for the future.*

22. opīniōnem, *reputation.*

eius exercitūs would be *tuī exercitūs* in the direct form.

23. Ariovistō pulsō, *as the result of Ariovistus's defeat, as told in Bk. I.* See page 189.

ad, *among.*

1. causīs: see ch. 16, 1-11. Caesar probably reckoned also on the effect that such an exploit would produce at Rome.

3. tūtum: because the enemy could easily have hindered his passage into Germany, and perhaps have cut off his retreat in case of defeat.

neque . . . dignitātis esse, *it was not consistent with his own dignity, etc., for case see on suī imperī, etc., ch. 16, 15.*

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns+Rhēnus], beyond or across the Rhine; *m. pl. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine.

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō], business, affair; occupation.

20. trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry across or over, transport, bring over.

23. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, a German king defeated in Gaul by Caesar in 58 B.C.



summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudi- 5  
nem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi  
contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existi-  
mābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipe-  
dālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis  
intervallō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi- 10  
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat festūcisque adēgerat,  
nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicularum, sed prōnē ac  
fastigātē ut secundum nātūrā flūminis prōcumberent, iis item

5. *summa*: pred. adj. with *prōpōnēbātur*, presented itself as very great.  
*lātitudinem . . . flūminis*: the bridge was built probably somewhere  
in the neighborhood of Bonn, where the width of the stream is about 1400  
feet, and the depth about 16 feet.

6. *id . . . contendendum (esse)*, that he ought to make the effort; how  
literally?

8. *ratiōnem*, plan.

*tigna bīna sēsquipedālia*, (unhewn) timbers, in pairs, a foot and a half  
thick. See Plan, aa.

9. *dīmēnsa ad*, measured according to, i.e., they were made shorter or  
longer as the varying depth of the stream demanded.

10. *intervallō . . . iungēbat*, he joined together (by wooden cross-pieces;  
see Plan gg) at a distance of two feet.

*māchinātiōnibus*: probably floats or boats joined together, by means of  
which the timbers were put in position, with the proper inclination, pre-  
paratory to being driven firmly in by pile drivers (*festūcīs . . . adēgerat*).

11. *dēfixerat . . . statuēbat*: for mood and tense see on *comprehēnsi*  
. . . *erant . . . praeurūpēbantur*, Bk. III, 14, 17.

12. *sublicae modō* (abl. of *modus*), like a pile.

*dērēctē ad perpendicularum*, vertically.

13. *ut . . . prōcumberent*, so as to slope in the direction of the current.

6. *rapiditās, -ātis, f.* [*rapidus*, swift],  
swiftness.

8. *tignum, -ī, n.*, log, beam, timber.  
*sēsqui-pedālis, -e, adj.* [*sēsqui*, (one  
and a) half+*pedālis*, of a foot],  
of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch.

11. *immittō, -ere, -misi, -missum*,  
*tr.* [*in+mittō*], send or let into,  
send in; let down.

*dē-fixō, -ere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.*, fix  
or fasten down, drive in.

*festūca, -ae, f.*, pile-driver.

12. *sublica, -ae, f.*, a pile, stake.  
*dērēctē, adv.* [*dērēctus*], straight,  
directly, exactly.

*perpendicularum, -ī, n.* [*perpendō*,  
weigh carefully], plummet, plumb  
line.

*prōnē, adv.* [*prōnus*], in an inclined  
position, sloping downward.

13. *fastigātē, adv.* [*fastigātus*], slop-  
ing, in a sloping direction.

- contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum  
 15 quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum  
 flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus  
 trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat,  
 binis utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus  
 disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis  
 20 firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē

14. *contrāria duo (tigna)*: a similar pair of timbers was driven into the river bed opposite to these (*vis . . . contrāria*), forty feet down stream (*ab inferiōre parte*), but sloping against the current (*contrā . . . conversa*).

*intervāllō . . . quadrāgēnum (= quadrāgēnōrum)*: probably measured along the river bed or at the surface of the water. The width of the roadway need not have been over 25 or 30 feet.

16. *haec utraque*: these two (opposite) pairs of piles were held apart by two-foot beams (see Plan, *bb*) let in from above (*insuper . . . immissis*), exactly fitting into the space (cf. l. 10) between the two piles that formed each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*).

17. *quantum, etc.*: refers to *bipedālibus*; cf. l. 10, *intervāllō pedum duōrum*.

18. *binis . . . parte*, by a pair of fastenings on each side of the *tigna*, at each end of the beams. Cross-pieces of wood or iron were driven through horizontally, two on each side of the *tigna* (see Plan, *cc*), making eight in all. The meaning is not quite clear. Another explanation is that cross-bars of wood (four in all) were placed in the upper and inner acute angles formed by the *tigna* and the *trabs*, and in the opposite outer and lower angles, the two lower bars serving as cross-pieces on which the *trabs* rested. The opposite *fibulae* at each end of the *trabs* were probably fastened together by bolts or ropes. *quibus* refers to *haec utraque (tigna)* of l. 16.

19. *disclūsīs, held apart* by the horizontal beam.

*in . . . revinctīs, braced in opposite directions* by the *fibulae*.

20. *ea = tālis*.

*rērum nātūra, arrangement of (the various parts of) the structure*.

*quō maior . . . incitāvisset = quō maior vīs aquae esset quae sē incitāvisset*.

15. *quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, distrib.*  
*num. adj.* [quadrāgintā], forty  
 each, forty.

16. *in-super, adv.*, above, on the  
 top, from above.

*bipedālis, -e, adj.* [bis+pedālis, of a  
 foot], of two feet, two feet in  
 thickness.

17. *iūnctūra, -ae, f.* [iungō], a join-

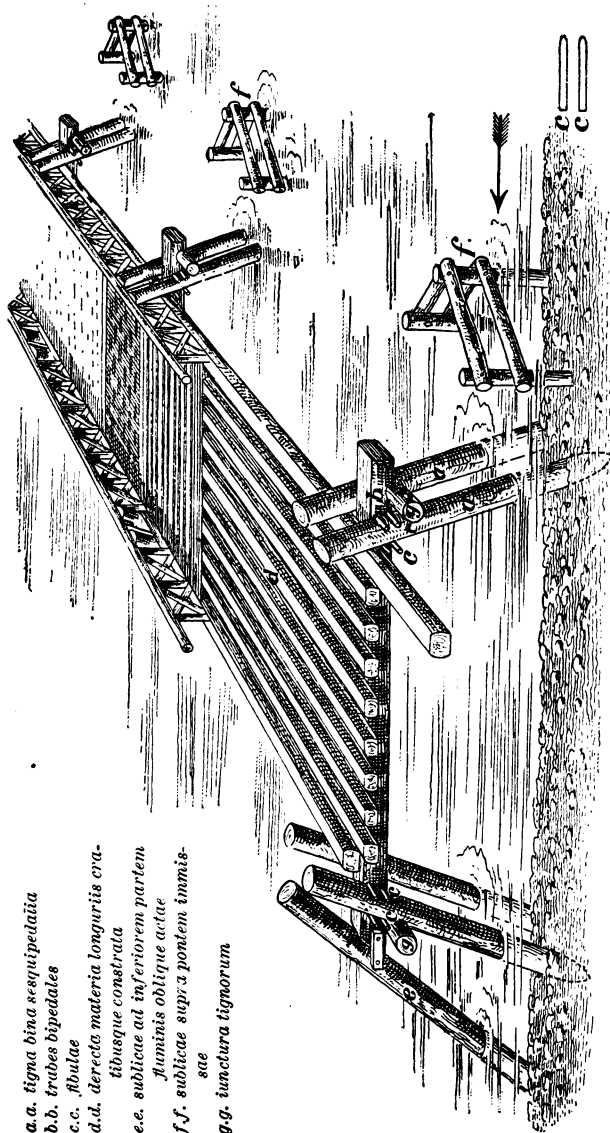
ing, joint, fastening.

*distō, -āre, —, —, intr.* [dis+stō],  
 stand apart, be apart, or sep-  
 arated, be distant.

18. *fibula, -ae, f.*, a fastening,  
 brace; pin.

19. *disclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr.*  
 [dis+claudō], hold or keep apart,  
 separate.





CAESAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

- a. a. tigna bina sesquipetalia
- b. b. trubes bipedales
- c. c. flutae
- d. d. derecta materia longioris cratibusque constrata
- e. e. sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae
- f. f. sublicae supra pontem immisae
- g. g. iunctura tignorum

incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item 25 suprà pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

*The Romans  
cross the Rhine.  
The Sugambri  
flee.*

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat compor-  
tārī omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar,  
ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō,

Caesar thus describes the construction of the wooden trestles, but does not state how many were required to complete the length of the bridge. Probably from fifty to sixty were necessary. These trestles (*haec*) were then joined together (*contexēbantur*) by timbers laid on the cross-beams, in the direction of the length of the bridge (*dērēctā māteriā*). See Plan, *dd*.

22. longuriis: these were laid at right angles with the *māteria*.

23. nihilō sētius: *i.e.*, although the structure seemed strong enough.

sublicae, etc.: on the lower side of the bridge piles were driven in, sloping up stream, and were joined one to each trestle to serve as a buttress (*prō ariete*). See Plan, *ee*. et: correlative with *et*, l. 25; omit in translating.

24. quae . . . exciperent, to resist.

25. et aliae (*sublicae*): supply *agēbantur*.

26. mediocrī spatiō, at (*lit. by*) a slight distance from the bridge, and probably not joined to it. See Plan, *ff*.

27. immissae: *i.e.*, against the bridge.

his dēfēnsōribus (= *dēfendentibus*): abl. abs., with these to defend it.

28. neu . . . nocērent, and that they might not, etc.

1. diēbus x quibus, within ten days after; cf. quibus . . . ventum erat, Bk. III, 23, 4.

coepta erat: why passive? Cf. *coepti sunt*, Bk. II, 6, 6.

3. ad . . . pontis: *i.e.*, on both banks.

21. artē, *adv.* [artus, shut up], closely, tightly.

in-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ligō, bind], tie or bind on, attach, fasten.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* dērigō, lay straight], direct, straight.

22. contexō, -ere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [com+texō, weave], bind

together, interweave, connect.

crātis, -is, *f.*, wicker-work.

cōsternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.* [com+sternō], strew over, cover, thatch.

23. sētius, *comp. adv.*, less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less.

24. obliquē, *adv.* [obliquus], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

26. truncus, -i, *m.*, trunk; body.

- in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus  
 5 cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīci-  
 tiam petentibus liberālīter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī  
 iubēt. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstitui coeptus  
 est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencteris atque  
 Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque  
 10 omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

*Caesar ravages  
 their territory  
 and, returning  
 to the Ubii,  
 learns that the  
 Suebi are plan-  
 ning resistance.  
 He returns  
 into Gaul.*

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus,  
 omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque  
 succīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxi-  
 lium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbis premerentur, haec  
 5 ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrā-  
 tōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō,  
 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,  
 liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs  
 quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc  
 10 esse dēlectum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obti-  
 nērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibidem

6. liberālīter, *with kindly words*; compare use of *liberālīter*, Bk. II, 5, 1.

7. ex . . . coeptus est: subordinate to *fugā comparātā*, which may be translated by a rel. cl., *who had prepared for flight*.

8. hortantibus iīs, *by the advice of those*; what construction?

quōs . . . habēbant: the cavalry mentioned in ch. 16, 7-11.

10. sōlitūdinem ac silvās = *sōlitūdinem silvārum*. Translate, *had fled into the solitude of the forests and hidden themselves*.

2. frūmentis: see on *frūmentō*, Bk. II, 3, 8.

4. premerentur: subj. in implied indirect discourse after *pollicitus*; it represents a future of the direct form.

6. fierī, *was being built*. They did not wait for its completion.

conciliō habitō: translate as a clause coördinate with *dīmīsisse*.

7. utī . . . convenīrent, *urging that*, etc.; the clause gives the content of the orders which the messengers brought.

9. hunc . . . ferē, *for this meeting-place a point about the middle of . . . had been chosen*.

10. ex-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,  
 carry out or away.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus], solitude;  
 wilderness.

3. succidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.*  
 [sub+caedō], cut down, fell.

11. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place, on  
 this occasion.

dēcertāre cōstituissē. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus cōfectis, quārum rērum causā exercitum trādūcere cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII 15 trāns Rhēnum cōsūptis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitatem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

*Caesar determines to visit Britain. He seeks information from traders, but learns little.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus 5 annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis

14. ut . . . ut . . . ut, namely that, etc. The *ut* clauses explain omnibus rēbus. iniceret, arouse, inspire; why is Germānis dative?

15. obsidiōne, from oppression.

16. satis: subject of prōfectum (esse).

17. prōfectum: not from proficiscor.

1. exiguā . . . reliquā: abl. abs., to be translated as an adversative clause cōordinate with etsi . . . sunt hiemēs.

4. omnibus . . . bellis: this reason seems scarcely sufficient. Such aid is mentioned but once (Bk. III, 9, 26, 27), though perhaps it is implied in Bk. II, 14, 7-9. A better reason is implied in perspexisset, etc., for this expedition was merely a reconnoissance. The expedition of the following year was part of a larger plan to extend the glory of Roman arms and to bring new regions under Roman sway.

hostibus: indirect object of subministrāta.

6. dēficeret = nōn satis esset.

magnō . . . fore, it would be of great advantage to him.

7. adisset: Caesar's thought was mihi ūsuī erit, si . . . adierō.

perspexisset, he should become thoroughly (per) acquainted with.

8. Gallis . . . incognita: this statement is not quite accurate. The coast tribes, at least, had some knowledge of Britain.

15. obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [obsideō], a siege; oppression.

16. ūtilitās, -ātis, f. [ūtilis], usefulness, advantage.

erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatōrēs illō  
 10 adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam  
 atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliam, nōtum est.  
 Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus, neque quanta esset  
 insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent,  
 neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur  
 15 neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī  
 portūs, reperīre poterat.

*He sends  
 Volusenus to  
 obtain information.  
 Negotiations with  
 the Britons.*

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum  
 faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum  
 nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis  
 omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur.  
 5 Ipse cum om̄nibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde  
 erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique  
 ex finitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum  
 bellum fēcerāt, classem iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō  
 eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complū-  
 10 ribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī pollice-

9. neque enim quisquam, *for no one.* illō: adverb.

10. hīs = *mercatoribus*.

12. vocātis . . . mercatōribus: *adversative.*

neque quanta, etc.: the indirect questions depend on *reperire*.

15. ad . . . multitudinem: see App. 122, a; A. 385, a; B. 192, note; H. 435, 1; H.-B. 364, 6. idōneī: not a predicate adjective.

1. ad . . . cognōscenda: construe with *praemittit*.

periculum faceret = *experiretur*, to which the word *periculum* is related in derivation. Compare *expertī*, ch. 3, 11.

2. idōneum . . . Volusēnum = C. *Volusēnum, quem idōneum (a suitable man) esse arbitrābatur*. See on *Volusēnus*, Bk. III, 5, 7.

4. omnibus rēbus: mentioned in ch. 20, 7, 8.

5. inde = *ex Morinīs, i.e., from the modern Boulogne*.

7. quam: the antecedent is *classem* in line 8.

ad Veneticum bellum: see Bk. III, 9.

9. temere, *adv.*, without reason, rashly.

11. nōtus, -a, -um, *adj. [pf. part. of nōscō]*, known, familiar, well-

known.

6. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāiciō], a crossing or passing over, crossing, passage.



antur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem 15 esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat civitatēs hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque ce-riter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris 20 committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

*The Morini submit. Preparations for crossing.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō

11. dare: instead of *sē datūrōs*, to emphasize the immediate and certain fulfillment of the promises.

12. liberāliter pollicitus, *making liberal promises.*

14. Atrebātibus superātis: in the battle at the Sambre, Bk. II, 23. ibi: *i.e.*, among the Atrebatēs.

15. cōsiliū, *discretion.*

quem . . . arbitrābātur: Commius disappointed this trust by heading a revolt against Caesar in 52 B.C.

16. in hīs regiōnibus: *i.e.*, in *Galliā*.

magnī habēbātur, *was highly regarded*; for the genitive see App. 105; A. 417; B. 203, 3; H. 448; H.-B. 356.

17. imperat: these orders are expressed in the subjunctives *adeat*, etc., as in ch. 16, 13, and Bk. III, 5, 11, 12.

18. fidem sequantur, *put themselves under the protection.*

sē: *i.e.*, Caesar.

20. quantum . . . potuit, *so far as opportunity could be given to one, or as far as was possible for one*, qualifying the preceding abl. abs.

quī . . . auderet: a relative clause of description.

3. dē superiōris, etc., *for their attitude in the past*, explained by *quod* . . . *fēcissent*; see Bk. III, 28.

11. ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [temperō, be moderate], comply with; obey.

13. Commius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the

*Atrebatēs.*

15. fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [fidēs], trustworthy, faithful, reliable, loyal, trusty.

- excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis  
 5 imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae impe-  
 rāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē  
 accidissee arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere  
 volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem  
 habēbat neque hās tantulārūm rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae  
 10 antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iis numerum obsidum  
 imperat. Quibus adductis, eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus  
 circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis, quot satis esse ad duās trāspor-  
 tandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārūm  
 habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc  
 15 accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus  
 passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum

4. *hominēs*: in apposition with the unexpressed subject of *fēcissent*. Translate, *being men*, etc.

*cōnsuētūdinis*: i.e., of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily surrendered to the Romans.

5. *ea quae imperāsset*, *his commands*; in direct discourse, *ea quae imperāveris*.

6. *satis*, *very*.

9. *hās . . . antepōnendās*, freely, *that these quite unimportant matters ought not to be given attention instead of the expedition to Britain*; for the case of *Britanniae*, see App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

12. *duās*: the VIIth and the Xth.

13. *quod . . . nāvium . . . habēbat*: object of *distribuit*; cf. *nāvium quod*, Bk. III, 16, 4.

14. *hūc accēdēbant*, *in addition to these there were*.

15. *ā milibus . . . VIII*, *at a distance of eight miles*; the abl. expresses measure of difference. The boats were at Ambleteuse, eight miles west of Boulogne.

16. *quōminus possent*, *so that they could not*; for the mood of *possent* see App. 228, c; A. 558, b; B. 295, 3; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

4. *excūsō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+causa], excuse, justify, apologize for.

5. *imperitus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+peritus], inexperienced, ignorant.

6. *opportūnē*, *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, at the right time.

10. *ante-pōnō*, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place before, regard of more importance, prefer.

12. *onerārius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], fitted for burdens, transport; (*sc. nāvis*) a transport-ship, freight-ship.

venire possent; hās equitibus tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Tituriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum 20 eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

*The passage.*

23. His cōstitutīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britan- 5 niam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, 10

1. his cōstitutīs rēbus, *after these arrangements.*

2. tertiā . . . vigiliā: about midnight of August 26. solvit, *set sail*, lit. *loosed* (the boats from their moorings).

3. ulteriōrem portum: see ch. 22, 15-17 and note.

4. cum . . . esset administrātum: perhaps best taken as an adversative clause loosely used; translate, *when they had proceeded to carry out these orders, though a little too slowly.*

tardius: *i.e.*, too slowly to take advantage of the favoring winds that carried Caesar to Britain. A change of wind kept them in port for three days.

5. hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M. This was off the coast of Kent near Dover, about 28 miles from Boulogne.

6. expositās: predicate to cōpiās armātās.

7. haec, *such*.

ita . . . continēbātur, *freely, so narrow was the seashore below the cliffs* (lit. *so closely was the sea bordered by the cliffs*).

9. ad ēgrediendum (*ex nāvibus*), *for disembarking*.

10. dum, *until*.

20. Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

1. nanciscor, -ī, nactus (nāctus), *tr.*, obtain; meet with, find.

3. cōnscendō, -ere, -endī, -ēsum, *tr.* [com-+scandō, climb], climb,

mount; go on board, embark on.

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus], slowly.

8. litus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.

9. nē-quāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means.

ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribū-  
nisque militū convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et  
quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō  
maximēque ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut cum celerem atque  
15 instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs  
ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum  
ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs,  
circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac  
plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

*The enemy  
attempts to  
prevent a  
landing.*

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō,  
praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque  
genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs  
subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās  
5 causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem  
nisi in altō cōstitui nō poterant, militibus autem ignōtīs locīs,

11. in ancorīs exspectāvit, *he lay waiting at anchor.*

13. ut rei, etc., *as the rules of war and especially as naval operations demand, inasmuch as they have (to do with) rapid and irregular movements.*

14. postulārent: subjunctive by attraction.

15. ad nūtum . . . administrārentur: translate immediately after *monuit*, on which it depends; *ut* is unexpressed.

ad tempus, *on the moment.*

16. ventum . . . secundum: which, with the tide, would carry them northeast.

18. apertō . . . litore: not far from Deal.

19. cōstituit, *anchored.*

2. praemissō: translate as a verb in the active voice, coördinate with *prohibēbant*.

quō . . . genere, *a kind of troops which.*

4. ēgredi: see on *ingredi prohibuerint*, Bk. II, 4, 7.

6. in altō, *in deep water.*

militibus . . . dēsiliendum, *the soldiers had to leap down*; *militibus* is dative of agent. locis . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, speedy, sudden.

15. in-stabilis, -e, *adj.* [stabilis, steady], unsteady.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement, motion; *political* movement, up-rising.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod, sign, command.

2. essedārius, -ī, *m.* [essedum], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, chariot-warrior.

6. ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+(g)-nōtus], unknown, unfamiliar.

impeditis manibus magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimīs locis 10 audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērāt ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerariis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac 5 submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit.

*While the Romans are hesitating a standard bearer brings matters to a crisis.*

7. pressis agrees with *militibus*;—burdened as they were.

8. cōsistendum, get a foothold.

9. cum illi, while the enemy. paulum, only a little.

11. insuēfactōs, trained, to this mode of attack.

12. generis: for case see App. 106, a; A. 349, a; B. 204, 1; H. 451, 1; H.-B. 354.

13. nōn . . . ūtēbantur, did not know.

quō refers both to *alacritāte* and *studiō*, but agrees with the nearer antecedent.

2. speciēs, appearance (cf. Eng. "looks").

inūsitiō, quite unfamiliar. The large trading vessels that visited Britain were different in shape from those of the Romans, and had no oars. The Britons themselves used small wicker boats covered with skins.

mōtus . . . expeditior, which were more easily managed (lit. whose motion was less encumbered for management).

3. rēmīs incitāri, to be rowed rapidly forward; how literally?

4. ad latus . . . cōstitui, should be stationed near the unprotected flank of the enemy, i.e., the right side.

5. fundis: for *illus*. see Vocabulary.

6. iussit, gave orders that. quae rēs, a measure which.

9. āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, dry up], dry; as *subst.*, *n.*, dry land.

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-

suēscō, grow accustomed+faciō], accustomed, well-trained.

5. funda, -ae, *f.*, a sling.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, an arrow.

Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūctantibus, 10 maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī 15 prōiēcīt atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūiversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexisissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

*The Britons  
are defeated.  
Caesar feels  
the absence of  
his cavalry.*

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācritur. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius

9. pedem rettulērunt: a standing expression for an orderly retreat.

10. quī, *the man who*. aquilam: for illud. see Vocabulary.

11. ea rēs, *this undertaking*.

13. certē, *at any rate*.

14. praestiterō: the future perfect shows that the act is to follow immediately and is therefore regarded as practically completed.

sē . . . prōiēcīt = *dēsiluīt*.

16. cohortātī inter sē, *encouraging one another*; see on *inter sē dare*, Bk. II, 1, 5.

17. ex proximīs, etc., *when the soldiers from the nearest ships, etc.*

2. ōrdinēs servāre, *to keep in line*.

3. signa subsequī: *i.e.*, to keep their places in their own maniples.

alius . . . nāvī, *men from different ships*; lit. *one from one ship, another from another*.

7. figurā, -ae, *f.* [fīgō], form, shape, figure.

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle; standard of the legion.

11. ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, call to witness, invoke, call upon.

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out, result, happen.

12. commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [com-+miles], fellow-soldier, comrade.

13. certē, *adv.* [certus], certainly, at least, at all events, assuredly.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [mē], my, mine, my own, of mine.

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus], steadily, firmly.

aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, 5 ubi ex litore aliquos singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucos circum-sistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversos tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit et, quos 10 labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam 15 Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons  
make excuses  
and offer to  
surrender.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs, quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātis Commius

4. quibuscumque, etc., gathered about whatever standards they happened upon; compare the similar situation in Bk. II, 21, 12-14.

5. nōtis . . . vadis: abl. abs. denoting cause.

6. singulārēs = *singulōs*.

7. plūrēs . . . circum-sistēbant, large bands surrounded small groups

8. alii, while others.

9. scaphās: small messenger boats belonging to the warships.

10. speculātōria nāvigia: light swift-sailing vessels used in reconnoitering. They were painted green to escape observation, and the sailors were clad in green for the same reason.

iussit, etc.: note change in tense. The perfect denotes a single act; the past perfect and imperfect are to be explained as in Bk. III, 14, 17.

quos: the antecedent is hīs.

12. simul = *simul atque*.

13. neque, but . . . not. longius, very far.

14. cursum . . . capere, to hold their course and reach the island.

15. hoc ūnum, etc., in this alone did Caesar's usual good fortune fail him.

1. sē . . . recēpērunt: meaning as in Bk. II, 12, 1, 2.

4. ad-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [gregō, collect in a flock], gather, assemble; join.

9. scapha, -ae, f., small boat, skiff.

10. speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [speculātor], scouting, spying.

- 5 Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et
- 10 propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis
- 15 diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā suōs in agrōs remigrāre iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*The ships carrying the cavalry are driven out of their course.*

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum

5. suprā: in ch. 21, 13.

7. modō, in the character (of).

10. imprudentiam, ignorance of the rights of envoys.

ut ignōscerētur (sc. sibi ā Caesare), that they might be pardonēd; see App. 115, d; A. 372; B. 187, II, b; H. 426, 3; H.-B. 364, 2.

11. questus: translate as a main verb, supplying *but* to connect with *dixit*. ultrō, of their own accord.

lēgātis missis: see ch. 21, 10.

12. ignōscere: supply *sē* as subject.

14. arcessitam, when they had, etc.

15. in agrōs, to their farms, to resume their usual occupations.

1. post diem quārtum, quam = quārtō diē postquam.

4. sustulerant, had taken on board.

superiōre portū: Ambletuse, called *ulterior portus*, ch. 23, 3.

solvērunt, sailed, with *nāvēs* as subject, used absolutely. Contrast *solvit* (sc. *nāvēs* as object, ch. 23, 2).

9. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt.

10. imprudentia, -ae, f. [imprūdēns], want of forethought, ignorance, indiscretion.

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, tr. and intr. [in-+(g)nōscō], overlook; pardon, forgive.

14. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus], far off, distant, remote.

17. commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+mandō], intrust, commend, surrender.

4. lēnis, -e, adj., smooth, gentle, mild.



adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta 5  
tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset,  
sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad  
inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum,  
magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis  
cum flūctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum 10  
prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*A storm  
shatters the  
Roman fleet.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī  
diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōn-  
suēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita unō tempore et  
longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in aridum subdūxerat, aestus com-  
plēbat, et onerariās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās 5  
adflictābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut

7. ad . . . insulae: i.e., to the southwest coast.

8. propius: with acc., as in ch. 9, 3.

9. dēicerentur, were driven; a stronger word than dēferrentur.

tamen belongs with ancoris iactis, which may be translated by a principal clause; nevertheless (in spite of the storm) they cast anchor, but since the boats (quae) began to fill, etc. Since the boats were fastened at anchor they could not rise with the waves, and the billows dashing over the sides began to fill them.

10. adversā nocte, in the face of the night, lit. with the night against them.

1. eādem nocte: according to astronomical calculation, the night of Aug. 30.

quī diēs efficere cōnsuēvit, a time which always causes; diēs is here the astronomical day, i.e., the period of 24 hours, within which full moon occurred.

2. maritimōs aestūs: the spring tides, which rise to the height of 19 feet at Dover, and 25 feet at Boulogne.

3. nostris . . . incognitum: because this phenomenon did not occur in the Mediterranean, though Caesar had had experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti; see Bk. III, 12, 3.

4. subdūxerat: the standing word for beaching ships, especially for the winter. This was done by means of rollers, pulleys, and ropes. The transports were not beached.

6. adflictābat: as in Bk. III, 12, 5.

administrandī: used absolutely, of managing the ships.

11. prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr., carry forward; usually pass., move forward, go forward, advance, proceed, sail.

1. lūna, -ae, f. [cf. lūceō, be light], the moon.

5. dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., bind, fasten, moor.

auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtīlēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, 10 tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

*The Britons  
"conspire" to  
renew hos-  
tilities.*

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem militum ex cas- 5 trōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustīōra, quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,

7. **complūribus . . . frāctīs** (*dashed to pieces*): translate as a causal cl. coördinate with *reliquae . . . inūtīlēs*.

8. **fūnibus . . . āmissīs**, *after the loss of*, etc.

9. **id quod**: when the antecedent of the rel. is a clause (here *magna . . . facta est*) *id quod* is commonly used, though *quod* alone is sometimes found (e.g. Bk. II, 35, 11; Bk. III, 12, 3).

10. **tōtīus exercitūs facta est**, *spread through the whole army*; *exercitūs* is an objective genitive.

**neque . . . et . . . et**, *on the one hand there were no other boats, etc. . . . on the other, etc. . . . then too, etc.*

11. **possent**: supply the subject from *exercitūs*.

12. **omnibus cōnstābat**: translate as in Bk. III, 14, 9, where the subject is an indirect question. What is the subject here?

13. **in hiemem**, *for the winter*.

2. **convēnerant**: see ch 27, 16.

3. **conlocūtī**: tr. as coördinate with the main verb *dūxērunt*, l. 7.

4. **Rōmānīs deesse**, *that the Romans lacked*.

5. **cognōscerent**: repeat the conjunction *cum* in translating.

**hōc**: see on *hōc . . . quod*, Bk. III, 9, 12.

**etiam** with the comparative has an intensive force, *still*.

7. **auxilior**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.* [auxilium], give aid, help, assist.

10. **perturbātō**, -ōnis, *f.* [perturbō],

disturbance, alarm, confusion.

11. **re-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* carry back, convey back.

optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō comme-  
ātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod, hīs  
superātis aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem postea belli inferendī  
causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque, rūsus 10  
coniūratiōne factā, paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex  
agris dēducere coepērunt.

*Caesar's fore-  
sight. The  
fleet is  
repaired.*

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognō-  
verat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex  
eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod  
accidit suspiciābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia com- 5  
parābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidiē in castra cōn-  
ferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā  
atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs  
erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum  
summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis,  
reliquis ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset, effēcit. 10

7. factū: see App. 296; A. 510; B. 340, 2; H. 635; H.-B. 619. It may be  
omitted in translation. dūxērunt = putāvērunt.

rebellione factā, to renew hostilities and.

8. rem, the campaign. hīs superātis, etc. = a conditional clause.

9. aut, or at least.

10. rūsus here does not mean "a second time," but denotes a return to  
their former hostile attitude.

2. ēventū has here the rarer meaning *accident, disaster*.

ex eō, quod, from the fact that.

3. fore . . . accidit, that events would turn out as they actually did.  
Literally? fore id = id futurum esse.

4. subsidia comparābat, was making provision.

6. quae . . . nāvēs, eārum = eārum nāvium quae.

7. aere: copper and bronze were used because they do not rust.

quae: the antecedent is an understood ea, the subject of comparārī.

9. studiō: ablative of manner, without a preposition.

XII . . . āmissis: translate by an adversative clause or a prepositional  
phrase,—with the loss of only, etc.

10. reliquis: put forward for emphasis.

ut . . . effēcit, made it possible that they could sail tolerably well.

9. reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō], a going  
back, returning, return.

6. ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *tr.*

[flīgō, dash], damage, injure.

7. aes, aeris, *n.*, copper; money; aes  
aliēnum, another's money, debt.

*The Britons  
ambush the  
Roman  
foragers.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine  
ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII,  
neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā,  
cum pars hominum in agrīs remaneret, pars etiam in castra  
5 ventitāret, ii quī prō portīs castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesarī  
nūntiāverunt pulverem maiōrem, quam cōsuētūdō ferret, in eā  
parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id  
quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsili,  
cohortēs quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem  
10 proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās  
armārī et cōnfestim sē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā  
castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre  
et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animad-  
vertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frumentō  
15 pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ven-

1. dum ea geruntur, *in the meanwhile.*

2. frumentātum: supine; see on rogātum, Bk. I, 11, 5.

3. neque ūllā . . . suspiciōne interpositā, *without any suspicion having arisen*; explained by the following cum clause.

5. quī . . . erant: before each of the four gates a cohort was regularly placed on guard (statīō).

6. pulverem, *cloud of dust.*

maiōrem . . . ferret, *unusually large* (lit. *larger than custom brings*).

7. parte, *direction.*

id quod erat, *as was (actually) the case*; compare quod accidit, ch. 31, 3. The expression is explained by aliquid . . . cōsili, *namely, that some new plot, etc.*

8. cōsili: genitive of the whole, with aliquid.

10. ex reliquīs duās: of the six remaining cohorts, four were to accompany him, leaving only two to guard the camp.

11. armārī: the passive form of a Latin verb is sometimes used as the equivalent of an active form with a reflexive pronoun as its object; armārī here = sē armāre.

12. sustinēre: used absolutely, *stood their ground.*

13. cōnfertā legiōne, abl. abs. denoting cause.

conici: sc. in eam.

15. pars ūna, *only one place*, from which grain could be obtained.

suspiciātī: translate by a verb coördinate with dēlituerant.

11. cōnfestim, *adv.*, immediately, at once.

14. dē-metō, -ere, -messui, -mes-sum, *tr.*, cut down, reap, harvest.

tūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

*Description of chariot-fighting.*

**33.** Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulum ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant, ut, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū et cotidiānā exercitātiōne

**16.** dispersōs . . . occupātōs, *while they were, etc.*

**17.** paucīs interfectīs: translate as cōordinate with *perturbāverant*.

**18.** incertīs ordinibus: abl. abs. denoting cause. The sudden attack of the enemy made the usual formation impossible.

**19.** circumdederant: this verb takes either the acc. of the person (here *reliquōs*) and the abl. of the thing, or the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing.

**1.** ex essedīs pugnae, *of chariot-fighting*.

**2.** perequitant: supply the subject from the context.

**3.** ipsō terrōre equōrum, *by the mere terror which the horses inspire*.

**4.** cum: the clause is of the same nature as that in Bk. III, 14, 17.

sē . . . insinuāvērunt: the charioteers drove into the intervals between their own troops of horse, where the men dismounted. The chariots then withdrew a short distance until they were needed.

**7.** illi: *i.e.*, the dismounted *essedārī*.

multitudīne, *by superior numbers*.

**9.** praestant, *display*.

**17.** metō, -ere, messui, messum, *tr.*, cut, reap.

**18.** essedum, -ī, *n.*, chariot, the two-wheeled war chariot used by the Britons.

**19.** circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.*, put around, surround, encircle.

**2.** per-equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, ride through, ride about or around.

**3.** rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

**4.** turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of cavalry, the tenth part of an āla.

in-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, wind or work into, introduce.

**5.** auriga, -ae, *m. and f.*, charioteer.

**7.** receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō], way of retreat, refuge; retreat.

**8.** stabilitās, -ātis, *f.* [stabilis, steady], steadiness.

- 10 efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

*Caesar brings help. The Britons decide to attack Caesar's camp.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et  
5 committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

10. ac praecipitī locō, *and even precipitous ground*; ac as often adds a stronger expression. incitātōs, *when at full speed*.

sustinēre, *to check*, a complementary inf. after cōnsuērint.

11. brevī = *celeriter*.

per, *along*. The chariot was open in front; for illius. see Vocab., *essedum*.

1. quibus rēbus, *by these tactics*; abl. of means.

perturbātis nostrīs: dative with *auxilium tulit*.

3. adventū: see on *quōrum adventū*, Bk. II, 7, 4.

sē recēpērunt: used as in ch. 27, 1.

5. aliēnum . . . suō: *aliēnus* is another's, *unfavorable*, as opposed to *suus*, *one's own*, *favorable*.

6. brevī tempore intermissō, *after waiting a short time*.

7. (iī) quī . . . reliquī: the Britons mentioned in ch. 32, 4, 5.

8. continuōs, *successive*.

9. quae, *of a sort that*, hence the subjunctive.

11. moderor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [modus], control, guide; manage, govern.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, *tr. and intr.*, turn, turn around, guide.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, beam, pole, *especially of a chariot*.

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī),

-cursum, *tr. and intr.*, run through or over, pass over or along.

12. citō, *adv.* [citus], quickly, speedily, soon; *comp.*, citius, *sup.*, citissimē.

8. continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [continueō], uninterrupted, continuous, successive, one after another.

suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt. 15

*The Britons are defeated. Caesar ravages their territory.*

35. Caesar. etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. 5 Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs nostrī tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt. 10

*The return into Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in conti-

12. praedicāvērunt, caused . . . to become known.  
in perpetuum, for all time to come.

13. -liberandī: for the number and gender of this form see App. 291, a; A. 504, c; B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; H.-B. 614.

14. hīs rēbus, by such measures as those mentioned in the preceding sentence.

2. ut (namely that) . . . effugerent: a substantive clause in apposition with idem.

essent pulsī: in the direct discourse the tense would be future perfect.

6. diūtius . . . nōn, not very long.

7. tantō . . . quantum, as far as; the abl. has here almost the same meaning as the acc. of extent.

8. cursū . . . potuērunt, freely, as it was possible to continue the pursuit on foot (lit. as they could by running and by [their own] strength). The cavalry were usually employed to pursue a retreating enemy.

2. hīs . . . numerum . . . duplicāvit, demanded of them twice the number; hīs may be taken as dative of reference.

3. ante: see ch. 27, 13.

12. prae-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., proclaim, declare, state, assert.

15. peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], foot-

soldiers, infantry.

3. effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, tr. and intr. [ex+fugiō], flee from, avoid, escape.

nentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmis  
 5 nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat.  
 Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem  
 nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem per-  
 vērunt; sed ex iis onerāriae duae eōdem portūs, quōs  
 reliquae, capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infā delātae sunt.

*The treachery  
 of the Morini.  
 The "hollow  
 circle" and a  
 rescue.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs  
 circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini,  
 quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs  
 reliquerat, spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum  
 5 numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere  
 iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad  
 clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convērunt. Quā rē  
 nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit.

4. propinquā diē aequinoctī, as the time of the equinox (here Sept. 24)  
 was drawing near. This is a period of severe storms.

infirmis nāvibus, abl. abs., with shattered ships.

5. hiemī . . . subiciendam, should be exposed to stormy weather.

6. idōneam . . . solvit: compare ch. 23, 1, 2.

7. quae omnēs, all the ships.

8. quōs reliquae: supply cēpērunt.

9. capere: as in ch. 26, 14.

paulō infā: south of Boulogne; cf. a similar use of the adjective  
*inferiōrem*, ch. 28, 8.

On the English side the current sets toward the east, but on the Boulogne  
 side it flows southward.

2. castra: made by Sulpicius Rufus at Boulogne; see ch. 22, 20-21.  
 Caesar had already reached his camp.

3. proficiscēns, on his departure.

4. primō: an adverb. nōn ita, not very.

5. circumsteterunt: the object of this verb and the subject of pōnere are  
 easily supplied. pōnere, to lay down.

6. orbe factō: this formation was used in order to present a protected  
 front against an enemy attacking in superior numbers on every side.  
 ad, in answer to.

7. hominum: construe with milia.

8. omnem . . . equitātum: i.e., those in the camp of Sulpicius.

4. aequinoctium, -ī, n. [aequus+  
 nox], the equinox.

9. infā, adv. and prep. [=inferā, sc.  
 parte], below, farther down.



Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus 10 acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

*The Romans  
ravage the ter-  
ritory of the  
Menapii. Win-  
ter quarters. A  
second thank-  
sgiving.*

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs 5 ferē in potestātem Labiēni. vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdi- derant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium 10 legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litteris Caesaris diērum xx supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

10. hōris: abl. after *amplius*.

paucīs . . . acceptīs: adversative,—*while they themselves received only a few wounds*.

4. siccitatēs: plural because the quality belongs to several places.

quō . . . habērent, *had no place to which they could withdraw*.

5. quō perfugiō . . . erant ūsī, *which they had used as a place of refuge*; quō refers to *palūdum*, but is attracted into agreement with the predicate object *perfugiō*.

7. dūxerant: see ch. 22, 18-20.

12. neglēxērunt: supply *hoc facere*.

13. ex litteris . . . dēcrēta est: see Bk. II, 35, 10-11 and notes. The length of this thanksgiving, in spite of the opposition of Caesar's enemies at Rome (see note at the close of ch. 13), was made even greater than that of the previous one, showing the importance which the Romans attached to these campaigns. Though the expeditions into Germany and Britain had been fruitless, unknown lands had been opened up for future conquest, and the very daring of the enterprise flattered the national pride of the Romans.

4. siccitās, -ātis, *f.* [siccus], dry-  
ness.

5. perfugiūn, -ī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee],  
place of refuge, refuge.

## BOOK V

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis

*The building  
of a fleet.  
Caesar goes  
to Illyricum.  
The Pirustae  
are "pacified."*

5 imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam  
plūrimās possint hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēs-  
que reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmaque  
dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiō-  
nisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī  
ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās  
commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cognō-  
10 verat, ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam  
paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās  
omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās

1. L. Domitiō . . . cōsulibus: the year was 54 B.C.

2. in Italiam = *in citeriorem Galliam*.

3. quam plūrimās (sc. aedificāre) possint, as many as possible.

4. aedificandās . . . cūrent, they should have built.

5. modum, size, proportions.

6. ad . . . subductiōnis = *ut celeriter onerārī subducīque possent*. For the meaning of subductiōnis see on subdūxerat, Bk. IV, 29, 4.

7. quam quibus = *quam eae sunt quibus*.

nostrō marī: of course the Mediterranean is meant.

8. atque id, and that (too).

quod . . . fierī: it is a fact that the current frequently changes. This, however, would not account for the size of the waves.

9. cognōverat: with the force of an impf.; cf. cōsuēvimus, l. 8.

11. reliquīs . . . maribus: the different arms of the Mediterranean.

12. āctuāriās: pred. adjective.

imperat is regularly used with the accusative and infinitive only when the infinitive has the passive form. For a different construction cf. utī . . . cūrent, ll. 3-5.

1. Domitius, -ī, m., a Roman name;  
esp. Lucius Domitius Ahenobar-  
bus, consul in 54 B.C.

6. onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.  
[onus], load.

subductiō, -ōnis, f. [subducō], draw-  
ing ashore, beaching.

12. āctuārius, -a, -um, adj. [agō],  
swift, swift-sailing.

humilitās, -ātis, f. [humilis], lowness.

adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem 15 prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitatibus milītēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satis- 20 facere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum, Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitatē persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iis ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitatēs dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant. 25

*Caesar arrives in Gaul and proceeds against the Treveri.*

2. His cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hibernīs, singulārī milītum studiō in summā omnium

13. ea quae . . . nāvēs: of what the equipment consisted is stated in Bk. IV, 29, 8. Spain furnished metal for the anchors, etc., and grass for the ropes. sunt ūsuī takes the place of a passive of ūtor.

19. pūblicō = rēi pūblicae; cf. the similar use of pūblicē.

22. nisi . . . fēcerint: the conclusion is persecūtūrum (esse).

23. ad diem: i.e., ad cōstitutam diem.

24. dat, appoints.

25. poenam, compensation, indemnity.

1. rēbus: rēs, modified by a pronoun or adjective, is often used in place of a neuter pronoun or adjective alone, especially in the gen., dat., or abl. plural, to avoid ambiguity; hīs alone would naturally refer to arbitrōs in the preceding chapter.

3. circumitīs, after making the rounds of, etc., on a tour of inspection.

4. in summā . . . inopiā, in spite of the greatest scarcity.

14. ad-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. carry, bring.

per-agō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr., accomplish, complete.

15. Pīrūstae, -ārum, m., an Illyrian people.

16. incursiō, -ōnis, f. [incurrō, run into], invasion, attack.

21. percipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [per+capiō], perceive, hear, learn.

24. arbiter, -trī, m., judge, arbitrator.

lis, litis, f., strife, lawsuit, damages.

25. aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., reckon, estimate, consider.

- 5 rērum inopiā circiter dc eius generis, cuius suprà dēmōnstrā-  
vimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instrūctās neque multum  
abesse ab eō quā paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātis  
militibus atque iis quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fieri velit  
ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō  
10 ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognō-  
verat, circiter mīlium passuum xxx ā continentī; huic rei  
quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relinquit. Ipse cum legiō-  
nibus expeditis iiii et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum pro-  
ficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō  
15 pārēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

*Factions  
among the  
Treveri. Caesar,  
in a favorite  
role.*

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae  
equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum,  
Rhēnumque, ut suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit.  
In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, In-  
5 dūtiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē

5. cuius: for *quod*, an unusual attraction of the relative.

6. instrūctās: sc. *armamentis*.

neque multum, etc., and there was little to hinder launching them in a few days (lit. there was not much lacking from this but that, etc.); see on neque longius, etc., Bk. III, 18, 7.

7. dēdūcī: the opposite of *subdūcī*.

8. atque, and especially.

11. mīlium passuum: gen. of measure with *trāiectum*.

huic rei, for this purpose, i.e., to protect the fleet as it assembled.

12. quod . . . mīlitum, what seemed a sufficient number of soldiers.

14. concilia (*Gallōrum*): which Caesar had summoned.

2. equitātū: on the cavalry of the Treveri see Bk. II, 24, 12.

3. suprà: in Bk. III, 11, 1, 2. tangit here = *attingit*.

4. principātū, leadership; not an office, magistrātus, but a prominent position gained by personal influence.

5. alter, the latter.

7. conlaudō, -āre, -āvi, -atum, tr. [com-+laudō], praise highly, eulogize.

9. Itius, -a, -um, adj. (sc. portus), a port of the Morini, probably Boulogne. Map IV, D, 1.

10. com-modus, -a, -um, adj., suitable; advantageous.

3. tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., touch; reach, come to, border on.

4. Indūtiomārus, -i, m., a chief of the Treveri.

5. Cingetorix, -igis, m., (1) a chief of the Treveri, and a rival of his father-in-law Indutiomarus; (2) a British chief in Kent.

Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populi Rōmānī defectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iisque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingentī magnitudīne per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūllī principēs ex eā civitāte et auctoritāte Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberētur; itaque civitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātisque fortūnās eius fidei permissūrum.

Caesar demands hostages and offers consolation.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterreret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōnsumere

7. in officiō futūrōs, *would remain true.*

11. ingentī magnitudīne: abl. of description with *quae*.

13. instituit: see on *instituiunt*, Bk. III, 9, 12.

16. cōnsulere: note different meanings when followed by the accusative and the dative.

17. possent: subjunctive in a quoted reason.

19. in officiō continēret: for translation cf. Bk. III, 11, 4.

20. discessū: what double meaning is in this abl.? Cf. *adventū*, Bk. II, 7, 4. *lāberētur*: i.e., *ab amicitia populi Rōmānī dēficeret*.

23. fidei permissūrum, *put under his protection*; cf. *in fidem* . . . *permittere*, Bk. II, 3, 4, and note the difference in case construction.

2. institūtō cōnsiliō, *the plan he had formed*, told in ch. 3, 9-13.

11. Arduenna, -ae, f., *a forest of northeastern Gaul, the Ardennes.* Map IV, F-G, 1-2.

16. cōsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, *tr. and intr.*, take counsel for, con-

sult for; take measures; consult.

18. idcirco, *adv.*, on that or this account, therefore.

20. lābor, -i, lāpsus, *intr.*, slip; fall, fall away, commit a fault.

- cōgerētur, omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis,  
 5 Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. His  
 adductis, in iīs filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōmi-  
 nātīm ēvocāverat, cōsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est,  
 utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, principibus Trē-  
 verōrum ad sē convocātis, hōs singillātīm Cingetorigī concili-  
 10 āvit, quod cum meritō eius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum magnī  
 interesse arbitrābātur eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam  
 plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem per-  
 spexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus, et quī  
 iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc  
 15 dolōre exārsit.

*Everything  
 is ready for  
 the departure.*

5. His rēbus cōstitūtis, Caesar ad portum Itium  
 cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs,  
 quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte reiectās cursum tenēre  
 nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse;  
 5 reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās  
 invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō  
 milia III principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus per-  
 paucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā,  
 reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse  
 10 abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

8. principibus: the leaders of the party of Indutiomarus.

10. quod (acc.) cum, etc., and he not only knew that he (Cingetorix) had  
 deserved this of him, lit. that this was being done by him (Caesar) in accordance  
 with his (Cingetorix's) deserts. cum . . . tum: correlative.

magnī interesse, that it was of great importance; magnī is genitive of  
 indefinite value.

12. cuius . . . perspexisset, since he had, etc.; subjunctive in a causal  
 clause. voluntātem, attachment.

14. fuisset: causal, like *perspexisset* above, or it may be explained as  
 adversative. hōc dolōre = *huius rei dolōre*.

6. numerō: abl. of specification.

9. locō, as. cum . . . abesset, during his absence.

10. mōtum = *rebelliōnem*.

15. ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsi, -ārsū-  
 rus, *intr.* [ārdēscō, take fire], be  
 kindled, be inflamed or excited.

3. Meldi, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people  
 on the Marne, about modern Meaux.  
 Map IV, E, 2.

*Dumnorix  
causes trouble.  
He wishes to  
remain in  
Gaul.*

6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō 5 Haeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferri; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus 10 primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Postēāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandī adēptā, principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, ut in continentī remanērent: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī 15

1. cum cēteris: sc. *principibus*.

2. ante: in Book I, ch. 9, where Dumnorix's character and schemes are described at length.

4. animī: descriptive genitive.

5. accēdēbat, etc.: see on *accēdēbat quod*, Bk. III, 2, 13.

6. sibi . . . dēferri: just as Caesar had made Commius king of the Atrebatēs. The Haeduī had no king.

7. neque, *but not*; cf. *neque*, Bk. IV, 26, 13.

recūsandī, *of protesting*, is used absolutely.

9. omnibus, *all possible*.

10. petere contendit, *earnestly begged*.

11. nāvigandī: for case see App. 106, a; A. 349, a; B. 204; H. 450; H.-B. 354.

12. religiōnibus, *religious scruples*, perhaps on the ground that he was bound to the performance of certain religious duties which made it impossible for him to leave Gaul.

diceret: see on Bk. I, 23, 9.

15. nōn . . . necāret: indirect discourse.

7. dictum, -ī, *n.* [dicō], assertion; word.

9. hospes, -itis, *m. and f.*, host, guest; hereditary or family friend.

11. in-suētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, un-

used.

12. obstinātē, *adv.* [obstinātus, resolved], firmly, resolutely.

13. adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [ad+emō], take away, remove; destroy.

nōbilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrāndum poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

*Caesar is watchful. The wind causes delay. The flight and death of Dumnorix.*

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercēdum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; et, quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac rei pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs, Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere

18. fidem . . . interpōnere, *he gave his pledge.*

19. ut . . . administrārent gives the content of the oath.  
esse ex ūsū = *usuū esse.*

21. dēferēbantur: note the force of the imperfect.

1. tantum . . . dignitātis: Caesar felt that the revolt of this powerful tribe from its long established allegiance must be prevented at all hazards.

3. quibuscumque . . . posset, *by every possible means.*

4. longius, *still further.*

5. prōspiciendum (esse), *that he must take precautions.*  
sibi does not refer to the subject of *posset*.

6. commorātus, *since he had to wait.*

8. omnis temporis = *tōtius annī.*

11. militēs = *peditēs.*

12. omnium impeditis animīs = *nostrīs omnibus occupātis* of Bk. IV, 34, 7; for the circumlocution cf. *eōrum . . . animīs*, Bk. IV, 6, 10.

16. spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [spolium], strip, despoil, plunder, rob.

4. āmentia, -ae, *f.* [āmēns], madness, folly.

6. com-moror, -āri, -ātus, *intr.*, wait, stop.

7. Cōrus, -i, *m.*, the northwest wind.

8. flō, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *tr. and intr.*, blow.



coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum 15 insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse 20 cīvitatīs. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

*Labienuſ  
guards Caesar's  
communications. The  
voyage. A long  
pull and a  
hard pull.*

8. Hīs rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsili- 5 umque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā

15. omnibus rēbus, *everything else.*

16. retrahī . . . imperat: see on *imperat*, ch. 1, 12.

17. prō sānō (masculine), *like a sane man.*

18. quī: causal.

19. manū: *i.e.*, with the weapons in his hands. *fidem*, *protection.*

20. clāmitāns: intensive verb, *crying loudly.*

21. hominem: this noun is occasionally used instead of the demonstrative pronoun.

1. Labiēnō . . . relictō: the fact that Caesar left his best lieutenant and so strong a force shows that he realized the dangerous condition of affairs in Gaul.

5. prō . . . rē, *according to the occasion and the circumstances.*

6. parī (=eodem) . . . quem: the usual construction would be *parī atque.*

7. nāvēs solvit: probably on July 21.

15. post-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, neglect, disregard.

16. re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, bring back.

17. sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

20. implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [in+plōrō, cry out], entreat, implore.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

7. Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, African; *sc. ventus* the southwest wind, which blows from Africa to Italy.

circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius  
 delātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōn-  
 10 spexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs  
 contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse  
 ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum  
 fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs  
 nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum  
 15 adaequāvērunt.. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus  
 merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed,  
 ut postea Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō  
 convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae cum annō-  
 tinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat,

8. nōn tenuit = *tenēre nōn potuit. et: but.*

longius . . . aestū, *being carried too far by the tide*, which was running northeast, so that they were leaving Britain behind them on the left.

9. sub sinistrā (*manū*): construe with *relictam*.

10. rūsus . . . commūtatiōnem: the tide now turned in the opposite direction.

11. caperet: meaning as in Bk. IV, 26, 15.

optimum . . . ēgressum: the landing was probably made north of Deal; see on *apertō* . . . *litore*, Bk. IV, 23, 18. Caesar apparently does not mean that the landing was made at exactly the same point as in the previous year, but that it was on the same side of the island. Apparently he thought the shore here safer than where he had beached his ships on the first voyage.

13. virtūs, *perseverance, endurance. laudanda, praiseworthy.*

vectōriūs . . . nāvigiūs: abl. of means.

gravibusque, *and that too (-que) though heavily laden.*

14. nōn . . . labōre, *by unremitting labor at the oar.*

15. accessum . . . nāvibus, *the whole fleet reached, etc.*

16. neque, *but not.*

19. privātis (*nāvibus*): perhaps some of these belonged to traders, others to wealthy officers.

12. ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior],  
 landing, landing-place.

13. laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
 [laus], praise, commend.

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō], for  
 carrying; vectōria nāvigia, trans-  
 port-ships.

14. rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*  
 [rēmex], row.

16. merīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [meri-  
 diēs], of midday; merīdiānum  
 tempus, noon.

18. annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus],  
 of last year, a year old.

amplius dccc ūnō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac 20  
sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

*Caesar, leaving  
Atrius to guard  
the ships, ad-  
vances against  
the enemy.*

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō  
captō, ubi ex captivīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium  
cōpia cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis  
et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā  
ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore 5  
molli atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī  
praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō-  
gressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspiciātus  
est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō  
superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. 10  
Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum nacti ēgregiē  
et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur,  
causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisīs  
omnēs introitus erant praelūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpugnā-  
bant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At 15  
milites legiōnis vii testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs

20. **amplius DCCC** stands in a predicate relation with *quae*,—which to the number of more than, etc.; *amplius* does not affect the construction.

1. **expositō . . . captō**: tr. by clauses coördinate with *ubi . . . cognōvit*.

3. **cohortibus . . . equitibus**: tr. by a clause coördinate with *contendit*.

4. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: see on *secundā vigiliā*, Bk. II, 11, 1.

5. **veritus**, with the dat., means *fearing for, anxious about*.

**litore . . . apertō**, a low and open shore, i.e., free from reefs and offering an easy landing. In Bk. IV, 23, 18, 19 the shore is described as *apertō ac plānō*.

9. **flūmen**: the Stour, a small stream which flows through Canterbury.

11. **locum nacti**, where they had a place.

12. **opere** (art) = *manū* of Bk. III, 23, 4.

13. **rārī**, here and there, the opposite of *frequentēs*.

**prōpugnābant**, hurled missiles.

16. **testūdine factā**: protected by the *testūdō*, they threw up an embankment against the works of the enemy, in order to climb the wall and take the place.

7. **Ātrius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Atrius, one of Caesar's officers.

14. **introitus, -ūs, m.** [introeō, go

in], entrance, place of entrance, access.

**praelūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr.** [prae+ claudō], shut or cut off.

adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*Atrius sends  
bad news.*

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vērunt quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

*Caesar ar-  
ranges to repair  
the fleet. A  
stronger camp.  
Cassivellaunus  
heads a league  
of the Britons.*

11. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis cognōverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae reficī posse, magnō tamen negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet;

18. eōs: the soldiers of the VIIth legion; subject of *prōsequi*.

3. aliquantum itineris, *some distance*.

cum . . . in prōspectū: *i.e.*, the three columns had gone so far that only the rear was visible to the soldiers left in camp.

7. neque . . . sustinērent, *would not hold out, hold firm*.

neque . . . possent: the ships, breaking from their moorings, had become unmanageable, and as a result (*ita*) collided (*concursum*) with one another.

2. revocārī: *i.e.*, from the pursuit.

3. cōram: *i.e.*, with his own eyes.

4. sic (*namely that, etc.*) . . . vidērentur gives the result of his own personal observation.

5. negōtiō: meaning as in Bk. II, 17, 8.

6. fabrōs: the force of artisans under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum* (= *fabrōrum*) was not sufficient to meet this emergency, so Caesar made use of the skilled workmen from the ranks of the legions.

1. tripertitō, *adv.* [tripertitus, in three parts], in or into three parts.

3. cōram, *adv.* [com-+ōs], in person, face to face, in one's presence.

6. faber, -bri, *m.* (*gen. pl.*, *fabrum*), a workman, carpenter, mechanic. In the Roman army the fabri or engineers constituted a separate corps.

Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās possit, iis legiōnibus quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūci et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eādem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant summā imperi bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis cīvitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

*Britain. Its inhabitants and products.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur quos nātōs in insulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dicunt,

7. scribit: the letter contains a command, hence *ut* and the subjunctive follow.

8. instituat = *instruat*.

erat . . . labōris, *involved much toil and trouble*.

9. commodissimum, *best*.

11. nē . . . intermissis, *not interrupting the labor of the soldiers even at night*; how literally?

14. eōdem: to the camp made at the close of the first day's fighting.

16. summā imperi, etc., *the supreme command and the general direction of the war*; administrandī belongs only with bellī.

18. ā mari . . . LXXX: following the route from his landing place.

19. huic . . . intercesserant, *in the past he had been constantly waging war with the other states*; how literally?

1. quos nātōs (*esse*) in insulā is the subject of prōditum (*esse*). Translate, *who, according to their tradition (ipsī memoriā prōditum dicunt), originated in the island*. This theory of the origin of peoples was common among the ancients.

7. scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, *tr.* and *intr.*, write.

17. Cassivellaunus, -i, *m.*, the British commander-in-chief who fought against Caesar.

18. Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames. Map IV, C-D, 1.

1. interior, -ius, *comp. adj.* [inter], inner, interior; *superl.*, intimus, innermost.

maritima pars ab iis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex  
 Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus cīvitatū  
 5 appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitatibus eō pervēnērunt) et  
 bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.  
 Hominum est infīnīta multītūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē  
 Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut  
 nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātis  
 10 prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs  
 regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere  
 ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā,  
 est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et  
 ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī

3. *maritima pars*: the southeast coast is meant.

4. *isdem nōminibus cīvitatū* = *nōminibus eārundem cīvitatū*. There were in Britain tribes called Atrebates and Belgae.

5. *ortī ex cīvitatibus* need not be translated.

6. *bellō inlātō*, *after*, etc., referring to *bellī* . . . *causā*, l. 3.

7. *crēberrima*: pred. adj.; sc. *sunt*.

9. *ad certum pondus exāminātis* = *certī ponderis*.

10. *prō nummō*, *as money*, with *ūtuntur*.

*plumbum album*, *tin*. In early times the Phoenicians obtained tin from Cornwall. The mines were on the coast, not inland, as here stated.

11. *ferrum* . . . *aere*: both iron and copper are found in England.

13. *praeter* . . . *abietem*: this is an error. Both trees are native to Britain.

14. *animī* . . . *causā*, *for amusement* (lit. *for the sake of the feelings*).

4. *Belgium*, -ī, *n.*, Belgium, *the country of the Belgae*. Map IV, D-G, 1-2.

9. *nummus*, -ī, *m.*, a piece of money, coin.

*tālea*, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar.

*exāminō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*exāmen*, the tongue of a balance], weigh, balance.

10. *plumbum*, -ī, *n.*, lead; *plumbum album*, tin.

*albus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

*mediterrāneus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*me-*

*dius+terra*], inland, interior.

13. *fāgus*, -ī, *f.*, beech-tree, beech.

*abiēs*, -etis, *f.*, the silver fir, fir-tree.

*lepus*, -oris, *m.*, a hare.

*gallīna*, -ae, *f.* [*gallus*, cock], a hen.

14. *ānser*, -eris, *m.*, goose.

*gustō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, taste, eat.

*fās*, *n.*, *indecl.* [*for*, speak], divine sanction or law, *as opposed to iūs*, human law or right; right, in the sight of the gods.

voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, 15  
remissiōribus frigoribus.

*The form and  
situation of  
the island.*

**13.** *Insula nātūrā triquetra*, cuius ūnum latus est  
*contrā* Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī  
est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad  
orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet  
circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque 5  
occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidio minor,  
ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisṡus

**15. loca . . . temperātiōra:** *i.e.*, they have a milder climate.

**16. remissiōribus frigoribus,** *the cold*, etc.; ablative absolute, denoting cause.

**2. contrā Galliam:** in Bk. III, 9, 27, when describing the country of the allies of the Veneti, Caesar refers to Britain as situated *contrā eās regiōnēs*.

**3. quō = ad quem.**

**adpelluntur,** *put in.*

**5. alterum** (*sc. latus*), *a second side*; it balances *ūnum*, l. 1, and *tertium* l. 15.

**ad Hispāniam:** this error is found in all the ancient writers and in the ancient maps, in which the coast of Gaul runs southwest, and Spain extends much further north than it should. This explains why it is here located on the west of Britain.

**6. quā ex parte,** *on this side.*

**dīmidio minor:** we should say "half as large"; how literally?

**7. existimātur:** in its original meaning; note the derivation.

**parī spatiō:** descriptive abl. depending on *Hibernia* and governing *trānsmisṡus*.

**15. voluptās, -ātis, f.** [volō], pleasure, delight.

**temperātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of temperō*, forbear], moderate, temperate, mild.

**16. remissus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of remittō*], relaxed, not rigid, mild.

**1. triquetrus, -a, -um, adj.,** with three corners, triangular.

**2. angulus, -ī, m.,** corner, angle.

**3. Cantium, -i, n.,** *a district of south-eastern England, Kent.* Map IV, D, 1.

**4. meridiēs, -ēī, m.,** midday; the south.

**6. occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, intr.** [ob+cadō], fall or go down, be lost; set; *occidēns sōl*, the setting sun, west.

**Hibernia, -ae, f.,** Ireland. Map I, B, 1.

**dīmidius, -a, -um, adj.** [dis+medius], half, one half of; *as subst., n.,* a half.

**7. trānsmisṡus, -ūs, m.** [trānsmittō], sending across, passing over, passage.

atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs  
 10 obiectae insulae exīstimantur; dē quibus insulis nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō,  
 15 dcc milium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centēnum milium passuum.

*The manner  
of life of the  
Britons.*

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis,

8. atque: see on *parī . . . quem*, ch. 8, 6.

est: sc. *spatium trāsmisus* as subject.

in . . . mediō cursū = *in mediō trāsmisus*, i.e., half way across.

10. obiectae (*esse*), to lie opposite (*ob*) this side.

11. diēs continuōs XXX: the ancients thought that Britain extended much further north than it really does.

sub brūmam: cf. *sub occāsum sōlis*, Bk. II, 11, 19.

12. nisi = *nisi quod*,—except that.

certīs . . . mēnsūris, by exact measurements with the water clock (*clepsydra*). The water clock was on the principle of the hour glass, the water dropping through a small aperture in the bottom of the vessel.

14. ut fert . . . opiniō, in their opinion.

illōrum: these are the *nōn nullī* of l. 10.

18. centēnum: genitive plural.

1. hūmānissimī: meaning as in Bk. IV, 3, 8.

9. Mona, -ae, *f.*, usually in ancient writers the island of Anglesey, probably in Caesar the Isle of Man. Map I, C, 1.

11. brūma, -ae, *f.* [*for brevima* = *brevissima*], the winter solstice; winter.

12. percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*percon-*

*tor*], inquiring, question, inquiry.

13. mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [*mētior*], measuring, measurement.

15. DCC = *septingenti*, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [*septem+centum*], seven hundred.

18. viciēs, *num. adv.* [*viginti*], twenty times.



neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pelli-busque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

*Fight with  
British cavalry.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt,

3. cōnsuetūdine (*vītae*) = *mōribus*.

interiōrēs, *the inhabitants of the interior*. Compare the description of the Germans given in Bk. IV, 1, 15, 16.

4. plērique, *for the most part*.

7. aspectū: ablative of respect.

capillō . . . sunt prōmissō, *they wear their hair long*.

8. rāsā: tr. as a main verb in the active voice.

1. equitēs . . . essedāriī: see on sē . . . īnsinuāvērunt, Bk. IV, 33, 4. The narrative is resumed from ch. 11, 17.

2. ita tamen ut, *with the result, however, that*.

3. partibus = *locīs*; for the omission of the prep. see App. 151, b; A. 429, 1; B. 228, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

5. intermissō spatiō, *after a time*.

6. imprudentibus . . . castrōrum, *while our men were off their guard, and were busied in fortifying their camp*.

8. in statiōne: see on quī . . . erant, Bk. IV, 32, 5.

4. serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.

5. vestiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr., clothe, dress.

vitrum, -ī, n., glass; woad, a plant used in dyeing blue.

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [in+ faciō], lay on, color, stain.

6. caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [caelum],

dark-blue, azure, sea-blue.

color, -ōris, m., hue, color.

horribilis, -e, adj. [horreō], dreadful, fearful.

7. aspectus, -ūs, m. [aspiciō], look; appearance, aspect.

capillus, -ī, m. [dim. akin to caput], the hair of the head, hair.

8. rādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr., shave. labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge, border.

duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque iis primis  
 10 legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter  
 sē cōstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per  
 mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpē-  
 runt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur.  
 Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

*The tactics  
 of the  
 Britons.*

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis  
 omnium ac prō castris dimicārētur, intellēctum est  
 nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequi  
 cēdentēs possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs  
 5 esse ad huius generis hostem, equitēs autem magnō cum periculō  
 proeliō dimicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque  
 cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent,  
 ex essedis dēsilirent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent.  
 Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnisque inter-

9. duābus . . . cohortibus: adversative.

atque iis primis, and these too the first cohorts, which contained the best soldiers; cf. *atque id*, ch. 1, 8.

- 10. cum: adversative.

perexiguō . . . inter sē, with but very little space between them.

11. novō . . . nostris: from this it appears that these cohorts had not been in the previous expedition to Britain.

per mediōs: i.e., between the Roman cohorts.

3. nostrōs: i.e., *peditēs*, as is shown by *equitēs*, l. 5.

neque . . . audērent: because they had been trained to fight in close order. Indeed, the heavy armor of the legionaries made skirmishing impossible.

6. dimicāre: the constr. is still that of ind. dis., depending on *intellēctum est*.

7. nostrōs: i.e., *equitēs*.

8. dispari proeliō: because the *essedārī* on foot supported the cavalry, while the Roman cavalry lacked the support of the legionaries.

9. rārī: as in ch. 9, 14.

10. per-exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

13. Laberius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp., Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune.

Dūrus, -i, *m.*, a cognomen.

6. cōsultō, *adv.* [cōsultus], deliberately, designedly, intentionally.

8. dis-pār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, ill-matched.

vallis proeliarentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque 10  
aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātīs  
succēderent.

*The foragers  
are attacked  
but repulse  
the enemy.  
The British  
host breaks up.*

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus  
cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam  
prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt.  
Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs  
atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, 5  
repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc  
utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter  
in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt  
quoad subsidiō cōnfisī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent,  
praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō 10  
neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī  
facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique

10. stationēs, reserves.

11. aliōs aliī here expresses a reciprocal relation, *one another*.  
dēfatigātīs succēderent, *took the place of those who were worn out*.

1. in collibus: to which they had been driven; cf. ch. 15, 3, 4.

2. lēnius = *minus ācriter*, contrasted with *ācriter* of ch. 15, 1.

3. proeliō: what kind of ablative?

7. ab signīs, etc.: they even ventured up to the legions, which were  
drawn up in battle array to protect the foragers.

nostrī: *i.e., peditēs*.

8. sequendī, not *insequendī* or *persequendī*, because the enemy had not  
yet been put to flight.

9. subsidiō (abl.) cōnfisī: explained by *cum . . . vidērent*.

10. praecipitēs, *into headlong flight*.

11. suī colligendī: cf. the same expression, Bk. III, 6, 3.

12. ex, *immediately after*. quae . . . convēnerant: see ch. 11, 15, 16.

11. dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,  
tire out, weary, exhaust.

4. pābulator, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [pā-  
bulum], to forage.

5. Trebōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name;  
esp. Gaius Trebonius, one of  
Caesar's legates.

6. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden],

suddenly, unexpectedly.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [pābulator], a  
forager.

ad-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, fly  
to or against, rush on or at, make  
an onset.

7. ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*,  
stand aloof, withdraw.

convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendērunt.

*Caesar crosses the Thames.*

18. Caesar cognitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis  
5 rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefixīs mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō impetū  
10 milītēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

*Cassivellaunus harasses the Romans.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus

14. summīs . . . cōpiīs, in full force.

1. cōsiliō: the plan, as suggested at the end of ch. 17, and further explained in ch. 19, was to harass the Romans and cut off their supplies, but to avoid a decisive battle.

3. omnīnō, alone.

atque hōc (locō) aegrē, and there only with difficulty.

6. acūtīs . . . praefixīs: set in the north bank, projecting forward.

8. praemissō equitātū: they were probably sent across further up the river, to engage the enemy in the flank, while the legions were removing the obstacles and crossing the river.

9. eā . . . eō, such, followed by a result clause; cf. *eam*, Bk. IV, 1, 20.

10. cum: adversative.

12. rīpās: for the plural see on *rīpīs*, Bk. II, 23, 11.

dīmitterent, gave up, abandoned.

1. suprà: see ch. 17, 12-14.

2. contentiōnis: i.e., of conquering in a decisive battle.

ampliōribus, the larger part of.

6. acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of acuō*, sharpen], sharpened, sharp, pointed.

sudis, -is, *f.*, a pile, stake.

prae-fixō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fix

or fasten before, set in front.

7. tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, cover over, protect.

10. ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* stand out, rise above; appear.

cōpiis mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs effūderat, essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum his cōnfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum agris vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārii militēs efficere poterant.

*The Trinovantes surrender and ask protection.*

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerat interfec-tusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,

4. servābat, kept watching; note the imperfects.

locis . . . silvestribus: the *essedā* must have had high wheels to pass over the rough ground and must have been very narrow.

impeditis: i.e., ad quae (loca) aditus difficilis erat.

10. hōc metū = huius rei metū; cf. hōc dolōre, ch. 4, 14.

relinquēbātur, etc., the only course left was for Caesar not to permit, etc.

11. neque . . . et: correlative as in Bk. III, 14, 13.

discēdi (impersonal, sc. ab equitātū) in sense is equivalent to equitēs discēdere.

12. tantum . . . quantum, and to inflict only so much damage on the enemy as; how literally?

13. labōre atque itinere = labōre itineris. This is explained by the fact that the foot-soldiers had to accompany the cavalry on their raids as a protection.

3. fidem secūtus: see on fidem sequantur, Bk. IV, 21, 18.

5. ipse, while he himself.

8. effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [ex-fundō], pour out, pour, spread abroad.

12. incendium, -ī, n. [incendō], a burning, conflagration, fire.

1. Trinovantēs, -um, m., a tribe living in southeastern Britain. Map IV, D, 1.

2. Mandubracius, -ī, m., a prince of the Trinovantes.

légātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frū-  
 10 mentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

*The enemy's position is carried by storm.*

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omni militum iniuriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab his cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassi-  
 5 vellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūnī-  
 ērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenīre cō-  
 suērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit  
 10 ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mili-  
 tum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi eiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multi-  
 que in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

8. praesit: sc. eī civitātī.

9. imperium . . . obtineat: i.e., he was to be independent of Cassivellaunus, who then held supreme power. The subj. denotes purpose.

10. exercituī, for the army; dative of reference.

11. ad numerum, to the (required) number.

1. dēfēnsīs: i.e., ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī.

2. prohibitīs, protected.

4. ex eō locō: where the embassy met him.

oppidum Cassivellaunī: supposed to be the modern St. Albans.

6. oppidum (pred. acc.) . . . vocant cum, the Britons call (a place) a town whenever. This is in contrast with the permanently inhabited fortified towns of the Gallic Celts.

7. impeditās: for meaning cf. impeditīs, ch. 19, 4.

2. Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m., Segontiācī, -ōrum, m., Ancalitēs, -um, m., Bibrocī, -ōrum, m., Cassī,

-ōrum, m., tribes located in the southeastern part of Britain. Map IV, C-D, 1.

*Cassivellaunus orders an attack on the naval camp. This being unsuccessful, he surrenders.*

**22.** Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus III rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat, uti coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra 5 nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorianur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō 15 Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōstituit; interdicat atque

**2. suprā:** see ch. 14, 2.

**5. castra nāvālia:** the ships had been drawn up on the land and inclosed within the fortifications; see ch. 11, 10.

**9. hōc . . . nūntiātō,** after the news of, etc.

**tot . . . finibus:** ablatives absolute denoting cause.

**10. maximē etiam,** especially also, adds another reason.

**13. repentinōs . . . mōtūs:** cf. *ut . . . cōnsilia*, Bk. III, 8, 10, 11. Experience had shown that disturbances among the Gauls were always to be expected, and the reports from Labienus may have been disquieting.

**14. id (=nōn multum aestātis) . . . extrahī posse,** that little might be lost. Caesar had spent over two months on the island.

**15. quid (=quantum):** construe with *vectīgālis*.

**in annōs singulōs = quotannis.** The Romans never collected the tribute, as Caesar left no soldiers to enforce his commands. In any event it would have yielded little, as the poverty of the Britons was notorious.

**16. interdicat atque imperat,** he expressly forbids.

**4. Carvilius, -i, m., Taximagulus, -i, m., Segovax, -actis, m.,** British princes of Kent.

**8. Lugotorix, -igis, m.,** a British chieftain.

**9. dētrimentum, -i, n. [dēterō],** loss, injury, defeat.

**16. pendō, -ere, pependī, pēsum,** tr., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was, in early times, weighed in payment).

**interdicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictum,** tr., intervene by an order, prohibit, interdict.

imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

*Caesar returns  
into Gaul.*

- 23.** Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum repositāre instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex iis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositis militibus et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāssset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne excluderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius militēs conlocāvit ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

**24-58.** The summer of 54 B.C. had been one of drought and bad harvests. The provisioning of an army became a serious matter, and Caesar, contrary to his usual custom, decided to distribute his forces in six divisions among various Gallic tribes. One of these divisions was placed in the

**4.** commeātibus, *trips*, the original meaning.

**5.** ac adds something new and noteworthy.

tot nāvigātiōnibus: abl. abs. with adversative force.

**8.** priōris commeātūs (*i.e., nāvibus priōris commeātūs quae expositis militibus remissae erant*) . . . et quās: the two classes of nāvēs inānēs.

**9.** postea: after the great storm, ch. 11, 7-9.

**10.** locum, *destination*.

caperent and reicerentur (*while the rest, etc.*) are in the same constr. as dēsiderārētur, l. 7. For the meaning of caperent, cf. *insulam capere*, Bk. IV, 26, 14.

**13.** suberat: the verb means "be near," in place or time; cf. *propinquā diē aequinocti*, Bk. IV, 36, 4.

**15.** primā lūce: a voyage of eight or nine hours.

**4.** dē-pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, perish, be lost.

**8.** inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, abandon-

ed, useless.

**12.** excludō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.*, exclude, cut off; hinder, prevent.



territory of the Eburones, under two lieutenants, Sabinus and Cotta. A cruel fate awaited it.

The Eburones, under their chief Ambiorix, revolted and attacked the camp. Beaten back, they asked for a conference. When this was granted, the crafty Ambiorix, under the guise of friendship, pretended to warn the Romans of impending danger, advising them to leave their own quarters, and to seek safety in the camp of Cicero or Labienus. Sabinus believed the Gaul and wanted to go, but Cotta spurned the counsel of an enemy with Roman haughtiness. A long discussion followed, and at length, as Cotta was overborne, the Romans made ready to march. The Eburones were waiting in ambush, and a fearful carnage ensued. Only a few Romans were left alive, and they, through all manner of difficulties and dangers, straggled through the woods to the camp of Labienus.

A second division of Caesar's army was quartered among the Nervii, under the command of Quintus Cicero. The cunning Ambiorix, stimulated by success, roused the Nervii and Atuatucae to rebellion, and the Roman camp was assaulted. Other tribes rose, but to no purpose. Ambiorix tried his former trick, but the wary Cicero refused to leave his quarters, and, after many fruitless attempts, succeeded in sending a letter to his commander. Caesar replied at once, and took instant measures for the relief of his men. His dispatch, wrapped around a javelin and thrown into Cicero's camp, remained unnoticed for several days; but the soldiers held out undaunted. When the letter was found, smoke was already to be seen in the distance—Caesar was coming. The Gauls were crushed and the siege was raised, but the Romans had little reason to feel sure of their hold on the Gallic territory. Under the outward show of peace, there was sullen discontent and revengeful plotting. The Treveri were leaguings against their conquerors, and all Gaul was stirring and restless—a condition of growing rebellion that was not to reach its culmination until the last great struggle for Gallic freedom, which took place in the spring and summer of 52 B.C.

## BOOK VI

1-8. Caesar, realizing the unrest of Gaul, now increased his forces by levying two new legions, and borrowing a third from Pompey. The winter was not yet past, but, eager to strike at the centres of rebellion, he began his work by laying waste the country of the Nervii. Next came the turn of the Senones, who submitted without delay; the Carnutes and the Menapii, who had given refuge to Ambiorix, followed their example, but Ambiorix made his escape. The Treveri, who had called for German aid, beset the winter quarters of Labienus, but were outwitted and utterly routed. Gaul was, for the time being, quiet; and Caesar, knowing that his greatest danger lay in the aid the German hosts were likely to give the disaffected Gauls, resolved once more to make his power and resources felt on the German side of the Rhine.

*The reasons for the second passage of the Rhine. The Ubii offer explanations and promise help.*

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs  
vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit;  
quārum ūna erat, quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē  
Trēveris miserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix recep-  
tum habēret. His cōstitūtis rēbus, paulō suprà eum locum  
quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā  
atque institūtā ratiōne magnō militum studiō paucis diēbus  
opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō,  
nē quis ab his subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitā-  
tumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in  
dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mit-  
tunt quī doceant neque ex suā civitate auxilia in Trēverōs  
missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi  
parcat; nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocenti-

3. sē instead of *ipsum*, in an indicative subordinate cl., is unusual.

4. ad . . . receptum habēret, should find refuge with.

6. ante: two years before; see Bk. IV, 17.

nōtā . . . ratiōne, according to the familiar and established plan, of his former bridge; cf. ratiōnem . . . instituit, Bk. IV, 17, 8.

13. petunt atque ōrant, they earnestly entreat.

14. parcat: give principal parts of parcō and pariō  
odiō: abl. of cause.

Germānōrum: objective genitive.

bus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. 15  
Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse;  
Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs  
perquirit.

*The Ubi  
furnish sup-  
plies and re-  
port the re-  
treat of the  
Suebi.*

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior  
Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque  
iīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dē-  
nūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant.

Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum 5  
locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia  
ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs  
hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem  
posse dēdūci; mandat ut crēbrōs explorātōrēs in Suēbōs mit-  
tant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant. Illi imperāta 10  
faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs,  
posteāquam certiorēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint,  
cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent penitus  
ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam ibi esse infīnitā magni-  
tūdine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre 15  
et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Cherūscōs ab Suēbōrum  
Suēbōsque ab Cherūscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohi-  
bēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum  
expectāre cōstituisse.

15. *amplius, more than he already had. The word is used as a substantive, governing a genitive of the whole.*

16. *cognitā . . . causā, after the matter had been investigated.*

2. *omnēs: construe with cōpiās. The same tactics were used by the Suebi at the time of Caesar's first campaign in Germany.*

4. *peditātūs equitātūsque: appositional gen. telling of what the auxilia consisted.*

7. *spērāns, etc.: he hoped that, on account of a lack of provisions, they could be forced into battle under unfavorable conditions.*

11. *paucīs . . . intermissīs, after a few days.*

13. *penitus ad, all the way to.*

15. *intrōrsus: i.e., toward the east.*

16. *prō nātivō mūrō, as a natural barrier.*

17. *prohibēre, protected.*

18. *initium: i.e., on the west side.*

*Politics among  
the Gauls.  
A system of  
"boss" rule.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque  
5 in omnibus pagis, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdictiō habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdictiumque summa omnium rerum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei causā antīquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex  
10 plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus

1. locum, *point* in the narrative.

2. dē . . . prōpōnere, *to give a description of*.

Caesar found the country deserted and was not disposed to pursue the barbarians into the depths of their forests. Consequently his second invasion of Germany amounted to little more than a crossing and recrossing of the Rhine. Probably it is to this barrenness of incident that we owe the valuable description and comparison of Gallic and German customs which he here introduces.

5. in singulis domibus: *e.g.*, Diviciacus and Dumnorix, and Indutiomarus and Cingetorix.

7. eōrum: *i.e.*, Gallōrum. quōrum, like quī refers to prīncipēs.

8. summa, *the final decision*. redeat, *is referred*.

9. nē . . . egēret: the clause explains *eius rei causā*. It was the duty of the leader, as well as to his interest, to afford protection to his followers.

10. auxili: in classic Latin, the ablative is much more common than the genitive with *egeō*.

11. opprimī: by force. circumvenīrī: by craft.

12. haec . . . Galliae, *this same policy exists generally (in summā) throughout the whole of Gaul*.

13. tōtius Galliae depends on ratiō.

1. vēnit: for mood see App. 241, *a*; A. 545; B. 288, 1, *A*; H. 601, 1, 2; H.-B. 550, *a*. This was in 58 B.C.

2. hī, *the latter*.

*The factions in Gaul. The Romans hold the balance of power. How they use it.*

valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germanōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. 5

Proeliis vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent et publicē iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōsilij initūrōs, et partem finitimī agri per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaēque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitatē adductus Dīviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi dīligenter tuēbantur; ita novam et repente collēctam 15 20

3. *antīquitus*: after the Romans began to support the Haedui.

4. *clientēlae*: smaller tribes receiving the protection of the larger ones, for which they gave in return military service, and often paid tribute.

10. *iūrāre*: sc. *principēs* as subject.

14. *infectā rē*, without accomplishing his purpose.

15. *factā commūtātiōne*: this was due to the defeat of Ariovistus, described in Book I. Translate as a main clause; so also the following ablatives absolute, which tell wherein the change consisted.

17. *eōrum*: i.e., *Haeduōrum*.

18. *ūtī*, were enjoying.

19. *reliquīs rēbus*, by all other means.

20. *dīmiserant*, had been compelled to give up.

21. *quōs* (i.e., *Rēmōs*): subject of *adaequāre*; sc. *Haeduōs* as object.

23. *sē . . . dicābant*, placed themselves under the protection of the Remi.

24. *collēctam*, acquired.

- 25 auctoritatem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Haedui habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmi obtinērent.

*Two classes in Gaul. The influence and practices of the Druids.*

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nulli adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere  
5 aliēnō aut magnitudīne tribūtōrum aut iniuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus divinis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcū-  
10 rant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt, et sī quod est facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditate, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcer-  
15 nunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec

1. aliquō sunt numerō, *are of any account, importance; a locative abl. without the preposition.*

3. servōrum habētur locō, *are regarded as slaves.*

4. cum, *whenever.*

6. sēsē . . . nōbilibus: cf. sē . . . dicābant, ch. 12, 23.

9. rēbus divinis intersunt, *have charge of sacred rites.* The Druid priests wore a distinguishing dress of white. The oak and mistletoe were held in peculiar reverence by them, and their sacrifices were performed in oak groves.

sacrificia . . . prōcūrant: *i.e., they dictate the nature and manner of sacrifices, as well as the place and time, and decide by whom sacrifices must be offered.*

10. religiōnēs denotes everything connected with matters of religious belief.

11. disciplīnae causā = *discendī causā.* hī: the Druids.

12. eōs: the Gauls.

13. cōstituunt, *they render decisions.*

16. dēcrētō nōn stetit, *does not abide by their decisions.* The abl. is locative.

sacrificiis interdicunt: sc. *eī; interdīcere* regularly takes a dat. of the person, and an abl. of the place or action forbidden.

poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum hī  
 numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcē-  
 dunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex con-  
 tāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque iis petentibus iūs redditur 20  
 neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. His autem omnibus drui-  
 dibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem.  
 Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit,  
 aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam  
 etiam armīs, dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tem- 25  
 pore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media  
 habētur, cōsidunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique  
 quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis  
 iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque  
 inde in Galliam trānslāta existimātur, et nunc, quī diligentius 30  
 eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā  
 proficiscuntur.

*Their education  
 and religion.*

**14.** Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque  
*The knights.* tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī  
 praemiis et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā  
 parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum

**18.** dēcēdunt (*i.e., dē viā*), avoid.

**25.** dē . . . contendunt, *they settle their strife over*, etc.

**26.** media, *the center*.

**27.** cōsidunt, *hold their sittings*.

locō cōsecrātō: in the neighborhood of the modern town of Dreux.

**29.** pārent: yet their common obedience to priestly authority never  
 proved strong enough to overcome the absolute political disagreement of  
 the Gallic peoples. **disciplīna**, *the system*.

**in Britannīā**: it is more probable that the Britons had originally received  
 the Druidical system from the continent, and on account of their remoteness  
 had kept its old forms unimpaired, while among the Gauls, who were more  
 exposed to outside influences, the cult was gradually declining. The island  
 of Mona was the chief seat of Druidical learning in Britain.

**30.** et nunc, *and so even now*.

**31.** illō (*adv.*) = *in Britanniam*.

**3.** in disciplīnam conveniunt is the same as *disciplīnae causā concurrīt*,  
 ch. 13, 11.

- 5 versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūlli xx in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferrī velint, neque
- 10 eōs, quī discunt, litteris cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant,
- 15 metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

*The knights.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsi iniuriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō
- 5 versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplis-

5. **versuum**: lines of poetry containing the substance of the Druidical teaching. Verse is easier to commit to memory than prose.

6. **ea**: *i.e., quae discunt.*

7. **cum**: adversative. *ratiōnibus, accounts.*

8. **Graecis litteris**: the language was of course the Gallic.

10. **litteris cōnfisōs**, *relying on writing.*

**minus memoriae studēre**, *pay less attention to the memory.*

11. **praesidiō litterārum** = *litteris cōnfisōs*, l. 10.

12. **hoc** is explained by the infinitives *interīre* and *trānsīre*; for case see App. 115, b; A. 369; B. 176, 2; H. 409, 1; H.-B. 364, 4.

13. **ab aliīs . . . trānsīre ad aliōs**, *pass from one body to another.* The belief in the transmigration of souls was common among the ancients, and it appears even yet in some Oriental religions.

16. **mundi ac terrārum** (*orbis*), *the universe and the earth.*

18. **trādunt** = *docent.*

2. **ūsus**, *need*; cf. Bk. IV, 2, 10. **quod** is explained by the following *utī* clause; cf. *ut . . . remittant*, ch. 14, 11, 12.

5. **ut quisque est . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs . . . habet** = *quō quisque est . . . amplior, eō plūrēs, etc.* Translate, *the more distinguished a man is . . . the more, etc.* **cōpiūs** = *opibus.*



simus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsq̄e habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamq̄e nōvērunt.

*Human  
sacrifice.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō 5 vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā 10 exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

*The gods of  
the Gauls.*

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad

7. hanc . . . nōvērunt, *this is the only kind of influence and power of which they have any knowledge.*

1. dēdita, *given over, devoted.*

3. graviōribus morbis: *i.e., those that cannot be cured by the usual remedies.*

4. hominēs: *object of immolant and immolātūrōs.*

6. vītā hominis . . . hominis vīta: *observe the chiasitic order.*

7. nūmen, *majesty.*

9. simulācra: *sc. hominum.*

11. supplicia: *probably criminals were used in the state sacrifices, and slaves or clients as private offerings.*

12. aliquā here = *aliā aliquā. grātiōra, especially pleasing.*

13. cum, *whenever.*

14. dēscendunt, *they resort to.* Human sacrifice was not unknown in early Greek and Roman worship, and in certain cases was kept up until after Caesar's time. Cf. also the worship of Moloch, mentioned in the Old Testament.

1. deōrum depends on *maximē.* Caesar applies the names of Roman gods to the Gallic divinities that correspond in functions and attributes.

3. ferunt, *they call.*

quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbi-  
 5 trantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Miner-  
 vam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent  
 opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum  
 atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium  
 tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre  
 10 cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent;  
 cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in  
 ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in cīvitatibus hārum rērum  
 exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōsecrātīs cōspiciārī licet; neque  
 saepe accidit, ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē  
 15 occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque ei rei  
 supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

*Their belief  
about their  
origin. Treat-  
ment of  
children.*

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs prae-  
 dicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob  
 eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō  
 diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annō-

4. **quaestūs**: the plural denotes the different kinds of money-making and traffic.

**habēre . . . arbitrantur**: he points out the roads (*viārum*) and accom-  
 panies the traveler on his journey (*itinerum*), and brings him to his des-  
 tination.

7. **operum, handicrafts.**

8. **artificiōrum, trades.** **trādere**: meaning as in ch. 14, 18.

10. **dēvoent** = *sē immolātūrōs (esse) voent* of ch. 16, 4, hence the perfect  
 subjunctive *cēperint*, representing a future perfect indicative in direct dis-  
 course.

15. **posita**: *i.e., in cumulīs.*

16. **supplicium cum cruciātū** = *supplicia cruciātūsque* of Bk. IV, 15, 11.

1. **ab Dīte . . . prōgnātōs (esse)**: they asserted that they were autoch-  
 thones or aborigines, *i.e.,* that they had sprung from the soil itself. Cf.  
*nātōs in insulā*, Bk. V, 12, 2.

**patre**: predicate, as a father.

2. **prōditum dicunt**: cf. *memoriā prōditum dicunt*, Bk. V, 12, 2.

4. **noctium**: the custom of beginning the day at sunset, common to the  
 ancient Greeks and Germans, and to the Jews and Mohammedans, probably  
 had its origin in reckoning time by the changes of the moon. The English  
 "fortnight" (fourteen nights) and "sennight" (seven nights) illustrate the  
 same practice. **finiunt**, mark off, measure.

rum initia sic observant, ut noctem diēs subsequatur. In reliquīs vitāe institutīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt, ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

*Marriage and burial customs among the Gauls.*

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitāe necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriore locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque, quae vivīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia,

6. ab reliquīs: sc. *nātiōnibus*.

7. ut, *so that*.

8. puerilī aetate: descriptive ablative.

9. in . . . adsistere, *to appear at his father's side*.

1. pecūniās: plural, on account of the plural *virī*; so also *dōtibus*, l. 3.

2. nōmine, *as*; cf. *obsidum nōmine*, Bk. III, 2, 14.

3. cum . . . commūnicant, *add to*.

4. ratiō habētur, *an account is kept*.

fructūs, *income, interest*.

uter (relative) . . . ad eum, *to the survivor*; how literally?

8. dēcessit: sc. *vītā*.

9. sī . . . vēnit: *i.e.*, if the circumstances of his death bring the wives under suspicion.

dē uxōribus: from this it would seem that polygamy was practised among the Gauls, though probably only by the nobility.

in servilem modum: at Rome, only in the case of slaves could torture be used to force a confession.

10. sī compertum est, *if proof of guilt is discovered*.

11. excruciatās interficiunt, *they torture them to death*.

prō, etc., *considering the Gauls' civilization*.

ac paulō suprà hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs  
 15 dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōfectīs unā cremā-  
 bantur.

*How the magis-  
 trates obtain in-  
 formation and  
 use it.*

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam  
 administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum,  
 sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā  
 accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō com-  
 5 mūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs  
 falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs  
 rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae  
 visa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitudinī  
 prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

*Religion and  
 manner of  
 life of the  
 Germans.*

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine dif-  
 ferunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus  
 dīvinīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum  
 numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus  
 5 iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā

14. suprà hanc memoriam, *before our time.*

15. iūstīs, *usual, customary.*

unā cremābantur: *sc. cum mortuīs.*

1. commodius, *unusually well.*

2. habent lēgibus sānctum, *have a legal enactment.* The object of *habent* is *sī* . . . *communīcet*; with this object *sānctum* agrees as a predicate adjective.

3. rūmōre, *gossip, hearsay*, lacking confirmation.

fāmā, *current report*, which may have a foundation in fact.

6. dē . . . capere: *cf. the similar passage in Bk. IV, 5, 2.*

7. cognitum est, *experience has shown.*

quae visa sunt, *what seems best*; *cf. Bk. II, 20, 14.*

8. ex ūsū, *of advantage*; *cf. magnō . . . ūsuī*, Bk. IV, 20, 6.

9. per, *through the medium of.*

2. druidēs: they had no exclusive priestly class, with such extensive powers, to act as mediators between man and the gods; but they had priests and priestesses for sacrificing, taking the omens, etc.

3. student, *lay stress on, attach importance to.*

4. numerō, *as.*

5. Sōlem, etc.: *as the personification of natural forces.*

reliquōs . . . accēpērunt: Tacitus, writing 150 years later, names Mercury, Hercules, and Mars as the divinities most honored.

quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt, maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc statūrā alī, hōc vīrēs nervōsque cōfirmārī putant.

10

German  
system of  
land-holding.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuetūdine capti studium bellī gerendi agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscantur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem

6. accēpērunt, have heard of.

7. ā parvis = ā pueris, Bk. IV, 1, 17.

9. ferunt, receive.

1. agrī cultūrae nōn student: i.e., in comparison with the Gauls, who were more advanced in agriculture. Tacitus says that among the Germans it was left to women and old men.

3. certum . . . propriōs: cf. Bk. IV, 1, 13-15.

4. in annōs singulōs: meaning as in Bk. V, 22, 15.

gentibus . . . hominū, to families and kinsmen.

5. quīque (= iisque qui) . . . coiērunt: individuals and small groups of men, who did not belong to the same stock, united themselves for this purpose.

quantum . . . agrī = tantum agrī quantum.

6. vīsum est: meaning as in ch. 20, 8. aliō: adv. = alium in locum.

7. rei (custom) . . . causās: four reasons are introduced by nē, and a fifth by ul.

8. cultūrā: for the case see App. 147; A. 416; B. 225; H. 478, 4; H.-B. 431.

10. frīgora: the plural is used as in Bk. V, 12, 16.

11. aedificent: the house was roughly framed of wood, with a thatched roof of straw or reeds, and could be easily moved.

12. animī aequitāte . . . contineant (sc. in officiō): a contented frame of mind is viewed as the means by which the plebeians are kept in order.

coptineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

*Their  
government.  
Brigandage.  
Their  
hospitality.*

- 23.** Civitatibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc  
 5 sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs  
 10 dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam, quae extrā finēs cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, profiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam  
 15 et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitudīne conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent,

**13.** cum potentissimīs = cum opibus potentissimōrum.

**1.** maxima laus: cf. Bk. IV, 3, 1-4.

**2.** hoc is explained by expulsōs . . . cōsistere.

**3.** proprium, a mark; for the dependent genitive see App. 106; A. 385, c; B. 204, 2; H. 451, 2; H.-B. 339, c.

**4.** hōc is explained by timōre sublātō.

**9.** regiōnum, districts. pāgōrum: see on pāgōs, Bk. IV, 1, 8.

**10.** minuunt, settle. latrōcinia, pillaging expeditions.

**13.** ubi, whenever. Caesar does not have in mind a regular war, declared by a council, but an invitation by some chief for volunteers to join in a pillaging expedition.

**14.** profiteantur: the subj. represents a command in the direct discourse.

**17.** omnium . . . rērum . . . fidēs, all confidence.

**19.** prohibent (sc. eōs), they protect.

sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque 20  
commūnicātur.

*Comparison  
of the Gauls  
and the  
Germans.*

24. Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Galli  
virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter  
hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns-  
Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima  
Germāniae sunt loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratos- 5  
theni et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi  
Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi  
cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē con-  
tinet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.  
Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, 10  
Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur,  
Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum  
rērū nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātīm  
adsuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī  
cum illis virtūte comparant.

15

20. sānctōs, *inviolate*.

21. commūnicātur: *sc. cum hīs*.

3. trāns Rhēnum: this is probably a false inference arising from the  
circumstance that in Caesar's time Celtic tribes were found in the south of  
Germany, but these had probably been left behind in a general migration of  
the Celts to the west.

6. quibusdam, *some other*. illi: Greek writers.

7. Volcae Tectosagēs: part of the Volcae had remained in Germany, a  
part of the Tectosages lived among the Pyrenees, and another division had  
wandered into Asia Minor and settled in Galatia.

9. laudis (= *virtūtis*) opīniōnem: cf. *opīniōnem virtūtis*, Bk. II, 8, 2.

10. nunc: this word, in contrast with *anteā*, l. 1, belongs with the main  
clause *paulātīm . . . comparant*. inopiā, *poverty*.

patientiā, *patient endurance*.

11. cultū, *clothing*.

12. prōvinciārum: the two Gauls.

13. rērū, *products*.

multa . . . ūsūs, *a great abundance of all sorts of necessities*; lit. *many  
things for abundance and necessities*.

*Description of  
the Hercynian  
forest.*

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprà dēmōn-  
strāta est, lātītūdō viiii diērum iter expeditō patet;  
nōn enim aliter finīri potest, nequē mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt.  
Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus  
5 rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum  
et Anartium, hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversīs ā flūmine  
regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitūdinem  
attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae, quī sē aut  
adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter LX prō-  
10 cesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit, multaue in eā  
genera ferārum nāscī cōstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn  
sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae  
prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

*The reindeer.*

26. Est bōs cervī figurā cuius ā mediā fronte inter  
aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēc-  
tum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sicut  
palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae

2. expeditō = quī sine impedimentis iter facit. The day's journey of a good traveler was often used among the Greeks as a unit of measure.

3. finīri: meaning as in ch. 18, 4. The subject of the sentence is lātītūdō. mēnsūrās itinerum: such as the Romans used, the foot, mile, etc.

5. rēctā . . . regiōne, in a direction parallel with.

6. diversīs . . . regiōnibus: the opposite of rēctā . . . regiōne, i.e., at right angles with the river.

8. huius Germāniae: the west part, where Caesar was.

9. initium: the east end. cum: adversative.

10. accēperit: meaning as in ch. 21, 6.

11. vīsa . . . sint: subj. in a rel. cl. of description; as also differant below.

13. prōdenda, worthy of, etc.

1. bōs: regularly used of any large animal that feeds on grass, and has horns and divided hoofs. Here the reindeer is meant, which at one time was found farther south than now, before the clearing of the forests and the change of climate. figurā: ablative of description.

ā mediā fronte, from the middle of the forehead.

2. ūnum cornū: an error, of course.

3. summō: a substantive.

4. palmae rāmīque: such antlers are called palmate, being broad and flat like a palm, with projecting finger-like points.

eadem . . . nātūra: the reindeer differs from all other members of the deer family in that the female has horns as well as the male.



marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

*Description  
of the elk.*

**27.** Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō adflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

*Description  
of the urus.*

**28.** Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō infā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vėlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspexērunt, parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus,

1. quae . . . appellantur, the so-called.

alcēs: like the reindeer, the elk has moved to the north on account of the change of climate.

hārum . . . figūra = hārum figūra est cōnsimilis figūrae caprōrum.

2. varietās pellium, varied color.

4. sine nōdīs: a similar belief was long held in regard to elephants.

5. adflictae, thrown down; so also in l. 12.

9. ab, at.

10. tantum, (but only) so far, i.e., with such care.

summa . . . relinquātur, they give the exact appearance of trees standing firmly (lit. a complete likeness of them standing is left).

11. cōsuētūdine = ex cōsuētūdine; cf. Bk. IV, 32, 1.

1. ūrī: the bison was found in the Harz Mountains in the time of Charlemagne, and is still found in Lithuania and the Caucasus Mountains.

3. taurī: genitive.

7. in pūblicum, into a public place.

quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt.

- 10 Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

*Caesar returns to Gaul.*

29. Caesar postquam per Ubiōs explorātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi  
5 longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā  
10 pōnit magnīsque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat.

30-44. Caesar now turned through the forest of Ardennes, in pursuit of the treacherous and elusive Ambiorix; but still the rebel chieftain escaped. Pressed hard by the Romans, he disbanded his forces and fled alone. Caesar followed him. For the sake of greater speed and effectiveness, the Roman army was divided into four parts, one of which, under Quintus Cicero, was left in Sabinus's old camp in charge of the baggage, while the others advanced through the regions where Ambiorix was likely to be dis-

8. *sint*: subj. in a purpose clause. *ferunt*: meaning as in ch. 21, 9.

9. *nē . . . exceptī*, not even when caught very young.

10. *multum . . . cornibus*: cf. the shorter form of expression in ch. 27, 2.

11. *ab labris*, at the rim; cf. *ab radicibus*, ch. 27, 9, 10.

12. *prō*, as; cf. Bk. V, 12, 10.

The narrative is resumed from ch. 10.

3. *suprā*: in ch. 22, 1.

*minimē*: stronger than *nōn*, and emphasized by position.

5. *barbaris*: dative of separation.

8. in *extrēmō ponte*, at the (west) end of the bridge.

*turrim*: this would indicate the presence of an island in the river, on which the tower was built, that part of the bridge between the island and the German bank having been broken down.

9. *cohortium*: these were composed of the auxiliaries.

covered. In the hope of active aid against the scattered and outlawed Eburones, Caesar invited other tribes to come at will and aid in the pillaging. Attracted by the opportunity, a band of German Sugambri straightway came from beyond the Rhine, intent on spoil, and caring not the least from what quarter they might happen to take it. Cicero's division, with its baggage, attracted them, and turning aside from the wretched Eburones, they advanced to storm the Roman camp.

When Caesar set out, he had promised to return in seven days, and had warned Cicero to let no man set foot outside the limits of his defenses. But Cicero, unhappily, undertook to think for himself, and sent five cohorts out to forage. The Sugambri surprised the camp, and, being with difficulty beaten back, fell on the foragers as they were coming back to their quarters. Only with great loss did the men rejoin their friends, and so great was the alarm that not even the withdrawal of the Germans reassured the frightened soldiers. It was a forlorn and panic-stricken band that Caesar found when he returned, according to his promise, on the seventh day; and only their leader's presence could restore the soldiers' confidence.

Ambiorix had not been taken, and Caesar turned his vengeance on the outlaw's people. He burned the villages of the Eburones, ravaged their crops, and nearly exterminated the miserable tribe. Yet Gallic love of freedom still survived, and Gallic resistance was not yet at an end. The next year was to see the greatest struggle of united Gaul against the power of sovereign Rome that had yet been made.

---

## BOOK VII

1-67. Caesar now went southward, as was his wont, to hold the pro-consular courts in Cisalpine Gaul. Stirring events had been going on at Rome; Clodius, the brawling demagogue of the popular party, had been killed, and the utmost disorder had followed; Pompey had been made sole consul, and new levies of soldiers had been ordered in Italy. Crassus the triumvir had fallen before the Parthians in the far east. In such a state of affairs no one had more at stake in the political game of the capital than Caesar himself—and no men knew this better than the angry Gauls he had left behind him half-subdued.

Rebellion rose, spread, and burst into fury. The Romans at Cenabum were massacred. The tribes of the south leagued together with marvelous rapidity, and chose for their leader Vercingetorix, a prince of the Arverni, the ablest leader, as it proved, that the Gallic patriots ever had. They

hoped to overwhelm the Roman army while its general was gone, but Caesar learned the facts, and, although it was winter, set out at once to cross the Alps. In the face of all manner of hardships, through the heart of the enemy's country, the resourceful leader came swiftly and secretly to his own forces, and so began his preparations for war. Several towns were reduced without difficulty, and Caesar then besieged Avaricum, or modern Bourges, the principal town of the Bituriges.

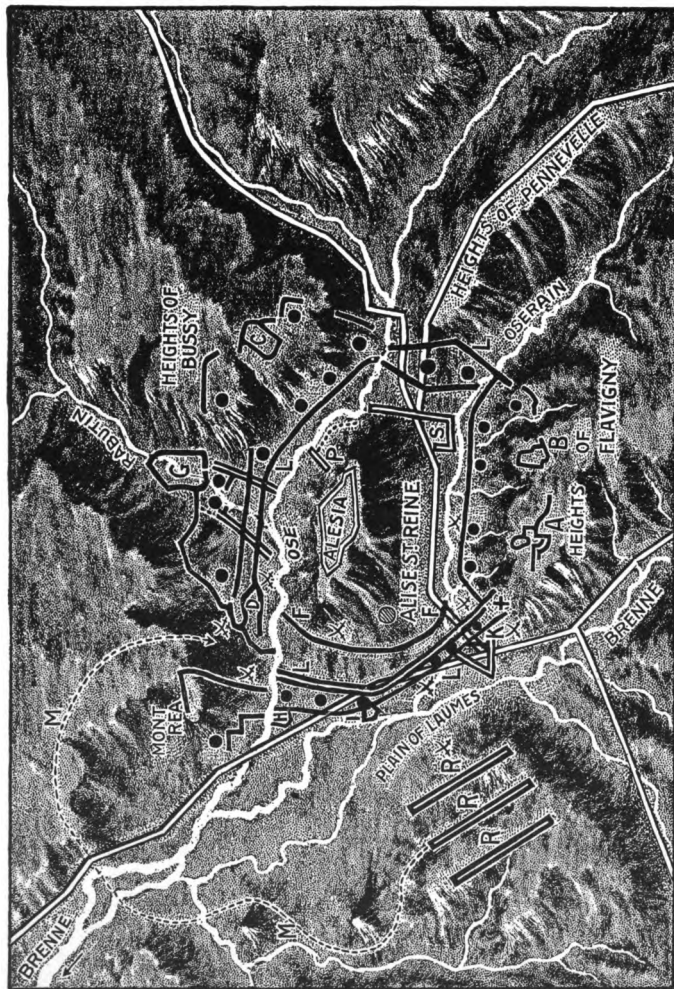
Vercingetorix, meanwhile, was learning his lesson. The disciplined veterans of the Roman army were not to be overcome in fair fight on the open field, but they might be harassed, starved, and worn out by delays. A Fabian policy was adopted; town after town of the Bituriges was burned, and the Gallic fields were laid waste. But Avaricum had been spared at the intercession of its people, against the judgment of Vercingetorix; and Caesar, after a long and arduous siege, took the city and butchered its inhabitants.

The Roman force was now divided, Labienus marching with four legions among the Senones and the Parisii, and the commander himself, with the remaining six, investing Gergovia, the chief town of the Arverni. But the siege was unsuccessful; Caesar was beaten back with heavy losses—his sole personal defeat at the hands of the Gauls—and was compelled to retire into the country of his nominal allies, the Haeduan people.

But the Haedui, all this while, had been playing a double game, apparently caring nothing for their ancient relations with Rome, or the rights and wrongs of their fellow-Gauls. All their desire, it seemed, was to save their own skins and their own property, and be on the winning side at the last. Caesar, they now saw, was in straits. It was a good time to desert the Roman cause; so they burned his stores at Noviodunum, and ranged themselves forthwith on the side of the Gallic patriots. Caesar, beset with dangers, crossed the Loire and marched to join Labienus; the lieutenant, on his side, behaved with admirable judgment and courage, and, outwitting the Gauls who opposed his march, hurried toward the southeast, and succeeded in joining his chief. From that day the tide of war began to turn.

Vercingetorix, it is true, was still winning other tribes to the Gallic confederacy, and to all appearances had never been stronger in the power and number of his allies. He easily kept his leadership in spite of the claims of the Haedui, who greedily grasped at the supremacy for themselves; and, backed by the united strength of most of the Gallic tribes, he felt that he had the retreating Romans at his mercy. He risked battle—a serious mistake. The two armies met at the river Vingeanne, and Roman skill and discipline were once more victorious.





**G.H.I.K.** Cavalry Camps near the Water  
**J.L.** Lines of Contravallation  
**P.S.** Gallic Camp  
**R.R.** Gallic Army of Relief  
**M.** March of Gallic Army of Relief

ALAESIA

**A.B.C.** Infantry Camps on the Heights  
**D.** Camp of the Two Legions Attacked by Gallic Army of Relief  
**●** Caesella  
**†** Caesar's Position in Last Battle  
**F.** Twenty-foot Ditch

*Caesar pursues  
the Gauls to  
Alesia and be-  
gins the siege.*

**68.** Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castris conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ε ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs, quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad 10 labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

**2. ut . . . conlocāverat, redūxit:** in the battle at the river Vingeanne, described in the preceding chapter, Vercingetorix had drawn up his foot-soldiery in front of his camp, in order to support his cavalry. Upon the defeat of the latter, he at once started for Alesia without returning to camp for his baggage.

**3. Alesiam:** the modern Alise Ste. Reine.

**quod:** for agreement cf. *quam*, Bk. II, 1, 3.

**9. equitātū:** abl. of specification; translate it as the subject in English.

**10. parte, arm;** for the case see App. 143, a; A. 431; B. 219, 1; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 437.

**adhortātus . . . instituit:** Caesar's forces now consisted of about 50,000 legionaries, 5,000 Gallic and German cavalry, and 10,000 Gallic and other auxiliary troops. The forces of Vercingetorix are variously estimated at from 60,000 to 80,000 men.

The siege of Alesia was the climax of the whole Gallic war. The position was one of remarkable strength, and its investment and reduction taxed Caesar's resourceful genius to the utmost. The town lay on an isolated plateau, the modern Mont Auxois, one and a quarter miles long by about a half mile wide. To the west lay a level plain, about three miles in length, through which flowed a branch of the upper Seine (the modern Brenne), two of whose tributaries ran parallel along the north and south of Mont Auxois, thus adding to the strength of the position. To the north, east, and south, at a distance of about a mile, rose other hills of the same height. The plateau itself had a steep slope, and a wall of rock ran, with some interruptions, around the crown of the height. Springs and wells assured to the besieged an abundant water supply. A stronghold of such difficult approaches, Caesar saw, was practically impregnable to assault, and, in spite of the enormous difficulties which lay in the way, it must be reduced by a siege.

*Situation and  
defenses of  
Alesia.*

69. Positum erat oppidum in colle summō admo-  
dum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn  
posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādicēs duō duābus ex partibus  
flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia  
5 passuum III in longitudinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus  
partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitudinis  
fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad  
orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum  
complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum  
10 praedūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituē-  
bātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs  
locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in  
castellis interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō  
fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs  
15 tenēbantur.

*A cavalry  
battle. De-  
feat and flight  
of the Gauls.*

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā  
plānitiē, quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia pas-  
suum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus.

3. **duo . . . flūmina**: the Lutosa (the modern Ose) lay on the north, and the Osera (Oserain) on the south.

4. **ante oppidum**: the plain of Laumes lies toward the west.

6. **mediocrī . . . spatiō**, at a moderate distance, i.e., from the plateau on which Alesia lay. The heights of Rea and Bussy to the north, of Penneville to the east, and Flavigny to the south are each about a mile distant from Mont Auxois.

**parī . . . fastigiō**: they are a little more than 500 feet high.

7. **quae pars . . . spectābat, hunc omnem locum** = *omnem eam partem quae spectābat*.

9. **māceriam**: a wall of unhewn stone extending from one stream to the other, recurved at the ends to resist an attack on the flank and rear also; see Plan, P, S. Traces of this wall even yet remain.

11. **tenēbat** = *pertinēbat*. Caesar's figures have been fully verified by the results of the excavations begun by Napoleon III. in 1862.

**castra . . . VIII**: four of these were infantry camps, stationed on the heights (see Plan, A, B, C, D), while the others were cavalry camps lying on the low ground near the streams; see Plan, G, H, I, K. Traces of them all, as well as of five of the redoubts, have been discovered.

14. **excubitōribus . . . praesidiīs**: abl. of means. In the daytime the *castella* were occupied by small posts, but at night they were well picketed and held by strong garrisons which bivouacked in them.

2. **intermissam**, lying between.



Summā vī ab utrīsq̄ue contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsq̄ue prō castrīs cōstituit. 5 Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augēt̄ur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustioribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. 10 Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovēri iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī, perturbantur; venīri ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs 15 interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

*Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry with an appeal to the country for aid. He prepares for the siege.*

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat 5 omnēsq̄ue, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī

5. **castrīs**: the camps on the heights of Flavigny are probably meant.

6. **in fugam coniectī**: they probably fled along the southern slope of Mont Auxois, to their camp to the east of the town, which was protected by the wall and ditch; see ch. 69, 9, 10.

7. **angustioribus portīs**: in building the wall (*māceria*, ch. 69, 9), they had made the entrances too narrow; see Plan, P, S.

10. **fossam**: the ditch in front of the *māceria* just mentioned.

12. **nōn minus**: *i.e.*, *quam equitēs*.

**quī . . . erant**: the Gallic infantry who were encamped between the city and the *māceria*. See Plan, P, S.

13. **ad arma conclāmant**, raise the cry, "To arms!"

15. **portās claudī**: the city gates were closed so that the soldiers in the camp could not flee into the city proper.

1. **mūnitiōnēs**: the beginning of these works is described in ch. 69, 10-15.

2. **cōsiliū capit** = *cōstituit*, and, like it, is followed by the infinitive.

6. **cōgant**: why plural?

7. **suae**, like *sua*, refers to Vercingetorix.

libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta Lxxx ūnā sēcum  
 10 interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn  
 15 pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētiri instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

*Caesar plans his work of contravallation. The ditches and wall.*

**72.** Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedibus cccc redūxit, hōc  
 5 cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus

**8.** quod sī, *but if.*

**10.** ratiōne initā, *according to his reckoning.*

**12.** parcendō, *by economy.*

quā erat . . . intermissum, *where our line of contravallation was interrupted.* The cavalry probably escaped to the eastward, up the valleys of the Ose and Oserain.

**18.** ratiōnibus, *precautionary measures.* Note the different meanings of the word in this chapter.

The main strength of Caesar's fortifications lay along the plain and, to a small extent, along the north ravine, as in these places the besieged Gauls would naturally find the best opportunities of escape. At other points, the steep and rocky slopes were in themselves a natural defense, and demanded less effort on the part of the besiegers to render them impregnable.

**3.** pedum XX: *i.e., in breadth; cf. duodēviginti pedum, Bk. II, 5, 21.*

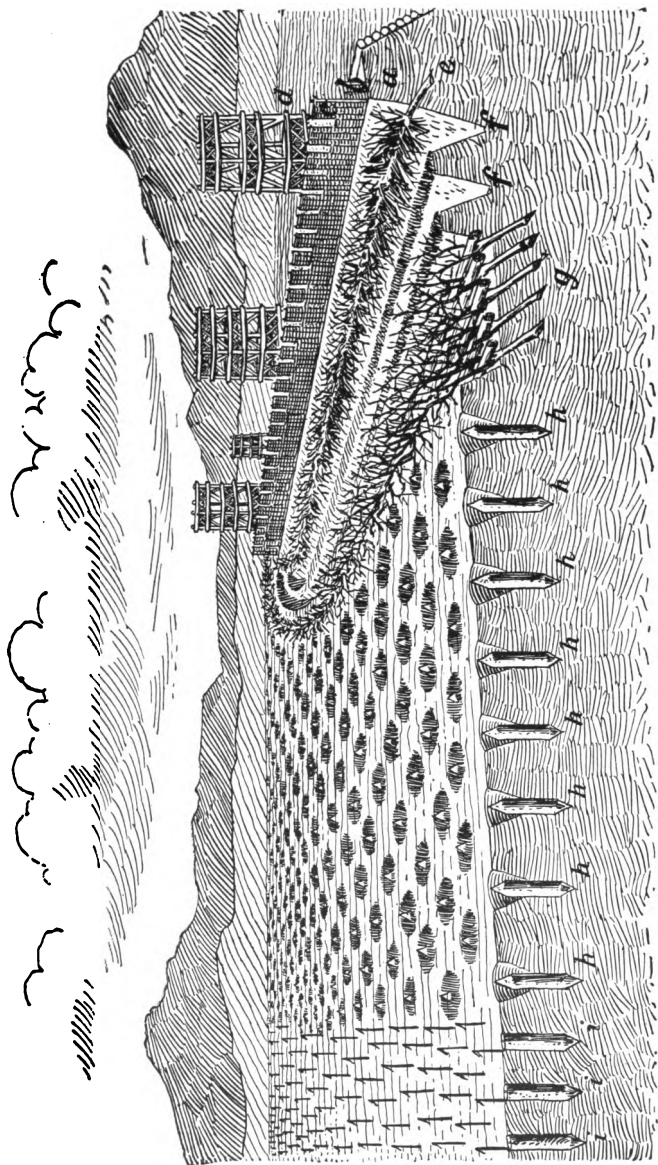
dērēctīs lateribus, *with perpendicular sides*, so that the bottom and top were of equal width. Trenches were commonly dug with one or both sides aslant. This ditch stretched through the plain along the foot of the west slope of Mont Auxois; see Plan f, f, f.

reliquās . . . mūnitiōnēs: the main line of contravallation.

**4.** hōc cōnsiliō: explained by the clauses *nē . . . aut . . . advolāret aut . . . possent.*

**5.** tantum . . . spatium: *i.e., around the base of Mont Auxois.*





a. vallum  
b. lorica

c. pinnas  
d. turres

e. cerri  
f. fossas

g. cippi  
h. tilla

i. stimuli

CAESAR'S WORKS BEFORE ALESIA

nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit, quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissis locis aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit. Huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent.

*He employs some ingenious devices to hinder an attack.*

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs tuērī necesse dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur;

6. nec . . . cingerētur, and the works as a whole could not easily be surrounded by a line of soldiers. Caesar's army was not large enough to push the construction of the siege works, and at the same time afford protection to the soldiers engaged in the work, and to garrison the defenses as they were completed.

9. hōc intermissō spatiō: *i.e.*, of 400 feet; cf. l. 4.

eādem altitūdine: both were probably 8 or 9 feet deep.

10. interiōrem: the one lying nearer the city. This trench was dug with square sides, and extended only a small portion of the distance around Alesia, while the other had sloping sides, and ran the whole length of the contravallation.

campestribus . . . locis: in the plain of Laumes and in the north ravine.

11. ex flūmine: the inner ditch on the plain of Laumes was filled with water from the Oserain. Excavation has revealed the gravel, which was washed from the river, for almost half the length of the ditch. The small sections that ran along the north ravine were filled from the little brook near by.

post eās: *i.e.*, post exteriōrem fossam.

12. vallum: this palisade was set in the rampart of earth, and both together had a height of 12 feet.

lōricam: a fence or parapet of hurdles, supported by the vāllum.

pinnās, battlements, erected on the lōricae at regular intervals, to furnish additional protection to the soldiers that manned the walls.

13. cervis: heavy forked branches of trees placed so as to project horizontally.

ad commissūrās, near the joining, *i.e.*, toward the top of the agger, where the posts that supported the battlemented fence of hurdles (plutei) were driven in. pluteōrum: for illis. see Vocabulary.

14. tōtō opere: abl. of place.

15. quae . . . distārent, in such a way that they, etc.

2. dēminūtis nostris cōpiis = cum (although) nostri dēminuerentur iis cōpiis.

- ac nōn numquam opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem  
 5 ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē  
 ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre  
 numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs  
 arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscisis atque hōrum  
 dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs  
 10 pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmissī et ab infimō  
 revīnctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant  
 ōrdinēs coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant,  
 sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.  
 Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositis scrobēs  
 15 in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm angustīore  
 ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine

4. temptāre, make an attempt upon, i.e., attack.

6. rūrsus, further.

addendum: these additional means of defense were placed in the space of 400 feet that lay between the inner trench at the foot of Mont Auxois, and the two outer ones belonging to the line of contravallation.

8. hōrum (rāmōrum): to be construed with *cacūminibus*. Forked tree trunks or strong branches were peeled, freed from twigs, and sharpened at the top. They were then set firmly into the ground with the branches projecting above the edge of the trench.

9. perpetuae . . . altae, continuous trenches, each five feet deep.

10. hūc = in hās fossās.

11. ab rāmīs, with their branches only.

quīnī: note the force of the distributive. Everywhere that this sort of defense was placed, there were five rows.

12. implicātī: the rows were set so close together that the branches overlapped and interlaced, making a barrier broad and difficult enough to be almost insurmountable. quō quī intrāverant, whoever went among them.

13. vāllīs: the large branches, which, with their sharp points, resembled palisades. induēbant, impaled.

14. oblīquīs ōrdinibus: they were set in oblique lines like the pattern of a checker board.

15. paulātīm . . . fastigiō, with a gradual slope to the bottom. The pits were funnel-shaped, with a depth of three feet, and a diameter of two feet above and one below.

16. hūc: cf. the same use of this word in l. 10.

stīpitēs: in each scrobis was set a round stake of the thickness of a man's thigh, with a sharpened, fire-hardened point projecting about four inches above the top of the pit. These were surrounded with earth to the depth of a foot, well packed down; and the mouth of the pit was then covered with osiers and brushwood.

ab summō praeacūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur, ita, ut nōn amplius digitis IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultis integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

*A similar system of defense guards against attack from without. Caesar collects supplies.*

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIII milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent, nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

18. cōfirmandī . . . causā, in order to fix them firmly.

19. singulī . . . exculcābantur, each was stamped down with earth at the bottom, to the depth of a foot.

21. octōnī ōrdinēs: more than eighty-six of these pits have been discovered, some of them in a perfect state of preservation.

23. tōtae: the stakes were entirely sunk in the ground, so that only the hooks projected. Five of them were discovered in the course of Napoleon's excavations.

25. nōminābant: the nicknames (*cippī, lilia, stimulī*), given by the Roman soldiers to these contrivances, seem to indicate that they were new devices, possibly invented by Caesar himself.

1. secūtus, keeping to.

2. prō locī nātūrā limits *aequissimās*. Caesar made use of the level ground on top of the heights as far as he could, as well as that in the valleys.

XIII milia passuum: the line of circumvallation inclosed all the other works, the *castella*, and the camps. It had but a single ditch, and ran parallel to the contravallation in the plain, but was interrupted on the steep declivities where the nature of the ground made it unnecessary.

4. diversās, turned in the contrary direction.

5. mūnitiōnum praesidia: the garrisons of the single *castra* and *castella*.

7. convectum, in store, on hand.

*The Gauls  
assemble a  
large army.*

**75.** Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō  
 principum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent,  
 ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum  
 numerum cuique civitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitudīne  
 5 cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī  
 ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum  
 clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus,  
 milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs adiūctīs Eleutetīs,  
 Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse  
 10 cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs,  
 Carnutibus duodēna milia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus;  
 octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna  
 Andibus, Ambianīs, Mediomātricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nervīīs, Mo-  
 rinīs, Nitiobrogibus; v milia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totident  
 15 Atrebātibus; iiii Vellocassīs; Esviīs et Aulercīs Eburovīcibus  
 iiii; Rauracīs et Bōis bīna; x ūniversīs civitātibus, quae Ōceanum  
 attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuetūdine Aremoricae appellantur,  
 quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs,  
 Osismī, Venetī, Lexovīi, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum nume-  
 20 rum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum  
 Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō  
 obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius hospitiō duo  
 milia mīsērunt.

**5. discernere:** *i.e.*, to keep their own men together, and apart from other tribes.

**7. Segusiāvīs, etc.:** locate these tribes on the map. The list is probably not quite accurate, but the number of tribes named by Caesar shows the magnitude of the crisis.

**8. adiūctīs** = *ūnā cum*.

**13. Nervīīs:** see on Bk. II, 28, 8.

**20. suō . . . arbitriō,** *on their own account and according to their own ideas.*

**21. dicerent:** see on *diceret*, Bk. V, 6, 12.

**22. obtemperātūrōs:** in the year 57 this tribe had demanded for itself the supreme command; cf. Bk. II, 4, 13-16. *prō, in consideration of.*



*The army of relief sets out for Alesia, confident of immediate success.*

76. Huius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristināe bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equitum milibus viii et peditum circiter ccl haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

77. At ii, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsumptō omni frūmentō,

1. operā, *services*. antea: cf. Bk. IV, 21, 13-17.

3. civitatem eius: the Atrebates.

4. immūnem, *free from tribute*; from this we may infer that the other states overthrown by Caesar were regularly not free from tribute, and did not have their own laws and constitution.

5. Morinōs attribuerat: as a dependent state.

ūniversae . . . cōsēnsiō: the expression is not quite accurate. The Aquitani, Treveri, Lingones, and a number of small tribes held aloof.

8. movērētur: sc. *Commīus* as subject.

animō et opibus, *with (their whole) soul and (all their) resources*.

15. ad, *for*; for the prep. see App. 131, a; A. 428, a; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453, 1.

16. aspectum modo, *the mere sight*.

18. ancipiti proeliō: explained by the following clauses, with the contrast between *ex oppidō* and *foris*.

*The Gauls in Alesia hold a council. The desperate proposal of Critognatus.*

- inseii quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crudelitātem. Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsensū pristinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, non virtūs, paulisper inōpiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propinquīs cōnsanguineisque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in

3. quid . . . gererētur: indirect question depending on *inseii*.

in Haeduīs: the council of the Gauls (ch. 75, 1, 2), had probably assembled at Bibracte, the capital of the Haedui.

6. suppeterent: implied indirect discourse.

cēnsēbat, were in favor of.

nōn praetereunda, must not be left unmentioned.

9. magnae . . . auctōritātis, considered (a man) of great authority.

11. neque . . . cēnseō gives the reason for nihil . . . dictūrus sum.

12. cum . . . est, I am concerned with those.

14. residēre, (still) to remain.

ista: the gender is attracted to that of the predicate noun.

15. quī, men who; the clause is descriptive.

17. atque, now.

18. dignitās, authority of those who were in favor of making a sally.

22. animī depends on quid, a striking illustration of the fondness of the Latin for separating the genitive of the whole from the word on which it depends. Translate the passage, what courage do you think our relatives and kinsmen will have? etc.

ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī 25 imbēcillitate omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaep̄tō, 30 hīs ūtiminī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quidergō mei cōsili est? Facere, quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac simili inopiā subactī eōrum corporibus quī aetate ad 35 bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque inlātā calamitate finibus quidem nostrīs ali- 40

23. nōlite . . . exspoliāre: see App. 219; A. 450; B. 276, c; H. 561, 1; H.-B. 501, 3, 2.

28. ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus: the outer line of works, the circumvallation described in ch. 74, 1-4.

29. animī . . . causā, for *pastime*; cf. *animī . . . causā*, Bk. V, 12, 14.

30. illōrum: *i.e.*, the Gallic army of relief.

32. quid . . . est, *what, then, is my plan?*

33. cōsili: pred. genitive.

nēquāquam . . . Teutonumque, *in the war with the Cimbri and Teutons, (a struggle) by no means equal to this*; see on Galliā vexatā, Bk. II, 4, 6.

37. exemplum, *precedent*.

38. institui, *to be established*.

pulcherrimum is in pred. agreement with (*exemplum*) institui et. . . prōdī.

39. quid . . . fuit, *what likeness had that war to this of ours?*

bellō: dat. of possession.

dēpopulātā is used passively; see on dīmēnsō, Bk. II, 19, 14.

40. quidem . . . excessērunt: *quidem* shows that the preceding ablatives absolute have an adversative force. Translate *they did at last leave*, etc.

quandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs civitatibusque  
 45 cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquis nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis securibus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

*The Gauls attempt to send away all who are unfit for war. Caesar refuses them passage.*

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excedant, atque omnia prius experienda arbitrantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō  
 5 tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem  
 10 receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiīs recipi prohibēbat.

*The besiegers besieged. The Gauls in Alesia prepare for an assault.*

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō

41. aliās terrās petiērunt: the German invaders, after ravaging Celtic Gaul and defeating several armies, had turned westward and crossed the Pyrenees. Fortunately for Rome they did not return for two or three years, and then their overthrow followed at the hands of Marius.

43. quōs: its antecedent is hōrum.

46. aliā condiciōne, on any other terms, i.e., for any other purpose.

49. securibus: the axes of the proconsul's lictors, the symbol of Roman power.

1. cōstituunt ut: what is the usual construction after cōstituere? Cf. Bk. III, 1, 12, and Bk. IV, 6, 12.

4. dēscendant: meaning as in Bk. VI, 16, 14.

10. cibō iuvārent, feed.

3. ad, into the vicinity of.

exteriōre: i.e., outside of Caesar's line of defense. The hill was south-west of Alesia.

nōn longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, 5 quam in longitudinem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis visīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque 10 prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

*A long and desperate cavalry engagement. Thanks to the German cavalry the Gauls are repulsed.*

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, 5 dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcērant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum 10 suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfiderent et nostrōs mul-

5. plānitiem . . . dēmōnstrāvimus: the plain of Laumes; cf. ch. 69, 4, 5.

9. fit grātulātiō inter eōs = grātulantur inter sē.

11. proximam fossam: the one described in ch. 72, 2-5.

12. aggere: i.e., with such materials as were used in the construction of an agger.

1. ad utramque partem: the inner line of defense, facing Vercingetorix in Alesia, and the outer, which faced the army of relief.

2. sī ūsus veniat, in case of need.

3. teneat (sc. memoriā) et nōverit: the second verb explains the first.

5. quae . . . tenēbant: the infantry camps were stationed on the heights.

7. rārōs: used predicatively, here and there.

expeditōs: a substantive. This device was adopted in imitation of certain German troops, which, according to Caesar, were made up of mingled cavalymen and foot-soldiers, in equal numbers.

10. complūrēs: i.e., of the Roman horse.

- titūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in  
 15 cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque aut rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertis turmis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt;  
 20 quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cēdentēs usque ad castra insecūti suī colligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesia prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

*A night attack upon the Romans from within and from without.*

81. Ūnō diē intermissō atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō Gallī mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō,  
 5 quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vallō prōturbāre, reliquaue quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō

15. neque . . . poterat, *no deed either brave or cowardly could pass unnoticed.*

18. dubiā victōriā, *without decisive results.*

Germānī: the German cavalry had already proved to be excellent fighters, and had several times won the day for the Romans in this campaign, once already at Alesia; cf. ch. 70, 4-10.

21. cēdentēs: *sc. eōs.*

1. ūnō, *only one*; see on *annō*, Bk. IV, 1, 14.

2. harpagōnum, *grappling-hooks*, fastened to long poles, which were to be used in tearing down Caesar's rampart of hurdles.

3. Gallī: those of the relieving army.

4. campestrēs mūnitiōnēs: the fortification in the plain of Laumes, where the Romans had not the advantage of the higher position.

5. quā introduces a purpose clause.

6. crātēs prōicere: in order to bridge over the trench.

ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus 10  
attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus sudibusque,  
quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.  
Prōspectū tenebris adēmtō multa utrimque vulnera accipiun-  
tur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius  
et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum 15  
obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs  
auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

*At first the  
Gauls have the  
advantage. The  
Gallic force  
from Alesia  
arrives too late  
to cooperate.*

82. Dum longius aberant Galli, plūs multi-  
tūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius  
successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant  
aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō  
ac turribus trāiectī pilīs mūrālibus interībant. Multis undique 5  
vulneribus acceptīs nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpe-  
teret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne  
circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum  
ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant

10. ut superiōribus diēbus, etc.: cf. ch. 80, 1-3.

11. fundīs librilibus: stones weighing a pound, hurled by means of a rope or strap attached.

sudibus: sharp, fire-hardened stakes, which were hurled like javelins.

12. glandibus: for illis. see Vocabulary.

13. prōspectū tenebris adēmtō, as their sight was obscured by the darkness.

14. M. Antōnius: the triumvir.

16. quā ex parte = sī quā ex parte.

16. hīs auxiliō: the datives to which and for which.

17. ex . . . dēductōs, troops brought from the more distant redoubts.

1. dum, as long as.

3. stimulis . . . induēbant: cf. ch. 73, 23-25.

4. dēlātī, fell . . . and.

5. pilīs mūrālibus: these weapons, longer than ordinary javelins, were hurled from the walls, perhaps by engines.

6. nullā . . . perruptā, without breaking through at any point.

adpeteret = adpropinquāret.

7. superiōribus castris: the camps on the heights, north and south of the town; see ch. 80, 4, 5.

8. interiōrēs = quī in oppidō obsidēbantur.

- 10 *prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus adminis-*  
*trandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mū-*  
*nitiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum rever-*  
*tērunt.*

*The army of  
 relief, twice re-  
 pulsed, makes  
 an attack  
 on the north.*

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Galli,  
 quid agant, cōsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent;  
 ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque  
 cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter  
 5 magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī;  
 necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcērant.  
 Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum  
 duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitis per explōrātōrēs  
 regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omni numerō dēligunt  
 10 eārum cīvitatū quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant;  
 quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt,  
 adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs  
 cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus,  
 propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā  
 15 vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem  
 sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit.  
 Cum iam meridiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae  
 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus

10. *fossās*: the ditches described in ch. 73, 7-10. The plural denotes different parts of the same ditch.

2. *quid agant*: in the direct form *quid agāmus*. See App. 268, III; A. 587; B. 315, 3; H. 642, 3; H.-B. 503.

4. *collis*: Mont Rea.

5. *opere circumplectī*, to include within the line of fortifications; the abl. denotes means.

6. *lēniter dēclīvī* explains *inīquō locō*. The fact that this camp was on the slope of the hill and could be commanded from the summit (see Plan, D), was the reason why the Gauls directed their attack against it.

11. *quōque* = *et quō*.

12. *videātur*: in the direct form it would be *vidēbitur*.

14. *propinquum*: called *cōnsobrīnō* in ch. 76, 13.

15. *sub lūcem*: the time required shows that the route was a long, round-about one; see Plan.



ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

20

*The Romans are assailed all along the line, from within and without.*

**84.** Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur unō tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 5 Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnātibz existit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant. 10

*Both sides realize that it is "now or never." The Romans hard pressed on the north side.*

**85.** Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit unum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat; Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērānt; 5 Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniciunt,

5. quae . . . pars . . . hūc = *in eam partem quae.*

7. occurrit is used absolutely;—*offered resistance.*

8. quī . . . existit, *which arose in the rear of the fighters*; pugnātibz is a dative of reference.

suum . . . cōnstāre, *they realized that their own danger (i.e., escape from danger, or safety) depended on the bravery of others.* The Roman lines had to face both ways, defending the inner and outer works, and each line protected the rear of the other; if either gave way, it meant the destruction of the other.

10. quae absunt, *which are at a distance*, and therefore are unseen.

1. idōneum locum: at the northwest slope of the hill of Flavigny, marked by a cross on the Plan.

3. utrisque . . . occurrit, *both parties realized.* For the case of *utrisque* cf. *pugnātibz*, ch. 84, 8.

6. Sī . . . obtinuerint, *if they win the struggle.*

8. inīquum . . . fastigium, *the unfavorable slope of the ground downward*; see on *lēniter dēclivī*, ch. 83, 6.

10 alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmāni contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec virēs suppetunt.

*Caesar sends Labienus with reinforcements. He encourages his men.*

86. His rēbus cognitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus vi subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum, loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitudīne tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs  
5 dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

*Caesar directs the contests all along the line. He hurries to the support of Labienus.*

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis  
5 hostibus eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs III ex

11. **agger**: see on *aggere*, ch. 79, 12.

**mūnitiōnem**: the works described in ch. 73, 7-25.

1. **Labiēnum**: he probably commanded the camp at C, northeast of Alesia.

3. **dēductis cohortibus**: he was, first of all, to try to hold his ground (*sustinere* is used absolutely). Only in case of need was he to withdraw as many cohorts as possible, from their position on the rampart, and make a sally. **ēruptiōne pugnet** = *ēruptiōnem faciat*.

6. **interiōrēs**: as in ch. 82, 8.

7. **dēspērātis . . . locis**: they gave up hope of storming the elaborate defensive works on the plain, and attempted to climb the steep ascent of Mt. Flavigny, where there were only the trench, wall, and towers to be overcome.

9. **ex turribus prōpugnantēs** = *eōs quī ex turribus prōpugnant*.

1. **Brūtum**: cf. Bk. III, 11, 11.

**cum cohortibus**, with (some) cohorts.

3. **integrōs**, fresh troops. A troop of Brutus and one of Fabius had already been engaged.

5. **eō**: to Mont Rea.

proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit 10 certiōrem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

*On Caesar's arrival the tide of battle turns. The Gauls flee, but are not pursued.*

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt.

Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus 5 mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissis pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā 10 comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte

7. *circumīre exteriōrēs*, etc.: cavalry, probably from camp G, were to ride around the lines on the outside so as to attack the enemy in the rear.

9. *quās . . . obtulit*: the circumstances made a selection impossible.

11. *quid faciendum*: i.e., a sally; see ch. 86, 3.

In this chapter note the rapidity and vividness given to the narrative by the numerous short sentences unconnected by conjunctions (asyndeton).

1. *colōre*: Caesar wore the purple military cloak (*palūdāmentum*), the distinguishing mark of the commanding general.

3. *ut . . . cernēbantur* (sc. *ab hostibus*) gives the reason of *cognitō* and *vīsīs*. *dē locīs superiōribus*: the slopes of Mont Rea.

*dēclīvia et dēvexa*: the hill of Flavigny. The Gauls could not see the cavalry that had been sent to fall upon their rear (ch. 87, 6, 7), or they probably would not have attacked the Romans who were in their front.

5. *utrimque*: i.e., *ab exteriōribus et ab interiōribus hostibus*.

*excipit rūrsus*, *answers*; the verb is used absolutely.

6. *ēmissis pilīs*: the fact that the Romans were on lower ground made a contest with missile weapons especially disadvantageous to them.

12. *tantō numerō*: 60,000 men; cf. 83, 9.

cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā  
 15 ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiīs ac tōtius  
 diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiaē dēlērī  
 potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum ag-  
 men cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur;  
 reliquī ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt.

*Vercingetorix  
surrenders.*

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō  
 id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātum,  
 sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit  
 fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte  
 5 suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur  
 dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs  
 prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsidit; eō ducēs  
 prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reser-  
 vātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitātēs recuperāre  
 10 posset, ex reliquis captivīs tōtī exercitui capita singula praedae  
 nōmine distribuit.

*Distribution  
of the army  
for the winter.  
Caesar's third  
thanksgiving.*

90. His rēbus cōflectis in Haeduōs proficiscitur;  
 civitatem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missi quae  
 imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum

14. fit . . . fuga = *fugiunt*.

15. crēbris subsidiis: the numerous marches here and there to aid their comrades at threatened points.

2. suārum necessitātum, *of his own personal advantage*.

8. Vercingetorix dēditur: it is to be regretted that Caesar's clemency, so often shown toward less worthy antagonists, was not extended to the gallant Vercingetorix. The chief of the Arverni was a man of really remarkable military skill and power of organization, and in political ability and patriotism was far superior to any other of Caesar's Gallic foes. But a leader of his character was the very one who could expect no mercy. Caesar was first of all a Roman, and in Vercingetorix he saw only the most skillful and dangerous enemy that had ever threatened his power over the hard-won Gallic territory. The captive was sent to Rome, where he lay in a dungeon for six years. At last, in 45 B.C., he was led in chains before Caesar's triumphal car, and then was executed at the foot of the Capitol while his conqueror, at the altar above, was offering solemn sacrifice and thanksgiving to the gods of victorious Rome.

10. capita singula, *a captive apiece*.

2. recipit: *i.e., in dēditiōnem*.

numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx milia Haeduīs Arvernīque reddit. T. Labiēnum 5 cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturī- 10 gēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Maticōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum xx supplicātiō redditur. 15

7. *attribuit*: i.e., he placed Sempronius Rutilus under the orders of Labienus.

9. *nē . . . accipiant*: Caesar was afraid that the Remi, because they had remained faithful to the Romans, would be harassed by the Bellovaci.

15. *diērum . . . supplicātiō*: see on *supplicātiō*, Bk. II, 35, 10, and *accidit nulli*, Bk. II, 35. 11.

*redditur*, was decreed to the gods in return for (red-) victory.

## PART III

### SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS

Cornelius Nepos, the author of the brief biographies which follow, lived in the first century B.C. Nothing is known of his life beyond the fact that he was a friend of Cicero, the orator, and of the poet Catullus. The work from which the following selections are taken was a series of biographies consisting of sixteen books, most of which are lost. The surviving portion comprises twenty-five biographies of generals and statesmen, chiefly Greeks. Most of the sketches are very brief, but they serve to supplement the knowledge which we have from other sources regarding the persons of whom they treat.

#### 1. ARISTIDĒS

1. Aristidēs, Lysimachī filius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis ferē fuit Themistoclī atque cum eō dē prīncipātū contendit. In hīs autem cognitum est quantō antestāret ēloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat Aristidēs abstinentiā, ut  
5 ūnus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nōs audierīmus, cognōmine Iūstus sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle conlabefactus testulā illā exsiliō decem annōrum multātus est.

1. *Lysimachī*: nothing further is known of him.

*Athēniēnsis*: nominative.

2. *Themistoclī*: may be either a dative or a genitive.

3. *innocentiae*: dative with a compound of *ante*.

4. *adeō*, so far.

ut ūnus sit appellātus, *that he was the only man who was called.*

5. *audierīmus*: a relative clause of parenthetical nature, with its verb in the subjunctive, is sometimes used to restrict the application of the antecedent. In this form of clause *quidem* frequently follows the relative.

7. *testulā . . . multātus est*, freely, *he was condemned to ten years' exile in accordance with a vote by the familiar method of ostracism*; *testulā* is an ablative of means, and *exsiliō* is an ablative of the penalty. The Athenians could by a popular vote send into exile for a period of years any citizen who was considered to be dangerous to the liberty of the state. In the case of Aristides the hostility of the ignorant class was aroused by his political enemies, and he was thus condemned to banishment. The word ostracism is derived from a Greek word meaning the same as the Latin *testula*, because in balloting an earthenware tablet was used. The word *ille*, when following its noun, means *the well-known*. Nepos implies that this custom of the Athenians was familiar to his readers.

Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī concitātam multitudinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scribentem ut patriā pellerētur, quaesisse ab eō dīcitur quārē id faceret 10 aut quid Aristidēs commīsisset, cūr tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre Aristidēn, sed sibi nōn placēre quod tam cupidē labōrāset ut praeter cēterōs Iustus appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit, sextō 15 ferē annō quam erat expulsus, populī scītō in patriam restitūsus est.

2. Interfuit autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, quae facta est priusquam poenā liberārētur. Idem praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās in proeliō quō Mardonius fūsus barbarūmque exercitus interfectus est. Neque aliud est ūllum huius

8. quī quidem cum, *when he; quidem* must be omitted in translation.

9. cēdēnsque, *and as he was withdrawing, i.e.,* from the assembly where the voting was going on.

ut pellerētur: a substantive clause, expressing will. What the man wrote on the tablet was an expression of his desire that Aristides should go into banishment.

11. poenā: for the case, see App. 149, a; A. 418, b; B. 226, 2; H. 481; H.-B. 442.

dūcerētur, *should be considered.*

12. sibi nōn placēre, etc., *he did not like it that he (Aristides) had endeavored so eagerly to be called the Just, in preference to all others.*

14. poenam nōn pertulit, *did not complete the term of his punishment.*

15. dēscendit: this verb is frequently used to denote movement toward the coast from a point inland.

sextō annō quam, *in the sixth year after.*

16. populī scītō: a decree of the Roman people was regularly *plēbis scītum*, or, as one word, *plēbiscītum*. The phrase which Nepos here uses was employed to denote a law of a similar sort passed in a foreign country. In later times, however, this term was used as an equivalent of *plēbiscītum* to refer to a Roman popular enactment.

restitūsus est, *was recalled.*

1. Salamīna: accusative of a Greek noun of the third declension. The battle of Salamis was fought in the year 480 B.C.

2. poenā: ablative of separation.

praetor: the word here means "commander."

3. fūsus (*est*), *was routed.*

5 in rē militārī inlūstre factum quam huius imperī memoria,  
iūstitiae vērō et aequitātis et innocentiae multa, in primīs quod  
eius aequitāte factum est, cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae  
simul cum Pausaniā, quō duce Mardonius erat fugātus, ut summa  
imperī maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trāsferrētur ad Athēniēn-  
10 sēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lace-  
daemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā Pausaniae et iūstitiā  
factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē civitātēs Graeciae ad Athē-  
niēnsium societātem sē adplicārent et adversus barbarōs hōs  
ducēs dēligerent sibi.

3. Quōs quō facilius repellerent, si forte bellum renovāre cō-  
nārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs  
quantum pecūniae quaeque civitās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus  
est quī cōstitueret, eiusque arbitriō quadringēna et sexāgēna  
5 talenta quotannis Dēlum sunt conlāta; id enim commūne  
aerārium esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō tempore  
Athēnās trāslāta est. Hic quā fuerit abstinentiā, nūllum  
est certius indicium quam quod, cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,

5. huius imperī: freely, of his management of affairs on this occasion.

6. multa (sunt), there are many instances.

in primīs quod, especially that.

7. factum est: the subject is the clause ut . . . trāsferrētur, l. 8.  
esset: the subject refers to Aristides.

12. ad Athēniēnsium, etc., allied themselves closely with the Athenians.

13. hōs: the Athenians.

14. ducēs, as leaders.

1. quōs: the barbarians.

cōnārentur: the conditional clause was future in the thought of the  
Athenians, but it has a past point of view, as quoted.

2. ad . . . comparandōs: the gerundive phrases depend on daret, l. 3.

3. quantum . . . daret, how much money each state should give.

pecūniae: genitive of the whole.

4. quadringēna et sexāgēna: the distributive numerals are used because  
the amount named was not a single sum of money, but an amount for each  
year.

5. Dēlum: Apollo's temple at Delos was the place of a famous oracle.

7. abstinentiā: descriptive ablative.

8. quod, the fact that. cum praefuisset: an adversative clause.



in tantā paupertāte dēcessit, ut quī efferrētur vix reliquerit. Quō factum est ut filiae eius públicē alerentur et dē commūnī 10 aerariō dōtibz datīs conlocārentur. Dēcessit autem ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus.

9. quī, means with which; quī is an adverb.

10. dē commūnī aerariō, etc., their marriages were arranged for with dowries provided from the public treasury.

## 2. HAMILCAR

1. Hamilcar, Hannibalis filius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, primō Pūnicō bellō, sed temporibus extrēmīs, admodum adulēscēntulus in Siciliā praeesse coepit exercitui. Cum ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium, ipse ubi adfuit numquam hostī cessit neque locum 5 nocendī dedit, saepeque occāsiōne datā lacessivit semperque superior discessit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī amīssissent, ille Erycem sic dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs classe apud insulās Aegātēs ā C. Lutātiō, cōsule Rōmānōrum, superātī 10 statuērunt bellī facere finem eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt

1. **Hannibalis:** Hamilcar's son, the great adversary of the Romans, bore the name of his grandfather.

**cognōmine Barca,** having the surname Barca.

2. **Pūnicō:** the city of Carthage was founded by the Phoenicians, with whose name the word *Pūnicus* is connected in derivation.

3. **cum, while.** Hamilcar took command in 247 B.C.

4. **male rēs gererentur:** the Carthaginians had given a fairly good account of themselves in the naval battles.

5. **locum nocendī,** a chance to inflict any injury.

6. **saepeque:** the force of *-que* is adversative.

8. **ut . . . vidērētur:** Nepos apparently means to imply that all traces of the activity of the enemy were cleared away from this region.

9. **classe:** to be construed with *superātī*.

10. **Lutātiō:** his full name was Gaius Lutatius Catulus. His victory over the Carthaginian fleet was won in the year 241 B.C. See p. 92.

Hamilcaris. Ille etsi flagrabat bellandi cupiditate, tamen paci  
serviundum putavit, quod patriam exhaustam sumptibus diu-  
tius calamitatis belli ferre non posse intellegebat, sed ita ut  
15 statim mente agitare, si paulum modo res essent refectae,  
bellum renovare Romanosque armis persequi donec aut  
virtute vicerent aut victi manus dedissent. Hoc consilio  
pacem conciliavit, in quo tanta fuit ferocia, cum Catulus negaret  
bellum compositum nisi ille cum suis, qui Erycem tenuerunt,  
20 armis relictis, Sicilia decederent, ut succumbente patria ipse  
peritum se potius dixerit quam cum tanto flagitio domum  
rediret: non enim suae esse virtutis arma a patria accepta adver-  
sus hostes adversariis tradere. Huius pertinacia cessit Catulus.

2. At ille ut Carthaginem venit, multo aliter ac sperarat rem  
publicam se habentem cognovit. Namque diuturnitate externi  
mali tantum exarsit intestinum bellum, ut numquam pari  
periculo fuerit Carthago nisi cum delata est. Primo mercen-  
5 narii milites, qui adversus Romanos fuerant, desciverunt, quo-  
rum numerus erat viginti milium. Hi totam abalienarunt  
Africam, ipsam Carthaginem oppugnaverunt. Quibus malis

12. bellandi cupiditate: compare Caesar's phrase, *bellandi cupidus*, Bk. I, 2, 14.

paci serviundum, that it was best to direct his efforts toward bringing about peace.

15. mente agitare, was planning.

16. donec: an old form of *donec*, not often used.

17. manus dedissent, had yielded.

18. ferocia: a descriptive ablative.

19. compositum (esse): supply *se* as subject.

suis: masculine.

20. decederent: the verb is plural to agree with the plural subject implied by the phrase *ille cum suis*.

succumbente patria, even if his country should be destroyed.

23. pertinacia: dative.

1. ut, when.

2. diuturnitate: ablative of cause.

4. mercennarii: mercenaries from these same regions were also employed by Hannibal in the Second Punic War.

6. abalienarunt, oppugnaverunt: asyndeton.

adeo sunt Poeni perterriti ut etiam auxilia ab Romanis petierint eaque impetrarint. Sed extremo, cum prope iam ad desperationem pervenissent, Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt. Is non solum hostes a muris Carthaginis removit, cum amplius centum milia facta essent armatorum, sed etiam eo compulit, ut locorum angustiis clausi plures fame quam ferro interirent. Omnia oppida abalienata, in his Uticam atque Hipponem, valentissima totius Africae, restituit patriae. Neque eo fuit contentus, sed etiam fines imperii propagavit, tota Africa tantum otium reddidit, ut nullum in ea bellum videretur multis annis fuisse.

3. Rebus his ex sententia peractis fidenti animo atque infesto Romanis, quo facilius causam bellandi reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens inlustris, Hasdrubal; Hamilcare occiso ille exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit et princeps largitione vetustos pervertit mores Carthaginensium eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accipit imperium.

4. At Hamilcar, posteaquam mare transiit in Hispaniamque venit, magnas res secundae gessit fortunae; maximas bellicosissimaeque gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecunia totam

9. *impetrarint*: the Romans did not send troops, however.

11. *cum . . . facta essent*, although their number had increased to more than a hundred thousand.

14. *abalienata*: translate by a relative clause.

16. *Africa*: in expressions of Place Where containing the adjective *totus* or *omnis* the preposition is often omitted.

17. *multis annis*: sometimes the ideas of Time within Which and Duration of Time are so closely related that the author may employ whichever one he chooses.

1. *rebus his*: an unusual order.

3. *imperator*: a predicate appositive.

6. *princeps pervertit*, he was the first to undermine.

7. *eiusdem post mortem*: he was assassinated by a slave.

2. *bellicosissimae gentes*: in later times the Romans found it no easy task to bring the Spanish tribes into submission.

locuplētāvit Āfricam. Hic cum in Italiam bellum inferre  
 5 meditārētur, nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, in  
 proeliō pugnāns adversus Vettōnēs occisus est. Huius per-  
 petuum odium ergā Rōmānōs maximē concitāsse vidētur  
 secundum bellum Pūnicum. Namque Hannibal, filius eius,  
 adsiduīs patris obtestātiōnibus eō est perductus ut interire  
 10 quam Rōmānōs nōn experīri māllet.

4. in Italiam bellum inferre, to transfer the war to Italy.

9. obtestātiōnibus: when Hannibal was nine years old he was taken to the altar by his father, and there made to swear lifelong hatred to Rome.

### 3. HANNIBAL

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte  
 superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse  
 cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentīā, quantō populus Rōmānus  
 5 antecēdat fortitudīne cūctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque  
 cum eō congressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod  
 nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs  
 vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit  
 ūnīus virtūtem.  
 10 Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā  
 Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit;

1. Carthāginiēnsis: nominative, used without a verb, as a part of the title of the narrative.

2. quod: relative pronoun.

ut . . . superārit: subject of *est* in line 1; *superārit* is a contracted form of *superāverit*.

4. imperātōrēs: in Caesar a dative would have been used.

5. cūctās, all other.

6. congressus est: the subject refers to Hannibal.

7. invidiā: Hannibal did not have the whole-hearted support of the Carthaginian government in his campaigns, and his military operations were hampered from this fact. The opposition to him appears to have been based on personal considerations and reasons of political partisanship.

quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārū opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrārent 5 darentque operam cōsiliīs clandestinīs ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia atque antea sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōsiliīs sēgregārī vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē 10 suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adiūnxit: "pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivī ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. 15 Id cum libenter accēpīsem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam

12. quī . . . dēstiterit: a causal relative clause.

opum: genitive with *indigēō*.

1. Philippum: Philip the Fifth, king of Macedonia. He was engaged in two wars with Rome.

2. Antiochus: Antiochus the Great, king of Syria from 223 to 179 B.C.

6. darent operam, etc., to endeavor by secret plots to make Hannibal an object of suspicion to the king; quī darent is a relative clause of purpose.

8. alia . . . sentīret, held different sentiments from what he had formerly held.

neque frūstrā = et (cum) nōn frūstrā: the past perfects which follow are coördinate with vēnissent, line 5.

10. tempore, opportunity.

12. inquit: omit in translation.

14. Iovī: Nepos uses the name of the greatest of the gods of the Romans to denote the Carthaginian or Phoenician deity, Baal.

dīvīna rēs, solemn rites.

15. cōficiēbātur: the use of the imperfect with dum meaning "while" is not according to the best Latin usage.

17. dūcere: the object is omitted.

postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre iussit  
 20 numquā mē in amicitia cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patrī datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī ūt nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādē mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis, nōn imprūdentē fēceris, sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem  
 25 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō principem posueris."

3. Hāc igitur quā diximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est, cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātū omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem delātum  
 5 publicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annis nātus imperātor factus proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederatam civitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex his ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in  
 10 Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcīt, cum omnibus incolis cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Graium  
 15 trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Graius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concidit, loca patefēcīt, itinera mūniit, effēcīt ut eā elephantus ōrnātus ire posset, quā antea

24. cēlāris: contracted form of *cēlāveris*.

2. imperātōre: in predicate relation to *suffectō*.

4. Carthāginem: Place to Which construction, with *delātum*. English would employ the Place at Which construction.

6. annis: ablative of comparison; the accusative might have been used, as in ch. 2, 13.

7. Saguntum: the siege of this city by Hannibal was the immediate cause of the Second Punic war. Saguntum had a treaty of alliance with Rome.

17. mūniit, constructed.

ōrnātus, fully equipped. On the back of the elephants there was fastened a sort of open box in which several soldiers rode.

posset: in a substantive clause introduced by *ut*.

ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

4. Cōnfixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōn-  
sule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidī apud Padum  
dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem  
Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit.  
Cum iīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōfligāvit. Inde per Li- 5  
gurēs Āpenninum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō  
gravī morbō adficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō  
aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamnum premerētur  
lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum  
cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occīdit, neque multō post 10  
C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem.  
Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vērunt duo cōn-  
sulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō  
proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā  
cōsulārēs, in hīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō 15  
fuerat cōsul.

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nullō resistente.  
In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi

18. in Italiamque = *et in Italiam*; the Latin prefers to attach *-que* to the object of a preposition rather than to the preposition.

1. cōnfixerat: Nepos proceeds to take up the narrative of events in Italy, and so uses the past perfect for an act which preceded the main events of his narrative. The engagement at the Rhone was of little importance.

2. Clastidī: locative. The battle really took place on the banks of the river Ticinus.

5. utrōsque: used instead of *utrumque*; a conjunction is omitted.

9. Trasumēnum: the Romans were caught in a defile near the north side of the lake, and lost half their number in the battle. The remainder of the army was completely scattered.

13. ūnō proeliō: the battle of Cannae. The order of events here given is not exact. The battle of Cannae was fought in the year 216 B.C., while the campaign of Fabius Maximus, which is mentioned in the next chapter, belongs to the preceding year.

1. pugnātā: except when used with such words as *pugna*, the passive forms of this verb are impersonal.

- diēs castra hābuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē obiēcit. Hīc
- 5 clausus locōrum angustīs noctū sine ullō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expēdīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligāta incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō vīsū obiectō tantum terrōrem iniēcit
- 10 exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in insidiās inductum
- 15 sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquē cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit; quamdiū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem pugnam in
- 20 campō castra posuit.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsūm revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congregerētur.
- 5 In colloquium convēnit, condiōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadru-

3. Q. Fabius Maximus: he was known as the "Delayer" (*Cūclātor*) from the plan which he adopted of attempting to avoid battle and wear out the eneīny without risking a combat.

6. dedit verba, *deceived*.

7. obductā nocte, *when night had come on*.

12. parī imperiō: descriptive ablative.

16. longum est, *it would be a long task*.

1. dēfēnsūm: a supine, expressing purpose.

4. impraesentiārum: Caesar would have said *in praesentiā*.

5. quō: when does this word introduce a purpose clause?



mētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē 10 excesserant, insidiātī sunt ei, quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrumētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit, novīs dīlētibus paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitū postea praefuit rēsq̄ue in Āfricā gessit usque ad P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. His enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt quī senātū popu- 5 lōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem coronā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis essent captivīque redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, 10 futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimū nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, 15 praetor factus est, postquam rēx fuerat, annō secūdō et vicēsīmō; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annuī binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligentiā sē

9. ab Zamā: names of cities take the ablative with a preposition to denote the point from which distance is measured.

11. ei: *insidiator* takes a dependent dative.

3. usque ad, etc., till the consulship of Publius Sulpicius and Gaius Aurelius.

4. his magistrātibus: ablative absolute.

8. Fregellis: the envoys did not ask that their hostages be returned, but merely that they be transferred from the place where they were kept to the town of Fregellae.

9. senātūs cōsultō: the order of words in this phrase is unvarying.

12. foret = *esset*.

16. rēx: the title of the chief magistrates of Carthage was "suffete." Nepos is using the word *rēx* as an equivalent for this word.

18. parī . . . ac, the same . . . as.

Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex  
 20 novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis  
 ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset quae in aerariō  
 repōnerētur. Deinde annō post praetūram, M. Claudiō L.  
 Fūriō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vērunt. Hōs  
 Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs  
 25 senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad  
 Antiochum prōfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvēs duās,  
 quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, mīsērunt,  
 bona eius públicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt,  
 ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō prōfūgerat, L.  
 Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīque nāvibus Āfricam  
 accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad  
 bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque indūcere posset, cui iam per-  
 5 suāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficiscerētur. Hūc  
 Māgōnem frātre excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīverunt, Māgō-  
 nem eādem quā frātre absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī  
 dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent,  
 Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex  
 10 memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulis  
 ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem

20. quae penderētur: a relative clause of purpose (so also quae repōnerē-  
 tur).

24. grātiā: a synonym of the ablative *causā*, preceded by a genitive.

25. senātus: i.e., a hearing by the senate.

28. públicārunt: apparently the Carthaginians hoped that by the  
 sacrifice of Hannibal they might save their city from the complete destruc-  
 tion to which they felt sure the Romans had doomed it.

2. Āfricam: Caesar uses *ad* with the accusative after *accēdō*.

3. sī posset, *hoping that he could*.

4. Antiochī: objective genitive, with *spē fidūciāque*.

7. illī: nominative, referring to Hannibal and Mago.

9. duplex memoria, *two different reports*.

11. interfectum (*esse*): this word is appropriate only with *ā servulis*;  
 with *naufragiō* some such word as *periisse* is understood.

sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliis eius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberī quam in Thermopylis dē summā imperī dīmicāset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nullā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, 15 quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylō marī cōnflīxit. In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

9. Antiochō fugātō verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcū pecūniā 5 portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmā. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis statuās aēneās, quās sēcū portābat, 10 omnēs suā pecūniā complet easque in prōpatulō domi abicit. Gortyniī templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus iis tolleret sēcūmque dūceret.

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus inlūsīs Crētēnsibus omnibus ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō

12. tam voluisset . . . quam, *had been as willing . . . as.*

13. Tiberī: what case does Caesar use with *propius*?

Thermopylis: the defeat of Antiochus by the Romans at Thermopylae occurred in the year 191 B.C.

18. ipse rem gessit: *i.e.*, commanded in person.

1. fugātō: in the battle of Magnesia, in 190 B.C.

2. sī . . . potestātem, *if he had put himself in his (Antiochus') power.* Gortyniōs: the name of the people used instead of the name of the city.

4. nisi quid prōvidisset, *unless he should take some sort of precautions.*

7. summās: supply *amphorās*. Translate by an English noun.

13. inscientibus iis: ablative absolute; *sē* or *ipsīs* might have been used instead of *iis*. *tolleret*, *should carry off his property.*

1. Poenus: Hannibal.

fuit ergā Italiam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobīque Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem; quem sī remōvisset, faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem: classe paucis diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vīvās conligī eāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiārīōs convocat iisque praecipit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iis pollicētur praemiō fore.

11. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrisque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitūtā, priusquam

3. neque . . . armāvit, freely, and he set about inducing the king to go to war.

4. domesticis opibus: the resources of the Bithynians alone were not sufficient to give promise of a successful war against the Romans.

8. quō: ablative, expressing both degree of difference and cause.

9. utrobīque = *et marī et terrā*.

10. remōvisset: for a future perfect in direct discourse.

12. classe: ablative of means.

superābātur: the subject refers to Hannibal.

18. habeant: coördinate with *concurrant*.

19. id: object of *cōsecūtūrōs* (*esse*): the indirect statement depends on a word of saying implied by *praecipit*.

20. ut scīrent: object of *factūrum*;—*he would make it clear to them*.

21. magnō iis praemiō fore, *they would receive a great reward*; *praemiō* is dative.

2. quārum: supply *classium*.

signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque osten- 5 dēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quā aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius ducis nāve dēclārātā suis eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistolā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad inridendum eum pertinērent. Cuius 10 reī etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithyniī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petit, quam cōsecūtus nōn esset nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, 15 quae in proximō litore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō risum pugnantibus concitārunť, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās 20 cōspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Per-

3. **suis**: dative with *palam faceret*, which = *ostenderet*.

6. **rēgem**: object of *quaerere*.

8. **ducis**: modifies *nāve*.

**eōdem**: adverb.

9. **solūtā**, *opened* (lit. *unfastened*).

10. **quae pertinērent**, *which would tend*.

12. **dubitāvit**: observe the different meaning of this word in line 7 (*dubitābat*) and note the dependent construction in each of the two passages.

15. **quam**: the antecedent is *salūtem*.

17. **adversāriōs**: the Bithynians.

19. **quae iacta**: the most important part of the thought is not in the pronoun, but in the participle which modifies it.

**pugnantibus**, *on the part of the fighters*; a dative of reference.

22. **vitārent**: the question in direct form would be *quid vitēmus*.

23. **cōnsiliō, arma**: a rhetorical contrast.

gamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedes-  
 25 tribus cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iīs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātui dētulit.

5 Patrēs cōscriptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bīthyniam mīsērunt, in hīs Flāmininum, quī ab rēge petērent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent quod adversus  
 10 iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in cāstellō quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibūs partibūs aedificī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum venis-  
 15 sent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī dixit plūrēs praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere. Quī imperāvit ei ut omnēs forēs aedificī circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique

25. prūdentiā: ablative of manner.

1. geruntur: why present tense?

3. ex iīs: the usual substitute for a genitive of the whole after ūnus, duo, trēs, or quādam. But occasionally ūnus is modified by the genitive.

7. suum, sēcum, sibi: a rather unusual employment of the reflexive; suum refers to the Romans, sē to the king, and sibi to the Romans.

8. habēret, dēderet: the negative force of the conjunction nē affects only the first of the two verbs.

9. illud recūsāvit, etc., he objected to their demands in so far as they required him to do anything in violation of the laws of hospitality.

10. comprehenderent: representing an imperative in direct discourse.

11. locō: the preposition in is freely omitted with the ablative of this word.

14. ūsū venīret: the phrase is synonymous with accideret.

16. praeter cōsuētūdinem: cf. Caesar's expression, quam cōsuētūdō ferret, Bk. IV, 32, 6.

17. quī refers to Hannibal.

18. num: introducing an indirect question, this word means simply whether. What does it denote when introducing a direct question?

obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūtiāset omnēque exitū occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō 20 factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsimo. Quibus cōsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri 5 sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfecti, in eis ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānli Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Huius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo, quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt quamdiū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsylus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsylō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre. 10

Sed nōs tempus est huius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius conlātis utrōrumque factis, quī virī praeferendī sint possit iūdicārī.

22. aliēnō: equivalent to a genitive of *alius*.

1. labōribus: ablative with a compound of *fungor*.

3. nōn convenit, *authorities do not agree*.

5. ad Rhodiōs, *(one) dedicated to the Rhodians*.

11. librī: for the divisions of the historical work from which these selections are taken, see p. 380.

#### 4. CATŌ

1. M. Catō, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscentulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est in Sabīnis, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde hortātū L. Valerī Flaccī, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgam,

1. Catō: known as Cato the Censor. He was born 234 B.C.

ortus, *a native of*.

priusquam . . . daret, *before he turned his attention to public life*.

2. Sabīnis, *the Sabine country*. Perhaps the character of Cato was influenced in no small degree by his contact with this sturdy and serious-minded people.

- 5 ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Primum stīpendium meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōsulibus tribūnus militum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudi Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō
- 10 apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō sortis necessitudīne vixit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vītā. Aedilis plēbei factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns
- 15 Q. Ennium poētā dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēsem triumphum.

2. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō. Sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem exque eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus

5. **Perpenna**: he was consul in 92 and censor in 86.

6. **in forō**: the young man who wished to enter political life usually gained a considerable part of his education for such a career by listening to the speeches before the law courts and the political addresses which were made in the Forum. See *Introd.* 19.

**primum . . . meruit**, served his first campaign as a soldier.

11. **obtigit**, was allotted to. The quaestors had certain financial duties which they performed, subject in some degree to a superior official, a praetor or consul. The assignment of the quaestor to one of the higher magistrates was made by lot.

**necessitūdine**: the assignment by lot was supposed to establish a special bond between the officials thus associated in public duty.

12. **dissēnsit**: Cato is said to have criticized Scipio for using public funds too freely.

13. **plēbei**: observe the variation in the declension of this word.

15. **quod . . . aestimāmus**: the Romans of the period in which Nepos lived admired the poetry of Ennius very greatly.

1. **cōsulātum**: Cato was consul in 195 B.C.

2. **triumphum**: the wars conducted by Cato with the Spanish tribes do not appear to have been of much importance, but the honor of a triumph for a successful campaign was very freely granted to a provincial governor on his return, unless he had active political enemies.

3. **morārētur**: it appears that Cato wished to complete the military operations in which he was engaged before leaving his province.



cōsul iterum, cuius in priōre cōsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere, neque hoc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā, sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābatur. Quā ex rē irātus senātui cōsulātū peractō prīvātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī. Nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, usque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adu lēscētiā, rei pūblicae causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. Ā multīs tentātus nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis fēcit, sed, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers et perītus iūris cōsultus et magnus imperātor et probābilis ōrātor et cupidissimus litterārū fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior adriperat, tamen tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperīri possit neque dē Graecīs neque dē Italicīs rēbus quod eī fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscētiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. Senex historiās scribere instituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Prīmus

5. *neque* = *sed nōn*.

6. *cum*, *although*.

7. *tum nōn potentiā*, etc.: Roman writers are fond of contrasting the virtues of an earlier time with the faults and vices of their own time.

9. *mānsit*: the subject refers to Scipio.

11. *animadvertit*: what is the difference between the meaning of *animadvertere* when used with a direct object, and when used with *in* and the accusative?

*in ēdictum addidit*: the *ēdictum* of the censors was a detailed statement of the policy which they expected to follow in performing the duties of their office.

15. *tentātus*: equivalent to an adversative phrase or clause.

16. *virtūtum laude crēvit*, freely, *his honorable character continued to win higher praise*.

1. *agricola sollers*: one of his books was a treatise on agriculture.

4. *senior*: he is said to have begun the study of Greek when he was eighty years old.

5. *quod*: the antecedent is an understood *quicquam*.

- continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvītās orta sit Italica, ob quam rem omnēs Orīgī-
- 10 nēs vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Pūnicum est prīmum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātim sunt dicta. Reliquaque bella parī modō persecūtus est usque ad praetūrā Ser. Galbae, quī dīripuit Lusitānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit.
- 15 In eīsdem exposuit, quae in Italiā Hispāniisque aut fierent aut vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et dīligentia compāret, nūlla doctrīna.

10. quārtō: supply *librō*.

13. Galbae: he was praetor in 151 and in the next year was governor of Spain. He put to death in an atrocious manner the Lusitanians together with their wives and children after they had surrendered to him on a promise of being spared.

16. quibus: the antecedent is *eīsdem* (*librīs*).

## PART IV

### STORIES FROM OVID

Publius Ovidius Naso, known in English as Ovid, was born in the year 43 B.C. The greater part of his life was spent in Rome, and his poetry was much admired by the fashionable society which made up the court of the emperor Augustus. For some reason which is not certainly known he was banished from Rome in the year 8 A.D., and compelled to take up his residence at Tomi on the coast of the Black Sea, where he died, ten years later. His most important work, the *Metamorphoses*, from which the following selections are taken, was a connected poetic narrative, in fifteen books, of the myths describing the various transformations to which the gods submitted or which they caused on the part of human beings, animals, or inanimate objects.

#### 1. HOW THE HUMAN RACE WAS DESTROYED BY FLOOD, AND HOW THE EARTH WAS REPEOPLED (*Metamorphoses* I, 262-415)

In olden times, the human race had become so wicked, that Jove decided to destroy them by a flood.

Prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antrīs  
Et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nūbēs,  
Ēmittitque Notum. Madidīs Notus ēvolat ālis,  
Terribilem piceā tēctus cāligine vultum;  
Barba gravis nimbīs, cānīs fluit unda capillīs,  
Fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaeque sinūsque.  
Utque manū lātā pendentia nūbila pressit,  
Fit fragor; inclūsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī.

265

**262-264.** *Straightway he (i.e., Jupiter) shuts up in Aeolian caves the North Wind and all other blasts that put to flight the gathered clouds, and sends the South Wind forth.*

**262. Aeoliīs:** Aeolus was a god, son of Jupiter, set to guard the winds in great caves upon an island near Sicily.

**265. tēctus:** the passive voice is frequently used in Latin poetry to represent the subject as acting upon itself. This is called the middle voice. Translate here *tēctus vultum*, *shrouding his face*, etc.

**267. fronte, on his brow.** In prose a preposition would have been used with this ablative.

**269. funduntur:** another example of the middle voice, but to be translated by the active voice of the English verb.

- 270 Nūntia Iūnōnis variōs indūta colōrēs  
 Concipit Īris aquās, alimentaue nūbibus adfert.  
 Sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī  
 Vōta iacent, longique perit labor inritus annī.  
 Nec caelō contenta suō est Iovis ĩra, sed illum  
 275 Caeruleus frāter itvat auxiliāribus undīs.  
 Convocat hic amnēs. Quī postquam tēcta tyrannī  
 Intrāvēre suī, “nōn est hortāmine longō  
 Nunc,” ait, “ūtendum. Virēs effundite vestrās,  
 Sīc opus est. Aperīte domōs, ac mōle remōtā  
 280 Flūminibus vestrīs tōtās immittite habēnās.”  
 Iusserat. Hī redeunt, ac fontibus ōra relaxant,  
 Et dēfrēnātō volvuntur in aequora cursū.  
 Ipse tridente suō terram percussit. At illa  
 Intremuit mōtūque viās patefēcit aquārum.  
 285 Exspatiāta ruunt per apertōs flūmina campōs,  
 Cumque satīs arbusta simul pecudēsque virōsque  
 Tēctaque, cumque suīs rapiunt penetrālia sacris.

**270, 271.** *Iris, Juno's messenger, clad in rainbow hues, draws up the water and feeds it to the clouds.*

**270.** *indūta*: lit. *having put upon herself*, etc. Compare *tēctus*, 265.

**272.** *dēplōrāta*, etc., *freely, the farmer mourns over his desolated fields, and the long year's toil is vain and profitless.*

**273.** *vōta*: the “prayers” of the farmer are the growing crops, for the safety of which he prays.

**275.** *frāter*: Neptune, brother of Jove, and god of the sea.

**277.** *intrāvēre*: observe the ending *-ēre* instead of the more common *-erunt*.

*est ūtendum*: the impersonal construction. Translate with *nōn hortāmine longō* — *no long exhortation need be employed*.

**279.** *opus est*: see note on Caesar, Bk. II, 8, 17.

**280.** In this and the two succeeding lines the elements are spoken of as if they were horses. So *immittite habēnās*, — *shake out the reins*; *ōra relaxant*, — *give loose rein*; *dēfrēnātō cursū*, — *in unrestrained course*.

**283.** *tridente*: the trident, a three-pronged spear, was the emblem of authority which Neptune always carried.

**286.** *satīs*: the perfect passive participle of *sērare*, to sow, used as a substantive; *things sown*, hence *crops*, *standing grain*.

Siqua domus mānsit potuitque resistere tantō  
 Indēiecta malō, culmen tamen altior huius  
 Unda tegit, pressaeque latent sub gurgite turrēs. 290  
 Iamque mare et tellūs nūllum discrīmen habēbant;  
 Omnia pontus erant. Deerant quoque litora pontō.  
 Occupat hic collem; cumbā sedet alter aduncā  
 Et dūcit rēmōs illīc ubi nūper arārat;  
 Ille super segetēs aut mersae culmina villae 295  
 Nāvigat, hic summā piscem dēprēndit in ulmō;  
 Fīgitur in viridī, sī fors tulit, ancora prātō,  
 Aut subiecta terunt curvae vīnēta carīnae.  
 Et, modo quā gracilēs grāmen carpsēre capellae,  
 Nunc ibi dēfōrmēs pōnunt sua corpora phōcae. 300  
 Mīrantur sub aquā lūcōs urbēsque domōsque  
 Nēreides. Silvāsque tenent delphīnes, et altīs  
 Incursant rāmīs agitātaque rōbora pulsan.  
 Nat lupus inter ovēs, fulvōs vehit unda leōnēs,  
 Unda vehit tigrēs. Nec vīrēs fulminis aprō, 305  
 Crūra nec ablātō prōsunt vēlōcia cervō.

288. potuitque . . . malō, and could resist such a disaster without being overthrown.

293. hic . . . alter, one man . . . another.

294. dūcit rēmōs, plies the oars.

arārat: a shortened form, for arāverat.

296. summā in ulmō, in the top of an elm tree. To speak of catching fish in the top of a tree is simply a very vivid way of saying that the treetops were under water.

297. sī fors tulit, if chance so directs.

299. modo quā (supply parte), where but now.

302. Nēreides: a Greek nom. pl. form in -es; so also delphīnes.

303. agitātaque, etc., they dash against the swaying (lit. shaken) oaks. The epithet *agitāta* is used by anticipation (prolepsis), since the oaks would not be "shaken" until after the dolphins had "dashed against" them. This method of expression is foreign to our language.

305. nec vīrēs fulminis aprō (prōsunt), neither does the strength of his lightning (stroke) avail the boar. The boar's sidelong stroke with his tusks was called *fulmen*, because of its destructive power.

aprō: for case see App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

Quaesitisque diū terrīs ubi sistere dētur,  
 In mare lassātīs volucris vaga dēcidit ālīs.  
 Obruerat tumultōs immēnsa licentia pontī,  
 310 Pulsābantque novī montāna cacūmina flūctūs.  
 Maxima pars undā rapitur; quibus unda pepercit,  
 Illōs longa domant inopī ieiūnia victū.

All human beings perish except one man and one woman, whose boat, when the floods subside, rests on Mt. Parnassus.

Sēparat Āoniōs Oetaeīs Phōcis ab arvīs,  
 Terra ferāx, dum terra fuit; sed tempore in illō  
 315 Pars maris et lātus subitārum campus aquārum.  
 Mōns ibi verticibus petit arduus astra duōbus,  
 Nōmine Parnāsus, superantque cacūmina nūbēs.  
 Hic ubi Deucaliōn, nam cētera tēxerat aequor,  
 Cum cōsōrte torī parvā rate vectus adhaesit,  
 320 Cōrycidas nymphās et nūmina montis adōrant,  
 Fātidicamque Themīn, quae tunc ōrācla tenēbat.  
 Nōn illō melior quisquam nec amantior aequī  
 Vir fuit, aut illā metuentior ūlla deōrum.  
 Iuppiter ut liquidīs stāgnāre palūdibus orbem,  
 325 Et superesse virum dē tot modo mīlibus ūnum,  
 Et superesse videt dē tot modo mīlibus ūnam,  
 Innocuōs ambōs, cultōrēs nūminis ambōs,  
 Nūbila disiēcit, nimbīsque Aquilōne remōtīs

307. *And after she had long sought over the earth for a place to alight.*

ubi dētur: the clause expresses purpose.

309. *immēnsa licentia pontī, the mighty sea, freed from restraint.*

311. *maxima pars: i.e., hominum.*

quibus: dative with *parcere*.

313. *Āoniōs: the name of the people instead of the name of the country.*

316. *petit, rises toward.*

322. *aequī: genitive with amantior.*

323. *aut illā, etc., nor was there any (woman) more reverent toward the gods than she.*

324-326. *Iuppiter ut videt, when Jupiter saw, etc.*

324. *orbem: supply terrārum, the whole world.*

Et caelō terrās ostendit et aethera terrīs.  
 Nec maris ira manet, positōque tricuspide tēlō 330  
 Mulcet aquās rēctor pelagī, suprāque profundum  
 Exstantem atque umerōs innātō mūrīce tēctum  
 Caeruleum Tritōna vocat, conchaeque sonantī  
 Īnspirāre iubet, flūctūsque et flūmina signō  
 Iam revocāre datō. Cava būcina sūmitur illī 335  
 Tortilis, in lātum quae turbine crēscit ab ĩmō,  
 Būcina, quae mediō concēpit ubi āera pontō,  
 Lītora vōce replet sub utrōque iacentia Phoebō.  
 Tunc quoque, ut ōra deī madidā rōrantia barbā  
 Contigit, et cecinit iussōs ĩnflāta receptūs, 340  
 Omnibus audīta est tellūris et aequoris undīs,  
 Et quibus est undīs audita, coērcuit omnēs.  
 Flūmina subsīdunt, collēsque exīre videntur.  
 Iam mare litus habet, plēnōs capit alveus amnēs,

**332. exstantem, tēctum:** to be construed with *Tritōna*.

*tēctum*: a different construction from the *tēctus* of line 265. In the present instance, as shown by the context, *innātō mūrīce*, the act in *tēctum* can hardly be considered as that of *Tritōn*; *umerōs* is therefore not object, but acc. of specification with *tēctum*. Translate, *with his shoulders covered with the clinging (lit. native) purple-fish, i.e., the murex (a shell-fish) grew like barnacles on Triton's shoulders*.

**335. illī:** poetic use of the dative of agent.

**337, 338. quae mediō, etc.,** *which, when far out at sea it has received (the Triton's) breath, fills with its notes the shores that lie beneath the rising and the setting sun.*

**339. tunc quoque:** these words apply the usual action to the present situation.

*ōra madidā rōrantia barbā:* by observing the quantity of the final vowels the student will perceive that Ovid has arranged his two pairs of noun and adjective in a curiously interlocked order, *ōra* and *rōrantia* belonging syntactically together, and *madidā* and *barbā*. Instances of this method of arrangement abound in Ovid's poems.

**340. contigit:** the subject is *būcina*.

*et cecinit, etc., and being filled with (Triton's) breath, it sounded forth the recall commanded.*

**342. undīs:** compare note on *illī*, line 335. Observe the order of words, the noun standing at the end of the line and its modifier (*omnibus*) at the beginning.

- 345 Surgit humus; crēscunt loca dēcrēscētibz undīs.  
 Postque diem longam nūdāta cacūmina silvae  
 Ostendunt, limumque tenent in fronde relictum.

The surviving pair, with much grief for the destruction of their race, find their way to the oracle and inquire of the goddess how the earth may be repopled.

- Redditus orbis erat. Quem postquam vīdit inānem  
 Et dēsōlātās agere alta silentia terrās,  
 350 Deucaliōn lacrimīs ita Pyrrham adfātur obortīs:  
 “Ō soror, ō coniūnx, ō fēmina sōla superstes,  
 Quam commūne mihi genus et patruēlis origō,  
 Deinde torus iūnxit, nunc ipsa perīcula iungunt:  
 Terrārū, quāscumque vident occāsus et ortus,  
 355 Nōs duo turba sumus; possēdit cētera pontus.  
 Haec quoque adhūc vītae nōn est fidūcia nostrae  
 Certa satis. Terrent etiam nunc nūbila mentem.  
 Quis tibi, sī sine mē fātīs ērepta fuissēs,  
 Nunc animus, miseranda, foret? Quō sōla timōrem  
 360 Ferre modō possēs? Quō cōsōlante dolērēs?  
 Namque ego, crēde mihi, sī tē quoque pontus habēret,  
 Tē sequerer, coniūnx, et mē quoque pontus habēret.  
 Ō utinam possem populōs reparāre paternīs

345. *crēscunt . . . undīs*, the (uncovered) areas increase as the waves recede.

346. *silvae*: subject of *ostendunt*.

351. *soror*: Pyrrha was not the sister but the cousin of Deucalion, since they were the daughter and son of the brothers Epimetheus and Prometheus respectively.

352. *patruēlis origō*: in allusion to the relationship just mentioned.

353. *torus*, *wedlock*.

354. *occāsus et ortus*: understand *sōlis*.

356, 357. *Nor is our hold on life as yet entirely secure*.

359. *miseranda*, *poor soul*.

*quō*: to be taken with *modō*; *how wouldst thou be able to bear thy grief alone?*

363. *possem*: for mood see App. 221, b; A. 441, a; B. 279, 1, 2; H. 558, 1, 2; H.-B. 511, 1.

*paternīs artibus*: his father Prometheus had formed human beings out of clay, and given them life.



Artibus atque animās fōrmātae infundere terrae!  
 Nunc genus in nōbīs restat mortāle duōbus; 365  
 Sīc vīsum est superīs: hominumque exempla manēmus."  
 Dixerat, et flēbant. Placuit caeleste precārī  
 Nūmen, et auxilium per sacrās quaerere sortēs.  
 Nūlla mora est, adeunt pariter Cēphīsidas undās,  
 Ut nōndum liquidās, sīc iam vada nōta secantēs. 370  
 Inde ubi libātōs inrōrāvēre liquōrēs  
 Vestibus et capitī, flectunt vestīgia sānctae  
 Ad dēlūbra deae, quōrum fastīgia turpī  
 Pallēbant mūscō stābantque sine ignibus ārae.  
 Ut templi tetīgēre gradūs, prōcumbit uterque 375  
 Prōnus humī, gelidōque pavēns dedit ōscula saxō.  
 Atque ita, "sī precibus," dīxērunt, "nūmina iūstīs  
 Victa remollēscunt, sī flectitur īra deōrum,  
 Dīc, Themī, quā generis damnum reparābile nostri  
 Arte sit, et mersīs fer opem, mītissima, rēbus." 380

The mysterious response is given by the oracle that they must cast behind them the bones of their parent. They are horrified at the thought of this impious deed, until they discover its real meaning.

Mōta dea est sortemque dedit: "discēdite templō,  
 Et vėlāte caput, cīntāsque resolvite vestēs,  
 Ossaque post tergum magnae iactāte parentis."

**364.** *terrae*, clay; dative with *infundere*.

**370.** *ut . . . sīc*, though . . . still. The water was still muddy from the recent flood, but confined within its banks.

**371, 372.** *Then after having caught up and sprinkled upon their garments and their heads some of the water*, etc.

**371.** *liquōrēs*: running water was used by the ancients for purposes of purification before they engaged in any sacred act.

**375.** *ut*: as in line 324.

**376.** *humī*: locative.

**381.** *templō*: ablative of Place from Which; in prose a preposition would be used.

**382.** This was the usual manner of dress of one engaged in sacrifice.

**383.** *post tergum*, behind you.

- Obstipuēre diū, rumpitque silentia vōce  
 385 Pyrrha prior, iussisque deae pārēre recūsāt,  
 Detque sibi veniam, pavidō rogat ōre, pavetque  
 Laedere iactātis maternās ossibus umbrās.  
 Intereā repetunt caecis obscūra latebrīs  
 Verba datae sortis sēcum, inter sēque volūtant;  
 390 Unde Promēthidēs placidīs Epimēthida dictīs  
 Mulcet et, "aut fallāx," ait, "est sollertia nōbīs,  
 Aut pia sunt nūllumque nefās ōrācula suādent.  
 Magna parēns terra est; lapidēs in corpore terrae  
 Ossa reor dicī; iacere hōs post terga iubēmur."

Then they throw behind them stones, which are the bones of Mother Earth, and these stones change to men and women.

- 395 Coniugis auguriō quamquam Tītānia mōta est,  
 Spēs tamen in dubiō est; adeō caelestibus ambō  
 Diffidunt monitis. Sed quid temptāre nocēbit?  
 Dēscendunt vėlantque caput tunicāsque recingunt  
 Et iussōs lapidēs sua post vestigia mittunt.  
 400 Saxa — quis hoc crēdat, nisi sit prō teste vetustās?—  
 Pōnere dūritiem coepēre suumque rigōrem,  
 Mollirīque morā, mollītaque dūcere fōrmam.  
 Mox ubi crēvērunt, nātūraque mītiōr illīs  
 Contigit, ut quaedam, sic nōn manifesta, vidērī

**385. prior, first.** The Latin, more accurate than the English, regularly uses the comparative when only two objects are in question.

**iussis:** dative with *pārēre*.

**386. det:** construe the clause as object of *rogat*:— *and she begs with trembling lips (that the goddess) pardon her (for refusing).*

**387. iactātis ossibus:** ablative absolute, suggesting the idea of means, *by hurling her bones.*

**388. caecis latebrīs:** construe with *obscūra (verba).*

**396. adeō, to such an extent.**

**397. sed quid, etc., but what harm will it do to try?**

**400. crēdat:** for mood see App. 207; A. 444; B. 277; H. 552; H.-B. 517.

**404-406. ut quaedam, etc., a certain likeness to a human form can indeed be seen, but still not very clear; such as is the form of marble statues begun and not yet fully worked out—just like images in the rough.**

Fōrma potest hominis, sed uti est dē marmore coeptis 405  
Nōn exācta satis rudibusque simillima signīs.

Quae tamen ex illis aliquō pars ūmida sūcō  
Et terrēna fuit, versa est in corporis ūsum;  
Quod solidum est flectique nequit, mūtātur in ossa;  
Quae modo vēna fuit, sub eōdem nōmine mānsit; 410

Inque brevī spatiō superōrum nūmine saxa  
Missa virī manibus faciem trāxere virōrum,  
Et dē fēmineō reparāta est fēmina iactū.  
Inde genus dūrum sumus experiēnsque labōrum,  
Et documenta damus quā sīmus origine nātī. 415

414. labōrum: genitive with the adjective *experiēns*.

## 2. HOW TWO YOUNG LOVERS CAME TO A TRAGIC END

(*Metamorphoses* IV, 55-166)

Pyramus and Thisbe, two young people of Babylon, being thwarted in love by their parents, agree to meet by night without the walls at Ninus's tomb.

Pŷramus et Thisbē, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter, 55  
Altera, quās oriēns habuit, praelāta puellis,  
Contiguās tenuēre domōs, ubi dīcitur altam  
Coctilibus mūrīs cīnxisse Semīramis urbem.

Nōtitiam primōsque gradūs vicīnia fēcit;  
Tempore crēvit amor. Taedae quoque iūre coīssent; 60

Sed vetuēre patrēs. Quod nōn potuēre vetāre,  
Ex aequō captīs ārdēbant mentibus ambō.

Cōnsciū omnis abest; nūtū signisque loquuntur.  
Quōque magis tegitur, tēctus magis aestuat ignis.

56. *puellis*: dative with the compound verb, *praeferō*.

58. *urbem*: that is, Babylon.

59. *nōtitiam primōsque gradūs*, *acquaintance and the first steps of love*.

61. *quod*: the antecedent is the statement of the next line.

62. *ex aequō*, *equally*.

63. *cōnsciū omnis abest*, *there was no go-between*, that is, no third person who was in their secret (*cōnsciū*).

64. *quōque magis*: in prose *eō* would probably have been used with the second *magis*,—*the more . . . the more*.

- 65 Fissus erat tenuī rīmā, quam dūxerat ōlim  
 Cum fieret, pariēs domūi commūnis utrīque.  
 Id vitium nūllī per saecula longa notātum —  
 Quid nōn sentit amor?— prīmī vīdistis, amantēs,  
 Et vōcis fēcistis iter; tūtaeque per illud  
 70 Murmure blanditiae minimō trānsīre solēbant.  
 Saepe, ubi cōstitierant, hinc Thisbē, Pȳramus illinc,  
 Inque vicēs fuerat captātus anhēlitus ōris,  
 “Invide” dīcēbant “pariēs, quid amantibus obstās?  
 Quantum erat, ut sinerēs tōtō nōs corpore iungī,  
 75 Aut hoc sī nimium, vel ad ōscula danda patērēs!  
 Nec sumus ingrātī; tibi nōs dēbēre fatēmur,  
 Quod datus est verbīs ad amīcās trānsitus aurēs.”  
 Tālia dīversā nēquīquam sēde locūtī  
 Sub noctem dīxere “valē,” partīque dedēre  
 80 Ōscula quisque suae nōn pervenientia contrā.  
 Postera nocturnōs aurōra remōverat ignēs,  
 Sōlque pruīnōsās radiīs siccāverat herbās;  
 Ad solitum cōīere locum. Tum murmure parvō  
 Multa prius questī, statuunt ut nocte silentī  
 85 Fallere custōdēs foribusque excēdere temptent,  
 Cumque domō exierint, urbis quoque tēcta relinquunt;

65, 66. *The party wall of the two houses had been split by a narrow crack which it had at some former time developed when it was building.*

68. *amantēs, lovers; compare amantibus in line 73.*

70. *blanditiae, fond words.*

74. *quantum (=quantulum) erat, how small a thing it would be.*

*erat:* for tense see App. 254, a; A. 521, a, note; B. 304, 3, a; H. 581, 3; H.-B. 582, 3, a.

76. *dēbēre:* the direct object of this verb is the substantive *quod* clause in the next line.

79, 80. *partique dedēre ōscula, etc., and imprinted kisses, each one upon his own side of the wall.*

84. *statuunt:* the object is *ut . . . temptent, relinquunt, convenient, lateant.*

Nēve sit errandum lātō spatiantibus arvō,  
 Conveniant ad busta Ninī, lateantque sub umbrā  
 Arboris. Arbor ibī niveis ūberima pōmīs  
 Ardua mōrus erat, gelidō contermina fontī.  
 Pacta placent, et lūx tardē discēdere vīsa est;  
 Praecipitātur aquīs, et aquīs nox exit ab īsdem.

90

Thisbe reaches the trysting place first, and while waiting for her lover, is alarmed to see a lioness approaching the spring near by to drink. Thisbe hastily retreats to the tomb of Ninus, dropping her veil in her flight. This the lioness tears as she departs.

Callida per tenebrās versātō cardine Thisbē  
 Ēgreditur fallitque suōs, adopertaque vultum  
 Pervenit ad tumulum, dictāque sub arbore sēdit.  
 Audācem faciēbat amor. Venit ecce recentī  
 Caede leaena boum spūmantēs oblita rictūs,  
 Dēpositūra sitim vīcīnī fontis in undā.  
 Quam procul ad lūnae radiōs Babylōnia Thisbē  
 Vidit, et obscurum trepidō pede fūgit in antrum,  
 Dumque fugit, tergō vēlāmina lāpsa reliquit.  
 Ut lea saeva sitim multā compescuit undā,

95

100

87. *nēve sit errandum*, etc., and that they may run no risk of missing each other as they wander in the open fields.

*spatiantibus*: supply *eis*, dative of agent.

88, 89. *busta Ninī, arboris*: this tomb and tree are an important element in the story, since Ovid thus prepares his stage setting in advance.

89. *niveis pōmīs*: Ovid assumes for the purpose of his story that before this tragedy of Pyramus all mulberries were white.

91. *pacta placent*, the agreement is satisfactory, that is, both as to time and place of meeting.

92. *praecipitātur*: pass. with reflexive meaning; (the day) sinks down into the waters.

94. *adoperta*: that is, with the veil mentioned below, l. 101.

97. *caede oblita*, etc., with her foaming jaws smeared (with blood) from cattle freshly slain; *oblita* may be explained as the middle voice.

98. *dēpositūra sitim*, to slake her thirst.

99. *ad lūnae radiōs*, by the light of the moon.

100, 101. *fūgit, fugit*: what difference in tense is noticeable in these verbs, and how is the difference to be explained?

Dum redit in silvās, inventōs forte sine ipsā  
Ōre cruentātō tenuēs laniāvit amictūs.

Pyramus, coming later, hastily concludes from the bloody veil and the lion's tracks that his sweetheart is dead, and straightway kills himself with his sword.

- 105 Sērius ēgressus vestigia vidit in altō  
Pulvere certa ferae, tōtōque expalluit ōre  
Pŷramus. Ut vērō vestem quoque sanguine tinctam  
Repperit, "ūna duōs," inquit, "nox perdet amantēs;  
Ē quibus illa fuit longā dignissima vitā,  
110 Nostra nocēns anima est. Ego tē, miseranda, perēmī,  
In loca plēna metūs quī iussī nocte venīrēs,  
Nec prior hūc vēnī. Nostrum divellite corpus,  
Et scelerāta ferō cōnsūmite viscera morsū,  
Ō quicumque sub hāc habitātis rūpe, leōnēs.  
115 Sed timidi est optāre necem"—vēlāmīna Thisbēs  
Tollit, et ad pactae sēcum fert arboris umbram.  
Utque dedit nōtae lacrimās, dedit ōscula vestī,  
"Accipe nunc," inquit, "nostrī quoque sanguinis haustūs."  
Quōque erat accīnctus, dēmīsit in ilia ferrum,  
120 Nec mora, ferventī moriēns ē vulnere trāxit.  
Ut iacuit resupīnus humō, cruor ēmicat altē;

103. *inventōs forte sine ipsā*, the veil (*amictūs*) which she chanced upon (*inventōs forte*) without the girl herself. It was a mere "empty" (*sine ipsā*) veil which the lioness tore, but this detail of the story is important as being the real cause of the tragic death of Pyramus.

109. *ē quibus*: a prepositional phrase corresponding to the genitive of the whole. The two parts are *illa* and *nōs*, which is implied in *nostra*.

110. *nostra . . . est*, mine is the guilty soul. *miseranda*, poor girl.

111. *venīrēs*: what would be the prose construction?

115. *sed timidi est*, etc., but it is a coward's part (merely) to pray for death. The brave man, he thinks, will seek the death which he desires.

117. *nōtae*: read with *vestī*;— the familiar veil.

118. *accipe*: addressed to the garment.

119. *quōque* = *et quō*. The prose order of this line would be *ferrumque, quō accīnctus erat, in ilia dēmīsit*.

120. *nec mora*: understand *erat*. Translate, and without delay.

Nōn aliter quam cum vitiātō fistula plumbō  
 Scinditur, et tenuī stridente forāmine longās  
 Ēiaculātur aquās atque ictibus āera rumpit.  
 Arboreī fētūs aspergine caedis in ātram 125  
 Vertuntur faciem. Madefactaque sanguine rādix  
 Pūniceō tinguīt pendentia mōra colōre.

Thisbe now comes forth from her hiding place, discovers her dying lover, and, after a pathetic lamentation and a prayer that their ashes may rest together in the same tomb, stabs herself with her lover's sword.

Ecce metū nōndum positō, nē fallat amantem,  
 Illa redit, iuvenemque oculīs animōque requirit,  
 Quantaque vitārit narrāre pericula gestit. 130  
 Utque locum et riguā cognōscit in arbore fōrmam,  
 Sic facit incertam pōmī color. Haeret, an haec sit.  
 Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsāre cruentum  
 Membra solum, retrōque pedem tulit, ōraque buxō  
 Pallidiōra gerēns exhorruit aequoris īstar, 135  
 Quod tremit, exiguā cum summum stringitur aurā.  
 Sed postquam remorāta suōs cognōvit amōrēs,  
 Percutit indignōs clārō plangōre lacertōs,  
 Et laniāta comās amplexaque corpus amātum  
 Vulnera supplēvit lacrimīs flētumque cruōrī 140  
 Miscuit, et gelidīs in vultibus ōscula figēns,

122. *cum*: not a preposition.

123, 124. *et tenuī stridente*, etc., and through the slender, hissing aperture sends forth long streams of water, and cleaves the air with the jets.

130. *vitārit* = *vitāverit*, perfect subjunctive in an indirect question.

131. *et . . . fōrmam*, and recognized the form of the blood-stained tree. The phrase with *in* is rather loosely used. Thisbe's attention is first attracted to the strange color of the mulberries. Ovid is not at all troubled by the fact that this would hardly be noticeable by moonlight.

132. *haeret, an haec sit*, she stands in doubt as to whether this is (the right tree).

135. *gerēns*, with. *aequoris*: construe with *īstar*;—like the sea.

136. *summum* (*aequor*), its surface.

137. *amōrēs*, lover.

138. *indignōs*: not *unworthy*, but *unworthy to receive such treatment*, innocent.

- "Pȳrame," clāmāvit, "quis tē mihi cāsus adēmit?  
 Pȳrame, respondē; tua tē cārissima Thisbē  
 Nōminat. Exaudī, vultūsque attolle iacentēs."  
 145 Ad nōmen Thisbēs oculōs iam morte gravātōs  
 Pȳramus ērēxit, vīsāque recondidit illā.  
 Quae postquam vestemque suam cognōvit, et ēnse  
 Vidit ebur vacuum, "tua tē manus" inquit, "amorque  
 Perdidit, infēlix. Est et mihi fortis in ūnum  
 150 Hoc manus, est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vīrēs.  
 Persequar exstinctum, lētique miserrima dicar  
 Causa comesque tuī. Quīque ā mē morte revelli  
 Heu sōlā poterās, poteris nec morte revelli.  
 Hoc tamen ambōrum verbis estōte rogātī,  
 155 Ō multum miserī, meus illiusque parentēs,  
 Ut quōs certus amor, quōs hōra novissima iūnxit,  
 Compōnī tumulō nōn invideātis eōdem.  
 At tū, quae rāmīs arbor miserābile corpus  
 Nunc tegis ūnūs, mox es tēctūra duōrum,  
 160 Signa tenē caedis, puliōsque et lūctibus aptōs

142. *mihi*: dative with a word of "taking away."

146. *vīsā illā*: ablative absolute; *when he has seen her*.

147. *ēnse*: ablative of separation with *vacuum*.

148. *ebur*: that is, the ivory scabbard.

149, 150. As his own hand and love have brought death to her lover, so: *I, too, have a hand that's brave for this one act; I, too, have love*.

151. *exstinctum*: understand *tē*.

152. *quīque ā mē*, etc., *you who by death alone could be separated from me shall not be separated from me even by death*.

154. *hoc*: words of asking sometimes have a dependent accusative retained in the passive. This request is explained in lines 156, 157.

155. *multum* is used adverbially and has the effect of raising *miserī* to the superlative degree.

*meus illiusque parentēs*: the full expression would be *mī parēns illiusque parēns*.

156, 157. *ut . . . nōn invideātis*: we should expect here *nē invideātis*; but by Ovid's arrangement *nōn* is separated as far as possible from the *ut*, and is to be taken intimately with the verb: *be entreated of us (estōte rogātī) that you be not unwilling*, etc.



Semper habē fētūs, geminī monumenta cruōris."

Dixit, et aptātō pectus mūcrōne sub imum

Incubuit ferrō, quod adhūc ā caede tepēbat.

Vōta tamen tetigēre deōs, tetigēre parentēs.

Nam color in pōmō est, ubi permātūruit, āter;

165

Quodque rogis superest, ūnā requiēscit in urnā.

161. *geminī monumenta cruōris*, freely, *to commemorate our death together*.

164. Observe the omission of a conjunction.

166. *quodque rogis superest*, and all that was left from the funeral pyre.

### 3. HOW TWO PIOUS OLD PEOPLE ENTERTAINED ANGELS.

UNAWARES. (*Metamorphoses* VIII, 616-724)

The river-god Achelous has been relating some wonderful changes wrought by the hands of the gods. One of his hearers scoffs at this, and calls in question the very existence of the gods. Whereupon an old man present tells a story of Jove and Mercury to illustrate their divine power.

Obstipuēre omnēs, nec tālia dicta probārunt;

Ante omnēsque Lelex, animō mātūrus et aevō,

Sic ait: "immēnsa est finemque potentia caeli

Nōn habet, et quicquid superī voluēre, perāctum est.

Quōque minus dubitēs, tiliae contermina quercus

620

Collibus est Phrygiīs, modicō circumdata mūrō.

Haud procul hinc stāgnū est, tellūs habitābilis ōlim,

624

616. *tālia dicta*: the impious denial of the power of the gods to which Achelous has just given utterance.

617. *animō mātūrus et aevō*, freely, *a man of the mature judgment which age brings*.

620. *quōque . . . dubitēs*: the clause expresses the purpose of the mention of the act denoted by the verb of the main clause; (*I will state the following facts*) *in order that you may have less doubt*. A similar ellipsis sometimes occurs in English.

*tiliae contermina quercus*, etc., *near by a linden stands an oak tree, with a low wall surrounding them*.

624. *haud procul hinc*, *not far from this spot*, that is, where the two trees stand.

625 Nunc celebrēs mergīs fulicisque palūstribus undae.

These gods, traveling in disguise upon the earth, are again and again denied the hospitality which is the sacred right of every wayfarer, until they come to the humble cottage of an aged pair, Philemon and Baucis. These welcome the strangers, and supply them with the very best that their house affords.

Iuppiter hūc speciē mortālī, cumque parente  
 Vēnit Atlantiadēs positīs cādūcifer ālis.  
 Mille domōs adiēre, locum requiemque petentēs,  
 Mille domōs clausēre serae. Tamen ūna recēpit,  
 630 Parva quidem, stipulis et cannā tēcta palūstrī;  
 Sed pia Baucis anus parilīque aetāte Philēmōn  
 Illā sunt annis iūctī iuvenālibus, illā  
 Cōnsenuēre casā; paupertātemque fatendō  
 Effēcēre levem nec inīquā mente ferendō.  
 635 Nec rēfert, dominōs illic famulōsne requīrās;  
 Tōta domus duo sunt, idem pārentque iubentque.  
 Ergō ubi caelicolae placitōs tetigēre penātēs,  
 Submissōque humilēs intrārunt vertice postēs,  
 Membra senex positō iussit relevāre sedīlī,  
 640 Quō superiniēcit textum rude sēdula<sup>4</sup> Baucis.  
 Inde focō tepidum cinerem dīmōvit et ignēs  
 Suscitāt hesternōs foliisque et cortice siccō  
 Nūtrit et ad flammās animā prōdūcit anilī,  
 Multifidāsque facēs rāmāliaque ārida tēctō

627. Atlantiadēs: Mercury, the son of Jupiter and of Maia, who was the daughter of Atlas.

positīs ālis: because he was posing as a mortal, as was Jupiter also (*speciē mortālī*).

632. illā: to be taken with *casā*.

634. nec inīquā, etc., and by bearing it calmly.

636. tōta domus, the entire household.

pārentque iubentque: that is, they are both *fāmuli* and *dominī* at once.

638. submissō vertice: the door lintel was so low that the gods had to stoop in order to enter.

639. The old man set out a bench and bade them rest their limbs upon it.

643. flammās prōdūcit, blew it into flame.

Dētulit et minuit, parvōque admōvit aēnō. 645  
 Quodque suus coniūnx riguō conlēgerat hortō,  
 Truncat holus foliis. Furcā levat ille bicornī  
 Sordida terga suis nigrō pendentia tignō,  
 Servātōque diū resecat dē tergore partem  
 Exiguam, sectamque domat ferventibus undīs. 650  
 Intereā mediās fallunt sermōnibus hōrās,  
 Concutiuntque torum dē mollī flūminis ulvā 655  
 Impositum lectō, spondā pedibusque salignīs.  
 Vestibus hunc vėlant, quās nōn nisi tempore fēstō  
 Sternere cōsuērant; sed et haec vīlisque vetusque  
 Vestis erat, lectō nōn indignanda salignō.  
 Accubuēre deī. Mēnsam succincta tremēnsque 660  
 Pōnit anus. Mēnsae sed erat pēs tertius impār;  
 Testa parem fēcit. Quae postquam subdita clīvum  
 Sustulit, aequātam mentae tersēre virentēs.  
 Pōnitur hīc bicolor sincērae bāca Minervae,  
 Conditaque in liquidā corna autumnālia faece, 665  
 Intibaque et rādix et lactis māssa coāctī,  
 Ōvaeque nōn ācrī leviter versāta favillā,  
 Omnia fictilibus. Post haec caelātus eōdem

645. *minuit, she broke them into small pieces.*

646. *quod*: the antecedent is *holus* in the next line.

647, 648. *levat ille sordida terga suis, he (the old man) lifts down a piece of bacon (terga suis) blackened (by the smoke).*

654. *mediās fallunt hōrās, they while away the intervening time, that is, while the dinner is cooking.*

655. *torum, cushion.*

656. *lectō*: the Romans reclined on couches at banquets, and Ovid ascribes the same custom to the people of early times, although in fact they probably sat at the table as we do.

*spondā, pedibus*: ablatives of description.

659. *nōn indignanda, a good match for.*

664. *bicolor bāca Minervae*: the olive, which is green in its unripe state, and nearly black when ripe; hence the epithet *bicolor*.

667. *nōn ācrī favillā, the warm embers.*

668. *omnia fictilibus, all (being served) in earthenware dishes.*

Sistitur argentō crātēr fabricātaque fāgō  
 670 Pōcula, quā cava sunt, flāventibus inlita cērīs.  
 Parva mora est, epulāsque focī mīsere calentēs;  
 Nec longae rūsus referuntur vīna senectae,  
 Dantque locum mēnsīs paulum sēducta secundīs.  
 Hīc nux, hīc mixta est rūgōsīs cārica palmīs  
 675 Prūnaque et in patulis redolentia māla canistrīs  
 Et dē purpureīs conlēctae vītibus ūvae.  
 Candidus in mediō favus est. Super omnia vultūs  
 Accessere bonī nec iners pauperque voluntās.

When the feast is nearly over, the old couple discover by the miraculous replenishing of the wine that their guests are gods, and beg pardon for their meager entertainment. The gods calm their fears, and bid them follow to the nearest hillside.

Intereā totiēns haustum crātēra replērī  
 680 Sponte suā, per sēque vident succrēscere vīna.  
 Attonitī novitāte pavent, manibusque supīnis  
 Concipiunt Baucisque precēs timidusque Philēmōn.  
 Et veniam dapibus nullisque parātibus ōrant.  
 Ūnicus ānser erat, minimae custōdia villae,  
 685 Quem dīs hospitibus dominī mactāre parābant.  
 Ille celer pennā tardōs aetāte fatīgat,  
 Ēlūditque diū, tandemque est vīsus ad ipsōs  
 Cōnfūgissee deōs. Superī vetuēre necārī;  
 ‘Dī’ que ‘sumus, meritāsque luet vīcīnia poenās  
 690 Impia,’ dīxērunt; ‘vōbīs immūnibus huius

**668, 669.** *caelātus eōdem argentō crātēr, an embossed mixing bowl of the same precious ware; that is, this vessel was also of cheap clay.*

**670.** *quā cava sunt inlita, coated on the inside.*

**672.** *referuntur:* the wine was served after the first course, then removed, and then brought on again after the second course, which consisted of the boiled bacon and vegetables. It was again removed before the dessert (*mēnsae secundae*). Ovid follows the order of a Roman dinner.

**678.** *nec iners pauperque voluntās, and lively and abounding good will.*

**683.** *And they beg pardon for their poor fare and plain service.*

**690, 691.** *vōbīs immūnibus, etc., it shall be granted to you to escape this destruction (that threatens your neighbors); immūnibus is in predicate relation to vōbīs. For a similar usage, see App. 276, A.*

Esse malī dabitur. Modo vestra relinquitē tēcta  
 Ac nostrōs comitāte gradūs et in ardua montis  
 Īte simul.' Pārent ambō, baculisque levātī  
 Nītuntur longō vestīgīa pōnere clīvō.

Here, looking back, they discover that the whole countryside has been flooded as a judgment upon its inhospitality. Only the house of the pious old pair remains, and this, before their very eyes, is changed into a magnificent temple.

Tantum aberant summō, quantum semel ire sagitta 695  
 Missa potest; flexēre oculōs, et mersa palūde  
 Cētera prōspiciunt, tantum sua tēcta manēre.  
 Dumque ea mīrantur, dum dēflent fāta suōrum,  
 Illa vetus, dominīs etiam casa parva duōbus  
 Vertitur in templum; furcās subiēre columnae, 700  
 Strāmina flāvēscunt aurātaque tēcta videntur,  
 Caelātaeque forēs, adopertaque marmore tellūs.

Bidden to make any request which they desire of the gods, Philemon and Baucis ask that while they live they may serve as priest and priestess in this temple, and that they may die at exactly the same time. This prayer is granted, and in the end they are both changed into trees.

Tālia tum placidō Sātūrnīus ēdidit ōre:  
 'Dicite, iūste senex et fēmina coniuge iūstō  
 Digna, quid optētis.' Cum Baucide pauca locūtus, 705  
 Iūdicium superīs aperit commūne Philēmōn:  
 'Esse sacerdōtēs dēlūbraque vestra tuērī  
 Poscimus; et quoniam concordēs ēgimus annōs,  
 Auferat hōra duōs eadem, nec coniugis umquam  
 Busta meae videam, neu sim tumulandus ab illā.' 710  
 Vōta fidēs sequitur. Templī tūtēla fuēre,

697. *tantum, only.*

699. *That old cottage of theirs, the house that had been (too) small even for its two occupants.*

700. *furcās subiēre columnae, marble columns took the place of the forked posts.*

704. *coniuge: for case see App. 149, a.*

711. *vōta fidēs sequitur: that is, their prayer was answered.*

- Dōnec vīta data est. Annīs aevōque solūtī  
Ante gradūs sacrōs cum stārent forte locīque  
Nārrārent cāsūs, frondēre Philēmona Baucis,  
715 Baucida cōspexit senior frondēre Philēmōn.  
Iamque super geminōs crēscēte cacūmine vultūs,  
Mūtua, dum licuit, reddēbant dicta 'valē' que  
'Ō coniūnx' dīxēre simul, simul abdita tēxit  
Ōra frutex. Ostendit adhūc Cībyreius illīc  
720 Incola dē geminō vicīnōs corpore truncōs.  
'Cūra piī dīs sunt, et quī coluēre coluntur.'"

712. annīs aevōque solūtī, *enfeebled by extreme age.*

717. mūtua reddēbant dicta, *they spoke to each other.*

# EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION

## BASED ON PARTS I AND III

### LESSON I

(1-3)

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—App. 95, *a*; A. 284, 393, *a*; B. 168, 2; H. 393, 8; H.-B. 319, II.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.—App. 152; A. 423; B. 230, 231; H. 486; H.-B. 439.

1. In that year, Romulus founded a city on the Palatine Hill.  
2. This city was called Rome. 3. Tullus Hostilius was chosen king. 4. We shall conquer the enemy (*hostēs*) in the third year of the war. 5. Romulus and his people were considered (*putāre*) brigands. 6. These men were named senators on account of their age. 7. On the same day, a storm suddenly arose.

### LESSON II

(4-7)

APPOSITION.—App. 95, *b*; A. 281, 282; B. 169, 1, 2; H. 393; H.-B. 319, I.  
AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—App. 173; A. 305; B. 250; H. 396; H.-B. 322.

1. Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome, defeated the Albans. 2. The sons of Ancus, the fourth king of Rome, killed Tarquinius Priscus. 3. The Roman games which Tarquinius instituted continue to our time. 4. The hills which Servius Tullius added to the city were the Quirinal, the Viminal, and the Esquiline. 5. The king fled from Rome in the twenty-fourth year of his reign. 6. Tarquinius Superbus, whose wife was the daughter of Servius Tullius, was the last king of Rome. 7. I attacked Ardea in the last year of my reign. 8. I lost my throne (*imperium*) and I fled from the city with my children.

## LESSON III

(8-11)

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH.—App. 131, *a*; A. 426, 2, 427; B. 181, 1, 2; H. 418, 419; H.-B. 385, *a*, *b*.

INDIRECT OBJECT.—App. 113; A. 362; B. 187; H. 424; H.-B. 365.

1. Porsenna and his army came to Rome. 2. The Romans gave Collatinus his inheritance and he withdrew (*migrāre*) from the city. 3. The Romans gave authority (*imperium*) to two consuls. 4. The terror was great because the Etruscans were coming to Rome. 5. Tarquinius waged war with Titus Larcus, the First Dictator. 6. The army which the dictator had collected was large. 7. Brutus and Collatinus were consuls in the same year. 8. Horatius saved (*cōservāre*) Rome on that day.

## LESSON IV

(12-14)

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.—App. 150; A. 419, 420; B. 227; H. 489; H.-B. 421.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH.—App. 151; A. 426, 3; B. 228; H. 483; H.-B. 433.

(Translate the subordinate clauses in 1, 2, 3, 4, by ablatives absolute.)

1. When the commands of the senate had been heard, Cincinnatus set out for Rome. 2. After the enemy are defeated, the dictator will return to his farm. 3. When the gold had been received, we withdrew, but we were defeated by Camillus. 4. Since the army had been surrounded, there was great fear in the city. 5. Camillus, who had been in exile in a neighboring state, defeated the Gauls. 6. The Romans, who could not defend the city, gave gold to the Gauls. 7. The army defeated the enemy and returned to Rome. 8. Romulus is called the founder of Rome, and Camillus will be called a second Romulus.



LESSON V  
(15-16)

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—App. 137; A. 405; B. 216; H. 468; H.-B. 406, 1.

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.—App. 101; A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5; H.-B. 346.

1. The Samnites were defeated by Fabius Maximus, and their towns were captured. 2. The spies who had been captured by the Romans were led through the camp. 3. Part of our army was sent under the yoke. 4. Many of the captives were sent to Rome by Pyrrhus. 5. After Pyrrhus was wounded (*abl. abs.*), the army of the enemy fled. 6. The prisoners, who were in the camp of Pyrrhus, were treated with the greatest honor. 7. The king was willing (*velle*) to give Fabricius a fourth part of his kingdom. 8. The physician of Pyrrhus, the king, came to the camp at night. 9. I was sent to Rome, and I saw a country (*patria*) of kings.

LESSON VI  
(17-20)

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—App. 140; A. 413; B. 222; H. 473, 1; H.-B. 418-420.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—App. 122; A. 384; B. 192; H. 434; H.-B. 362.

1. The consul crossed to Africa with a large army and defeated the Africans. 2. This victory was pleasing to the Romans, and the consuls celebrated a triumph (*triumphāre*). 3. We captured many men, together with (*ūnā cum*) the boats in that battle. 4. The Africans, to whom these terms of peace were not pleasing, sought help from the Lacedaemonians. 5. Catulus had set out for Sicily with large forces. 6. Sardinia was laid waste by the Romans and many prisoners were carried off (*abducere*). 7. Many thousand prisoners (*genitive*) will be given back, because the Carthaginians have no hope of victory. 8. After losing many boats (*abl. abs.*) the enemy withdrew. 9. We gave gold to the masters of the slaves and the prisoners were sent back to Carthage.

## LESSON VII

(21-23)

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS.—App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

LOCATIVE.—App. 151, *a*; A. 427, 3; B. 232; H. 483, 484; H.-B. 449.

1. Hannibal made war on Saguntum, a city of Spain. 2. The Romans declared war on Hannibal because the people of Saguntum were their allies. 3. Scipio met the army of the Carthaginians, but he was defeated. 4. Eight prisoners were unwilling to remain at Rome. 5. Many thousands perished at Saguntum, and many were wounded. 6. You have attacked a city which is friendly to us. 7. Scipio was sent into Spain with an army and Sempronius set out for Sicily. 8. When the enemy had been routed, we returned to camp. 9. The Carthaginians wished to remain in Sicily. 10. The envoys came to Rome the same year.

## LESSON VIII

(24-27)

Cum CLAUSE OF SITUATION.—App. 242; A. 546; B. 288, 1, *B*; H. 600, II; H.-B. 524.

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.—App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426; H.-B. 362.

1. When Hannibal came into Italy, many states gave themselves up to him. 2. This peace displeased Hannibal, but he gave back the prisoners. 3. These terms will not displease the Romans, and the envoys will return to Rome. 4. When we had begun to lose confidence (*diffidere*) regarding the outcome of the war, we summoned the Numidians. 5. The Romans captured the envoys when they were returning to Africa. 6. Scipio, who had waged this war in Africa, was killed at Rome. 7. Famea will command (*praeesse*) the cavalry which the Carthaginians have sent. 8. After the destruction of Carthage (*abl. abs.*), there was peace in Italy. 9. Scipio was called Africanus because he had conquered the Africans. 10. The war came to an end (*finem accipere*) in the nineteenth year.

## LESSON IX

(28-32)

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *ut*.—App. 225, *a*, 3; A. 531; B. 282; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 2.TENSE USE WITH *dum*, "while."—App. 234, *a*; A. 556; B. 293, I; H. 604, 1; H.-B. 559.

1. Sulla returned to Italy in order that he might wage war against the consuls. 2. While Marius was renewing the war in Italy, Sulla conquered the enemies of the Roman people in Asia. 3. While the army was returning from Greece, many fled from the city. 4. Mithridates asked for peace in order that he might not (*nē*) lose his kingdom. 5. We waged war against the pirates in order that navigation might be safe. 6. When Marius and Cinna had entered Rome, they killed many ex-consuls. 7. We shall assign (*dēferō*) this war to Pompey, who has conquered the pirates. 8. The king has been defeated by Sulla, and he will send envoys. 9. After the city had been captured (*not a clause*) there was a triumph at Rome. 10. The consul will enter Rome with an army and will proscribe many very prominent men (*nōbilēs*).

## LESSON X

(33-36)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—App. 266, 269; A. 580ff.; B. 314ff.; H. 642, 643; H.-B. 534-538.

1. Eutropius says that Catiline was driven from the city by Cicero. 2. The Romans heard that the army of the enemy had been defeated by the other consul. 3. We know that Caesar defeated the Helvetians. 4. Pompey said that he would return to Rome. 5. Cicero said that the associates of Catiline wished to ruin (*dēlēre*) the country. 6. I believe that Caesar is returning to the city because he has been ordered to disband (*dīmittere*) his army. 7. He has come in order to be consul. 8. The camp was plundered while the army was fleeing. 9. When Caesar saw the head of Pompey, he shed tears. 10. The army escaped because the enemy did not pursue (*sequi*) on that day.

## LESSON XI

(37-40)

CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH *ut*.—App. 226; A. 537; B. 284, 1; H. 570; H.-B. 521, 2.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—App. 262; A. 574; B. 300; H. 649, II; H.-B. 537.

1. Augustus so conducted the government (*imperium*) that there was peace at Rome. 2. We ask (*quaerere*) why you do not come to the senate house. 3. The senate knew who were foremost (*praecipuus*) among the conspirators. 4. The army of the enemy was so great that we fled. 5. Eutropius says that Augustus was fortunate in war and self-controlled in peace. 6. We have heard that Brutus was a friend of Caesar. 7. When Antony and Augustus had defeated the army of the senate, they divided the state between them. 8. The consul set out in order to wage war in Spain. 9. The Romans thought Cleopatra wished to reign in the city. 10. I do not know who is the leader of the army.

## LESSON XII

(Aristides, Hamilcar)

REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS.—App. 153-155; A. 220; B. 141-143; H. 420, 490; H.-B. 405, 418, 433.

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.—App. 213; A. 332; B. 162, 2; H. 378; H.-B. 231, 1.

1. Aristides asked the man (from the man) what he was writing. 2. Do you not wish to remain in your native country? 3. I realize (*intellegere*) that you have been stirred up by my enemies. 4. The Lacedaemonians were not chosen leaders against the barbarians, were they? 5. Do you know what the man replied? 6. Hamilcar was sent into Sicily with an army. 7. We asked help from the Romans because our soldiers had revolted. 8. The general sent these soldiers in order that the camp might be defended. 9. Hamilcar did not know that Carthage was in so great danger. 10. Since the war has been renewed (*abl. abs.*), I shall not withdraw from Sicily.

## LESSON XIII

(Hannibal)

REVIEW OF *eō* AND *possum*.—App. 84, 80; A. 203, 197, *b*; B. 132, 126; H. 297, 291; H.-B. 194, 191.

1. Hannibal could have defeated the Romans on that day.
2. The enemy will not be able to make war on Italy without a larger army.
3. I have ordered the soldiers to go to the camp.
4. The envoys will go to Rome, in order to ask for (*petere*) peace.
5. The Romans thought that an army could not cross the Alps.
6. I ask who can doubt this.
7. Hannibal so maintained (*cōservāre*) this hatred that he could not be a friend to the Romans.
8. Do you wish to set out to the camp with me?
9. Did he not leave his brother in Spain with an army when he set out for Italy?
10. I shall so keep this oath that I shall always be an enemy of Rome.

## LESSON XIV

(Hannibal)

REVIEW OF *ferō* AND *fīō*.—App. 81, 83; A. 200, 204; B. 129, 131; H. 294, 296; H.-B. 193, 195.

1. Quintus Fabius, the dictator, will bring us aid.
2. The consuls had been defeated, and the enemy were becoming more powerful.
3. Hannibal will be recalled and made general.
4. Because no one could bring me aid, I fled from the city.
5. Scipio waged war with Hannibal in Africa.
6. Hannibal was in charge of (*praeesse*) the fleet which Antiochus sent.
7. I shall not go to Italy to be killed (see Lesson IX) by the Romans.
8. While the others were defending themselves, the king fled.
9. Hannibal could not be captured alive (*vivus*).
10. You can judge which (*uter*) was the braver general.

## LESSON XV

(Cato)

REVIEW OF *volō, nōlō, mālō*.—App. 82; A. 199; B. 130; H. 295; H.-B. 192

1. Cato wished to have Valerius Flaccus as a colleague.
2. The tribune is unwilling to return to the camp.
3. The praetor prefers to go to Spain.
4. Helvius will be made aedile, and you will be made consul.
5. Quintus Ennius was called a great poet by Cicero.
6. Scipio wishes to drive me from the province and to succeed me.
7. Cato wrote histories when he was an old man.
8. Can you not name the leaders of these wars?
9. Scipio said that he preferred to remain in the city.
10. He made so great progress that he became a great orator.
11. No one knows who wrote these books.

# WORD FORMATION

## I. NOUNS

### A. Nouns from Verbs

1. The suffix **-tor (-sor)** forms nouns denoting the agent or doer of the act.

dictātor 68,\* dēfēnsor 69, conditor 74, cēnsor 78, explōrātor 80, victor 89, imperātor 90, divisor 110, ōrātor 119, interfector 130, mercātor 137, dēprecātor 153, praetor 177, speculātor 207, gubernātor 248, auctor 261, quaestor 289, pābulātor 335, inventor 349, dēsertor 354, prōditor 354, vēnātor 357, excubitor 362, doctor 397, cultor 404, rēctor 405.

Agency is expressed in English by nouns in **-or, -tor, and -er**, e.g., *surveyor, speculator, defender*.

2. The suffixes **-iō, -tiō (-siō), -tus (-sus),† -tūra (-sūra)**, and often **-ium** form abstract nouns denoting an act or the result of an act.

(a) nātiō 49, supputātiō 52, sēditiō 69, trepidātiō 70, obsidiō 72, expeditiō 73, occāsiō 76, admirātiō 82, condiciō 82, dēditiō 89, permūtātiō 90, religiō 101, nāvigātiō 117, legiō 120, contentiō 126, coniūrātiō 139, profectiō 142, lēgātiō 142, ōrātiō 143, dictiō 144, suspiciō 145, reditiō 146, mūnitiō 152, largitiō 153, possessiō 156, interneciō 161, dubitātiō 161, commūtātiō 163, populātiō 165, offēnsiō 174, exīstimātiō 175, ratiō 187, opiniō 193, oppugnātiō 199, dēfēnsiō 201, statīō 217, cohortātiō 226, excursiō 322, māchinātiō 232, ēruptiō 236, significātiō 236, sectiō 237, diciō 237, supplicātiō 238, rebellīō 251, contemptiō 261, pollicitātiō 262, cūnctātiō 263, cōnfirmātiō 263, dēfatigātiō 264, exercitātiō 264, continuātiō 274, vēnātiō 276, auditīō 281, aquātiō 287, simulātiō 289, occupātiō 292, perturbātiō 309, subductiō 316, incursiō 317, percontātiō 332, satisfactiō 343, contagiō 347, aestimātiō 351, quaestiō 351, cognātiō 353, dissēnsiō 353, cōnsēnsiō 369, grātulātiō 372, dīmīcātiō 378, dēspērātiō 385, obtestātiō 386, obtrectātiō 386.

This suffix appears in English as **-(t)ion**, e.g., *nation, occasion, religion*.

(b) cēnsus 58, exercitus 62, impetus 62, cōnsēnsus 70, status 83, cursus 85, complexus 90, cāsus 91, adventus 96, ēventus 104, equitātus 109, circuitus 121, successus 122, cultus 137, occāsus 139, concursus 152, cōnātus 152, cōnspectus 156, conventus 169, sūmptus 170, ascēnsus 176, ictus 181, spīritus 195, commeātus 198, dēiectus 203, ūsus 205, strepitus 207, nātus

\* The number indicates the page where the word first occurs.

† Genitive **-tūs (-sūs)**.

210, discessus 211, aditus 212, incursus 219, prōspectus 222, fremitus 225, obitus 231, contemptus 233, cruciātus 234, exitus 248, dēcessus 254, flūctus 254, congressus 255, pulsus 256, dēspectus 259, interventus 260, vestītus 277, captus 279, trāiectus 299, mōtus 303, nūtus 303, reditus 309, receptus 312, ēgressus 325, introitus 327, trānsmisus 331, aspectus 336, quaestus 350, victus 353, versus 355, prōventus 373, ululātus 374, trānsitus 388, visus 390, dēlēctus 391, interitus 392, rīsus 395, hortātus 397, prōgressus 399, ortus 406, gradus 407, iactus 409, anhelitus 410, amictus 412, morsus 412, flātus 413, lūctus 414, parātus 418.

The English derivatives of these words appear either unchanged or without the inflectional ending (-us), *e.g.*, *consensus*, *congress*.

(c) nātūra 140, sepultūra 185, armātūra 205, statūra 233, cultūra 261, sectūra 266, iūctūra 295, mēnsūra 332, iactūra 345, mercātūra 350, commissūra 365.

This suffix appears in English as -ure, *e.g.*, *nature*.

(d) imperium 47, excidium 48, comitium 64, auxilium 83, taedium 102, colloquium 107, stipendium 122, initium 132, indicium 144, iudicium 144, aedificium 145, maleficium 149, beneficium 153, studium 173, subsidium 200, officium 252, nāvigium 258, vestīgium 278, perfugium 315, incendium 337, odium 342, silentium 362, flāgitium 384, naufrāgium 392.

NOTE. This list contains only the words of which the connection with the verb is more obvious.

These words appear in English unchanged or with the ending -y or -e, *e.g.*, *taedium*, *colloquy*, *vestige*.

3. The suffixes **-men** and **-mentum** form nouns denoting an act or the result of an act.

(a) fulmen 54, flūmen 73, certāmen 84, agmen 164, hortāmen 402, vēlāmen 411, forāmen 413, strāmen 419.

English derivatives are rare and generally technical, *e.g.*, *foramen*.

(b) ōrnāmentum 111, testāmentum 129, iūmentum 141, impedimentum 180, tormentum 203, mūnimentum 216, tegimentum 221, armāmentum 258, dētrimentum 339, mōmentum 377, fundāmentum 392, alimentum 402, documentum 409, monumentum 415.

This suffix appears in English as -ment, *e.g.*, *ornament*, *testament*.

4. The suffix **-or** forms abstract nouns which usually denote a physical or mental state.

terror 62, pavor 70, sūdor 71, favor 76, dolor 141, amor 175, timor 178, furor 194, clāmor 208, error 393, fragor 401, rigor 408, plangor 413.

This suffix is retained in the English derivatives, *e.g.*, *error*.



## B. Nouns from Adjectives

1. The suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūdō*, form abstract nouns which usually denote quality or condition.

(a) *memoria* 56, *audācia* 63, *victōria* 68, *impatientia* 98, *perfidia* 107, *amicitia* 107, *reverentia* 110, *angustiae* 152, *grātia* 153, *vigilia* 157, *praesentia* 165, *potentia* 170, *iūstitia* 173, *temperantia* 173, *inopia* 185, *prudentia* 196, *clēmēntia* 211, *misericordia* 230, *inscientia* 249, *diligentia* 265, *dēmentia* 288, *imprudentia* 307, *āmentia* 323, *inimicitia* 345, *dūritia* 353, *infāmia* 354, *dēsidia* 354, *notitia* 355, *patientia* 355, *mollitia* 370, *stultitia* 371, *cōstantia* 371, *invidia* 372, *laetitia* 372, *ēloquentia* 380, *innocentia* 380, *abstinentia* 380, *imtemperantia* 382, *ferōcia* 384, *avāritia* 393, *licentia* 404, *sollertia* 408, *vīcinia* 409, *blanditia* 410.

The suffix *-ia* regularly appears in English as *-y*, *-tia* as *-ce*, or *-cy*, e.g., *memory*, *justice*, *constancy*.

(b) *potestās* 65, *diūturnitās* 65, *dignitās* 67, *vēlōcitās* 72, *necessitās* 77, *honestās* 85, *calliditās* 82, *fēlicitās* 118, *celeritās* 118, *dubietās* 123, *nōbilitās* 124, *libertās* 128, *cupiditās* 131, *hūmānitās* 137, *facultās* 150, *lēnitās* 157, *impūnitās* 163, *liberālitās* 169, *adfinitās* 171, *bonitās* 187, *mōbilitās* 191, *levitās* 191, *fertilitās* 194, *propinquitās* 195, *indignitās* 211, *acclivitās* 216, *brevitās* 219, *difficultās* 219, *exiguitās* 221, *iniquitās* 222, *paucitās* 241, *opportunitās* 254, *tranquillitās* 259, *gravitās* 279, *infirmatās* 280, *rapiditās* 293, *ūtilitās* 298, *alacritās* 303, *stabilitās* 312, *siccitās* 315, *humilitās* 316, *aequitās* 350, *egestās* 355, *varietās* 357, *crūdēlitās* 370, *imbēcillitās* 371, *dēclivitās* 377, *societās* 382, *paupertās* 383, *vetustās* 408, *novitās* 418.

This suffix appears in English as *-ty*, e.g., *velocity*.

(c) *multitūdō* 49, *cōnsuetūdō* 52, *fortitūdō* 141, *longitūdō* 141, *lātītūdō* 141, *altītūdō* 151, *magnitūdō* 209, *mānsuetūdō* 212, *lassitūdō* 222, *turpitūdō* 229, *crassitūdō* 255, *firmitūdō* 256, *amplitūdō* 279, *sōlitūdō* 297, *similitūdō* 366, *necessitūdō* 398.

This suffix appears in English as *-tude*, e.g., *multitude*.

## II. VERBS

## A. Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominative Verbs)

## FIRST CONJUGATION

*nōminō* 49, *rēgnō* 51, *superō* 53, *ampliō* 53, *duplicō* 56, *triumphō* 57, *ordinō* 58, *armō* 64, *vindicō* 68, *nūntiō* 70, *liberō* 72, *labōrō* 74, *exsulō* 74, *pugnō* 76, *damnō* 76, *vāstō* 81, *vulnerō* 84, *fugō* 84, *turbō* 106, *militō* 109, *infestō* 117, *necō* 120, *aequō* 133, *vagor* 140, *bellō* 141, *arbitror* 141, *probō*

143, conciliō 143, spērō 144, pācō 147, mātūrō 149, temperō 150, hiemō 154, iūdicō 157, cūrō 159, glōrior 163, accūsō 167, nūdō 200, moror 201, perīclitor 202, praedor 215, exanimō 222, proelior 223, laxō 227, tardō 227, dominor 234, simulō 280, frūmentor 281, praecipitō 291, auxilior 308, onerō 316, spoliō 323, rēmigō 326, pābulor 335, iūrō 345, interpretor 346, dūrō 357, firmō 358, māterior 365, locuplētō 386, pūblicō 392, rōrō 401, lassō 404, stāgnō 404, fōrmō 407, precor 407, vēlō 407, aestuō 409, siccō 410, cruentō 412, laniō 412, vitiō 413, gravō 414, aptō 415, truncō 417, levō 417, indignor 417, comitō 419.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

flāveō 418, frondeō 420.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

cōstituō 48, ingredior 72, tribuō 93, molō 146.

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

fīniō 73, serviō 91, saeviō 118, potior 140, largior 170, mūniō 180, partior 251, stabiliō 365, molliō 408.

Most English derivatives are verbs formed from the perfect participle, *e.g.*, *nominate*, *duplicate*, etc.; others are formed from the present stem, sometimes irregularly, *e.g.*, *admire*, *reign*, etc.; see the list of English derivatives on p. 435.

### B. Verbs from Other Verbs

1. Frequentative verbs denote repeated or intensive action. The endings are -tō (-sō), -itō, and sometimes -tītō (double frequentatives).

tractō 80, clāmitō 114, spectō 139, incitō 145, temptō 162, vexō 162, iactō 169, occultō 186, versō 191, sustentō 199, dācertō 206, increpitō 213, exagitō 232, excitō 251, afflictō 253, cōsector 260, cōgitō 270, ventitō 279, prōpulsō 348, cōsultō 349, concitō 370, agitō 384, pulsō 403, volūtō 408, captō 410, habitō 412, suscitō 417.

English derivatives are formed in the same way as those in the preceding section, *e.g.*, *agitate*, *vex*, etc.

2. Inceptive verbs denote the beginning of an act. The ending is -scō.\*

proficiō 72, poscō 79, expavēscō 80, cognōscō 82, cōnsciscō 102, dēlitiscō 114, adsciscō 146, ulciscō 158, reminiscō 160, obliviscō 162, cōnsuēscō 163, crēscō 175, resciscō 186, inveterāscō 191, relanguēscō 213, nāscor 216, extimēscō 256, remollēscō 278, nanciō 302, exārdēscō 327,

\*For convenience, all the forms in -scō are listed here. In some cases the suffix is attached to the root, *e.g.*, nāscor, nōscō, etc.; others of these verbs are formed from adjectives or nouns, *e.g.*, mātūrēscō, quiēscō.

ēdiscō 346, adolēscō 349, adsuēscō 358, obstipēscō 408, compescō 411, expallēscō 412, exhorrēscō 413, permātūrēscō 415, requiēscō 415, flāvēscō 419.

A few English derivatives are found, *e.g.*, *decrease*, *increase*, *acquiesce*, etc.

### C. Compound Verbs

1. **ā-, ab-, -abs-** (15),\* *from, away, off*; abstineō 94, absum 53, abstergeō 71.

2. **ad-** (57), *to, towards*, accurrō 177; *at, near*, adsum 166; *against*, adior 160.

3. **ante-** (4), *before, in front of*, literal and figurative, antecēdō 72, antepōnō 301.

4. **circum-** (13), *around*, literal and figurative, circumveniō 183 and 344.

5. **con-** (98), *together*, conveniō 126, conclāmō 262; *intensive*, commoveō 191 (of one person); *thoroughly*, cōnficiō 125.

6. **dē-** (71), *off, down from, away*, dēmigrō 62, dēsiliō 64; *denoting cessation of the action expressed by the verb*, dēserō 105, dēspērō 103; *to the uttermost, out*, dēcirtō 206; *with an unfavorable significance*, dēcipiō 88.

7. **dī-, dis-** (32), *apart, in different directions*, diffugiō 97; *at intervals*, dispōnō 151; *between, among*, diligō 351; *with negative force*, diffidō 104, displiceō 83; *intensive*, dīruō 111.

8. **ē-, ex-** (75), *out, forth*, expellō 66; *out of a former state*, effēminō 137; *thoroughly, completely*, ēdoceō 262, ēdiscō 348.

9. **in-** (69), *in, on*, Insum 105, incolō 136, innītor 228; *into, toward, against*, indūcō 78, Inferō 94; *with an unfavorable significance*, invideō 234.

10. **inter-** (16), *between, off*, interrumpō 63, interclūdō 180; *at intervals*, intericiō 247, 373; *down to destruction*, intereō 348.

11. **ob-** (32), *against*, oppugnō 60; *down*, occidō 57; *intensive*, obstupefaciō 63.

12. **per-** (33), *through*, perfringō 181; *intensive*, thoroughly, permoveō 141.

13. **prae-** (19), *before*, literal and figurative, praecēdō 112 and 137; *over*, praesum 109.

14. **prō-** (33), *forward*, prōcēdō 71; *forth*, prōferō 71; *for*, prōsum 51.

15. **sub-** (36), *down*, subigō 58; *up from beneath*, succēdō 181; *after*, succēdō 53; *close*, subsum 183; *to the help of*, subveniō 116.

16. **trāns-** (13), *across*, trānseō 50; *over*, trādō 95; *through*, trānsfigō 181.

\*The figures in parentheses indicate the number of compound verbs occurring in this book formed with this prefix.

# ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

## I. FROM ADJECTIVES\*

### A. From Adjectives which are Derived from Nouns

1. The suffixes **-cus**, **-icus**, **-ānus**, **-inus**, **-ilis**, **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ārius** form adjectives meaning *belonging to, connected with, etc.*

(a) From **-cus**, **-icus** (Eng. **-ic**): Britannic, Gallic, Germanic, Italic, Punic, tyrannic.

(b) From **-ānus** (Eng. **-an**, **-ane**): African, German, human, humane, meridian, Roman, veteran.

(c) From **-inus** (Eng. **-in**, **-ine**): divine, Aventine, Esquiline, Latin, Palatine, Tarentine, transmarine, Sabine, Saguntine.

(d) From **-ilis** (Eng. **-il**, **-ile**): civil, hostile, juvenile, puerile, servile; *also* humble.

(e) From **-ālis** (Eng. **-al**): equal, autumnal, immortal, mortal, mural, naval, liberal, pedal, Quirinal, triumphal, vestal, Viminal.

(f) From **-āris** (Eng. **-ar**): consular, familiar, singular.

(g) From **-ārius** (Eng. **-ary**): estuary, legionary, mercenary, necessary.

2. The suffix **-ōsus** (Eng. **-ose**, **-ous**) forms adjectives denoting fullness. bellicose, copious, seditious, sumptuous.

### B. From Adjectives which are Derived from Verbs

1. The suffixes **-ilis** (Eng. **-il**, **-ile**) and **-ibilis** (Eng. **-ble**) form adjectives denoting capacity or ability (generally passive in sense).

fertile, habitable, horrible, incredible, instable, mobile, noble, probable, reparable.

2. The suffix **-idus** (Eng. **-id**) forms adjectives denoting a state.

arid, candid, horrid, frigid, liquid, languid, timid, placid, pallid, tepid, sordid, valid.

\*Additional adjectives for which no English derivative is given are: *Āfricus, Alpicus, bellicus, domesticus, modicus, nauticus, Nervicus, Nōricus, pūblicus, Veneticus; Aquitānus, Cassiānus, cotidiānus, montānus, oppidānus; Clāsinus, vicinus; aedilis, anilis, libralis; sēsquipedālis; auxiliāris, militāris; aerārius, cibārius, classiārius, essedārius, frumentārius, nefārius, onerārius, sagittārius, stipendiārius, tabellārius; pruinōsus; rūgōsus; fictilis, inūtilis, lacrimābilis; cupidus, pavidus.*

Additional suffixes are: **-timus**, **finitimus**, **lēgitimus**, **maritimus**; **-tus**, **honestus**, **iūstus**, **rōbustus**, **vetustus**; **-ivus**, **captivus**, **fugitivus**, **nātivus**.

3. Adjectives and participles in *-ēns* (sometimes used as substantives) furnish many derivatives in *-ent* (adjectives and nouns).

absent, confluent, continent, client, fervent, frequent, impatient, imprudent, innocent, insolent, orient, parent, patent, potent, present, serpent, silent.

### C. From Comparatives

exterior, inferior, interior, junior, major, posterior, prior, senior, superior, ulterior.

## II. FROM VERBS

1. Many English verbs are derived, directly or indirectly\* from the participial stem of a Latin verb.

(a) English verbs derived from Latin words in this book which are represented by one derivative:

abdicate, accelerate, accommodate, arbitrate, commemorate, communicate, complete, create, cremate, debilitate, delete, deliberate, demonstrate, depopulate, deprecate, derogate, designate, desolate, devote, disperse, dissipate, dominate, duplicate, ejaculate, enumerate, erect, estimate, exhaust, expatiate, extort, frustrate, immolate, implicate, inflate, insinuate, instruct, lapse, liberate, mediate, migrate, militate, moderate, narrate, navigate, nominate, placate, precipitate, predicate, possess, postulate, profess, prohibit, promote, prostrate, pulsate, recuperate, refract, relate, separate, stagnate, tolerate, use, vacate, vindicate, vitiate.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

**agitō**: agitate, cogitate; **agō**: exact, transact; **capiō**: accept, except, intercept; **claudō**: close, disclose; **dīcō**: contradict, interdict; **dūcō**: abduct, conduct, deduct; **faciō**: affect, effect, i. e. infect, perfect; **figō**: fix, affix, prefix, transfix; **fligō**: afflict, conflict; **fundō**: fuse, confuse, diffuse, infuse; **gradior**: progress, transgress; **gregō**: congregate, segregate; **iaciō**: eject, interject, object, project, reject, subject; **legō**: collect, elect, neglect; **mittō**: dismiss, promise; **premō**: press, oppress, repress; **rumpō**: corrupt, erupt, interrupt; **sacrō**: consecrate, execrate; **sequor**: execute, persecute;

\* Only about half the words in this list are formed from the Latin participle directly; a large number are formed from English nouns (about 30), adjectives (13) and participles (15) which are formed from the Latin participle; a smaller number come from frequentative forms; a few are derived from compounds made in French (e.g., *dis-close, dis-please, remove*) and a few are English compounds (e.g., *dismiss, repress*). The purpose of this section is not to teach English etymology but to illustrate the indebtedness of English to Latin. It makes little difference, therefore, that we derive *object* and *reject* from *obiectare* and *reiectare*; *subject* from the English adjective, and *interject* and *project* from the English nouns, while *eject* and *inject* are derived directly from the Latin participle.

**serō**: desert, insert; **simulō**: simulate, dissimulate; **speciō**: expect, prospect, respect; **statuō**: constitute, institute; **trahō**: detract, extract, retract; **tribuō**: attribute, distribute; **veniō**: circumvent, invent.

2. The following verbs are derived from the present stem of the Latin verb.

(a) English verbs derived from Latin words which are represented by one derivative:

acquiesce, add, adhere, admire, adopt, adore, commute, compare, condone, confide, confirm, consider, console, consume, condemn, declare, define, derive, discern, dispute, divide, elude, examine, excel, extrude, form, ignore, impede, impend, infest, laud, lave, merge, note, persevere, persuade, perturb, postpone, prepare, provide, purge, recline, relax, require, rescind, respond, retard, serve, solicit, subside, succumb, surge, temper, tempt, urge, vend, verge.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

**cēdō**: cede, accede, concede, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, succeed; **citō**: excite, incite; **claudō**: conclude, exclude, include, preclude; **cūrō**: cure, procure; **currō**: concur, occur; **dūcō**: adduce, conduce, educe, induce, introduce, produce, reduce, seduce, traduce; **fendō**: defend, offend; **ferō**: confer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, transfer; **mandō**: command, commend, remand; **mittō**: admit, commit, demit, emit, intermit, manumit, omit, permit, pretermitt, remit, submit; **moveō**: move, remove; **pellō**: compel, expel, impel, propel, repel; **plōrō**: deplore, explore, implore; **portō**: comport, deport, export, import, report, support, transport; **prehendō**: comprehend, reprehend; **scandō**: descend, transcend; **scribō**: prescribe, proscribe; **sedeō**: reside, supersede; **servō**: conserve, observe, reserve; **sistō**: assist, consist, desist, exist, insist, resist, subsist; **solvō**: solve, resolve; **spīrō**: conspire, inspire; **tendō**: tend, contend, intend; **vādō**: evade, invade; **veniō**: convene, intervene, supervene; **vertō**: advert, animadvert, avert, convert, pervert, revert.

3. The following are derived from the present stem of Latin words, with slight changes in form:

(a) Latin words represented by one derivative:

administer, appear, conceal, decrease, desire, despair, despise, deter, extinguish, glory, labor, occupy, redeem, relinquish, remain, veil, vex.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

**capiō**: conceive, deceive, perceive, receive; **faciō**: amplify, sacrifice, satisfy, signify, suffice; **iungō**: conjoin, enjoin; **nūntiō**: denounce, pronounce, renounce; **placeō**: please, displease; **spoliō**: spoil, despoil; **teneō**: abstain, contain, detain, obtain, pertain, retain, sustain; **vocō**: convoke, evoke, revoke.

# APPENDIX

---

## INTRODUCTION

---

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of *Belium Helveticum* (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

# PRONUNCIATION

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
  - a. Before another vowel, or *h*; as *eō*, *nihil*.
  - b. Before *nd* and *nt*; as *laudandus*, *laudant*.
  - c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than *s*; as *laudem*, *laudat*.
2. A vowel is long:
  - a. Before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*; as *inferō*, *cōsul*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*.
  - b. When it results from contraction; as *īssēt*, for *iisēt*.
3. A vowel is usually long:
  - a. In monosyllables not ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, or *t*; as *mē*, *hīc*, but *ab*, *ad*.

## SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

<i>a</i> = <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i>	<i>ā</i> = <i>ah!</i>
<i>e</i> = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>	<i>ē</i> = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>
<i>i</i> = <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>	<i>ī</i> = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>
<i>o</i> = <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> (not as in <i>got</i> )	<i>ō</i> = <i>oh!</i>
<i>u</i> = <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>	<i>ū</i> = <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>
<i>y</i> = French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i> ; it rarely occurs.	

## SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

- ae* = *ai* in *aisle*
- oe* = *oi* in *oil*
- au* = *ow* in *how*



**eu** has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

**ui** has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ee*. The diphthong appears in *cui*, *huic*, *cuius*, and *huius*.

a. When the consonant *i* (= *j*) stands between two vowels, as in **maior**, **eius**, **Troia**, and **cuius**, though *i* was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior**, **eiius**, **Troiia**, and **cuiius**. The second *i* is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first *i* makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

**ai** = *ai* in *aisle*

**ei** = *ey* in *they*

**oi** = *oi* in *oil*

**ui** as indicated above.

## SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

**c** and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*

**i** (consonant, sometimes printed *j*) = *y* in *yet*

**n** before **c**, **g**, **q**, and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

**r** pronounced distinctly

**s** as in *this*, never as in *these*

**t** as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

**v** = *w*

**x** = *ks*

**ch**, **ph**, **th** = *c*, *p*, *t*

**bs**, **bt** = *ps*, *pt*

**qu** = *qu* in *quart*

**ngu** = *ngu* in *anguish*

**su** = *sw* in *suādeō*, *suāvis*, *suēscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō**, **annus**, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk*, *pen-knife*. We sound only one consonant in *ditty*, *penny*.

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō**, the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō**, pronounced as if **dēiiciō**; **abiciō**, as if **abiiciō**.

## SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph*, or *th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as *pat-ris*, *ag-rī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-trī*.

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, a).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: *est* is *est*, not *ĕst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, a), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then *pat-ris*, *ag-rī* (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

## ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nis*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *divi' sa*, *appe' lō*, *in' colunt*.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as *Gallia'que*.

## INFLECTIONS

## NOUNS

## GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

## DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-i
III.	{ consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ei or -ei

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

## FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

*lingua, f., tongue, language*

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	lingua	a language (as subject) -a
<i>Genitive</i>	linguae	of a language, language's -ae
<i>Dative</i>	linguae	to or for a language -ae
<i>Accusative</i>	linguam	a language (as object) -am
<i>Vocative</i>	lingua	O (or thou) language -a
<i>Ablative</i>	linguā by, from, in, or with a language	-a

## PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	linguae	languages (as subject)	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	linguārum	of languages, languages'	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	linguis	to or for languages	-is
<i>Accusative</i>	linguās	languages (as object)	-ās
<i>Vocative</i>	linguae	O (or ye) languages	-ae
<i>Ablative</i>	linguis	by, from, in, or with languages	-is

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae*, *m.*, the *Belgae*; *Matrona*, *m.*, the (river) *Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as *Samarobrivae*, at *Samarobriva*.

## SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

<i>animus, m.</i> , <i>mind</i>	<i>puer, m.</i> , <i>boy</i>	<i>ager, m.</i> , <i>field</i>	<i>vir, m.</i> , <i>man</i>	<i>bellum, n.</i> , <i>war</i>
------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## SINGULAR

<i>N. animus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>G. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>belli</i>
<i>D. animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>A. animum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>V. anime</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>A. animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>

## PLURAL

<i>N. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>G. animōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
<i>D. animis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellis</i>
<i>A. animōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>V. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>A. animis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellis</i>

<i>filius, m.</i> , <i>son</i>	<i>Gaius, m.</i> , <i>Gaius</i>	<i>Bōi, m.</i> , <i>the Bōii</i>	<i>deus, m.</i> , <i>god</i>	
SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. filius</i>	<i>Gaius</i>	<i>Bōi</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, di</i>
<i>G. fili</i>	<i>Gai</i>	<i>Bōiōrum</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>deōrum</i>
<i>D. filiō</i>	<i>Gaiō</i>	<i>Bōiis</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diis, dis</i>
<i>A. filium</i>	<i>Gaium</i>	<i>Bōiōs</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
<i>V. fili</i>	<i>Gai</i>	<i>Bōi</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, di</i>
<i>A. filiō</i>	<i>Gaiō</i>	<i>Bōis</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diis, dis</i>

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). **Vulgus**, *crowd*, is usually neuter. **Locus**, *m.*, *place*, has plural *loca*, *n.*, *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in -i; as **Agedinci**, at *Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -i, instead of -ii and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -i. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; **cōn-si'li**, of a *plan*; **ini'ti**, of a *beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, and -ōius are declined like **Gāius** and **Bōi**.

e. A few words have -um instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural; **socium** (or **sociōrum**), of *allies*.

### THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

#### A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p**. The nominative ending is -s.

**princeps**, *m.*, *chief*  
Stem **princip-**

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	<b>princeps</b>	<b>principēs</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>principis</b>	<b>principum</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>principi</b>	<b>principibus</b>
<i>A.</i>	<b>principem</b>	<b>principēs</b>
<i>V.</i>	<b>princeps</b>	<b>principēs</b>
<i>A.</i>	<b>principe</b>	<b>principibus</b>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t**. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

<b>laus, F., praise</b>		<b>mīles, M., soldier</b>		<b>caput, N., head</b>	
Stem <b>laud-</b>		Stem <b>milit-</b>		Stem <b>capit-</b>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> laus	laudēs	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>G.</i> laudis	laudum	militis	militum	capitis	capitum
<i>D.</i> laudī	laudibus	militī	militibus	capitī	capitibus
<i>A.</i> laudem	laudēs	militem	militēs	caput	capita
<i>V.</i> laus	laudēs	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>A.</i> laude	laudibus	mīlite	militibus	capite	capitibus

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is *-s*, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *z*.

lēx, F., law Stem lēg-		dux, M., leader Stem duc-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
G. lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
D. lēgī	lēgibus	duci	ducibus
A. lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
V. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
A. lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

cōsul, M., consul Stem cōsul-		pater, M., father Stem patr-		aequor, N., sea Stem aequor-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. cōsul	cōsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
G. cōsulis	cōsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
D. cōsulī	cōsulibus	patri	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
A. cōsulem	cōsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
V. cōsul	cōsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
A. cōsule	cōsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in *-m*. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

homō, M., F., human being Stem homin-		ratiō, F., reason Stem ratiōn-		flūmen, N., river Stem flūmin-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
G. hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
D. hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
A. hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
V. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
A. homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *r*.

mōs, M., <i>custom</i> Stem mōs-		honor, M., <i>honor</i> Stem honōs-		tempus, N., <i>time</i> Stem tempos-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
G. mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
D. mōri	mōribus	honōri	honōribus	tempori	temporibus
A. mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
V. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
A. mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

### B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., *-em*, abl., *-e*, acc. plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-i*.

turris, F., <i>tower</i> Stem turri-	hostis, M., F., <i>enemy</i> Stem hosti-	caedēs, F., <i>slaughter</i> Stem caedi-
SINGULAR		
N. turris	hostis	caedēs
G. turris	hostis	caedis
D. turri	hosti	caedi
A. turrim or -em	hostem	caedem
V. turris	hostis	caedēs
A. turri or -e	hoste	caede
PLURAL		
N. turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
G. turrium	hostium	caedium
D. turribus	hostibus	caedibus
A. turris or -ēs	hostēs or -is	caedēs or -is
V. turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
A. turribus	hostibus	caedibus

**cubīle, N., couch**

Stem cubīl-

**vectīgal, N., tax**

Stem vectīgālī-

## SINGULAR

N. cubīle	vectīgal
G. cubīlis	vectīgālis
D. cubīlī	vectīgālī
A. cubīle	vectīgal
V. cubīle	vectīgal
A. cubīlī	vectīgālī

## PLURAL

N. cubīlia	vectīgālia
G. cubīlium	vectīgālium
D. cubīlibus	vectīgālibus
A. cubīlia	vectīgālia
V. cubīlia	vectīgālia
A. cubīlibus	vectīgālibus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), **m.**, *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), **m.**, *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, **m.**, *fire*, and **nāvis**, **f.**, *ship*, often have **abl.-ī**. **Mare**, **n.**, *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

## C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās, -tātis**.

**cliēns, m., retainer**

Stem cliēt-

**urbs, f., city**

Stem urb-

SINGULAR		PLURAL		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.	cliēns	cliētēs		urbs		urbēs	
G.	clientis	clientium		urbis		urbium	
D.	cliētī	clientibus		urbī		urbibus	
A.	clientem	cliētēs or -īs		urbem		urbēs or -īs	
V.	cliēns	cliētēs		urbs		urbēs	
A.	cliente	clientibus		urbe		urbibus	



## D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

senex, M., old man	os, N., bone	vīs, F., force	bōs, M., F., ox, cow	Iuppiter, M., Jupiter
SINGULAR				
N. senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
G. senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
D. senī	ossi	vī	bovī	Iovī
A. senem	os	vīm	bovem	Iovem
V. senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
A. sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove
PLURAL				
N. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
G. senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum or boum	
D. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	
A. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
V. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
A. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13).

There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. *Masculine* are nouns in *ō* (except those in *-dō, -gō, -iō*) *-or, -ōs, -er, -es*.

b. *Feminine* are nouns in *-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x*, and in *-s* when preceded by a consonant.

c. *Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in *-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in *-u*; nominative masculine in *-us*, nominative neuter in *-ū*.

passus, M., pace		cornū, N., horn	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
G. passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
D. passui	passibus	cornū	cornibus
A. passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
V. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
A. passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

a. *Domus, house, manus, hand, Idūs, Ides*, are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in *-us* sometimes ends in *-ū*.

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in *-ubus*.

d. *Domus*, *f.*, *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>domuum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>domui</i> or <i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>domō</i> or <i>domū</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>domi</i> ( <i>at home</i> )	

### FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in *-ē*; nominative in *-ēs*. Usually feminine.  
*diēs*, *m.*, *day*                      *rēs*, *f.*, *thing*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. *Diēs* in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is *-ēi* after a vowel, *-ei* after a consonant. *-ē* is sometimes used instead of either.

c. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. *Acīēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

### ADJECTIVES

#### 31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

*magnus*, *large*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>	<i>magnārum</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnōs</i>	<i>magnās</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>magne</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnā</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>	<i>magnis</i>

*liber, free*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
A. liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
V. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
A. liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

*noster, our*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G. nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D. nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
A. nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
V. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
A. nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

## ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in *alter* usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are *alius, another, solus, only, totus, whole, ullus, any, nullus, no, unus, one, alter, the other, uter, which* (of two), *neuter, neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in *magnus*. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of *alius*.

## SINGULAR

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. unus	una	unum	totus	tota	totum
G. unius	unius	unius	totius	totius	totius
D. unī	unī	unī	totī	totī	totī
A. unum	unam	unum	totum	totam	totum
A. unō	unā	unō	totō	totā	totō
N. alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G. alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D. aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
A. alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
A. aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of *two* or *three terminations* have only *-i* in the ablative singular.

## A. CONSONANT STEMS

## 34. Two Terminations.

SING.		PLUR.	
		<i>fortior, braver</i>	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>N. fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>G. fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>
<i>D. fortiōri</i>	<i>fortiōri</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>
<i>A. fortiōrem</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>V. fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>A. fortiore</i>	<i>fortiore</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>

α. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs, more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
<i>N. plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>	
<i>G. plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	
<i>D. ....</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	
<i>A. plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs or -is</i>	<i>plūra</i>	
<i>A. plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	

## 35. One termination.

SING.		PLUR.	
		<i>vetus, old</i>	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>G. veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>D. veteri</i>	<i>veteri</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>A. veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>V. vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>A. vetera</i>	<i>vetera</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

a. Here belongs *princeps*, *chief*. *Dives*, *rich*, also belongs here, but has *dītia* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

### B. i-STEMS

#### 36. Three terminations.

*acer*, *sharp*

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
G. <i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
D. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
A. <i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
V. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
A. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

a. Here belong *celeber*, *famous*, *equester*, *equestrian*, *pedester*, *pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

#### 37. Two terminations.

*omnis*, *all*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
G. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
D. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
A. <i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -īs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
V. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
A. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is*, *-e*.

#### 38. One termination.

*audāx*, *bold*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
G. <i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
D. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
A. <i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs or -īs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
V. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
A. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

oriēns, *rising*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
G. orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
D. orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
A. orientem	oriēns	orientēs or -is	orientia
V. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
A. oriente or -ī	oriēnte or -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in *-āns* and *-ēns*. Participles usually have the ablative singular in *-ī* only when used as adjectives, in *-e* when used as participles or nouns.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are *-ior*, *-ius*; superlative, *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*. They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: *altus*, *high*; *altior*, *-ius*, *higher*; *altissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, *highest*; *fortis*, *brave*; *fortior*, *braver*; *fortissimus*, *bravest*.

40. Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: *ācer*, *sharp* (*base*, *ācr-*), *ācrior*, *ācerrimus*.

41. Most adjectives in *-ilis* are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the *base* of the positive. They are *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *humilis*, *low*; *gracilis*, *slender*. Example: *facilis*, *facilior*, *facillimus*.

## 42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

*bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*, *good*, *better*, *best*.  
*malus*, *peior*, *pessimus*, *bad*, *worse*, *worst*.  
*magnus*, *maior*, *maximus*, *great*, *greater*, *greatest*.  
*parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*, *small*, *less*, *least*.  
*multus*, *plūs*, *plūrimus*, *much*, *more*, *most*.  
*dexter*, *dexterior*, *dextrinus*, *on the right*, *dexterous*, etc.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) *citerior*, *citimus*, *hither*, *hithermost*.

(*dē*, prep., *down*) *dēterior*, *dēterrimus*, *worse*, *worst*.

(*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) *interior*, *intimus*, *inner*, *inmost*.

(*prae*, prep., *before*) *prior*, *primus*, *former*, *first*.

(*prope*, adv., *near*) *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.

(*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

*exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*), *outer*, *outmost*.

*inferus*, *inferior*, *infimus* (*imus*), *lower*, *lowest*.

*posterus*, *posterior*, *postrēmus* (*postumus*), *latter*, *last*.

*superus*, *superior*, *suprēmus* (*summus*), *higher*, *highest*.

## COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*. Example: *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base; as *lātus*, *wide*, *lātē*, *widely*: from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in *nt* add only *-er*; as *audāx*, *audācis*, *bold*, *audācter*, *boldly*; *fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*, *bravely*; *prūdēns*, *prudentis*, *prudent*, *prūdentē*, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as *multum*, *much*, *facile*, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as *lātius*, *more widely*, *audācius*, *more boldly*, *fortius*, *more bravely*, *prūdentius*, *more prudently*, *plūs*, *more*, *facilius*, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as *lātissimē*, *most widely*, *audācissimē*, *most boldly*, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*, *prudentissimē*, *most prudently*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *facillimē*, *most easily*.

## NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

<i>Roman</i> <i>Numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>	<i>Distributive</i>
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	bīnī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndēcim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī



LXX. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēni
LXXX. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēni
XC. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēni
C. centum	centēsīmus	centēni
CI. centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) primus	centēni (et) singuli
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducenti
CCC. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecenti
CCCC. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēni
D. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēni
DC. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescenti
DCC. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēni
DCCC. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēni
DCCCC. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēni
M. mille	millēsīmus	singula mīlia
MM. duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending *-ēsīmus* is often used for *-ēsīmus*.

48. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *magnus* (31); *mille* as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of *cubīle* (25) and generally spelled *mīlia*. Ordinals are declined like *magnus*, distributives like the plural of *magnus*.

49. For the declension of *ūnus* see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

duo, two			trēs, three	
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, *two hundred and twenty*. In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without *et*; as *duo mīlla sescentī vigintī sex*, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six*.

## PRONOUNS

### 51.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, <i>ego, I</i>		Second person, <i>tū, you (thou)</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>G. mei</i>	<i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

*a.* There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is, he, ea, she, id, it*, 57; or, when *him, them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

*b.* *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

*c.* The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *nōbīs-cum*, *with us*.

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, <i>meī, of myself</i>		Second person, <i>tuī, of yourself</i>		Third person, <i>suī, of himself, etc.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>G. meī</i>	<i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>	<i>suī</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

*a.* The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum*, *with himself*.

## 53.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. **meus, -a, -um, my**2d pers. **tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)****noster, -tra, -trum, our****vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)**

3d pers. { **suus, -a, -um, his, her, its** (when referring to the subject) **suus, -a, -um, their** (when referring to the subject)  
**eius** (gen. sing. of **is**) **his, her, its** (when not referring to the subject) **eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (gen. plur. of **is**) **their** (when not referring to the subject)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

## 54.

**hic, this** (near the speaker)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
G. <b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
D. <b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
A. <b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
A. <b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, **hoc**, is pronounced **hocc** when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, a.

## 55.

**iste, that** (near the person spoken to)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>iste</b>	<b>ista</b>	<b>istud</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istae</b>	<b>ista</b>
G. <b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istōrum</b>	<b>istārum</b>	<b>istōrum</b>
D. <b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>
A. <b>istum</b>	<b>istam</b>	<b>istud</b>	<b>istōs</b>	<b>istās</b>	<b>ista</b>
A. <b>istō</b>	<b>istā</b>	<b>istō</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>

56. **Ille, that** (something more remote) is declined like **iste**.

## 57.

**is, this, that, he, she, it** (unemphatic)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>is</b>	<b>ea</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>iī, eī</b>	<b>eae</b>	<b>ea</b>
G. <b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eōrum</b>	<b>eārum</b>	<b>eōrum</b>
D. <b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>	<b>iīs, eīs</b>	<b>iīs eīs</b>	<b>iīs, eīs</b>
A. <b>eum</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>eōs</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>ea</b>
I. <b>eō</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>eō</b>	<b>iīs, eīs</b>	<b>iīs, eīs</b>	<b>iīs eīs</b>

## 58.

*Idem, the same*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. Idem</i>		<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>Idem or eïdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>G. eiusdem</i>		<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D. eïdem</i>		<i>eïdem</i>	<i>eïdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>
<i>A. eundem</i>		<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>cōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>A. eōdem</i>		<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eïsdem</i>

## 59.

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. ipse</i>		<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G. ipsius</i>		<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D. ipsī</i>		<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>A. ipsum</i>		<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>A. ipsō</i>		<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

## 60.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. quī</i>		<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G. cuius</i>		<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>D. cui</i>		<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>A. quem</i>		<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A. quō</i>		<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. *Quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The *quī* of *quicumque* is declined regularly. *Quisquis*, *quicquid* (*quidquid*), and *quōquō* are the only common forms of *quisquis*.

b. The preposition *cum* is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

## 61.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

*Quī*, *quae*, *quod*, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. *Quis*, *quid*, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SING.

<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. quis	quid
G. cuius	cuius
D. cui	cui
A. quem	quid
A. quō	quō

a. The enclitic *-nam* is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; *quisnam*, *who, pray?*

b. *Cum* is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

## 62.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are *quis*, *qui*, and their compounds. *Quis* and *qui* in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

## SUBSTANTIVE

*quis, quid, any one*  
*aliquis, aliquid, some one*  
*quispiam, quidpiam, some one*  
*quisquam, quicquam (quidquam),*  
*any one (abl. sing. and entire*  
*plural supplied by ullus, -a, -um)*  
*quisvis, quaevis, quidvis* }  
*quolibet, quaelibet, quidlibet* }  
*any one etc., you like*  
*quidam, quaedam, quiddam, a cer-*  
*tain man*  
*quisque, quidque, each*

## ADJECTIVE

*qui, quae (qua), quod, any*  
*aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some*  
*quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam,*  
*some*  
*(adjective supplied by ullus)*  
*quisvis, quaevis, quodvis* }  
*quolibet, quaelibet, quodlibet* }  
*any you like*  
*quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a*  
*certain*  
*quisque, quaeque, quodque, each*

a. In *qui* and *aliqui* the nominative and accusative plural neuter are *qua* (or *quae*) and *aliqua*.

b. In the declension of *quidam*, *m* becomes *n* before *d*; as *quendam*.

## VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	ā	-āre
II.	ē	-ēre
III.	e (i, u)	-ere
IV.	i	-ire

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive*,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active*,—present participle; gerund: *passive*,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: *active*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive*,—future infinitive; *active*,—future participle; supine: *passive*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of *laudō* are :

*laudō, laudāre* (present stem, *laudā*).  
*laudāvī* (perfect stem, *laudāv*).  
*laudātum* (supine stem, *laudāt*).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

# 66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui*

## INDICATIVE

### *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

### *Imperfect*

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

### *Future*

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

### *Perfect*

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuiamus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt or -ēre</i>

### *Pluperfect*

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

### *Future Perfect*

<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

### *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

### *Imperfect*

<i>essem (or forem)</i>	<i>essēmus (or forēmus)</i>
<i>essēs (or forēs)</i>	<i>essētis (or forētis)</i>
<i>esset (or foret)</i>	<i>essent (or forent)</i>

### *Perfect*

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

### *Pluperfect*

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

**IMPERATIVE***Present*

2d pers. es este

*Future*

2d pers. estō estōte

3d pers. estō suntō

**PARTICIPLE***Fut. futūrus***INFINITIVE***Pres. esse**Perf. fuisse**Fut futūrus (esse) or fore***67.****FIRST CONJUGATION****ACTIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum

**INDICATIVE***Present*

SING.	PLUR.
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

*Imperfect*

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

*Future*

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

*Perfect*

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāverunt
	or -ēre

*Pluperfect*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

*Future Perfect*

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

**SUBJUNCTIVE***Present*

SING.	PLUR.
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

*Imperfect*

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

*Perfect*

laudāverim	laudāverīmus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

*Pluperfect*

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent



## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>		
2d pers.	laudā	laudāte
<i>Future</i>		
2d pers.	laudātō	laudātōte
3d pers.	laudātō	laudantō

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāre
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāvisse
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus ( <i>esse</i> )

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāns
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	laudātum
<i>Abl.</i>	laudātū

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	laudandi
<i>Dat.</i>	laudandō
<i>Acc.</i>	laudandum
<i>Abl.</i>	laudandō

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

## INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris or -re	laudāmini
laudātur	laudantur

*Imperfect*

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris or -re	laudābāmini
laudābātur	laudābantur

*Future*

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis or -re	laudābimini
laudābitur	laudābuntur

*Perfect*

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
lauder	laudēmur
laudēris or -re	laudēmini
laudētur	laudentur

*Imperfect*

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris or -re	laudārēmini
laudārētur	laudārentur

*Perfect*

laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus sis	laudātī sītis
laudātus sit	laudātī sint

*Pluperfect*

laudātus eram	laudāti erāmus	laudātus essem	laudāti essēmus
laudātus erās	laudāti erātis	laudātus essēs	laudāti essētis
laudātus erat	laudāti erant	laudātus esset	laudāti essent

*Pluperfect**Future Perfect*

laudātus erō	laudāti erimus
laudātus eris	laudāti eritis
laudātus erit	laudāti erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. laudāre	laudāmini
------------------	-----------

*Future*

2d pers. laudātor	
3d pers. laudātor	laudantor

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* laudārī*Perf.* laudātus esse*Fut.* laudātum iri

## PARTICIPLE

*Perf.* laudātus*Fut.* laudandus

## 68.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monui, monitum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
moneam	monēamus	moneam	monēamus
moneās	monēatis	moneās	monēatis
moneat	monēant	moneat	monēant

*Imperfect*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

*Imperfect*

monērem	moneremus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērēt

*Future*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

*Perfect*

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt
	or -ēre

*Perfect*

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

*Pluperfect*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

*Pluperfect*

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

*Future Perfect*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. monē monēte

*Future*

2d pers. monētō monētōte

3d pers. monētō monentō

## PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns      Fut. monitūrus

## SUPINE

Acc. monitum      Abl. monitū

## INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse)

## GERUND

Gen. monendī

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneor, monēri, monitus sum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
monear	monēamur
moneāris or -re	monēāmini
moneātur	moneantur

<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
monēbar	monēbāmur	monērer	monērēmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini	monērēris or -re	monērēmini
monēbātur	monēbantur	monērētur	monērentur

<i>Future</i>	
monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

<i>Perfect</i>	
monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

<i>Perfect</i>	
monitus sim	monitī simus
monitus sis	monitī sitis
monitus sit	monitī sint

<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
monitus eram	monitī erāmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus erat	monitī erant	monitus esset	monitī essent

<i>Future Perfect</i>	
monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
2d pers. monēre	monēmini
<i>Future</i>	
2d pers. monētor	
1 pers. monētor	monentor

## INFINITIVE

Pres. monēri
Perf. monitus esse
Fut. monitum iri

## PARTICIPLE

Perf. monitus
Fut. monendus

69.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum

## INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

*Imperfect*

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

*Future*

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

*Perfect*

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -ēre

*Pluperfect*

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

*Future Perfect*

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. dūc*	dūcite
---------------	--------

*Future*

2d pers. dūcitō	dūcitōte
3d pers. dūcitō	dūcuntō

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcēns
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus

*Imperfect*

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

*Perfect*

dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

*Pluperfect*

dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcere
<i>Perf.</i>	dūxisse
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus (esse)

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	ductum
<i>Abl.</i>	ductū

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	dūcendī
<i>Dat.</i>	dūcendō
<i>Acc.</i>	dūcendum
<i>Abl.</i>	dūcendō

\* Irregular for dūce.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum*

## INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
<i>dūcor</i>	<i>dūcimur</i>
<i>dūceris or -re</i>	<i>dūcimini</i>
<i>dūcitur</i>	<i>dūcuntur</i>

<i>Imperfect</i>	
<i>dūcēbar</i>	<i>dūcēbāmur</i>
<i>dūcēbāris or -re</i>	<i>dūcēbāmini</i>
<i>dūcēbātur</i>	<i>dūcēbantur</i>

<i>Future</i>	
<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcēmur</i>
<i>dūcēris or -re</i>	<i>dūcēmini</i>
<i>dūcētur</i>	<i>dūcentur</i>

<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>ductus sum</i>	<i>ductī sumus</i>
<i>ductus es</i>	<i>ductī estis</i>
<i>ductus est</i>	<i>ductī sunt</i>

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
<i>ductus eram</i>	<i>ductī erāmus</i>
<i>ductus erās</i>	<i>ductī erātis</i>
<i>ductus erat</i>	<i>ductī erant</i>

<i>Future Perfect</i>	
<i>ductus erō</i>	<i>ductī erimus</i>
<i>ductus eris</i>	<i>ductī eritis</i>
<i>ductus erit</i>	<i>ductī erunt</i>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
2d pers. <i>dūcere</i>	<i>dūcimini</i>

<i>Future</i>	
2d pers. <i>dūcitor</i>	
3d pers. <i>dūcitor</i>	<i>dūcuntor</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcāmur</i>
<i>dūcāris or -re</i>	<i>dūcāmini</i>
<i>dūcātur</i>	<i>dūcantur</i>

<i>Imperfect</i>	
<i>dūcerer</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>
<i>dūcerēris or re</i>	<i>dūcerēmini</i>
<i>dūcerētur</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>

<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>ductus sim</i>	<i>ductī sīmus</i>
<i>ductus sis</i>	<i>ductī sītis</i>
<i>ductus sit</i>	<i>ductī sint</i>

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
<i>ductus essem</i>	<i>ductī essēmus</i>
<i>ductus essēs</i>	<i>ductī essētis</i>
<i>ductus esset</i>	<i>ductī essent</i>

## INFINITIVE

Pres. <i>dūcī</i>
Perf. <i>ductus esse</i>
Fut. <i>ductum iri</i>

## PARTICIPLE

Perf. <i>ductus</i>
Fut. <i>dūcendus</i>

## 70.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audire, audivī, auditum**

## INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
audiō	audiūmus
audis	auditis
audit	audiunt

<i>Imperfect</i>	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

<i>Future</i>	
audiam	audiēmus
audies	audiētis
audiet	audient

<i>Perfect</i>	
audivī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt or -ēre

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

<i>Future Perfect</i>	
audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
2d pers. audi	audite
<i>Future</i>	
2d pers. auditō	auditōte
3d pers. auditō	audiuntō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

<i>Imperfect</i>	
audirem	audirēmus
audirēs	audirētis
audiret	audirent

<i>Perfect</i>	
audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> audire
<i>Perf.</i> audivisse
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* audiēns      *Fut.* auditūrus

## SUPINE

*Acc.* auditum      *Abl.* auditā

## GERUND

*Gen.* audiendī  
*Dat.* audiendō  
*Acc.* audiendum  
*Abl.* audiendō

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audior, audiri, auditus sum**

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audior	audīmur
audiris or -re	audīmini
auditur	audiuntur

*Imperfect*

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

*Future*

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

*Perfect*

auditus sum	audītī sumus
auditus es	audītī estis
auditus est	audītī sunt

*Pluperfect*

auditus eram	audītī erāmus
auditus erās	audītī erātis
auditus erat	audītī erant

*Future Perfect*

auditus erō	audītī erimus
auditus eris	audītī eritis
auditus erit	audītī erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiāntur

*Imperfect*

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris or -re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

*Perfect*

auditus sim	audītī sīmus
auditus sis	audītī sītis
auditus sit	audītī sint

*Pluperfect*

auditus essem	audītī essēmus
auditus essēs	audītī essētis
auditus esset	audītī essent



## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. audire      audimini

*Future*

2d pers. auditor  
3d pers. auditor      audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* audiri*Perf.* auditus esse*Fut.* auditum iri

## PARTICIPLE

*Perf.* auditus*Fut.* audiendus71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captum*

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

*Imperfect*

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

*Future*

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

*Perfect*

cēpi	cēpimus
cēpisti	cēpistis
cēpit	cēperunt
	or -ēre

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capiam	capiamus
capias	capiatis
capiat	capiant

*Imperfect*

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

*Perfect*

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

*Pluperfect*

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

*Pluperfect*

cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

*Future Perfect*

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. cape	capite
---------------	--------

*Future*

2d pers. capitō	capitōte
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō

## PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns	Fut. captūrus
---------------	---------------

## SUPINE

Acc. captum	Abl. captū
-------------	------------

## INFINITIVE

*Pres. capere**Perf. cēpisse**Fut. captūrus (esse)*

## GERUND

*Gen. capiendī**Dat. capiendō**Acc. capiendum**Abl. capiendō*THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capior, capī, captus sum*

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur
caperis or -re	capimini
capiitur	capiuntur

*Imperfect*

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāmini
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

*Future*

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris or -re	capiēmini
capiētur	capiēntur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris or -re	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

*Imperfect*

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris or -re	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

*Perfect*

captus sum	capti sumus
captus es	capti estis
captus est	capti sunt

*Perfect*

captus sim	capti simus
captus sis	capti sitis
captus sit	capti sint

*Pluperfect*

captus eram	capti erāmus
captus erās	capti erātis
captus erat	capti erant

*Pluperfect*

captus essem	capti essēmus
captus essēs	capti essētis
captus esset	capti essent

*Future Perfect*

captus erō	capti erimus
captus eris	capti eritis
captus erit	capti erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. capere	capimini
-----------------	----------

*Future*

2d pers. capitor	
3d pers. capitor	capiuntor

## INFINITIVE

Pres. capi
Perf. captus esse
Fut. captum iri

## PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus
Fut. capiendus

## CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *laudāstī* for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

b. Perfects in *-ivī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *is*.

Examples: *audiī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audiisse* for *audīvisse*.

## DEPONENT VERBS

**73.** Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

**hortor, urge      vereor, fear      sequor, follow      partior, share**

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partitus esse
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	secūtūrus (esse)	partitūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> hortāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partitus
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partitūrus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i> hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

## GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc.      verendī, etc.      sequendī, etc.      partiendī, etc.

## SUPINE

hortātum, -tū      veritum, -tū      secūtum, -tū      partitum, -tū

74.

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare  
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice  
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed  
fidē, fidere, fīsus sum, trust

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

**75.** The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

*Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,*  
*Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.*

**76.** The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

*Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.*  
*Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

**77.** For the conjugation of **sum** see 66. **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super**. **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns**.

**78.** In **absum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f**, giving **āfui, āfutūrus**, etc. There is a present participle **absēns**.

**79.** In **prōsum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam**. The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt**.

**80.** **Possum, be able, can**, is a compound of **pot-** and **sum**.

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potui**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Pres.*    **possum, potes, potest**  
           **possumus, potestis, possunt**  
*Imp.*    **poteram**  
*Fut.*    **poterō**  
*Perf.*    **potui**  
*Plup.*    **potueram**  
*Fut. Perf.* **potuerō**

**possim**  
**possam**  
**potuerim**  
**potuissem**

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Pres.</i> potēns
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse	

81.                      ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear

### ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem
<i>Fut.</i>	feram	
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli	tulerim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> fer    ferte	<i>Pres.</i> ferre	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns
<i>Fut.</i> fertō   fertōte	<i>Perf.</i> tulisse	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus
fertō   feruntō	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus (esse)	

GERUND	SUPINE
ferendī, etc.	lātum, -tū

### PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	ferar
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ferre,    ferimini	<i>Pres.</i> ferri	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i> fertor	<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse	
fertor,   feruntor	<i>Fut.</i> lātum iri	<i>Fut.</i> ferendus

82.                      volō, velle, volui, *be willing*  
                           nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *be unwilling*  
                           mālō, mālle, mālui, *prefer*

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlite
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. velle</i>	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf. voluisse</i>	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. volēns</i>	nōlēns
---------------------	--------

**83. Fīō, be made, be done, become, happen, is** the irregular passive of **faciō, make**. Note the **i** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er**.

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fīō, fīs, fit fimus, fītis, fiunt	fiam
<i>Imp.</i>	fīēbam	fierem
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	factus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> <b>fi, fite</b>	<i>Pres.</i> <b>fieri</b>	<i>Perf.</i> <b>factus</b>
	<i>Perf.</i> <b>factus esse</b>	<i>Fut.</i> <b>faciendus</b>
	<i>Fut.</i> <b>factum iri</b>	

84.

**eō, ire, ii, itum, go**

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i> <b>eō, Is, it, Imus, Itis, eunt</b>	<b>eam</b>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>Ibam</b>	<b>Irem</b>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>Ibō</b>	
<i>Perf.</i> <b>ii for Ivi</b>	<b>ierim</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>ieram</b>	<b>iissem or Issem</b>
<i>Fut. Per.</i> <b>ierō</b>	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres. I,</i> <i>Ite</i>	<i>Pres. Ire</i>	<i>Pres. iēns (Gen. euntis)</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>itō, itōte</i>	<i>Perf. iisse or Isse</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus</i>
<i>itō, euntō</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus (esse)</i>	
 GERUND		SUPINE
<i>cundi, etc.</i>		<i>itum, -tū</i>

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, **ii** usually contracts to **i** before **s**.

85. **Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give**, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short **a**. **ā** appears only in the following active forms,—**dās, dā, dāns**.

86.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī, I remember; ōdī, I hate**; and **coepī, I have begun**. Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

## INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<b>meminī</b>	<b>ōdī</b>	<b>coepī</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>memineram</b>	<b>ōderam</b>	<b>coeperam</b>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<b>meminerō</b>	<b>ōderō</b>	<b>coeperō</b>



## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	öderim	coeperim
<i>Plup.</i>	meminissem	ödissem	coepissem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

## INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ödisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>		ösūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Per<sup>t</sup></i>	ösus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	ösūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of *coepl* the passive form *coeptus sum* is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: *laudārī coeptus est, he began to be praised.*

## 87.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as *pluit, it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: *decet, it becomes; libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; miseret, it causes pity; oportet, it is right; paenitet, it repents; piget, it displeases; pudet, it shames; refert, it concerns; taedet, it wearies.* All of these except *refert* belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as *accēdit, it is added, from accēdō, I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as *pugnātur, it is fought.*

## SYNTAX

## SENTENCES

**88.** A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

**89.** A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.*

**90.** A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Galli fugerunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

**91.** A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate or dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*. Example: *ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fugerunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

## THE FUNCTION OF CASES

**92.** The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject)  *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object)  *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *miles* would be used in the first sentence, *militem* in the second, and *militi* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *militem*, a soldier, could not be used in this sense, while *multos annos*, many years, is quite probably so used. *Dicit pilum militem vulneravisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuâsit*, he persuaded, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *à milite interfectus est*, he was killed by a soldier; *cum milite venit*, he came in company with a soldier.

## 95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

**RULE:** A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. **RULE:** A predicate noun is connected with the subject by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning.

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pisō fuit cōsul*, *Piso was consul*; *Pisō factus est cōsul*, *Piso became consul*; *Pisō appellātus est cōsul*, *Piso was called consal*. For the predicate accusative with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. **RULE:** An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

EXAMPLES: *Pisō, cōsul, militi Pisōni gladium dedit*. *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier*.

## 96.

## NOMINATIVE

**RULE:** *The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).*

**EXAMPLE:** *Gallia est divisa* (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

## GENITIVE

## A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

**97. GENERAL RULE:** *A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.*

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98-105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: *tuorum comitum sentina* (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades*.

## ATTRIBUTIVE

**98. Subjective and Objective Genitives.** These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as *amor*, *love*, *amō*, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves*, (subjective), or that *some one loves his father* (objective); *occāsum sōlis* (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); *rēgni cupiditate* (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

**99. Possessive Genitive.**

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: *finibus Belgārum* (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; *finibus vestris*, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede *causā* or *grātiā*, for the sake of. Examples: *huius potentiae causā* (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*.

#### 100. Descriptive Genitive.

**RULE:** *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: *huiusce modi senātūs cōsultum* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; *trium mēnsium molita cibāria* (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

#### 101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: *eōrum ūna pars* (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; *hōrum omnium fortissimī* (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; *ubinam gentium sumus* (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in (not of) the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on *satis* used substantively. Examples: *quantum bonī* (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; *satis causae* (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with *quidam*. Example: *ūnus ē filiīs captus est* (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: *hī omnēs* (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

#### 102. Genitive of Material.

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

Example: *aciem legiōnum quattuor* (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions*.

## PREDICATIVE

**103. Possessive Genitive.** The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man*. Example: *est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis* (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs*.

**104. Descriptive Genitive.** The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: *senatus consultum est huiusce modi*, *the decree is of this kind*.

**105. The Genitive of Value.** With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magni*, *parvi*, *tanti*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*. Example: *tanti eius gratiam esse ostendit* (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value*.

## B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**106. RULE:** *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.* They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plēnus*, *full (of)*. Examples: *bellandī cupidī* (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *rei militāris peritissimū* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science*.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: *tui similis* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *veri simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth)*.

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: *locum medium utriusque* (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them*.

## C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

**107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.**

**RULE:** *Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: *reminiscerētur veteris incommodi* (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumēliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

## 108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

**RULE:** *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.*

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: *mē inertiae condemnō* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

## 109. Verbs of Emotion.

**RULE:** *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb *misereor, pity*, also takes the genitive. Examples: *mē meōrum factorum numquam paenitēbit* (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds; mē eius miseret or eius misereor, I pity him.*

## 110. Interest and Rēfert.

**RULE:** *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: *rei publicae intersit* (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state; meā interest, it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: *Galliae potiri* (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

## THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

## 113. Indirect Object.

**GENERAL RULE:** *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

## 114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

**RULE:** *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: *ei filiam dat* (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. *Dōnō*, *give*, *present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: *ei librum dōnō*, *I give (to) him a book*; *eum librō dōnō*, *I present him with a book*.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōsulō*, *consult* or *consult for*, and *metuō*, *fear* or *fear for*. Examples: *sī mē cōsulis* (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; *cōsulite vōbis* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: *ei filia datur*, *his daughter is given to him*.

**115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs.** The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

**RULE:** *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

EXAMPLES: *civitatī persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; *novis rēbus studēbat* (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; *Allobrogibus imperāvit* (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as *audiēns sum*, *obey*, and *fidem habēre*, *trust*. Example: *cui fidem habēbat* (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: *prōvinciāe mīlitum numerum imperat* (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; *id iis persuāsit* (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs *dēlectō*, *delight*, *iubeō*



*command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid*, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: *Labiēnum iubet* (I, 21, 5), *he commands Labienus*.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesarī persuādeō, I persuade Caesar*, becomes *Caesarī ā mē persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me* (literally, *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

**116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I.** Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the *dative of separation*.

**RULE:** *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

**EXAMPLES:** *cum omnibus praestārent* (I, 2, 5), *since they excelled all*; *finitimis bellum inferre* (I, 2, 12), *to make war upon their neighbors*; *mūnitiōni Labiēnum praeficit* (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works*; *scūtō militi detractō* (II, 25, 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier*.

**II. RULE:** *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

**EXAMPLE:** *sī Haeduīs satisfaciant* (I, 14, 19), *if they should make restitution to the Haedui*.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, *aggredior, attack*; *incendō, burn*; *interficiō, kill*; *oppugnō, assault*; but there are many others. Example: *eōs aggressus* (I, 12, 9), *having attacked (or attacking) them*.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: *illum in equum intulit* (VI, 30, 15), *he put him on a horse*.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: *mūnitiōni Labiēnus praeficitur, Labienus is put in command of the works*.

## 117. Dative of Possessor.

**RULE:** The dative is used in the predicate with *sum* to denote the possessor.

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

## 118. Dative of the Agent.

**RULE:** The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nōn expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitātī a tē persuādendum est*, *the state must be persuaded by you*.

## 119. Dative of Purpose.

**RULE:** The dative may express purpose or tendency.

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; *quī novissimis praesidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear*, lit. *who were for a guard to the rear*.

## 120. Dative of Reference.

**RULE:** The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet*.

**121. Ethical Dative.** The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: *Tongilium mihi ēdūxit* (Cic. Cat. II, 4.), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius*, or simply *he took out Tongilius*.

## 122. Dative with Adjectives.

**RULE:** *Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.*

Examples: *plēbī acceptus* (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; *proximī sunt Germānis* (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; *castris idōneum locum* (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp*.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: *ad amicitiam idōneus*, *suitable for friendship*.

b. The adjectives *propior* and *proximus* and the adverbs *propius* and *proximē* sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition *prope*. Example: *proximī Rhēnum* (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine*.

c. For *similis* and *dissimilis* see 106, b.

## ACCUSATIVE

### 123. Subject of Infinitive.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Example: *certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse* (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across*.

### 124. Direct Object.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as *puerum laudat*, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as *coniūrātiōnem fēcit*, *he made a conspiracy*.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: *puer laudatur*, *the boy is praised*; *coniūrātiō facta est*, *a conspiracy was made*.

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad**, **circum**, **in**, **per**, **praeter**, **sub**, **trāns**, have transitive meanings. Example: **ire**, to go, intransitive; but **flūmen trānsire**, to cross (go across) the river.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

### THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

**125. Two Objects.** A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**. Examples: **Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; **eadem ab aliis quaerit** (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others*.

b. **RULE:** *Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.*

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a). Examples: **eōs hoc moneō** (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; **sī quid ille sē velit** (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him*.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: **Haedui frūmentum flāgitābantur**, *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; (ii) **hoc monentur**, *they are given this advice*.

### 126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

**RULE:** *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.*

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: **quem rēgem cōstituerat** (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; **Caesarem certiōrem fēcit**, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain)*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: *quī rēx cōstitūtus erat*, *who had been appointed king*; *Caesar certior factus est* (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain)*.

## 127. Two Objects with Compounds.

**RULE:** *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.*

Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt* (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt*, *three parts were led across the river*.

## 128. Cognate Accusative.

**RULE:** *An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.*

Examples: *eam vitam vivere*, *to live that life*; *trīdūi viam prōcēdere* (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march*.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*. Examples: *id iis persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); *multum posse*, *to have much power*.

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *more*, *plūrium*, *most*, *plērumque*, *for the most part*, and *nihil*, *not at all*. Here belong also *id temporis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and *maximam partem* (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*. Example: *multum sunt in vēratiōne* (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting*.

## 129. Accusative in Exclamations.

**RULE:** *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

Example: *O fortunātam rem publicam* (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

## 130. Accusative of Time and Space.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, *diēs, day; pēs, foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: *rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat* (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; *mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant* (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

## 131. Place to Which.

**RULE:** *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: *ad iūdicium coēgit* (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial*; *in agrum Nōricum trāsierant* (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; *sē Massiliam cōferet* (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; *domum reditiōnis* (I, 5, 6), *of a return home*.

a. *Ad* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: *ad Genavam pervenit* (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

## 132.

## VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: *dēsillite, commilitōnēs* (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

## 133.

## ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

## 134. Ablative of Separation.

**RULE:** *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: *suīs finibus eōs prohibent* (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; *quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent* (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; *ā Bibracte aberat* (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. *Place from which*: with verbs expressing motion:—

**RULE:** *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: *ut dē finibus suīs exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; *quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant* (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; *Rōmā profūgerunt* (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; *domō exīre* (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Examples: *agnō mē metū liberābis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; *proeliō abstinēbat* (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

### 135. Ablative of Source.

**RULE:** *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Examples: *amplissimō genere nātus* (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; *sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)* (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

### 136. Ablative of Material.

**RULE:** *The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.*

Example: *nāvēs factae ex rōbore* (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak*.

### 137. Ablative of Agent.

**RULE:** *The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.*

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvëtiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

### 138. Ablative of Cause.

**RULE:** *Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.*

Examples: *grātiā et largitiōne* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suā victoriā glōriārentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by *causā* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*; and by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustias* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quā dē causā*, (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

### 139. Ablative of Comparison.

**RULE:** *With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.*

Examples: *lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quinīs aut sēnis milibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used instead of *plūs quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

### 140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

**RULE:** *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.



## 141. Descriptive Ablative.

**RULE:** *The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: *hominēs inimicō animō* (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; *nōndum bonō animō vidērentur* (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*.

## 142. Ablative of Manner.

**RULE:** *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Examples: *pars cum cruciātū necābātur* (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; *magnīs itineribus* (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches*

## a. Ablative of Accordance.

**RULE:** *In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.*

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—*cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte*. Examples: *iniussū suō* (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; *mōribus suis* (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; *suā voluntāte* (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish*.

## b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

**RULE:** *Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.*

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: *imperio populi Rōmāni* (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; *intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat* (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet*.

## 143. Ablative of Means.

**RULE:** *The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: *rēgni cupiditate inductus* (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power*.

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plēnus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nitor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*. Examples: *nātūrā loci cōfidēbant* (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

#### 144. Ablative of the Way.

**RULE:** *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Examples: *frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat* (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

**145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs.** The ablative is used with *ūtor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *fulfill*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vēscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: *eōdem ūsī cōsiliō* (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperiō potīri* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

#### 146. Ablative with *opus est*.

**RULE:** *The ablative of means is used with *opus est* and *ūsus est*, meaning there is need of.*

Example: *Caesari multis auxiliis opus est*, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun. Example: *sī quid opus esset* (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*. Example: *sī opus factō esset* (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

#### 147. Ablative of Price.

**RULE:** *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: *parvō pretiō redēpta* (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*.

**148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.**

**RULE:** *The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Compare 139. Examples: *nihilō minus* (I, 5, 1), lit. *less by nothing*, = *nevertheless*; *paucis ante diēbus*, (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

a. *Eō . . . quō*, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*. Example: *eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent* (I, 14, 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly*, = *he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened*.

**149. Ablative of Specification.**

**RULE:** *The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.*

Examples: *linguā inter sē differunt* (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; *maior nātū*, *older (greater in birth)*.

a. The ablative is used with *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*. Example: *ipsis indignum* (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

**150. Ablative Absolute.**

**RULE:** *A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.*

**RULE:** *Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."*

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) *remōtis equis proelium commisit* (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) *M Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus* (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of, etc.*; *eō dēprecātōre* (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) *omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt* (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; *Séquanis invitīs ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; *monte occupatō nostrōs expectābat* (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) *locīs superiōribus occupatīs . . . conantur* (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous positions and tried, etc.

### 151. Place in Which.

**RULE:** Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with *in*.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt* (I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. **RULE:** Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives *domī*, at home, and *rūrī*, in the country, are also in regular use. Examples: *Samarobrivae* (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; *domī largiter posse* (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. **RULE:** No preposition is regularly used with *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus* when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by *tōtus*.

Examples: *nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur* (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several places; *vulgō tōtīs castrīs* (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So *ab* and *ex* are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with *in* if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: *ūnā ex parte* (I, 2, 7), on one side; *cotidianīs proeliīs contendunt* (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; *memoriā tenēbat* (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

### 152. Ablative of Time.

**RULE:** Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: *eō tempore* (I, 3, 14), at that time; *id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōfēcerant* (I, 13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: *eā tōtā nocte iērunt* (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.

## CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

**153. Ablative.** The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab**, **absque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**.

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**. It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

**154. Accusative or Ablative.** **In** and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

**155. Accusative.** All other prepositions govern the accusative.

**156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES**

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, a); as, **flūmen est lātum**, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, **flūmen lātum**, *the wide river*.

**157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES**

**RULE:** *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Examples: **homō bonus**, *a good man*; **mulierī bonae**, *to a good woman*; **bellōrum magnōrum**, *of great wars*.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier**, *a good man and woman*; **bella et victōriae magnae**, *great wars and victories*.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī**, *the men and their characters are good*; **hominēs et arma sunt magnī**, *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt magna**, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

## 158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: **multi**, *many men*; **multorum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multarum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multarum rerum**, *of many things*.

## 159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invitus venit**, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **primus venit**, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

## 160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, **imus**, *the bottom of*; **medius**, *the middle of*; **summus**, *the top of*; **primus**, *the first part of*; **extremus**, *the last part of*; **reliquus**, *the rest of*. Examples: **in colle mediō** (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summus mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **primā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

## 161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: **diuturniorem impunitatem** (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidius insecuti** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**. Examples: **quam maximum numerum** (I, 3, 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

## 162.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: *ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: *utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus* (II, 1, 1), *as I (lit. we) have said before.*

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**163. GENERAL RULE:** *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

## 164. The Direct Reflexive.

**RULE:** *Sui and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Example: *eum videō quī sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.*

## 165. The Indirect Reflexive.

**RULE:** *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject sui and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *sui* or *suus*. Example: *Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).*

**166. The Reciprocal Expression.** The reflexive pronouns are used with *inter* to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Examples: *inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent* (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**167.** The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: *Caesar exercitum dūxit, Caesar led (his) army.*

*a.* **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **sui**, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

**168.** **Hic** refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: *hic liber, this book (near me).*

**169.** **Iste** refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: *iste liber, that book (near you).* When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

**170.** **Ille** refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: *ille liber, that book (yonder).*

*a.* **Ille** and **hic** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. **Hic** is usually the *latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

**171.** **Is** is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

*a.* When **is** is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—*the man, a man, such a man, that*, etc.

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

**172.** **Ipse** emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: *ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar se laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.*



**a. Ipse** is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipsius liber*, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; *vester ipsorum liber*, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**173. RULE:** *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō*, *Caesar, whom I praise*; *ego, qui eum laudō*, *I, who praise him*; *Caesar et Cicero, qui mē laudant*, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

**a. Coordinate Relative.** It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and*, *but*, etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go*. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *qui* (I, 15, 5), *they*.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**174. RULE:** *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.*

Example: *si quis laudat*, *if anyone praises*.

**175. RULE:** *Aliquis (aliqui) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.*

Example: *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*.

**176.** *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicat*, *some one may say*.

**177. RULE:** *Quisquam and ūllus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō*, *nor do I praise anyone*; *cur quisquam iudicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

**178.** *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesciō quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

### AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

**179. RULE:** *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudātus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudatae sunt*, *the women were praised*.

*a.* But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnērunt*, *a great number came*; *duo milia occisi sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

**180.** If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, *a*, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisi sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

*a.* The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque unus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

*b.* If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

### THE VOICES

**181.** The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudātur*, *he is praised*; *ei crēditur* (115, *d*) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

## THE MODES

**182.** The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

**183.** The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: *laudat, he praises; nōn laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?*

**184.** The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

*a. The Subjunctive of Desire.* Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: *laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i. e., I give the command "let him praise."*

*b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity.* Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential*. Examples: *laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.*

*c. The Subjunctive of Fact.* Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: *laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises.*  
Compare *laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

**185.** The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: *laudā, praise (thou); dēsiliſte (IV, 25, 11), jump down.*

## OTHER VERBAL FORMS

**186.** The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: *dicſt Caesarem laudārſ, he ſays that Caesar is praised.*

**187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.** The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

### THE NEGATIVES

**188.** There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

*a. RULE: Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: *nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōne laudat? does he not praise?*

*b. RULE: Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).*

But *nē . . . quidem, not even*, is used in statements. Examples: *nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise: nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.*

### THE TENSES

**189.** The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit, he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat, he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat, he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

### THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

**190.** The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: *laudat, he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: **oppida sua omnia incendunt**, (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns*.

b. With such expressions as **iam diū, iam pridem**, *for a long time*, **multōs annōs**, *for many years*, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē moneō**, *I have been warning you for many years*. There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with **dum**, etc., see 234, a.

**191. The Imperfect** puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example: **laudābat**, *he was praising*.

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as **laudābat**, *he used to praise, or he kept praising*. It is less often used of attempted past action; as **laudābat**, *he tried to praise*.

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē monēbam**, *I had been warning you for many years*.

**192. The Future** puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: **laudābō**, *I shall or will praise, or be praising*.

**193. The Perfect** has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: **laudāvī**, *I have praised*.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, **vēnī**, *I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here*. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially **nōvī, cognōvī**, *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and **cōsuēvī**, *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: *laudāvi, I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: *laudāveram, I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: *veneram, I had come, i. e., I was there; noveram, I knew; consueveram, I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: *laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: *venerō, I shall have come, i. e., I shall be there; noverō, I shall know; consueverō, I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*. Examples: *laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.*

## INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived....., planned..... But Caesar went.....," Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived....., had planned..... But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

**198.** The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

**RULE:** *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After *dum*, *while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

## THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

**199.** Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

## THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**200.** The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	= present or future
Imperfect	= imperfect or future to a past
Perfect	= perfect or future perfect
Pluperfect	= pluperfect or future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come*, or *I shall come*, *that I may praise*, *laudem*; *I came* *that I might praise*, *laudārem*. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses*, can be followed.

**RULE:** *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*



**203.** Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

Principal Tenses			
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	rogō, <i>I ask</i>	Present	quid faciat, <i>what he is doing</i>
Future	rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>	Perfect	quid fēcerit, <i>what he has done (or did)</i>
Present perfect	rogāvi, <i>I have asked</i>		
Future perfect	rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>		
Historical Tenses			
Imperfect	rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	Imperfect	quid faceret, <i>what he was doing</i>
Historical perf.	rogāvi, <i>I asked</i>	Pluperfect	quid fēcisset, <i>what he had done</i>
Pluperfect	rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>		

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

**204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence.** Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, *cum sint* would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction *quod sunt*.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: *temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dēfuerit* (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*.

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: *diem dicunt quâ diē conveniant* (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; *omne frumentum combūrent ut paratiorēs ad pericula subeunda essent* (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.*

## TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

**205. RULE:** *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

<b>dicō eum</b>	<b>laudāre</b>	<b>laudātūrum esse</b>	<b>laudāvisse</b>
lit. <i>him</i>	<i>to be praising</i>	<i>to be about to praise</i>	<i>to have praised</i>
<i>I say that he</i>	<i>is praising</i>	<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
<b>dicam eum,</b>			
<i>I shall say that he is praising</i>		<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
<b>dixi eum,</b>			
<i>I said that he</i>	<i>was praising</i>	<i>would praise</i>	<i>had praised</i>

a. With such perfects as *dēbui*, *licuit*, *oportuit*, *potui*, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: *laudāre potui* lit. *I was able to praise*, = *I could have praised.*

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by *fore* (*futūrum esse*) *ut*, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: *dicat fore ut timeat*, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears*, = *he says that he will fear*; *dixit fore ut laudārētur*, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised*, = *he said that he would be praised.*

## STATEMENTS

**206. The Indicative** is used to state facts. Examples: *Caesar vēnit*, *Caesar came*; *Caesar nōn veniet*, *Caesar will not come*.

**207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity** (184, b) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential*. Examples: *Caesar veniat*, *Caesar would come*; *Caesar nōn vēnissēt*, *Caesar would not have come*; *velim*, *I should like*.

**208. The Potential Subjunctive** (184, b) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*. In an independent sentence the student should always express *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*. Example: *nēmō dubitet*, but usually *pēmō dubitare potest*, *no one can doubt*.

## QUESTIONS

## USE OF MODES

**209.** The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: *quis veniet?* *who will come?* *quis veniat?* *who would come?* *quis dubitet?* *who can doubt* (implying that no one can)?

**210. A Deliberative Question** is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: *quid faciam?* *what shall I do?* *what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: *cūr dubitem?* *why should I doubt?*

**211. A rhetorical question** is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

## INTRODUCTORY WORDS

**212.** Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: *quis vēnit?* *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

**213. RULE:** Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

**a. RULE:** When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: *scrībitne epistulam?* *is he writing a letter?* *epistulamne scrībit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

**b. RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *yes*, the interrogative particle is *nōnne*.

Example: *nōnne epistulam scrībit?* *is he not writing a letter?*

**c. RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *no*, the interrogative particle is *num*.

Example: *num epistulam scrībit?* *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

## DOUBLE QUESTIONS

**214.** Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; *or not* is *annōn*. Examples: *utrum pugnāvit an fūgit?* *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

## ANSWERS

**215.** Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*. Example: *epistulamne scrībit?* *scrībit, yes; nōn scrībit, no.*

## COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

**216.** These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is *nē* (188, *b*).

**217. RULE:** *An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.*

**218. RULE:** *A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: *venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.*

**219. RULE:** *A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōll, nōllite, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by *cavē* (with or without *nē*), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: *nōll dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.*

**220. RULE:** *A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.*

## WISHES

**221.** Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and are usually introduced by *utinam* (not to be translated).

**a. RULE:** *A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

Example: (*utinam*) *adsit, may he be here!*

**b. RULE:** *A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

**c. RULE:** *A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: *utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!*

## COORDINATE CLAUSES

**222.** A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction*. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES

**223.** Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive *quod* clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

## PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

**224.** The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

## PURPOSE CLAUSES

**225. RULE:** *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quōd, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

*a.* In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: *hominēs misit quī vidērent*, *he sent men to see*, lit. *who were to see*.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *quō* is used. Example: *vēnit quō facilius vidēret*, *he came that he might see more easily*, lit. *by which the more easily he might see*.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction *ut* is used. Example: *vēnit ut vidēret*, *he came to see*, *that he might see*, or *in order to see*; *venit ut videat*, *he comes to see*.

*b.* In negative clauses the conjunction *nē* is always used. Example: *hoc fēcit nē quis* (not *ut nēmō*) *vidēret*, *he did this that no one might see*, or *to keep anyone from seeing*.

## RESULT CLAUSES

**226. RULE:** *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a.* For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: *mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent* (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; *incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit* (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; *tam fortis est ut pugnet*, *he is so brave that he would fight*, or *as to fight*, or *that he fights*.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

**227.** These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command*, *I hinder*, *the result is*.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: *imperō ut eās*, *I command you to go*, does not mean *I command in order that you may go*, but rather *I give the command "go"*.

a. **RULE:** Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after *iubeō*, *command*, *cōnor*, *attempt*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*. See 280, a. *Ut* is often omitted after verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, and *wishing*, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: *cīvitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *cīvitātī persuāsīt nē exīrent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *ei licet eat*, *he may go*; *obsidēs utī dent perficit* (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages*.

b. **RULE:** Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with *nē* meaning *that*, or *ut* meaning *that not*.

But *nē nōn*, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*. Examples: *timeō nē veniat*, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō: nē veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally *timeō: veniat*, *I am afraid: let him or may he, come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

c. **RULE:** Verbs meaning *avoid*, *hinder*, *prevent*, and *refuse* may take the subjunctive with *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōdminus*.



But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quā* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after *either positive or negative*. Examples: *eum impediō nē*, or *quōminus, veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quā*, or *quōminus, veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (I, 31, 24), *and that they would not refuse to be*.

### SUBSTANTIVE UT CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. *RULE: Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.*

Compare 228, a. Example: *montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint*, *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave*.

b. *RULE: Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *hīs rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur* (I, 2, 1f), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. *RULE: Such phrases as mōs est, cōsuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *iūs est*, *lēx est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equis pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback*.

d. *RULE: Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quā.*

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *sī* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quā hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this*.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

**230. GENERAL RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.*

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

**a. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.*

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is = (such) a man* (171, a), *eius modi, such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *is est qui pugnet, he is a man who fights; secutae sunt tempestates quae nostris in castris continerent* (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms . . . . . that they kept); tam improbus qui non fateatur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

**b. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.*

So after *est qui*, *there is a man who*; *non* or *nemo* or *nullus est qui*, *there is no one who*; *quis est qui?* *who is there who?* *solus* or *unus est qui* *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *nulli sunt qui putent, there are none who think; erant omnino itinera duo quibus exire possent* (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

**c.** In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*. Examples: *unum (iter) vix quod singuli carri ducerentur* (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellegeret quare timeret* (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.*

## DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

**231. RULE:** *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.*

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceani quae est ad Hispāniam* (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

## PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

**232. RULE:** *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorigī, qui principātum obtinēbat, persuādet* (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorigī (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet*.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**233.** There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

*While, as long as*

**234.** Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

**a. RULE:** *Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est* (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

**b. RULE:** *Dum, donec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.*

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

*Until*

**235.** Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

**a. RULE:** *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

**b. RULE:** *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Examples: *Galli expectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.*

*Before*

**236.** Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

**a. RULE:** *Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

**b. RULE:** *Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Example: *Galli magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnāti sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.*

**c.** These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Galli prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.*

*After*

**237. RULE:** *Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when (after, not while), simul ac, cum primum, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.*

Example: *ubi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 7, 6) *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

*Cum*

**238. Cum** has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when, after*;  
causal, *since, because*;  
adversative (concessive), *although*.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with **cum** is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

**239. Causal and Adversative Cum.**

**RULE:** *Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.*

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *his cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening*.

**240. Temporal cum.** Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

**241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.**

a. Clauses of Date.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders*.

#### b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite*.

#### c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the *cum* clause.

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Galli cohortātī (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum . . . . . prōcessisset, . . . . . cohortātī sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.)*.

### 242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

#### a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

#### b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvelle-re poterant* (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent* (in each of many cases), *they could neither draw it out, etc.*

### CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. **RULE:** *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, *because*, *since*, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply *because* (as he said), (as he thought), (as I said), (as I thought), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) *reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight*; (with the subjunctive) *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because* (as he said) *he had been deserted*.

245. **RULE:** *Cum*, *since*, *because*, and often *qui*, *since he*, etc., are used with the subjunctive.

But the indicative is often used with *quī*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim*, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive *quī* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) *illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentīrent, negōtium suscepērunt* (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) *fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc.* For example with *cum*, see 239.

### ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

**246. RULE:** *Quamquam*, *although*, and *etsi*, *tametsi*, *even if*, *although*, are used with the indicative.

Example: *etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur* (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.* But *quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet*.

**247. RULE:** *Cum*, *although*, and less commonly *quamvis* (*In Otero*), *however much*, *however*, *although*, *quī*, *although he*, etc., *ut*, *although*, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for *cum* see 239) *quamvis senex sit, fortis est*, *however old he may be, he is brave*; *ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent* (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* But the indicative is sometimes used with *quī* when the adversative idea is clear.

### SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

**248. RULE:** *Substantive clauses with quod*, *that*, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: *illa praetereō, quod Maelium occidit* (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that*, *whereas*. Example: *quod unum pāgum adortus es, nōli ob eam rem dēspicere* (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*



## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**249.** A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

## CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**250.** The connectives are the conjunctions *sī, if, sī nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

## CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**251.** There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. **Undetermined Present or Past (253).** *sī pugnāt, vincit, if he fights he conquers; sī pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. **Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254).** *sī pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; sī pugnāvisset, vicisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. **More Vivid (Confident) Future (256).** *sī pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. **Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257).** *sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

## A. Present or Past

**252.** In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

**253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE:** *A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Examples: *sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnavit nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

**254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE:** *A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: *sī fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnavisset eum nōn laudāvissem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnavisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).*

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: *sī fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight* (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); *sī fortis fuisset pugnāre debuit or debu- erat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought* (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

*B. Future*

**255.** There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

**256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE:** *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *sī pugnābit eum laudābō*, *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him*; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, *whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised*.

**257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE:** *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *sī pugnet vincat*, *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer*; *quī pugnet laudētur*, *whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised*; *sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem*, *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him*.

## MIXED CONDITIONS

**258.** In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *sī veniat hic adsumus*, *if he should come we are here*.

## CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

**259.** Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: *damnatum poenam sequi oportebat* (I, 4, 3), (if) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; *dicat, he would say* (if he should be asked); *velim, I should like*. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

### CLAUSES OF PROVISO

**260. RULE:** *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often *nē*. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us*; *modo nē* (or *nōn*) *discēdat eum vidēbō, if only he do not leave I shall see him*.

### CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

**261. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.*

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: *currit quasi timeat, he runs as if he were afraid*; *cucurrit quasi timēret, he ran as if he were afraid*.

### INDIRECT QUOTATION

#### A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**262. GENERAL RULE:** *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as he asked "*where are you going?*"; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as he asked *where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

**263. RULE:** *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) *quis veniat?* *who would come?* (indirect) *rogō quis veniat*, *I ask who would come*; (direct) *quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) *rogāvi quid facerem*, *I asked what I was to do*.

**264. RULE:** *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) *quis vēnit?* *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit*, *I ask who came*; (direct) *ubi est?* *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset*, *he told me where he was*.

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by *num* or *-ne*, *whether* (no difference in meaning). *Sī* is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*. Examples: (direct) *venitne?* *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat*, or *rogō veniatne*, *I ask whether he is coming*; *exspectāvit sī venīrent*, *he waited to see whether they would come*.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by *necne*, instead of *annōn*. Examples: *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset*, *I asked whether he had fought or run away*; *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne*, *I asked whether he had fought or not*.

## B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**265.** *Direct discourse* repeats the **exact words of a remark or a thought**. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with **such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction**. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave*.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

*Principal Clauses*

**266. Declarative Sentences. RULE:** *Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).*

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: *miles est fortis, the soldier is brave*, becomes *dixit militem esse fortem, he said that the soldier was brave*.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

**267. Imperative Sentences. RULE:** *Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*. Examples: *ad Id. Apr. revertimini, return about the thirteenth of April*, becomes *respondit: . . . ad Id. Apr. reverterentur* (I, 7, 19), *he replied . . . : (that) they should return*, etc.; *is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret* (I, 13, 14), *he should not despise* (from an original *nōli dēspicere* (219), *do not despise*).

**268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE:** *An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet* (I, 44, 24), *what did he want* (for an original *quid tibi vis, what do you want?*)?

**II. RULE.** *An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.*

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266). Example: *respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse* (I, 14, 8), *could he forget* (for an original *I can not forget [can I?]*)?

**III. RULE.** *A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *incūsāvit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose* (for an original *iūdicet*. See 210. a)?

**269. Subordinate Clause. RULE:** *Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod . . . superāssent* (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original *iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis*).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by *et*, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since *quō* connects with the preceding sentence *posse* might have been a subjunctive.

### *Tenses of the Subjunctive*

**270.** The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

a. **Repraesentātiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of *saying* or *thinking*; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset*, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dicit*, imperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dicit*, pluperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

### *Other Changes*

**271.** If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *suī* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: *hunc militem laudō, I praise this soldier*, may become *dicō mē hunc militem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier*, or *dicīt sē illum militem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now to then, here to there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

### *Conditions in Indirect Discourse*

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, *a*. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dicīt* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dicīt* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

### C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. **RULE:** *The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.*

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (244). It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: *Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen*).



## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

**274. RULE:** *Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.*

Example: *cum certissimae rēs accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset* (I, 19, 1), *since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.*

## THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

## A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

## COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

**275. RULE:** *Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.*

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: *Ire potest, he can go; Ire potuit, he could have gone*, literally *he was able to go; Ire debet, he ought to go; cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: *fortis esse cōnātur*, *he tries to be brave.*

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

**276.** The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet, it is permitted*, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: *Ire oportet, one must go*, literally *to go is right; Ire oportuit, one ought to have gone* (205, a), literally *to go was right; ei Ire licuit, he might have gone*, literally *to go was permitted to him; Ire necesse est, one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-

sative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet*, *one ought to be brave*; *virō licet esse fortī (fortem)*, *a man may be brave*, lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*.

### B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

### INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. **RULE:** *The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.*

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, a, and 229, c. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet*, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, a); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

### INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. **RULE:** *The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.*

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, a). Example: *militēs pugnāre iussit*, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

b. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire*, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmentem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potiri posse spērānt* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

### C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

**281. Historical Infinitive. RULE:** *The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.*

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

### PARTICIPLES

**282.** Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

**283.** Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fūgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled*, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**284.** The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc visō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a,) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes *pugnans occisus est*, usually either *dum pugnât occisus est*, or *cum pugnâret, occisus est*; *seeing this he fled*, *cum hoc vidisset fugit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currit*, never *est currêns*.

## 285.

## FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: *praeter quod sêcum portâtûrî erant* (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised*, *he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active; remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; *mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cûrô*, *cause, have* (literally *take care*), *dô*, *give over*, *suscipiô*, *undertake*. Examples: *pontem faciendum cûrat* (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; *cônsulibus senâtus rem publicam dēfendendam dedit*, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

## PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: **visus fūgit**, *having been seen he fled*; **Caesare visō fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled*. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habeo**. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: **magnās cōpiās coactās habet**, *he has great forces (which he has) collected, or he has collected great forces (and still has them)*; while **magnās cōpiās coēgit**, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam**, *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded*.

## GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: **fugīendī causā** (99, a), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum eī** (115), *for persuading him*; **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

## GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā**, **videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā**, and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī**. In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā**, **urbis** is the genitive mod-

ifying *causā* and *videndae* agrees with *urbis*, literally *for the sake of the city to be seen*. Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

### CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

**289. I. RULE:** *If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: *eī crēdendī causā*, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of *ūtō*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor* (145) is used. Example: *spēs potiundī oppidī* (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

**II. RULE:** *If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) *ad effēmīnandōs animōs* (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) *urbis videndae causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

### USE OF CASES

**290.** Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

**291. The Genitive** is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: *bellandī cupiditās*, *a desire of fighting*; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, *desirous of seeing Caesar*; *bellandī causā vēnit*, *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting)*.

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—*meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī*, or *vestrī* with a genitive in *-ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: *sui cōservandī causā*, *for the sake of saving themselves*. The usual gerund would be *sē cōservandī*; the gerundive *sui cōservandōrum*.

**292. The Dative** is very rare.

**293. The Accusative** is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose. Examples: *parātus ad proficiscendum*, *ready to set*

out; *ad Caesarem videndum* (gerundive, see 289, II), *venit, he came to see Caesar.*

**294. The Ablative** is used, with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in*, and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: *in quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis* (III, 25, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

### THE SUPINE

**295. RULE:** *The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

It may govern a direct object. Examples: *gratulātum vēnērunt* (I, 30, 2), *they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium* (I, 11, 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

**296. RULE:** *The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).*

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dicō, faciō, vidēō*, is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mirābilis*, and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est*. Example: *perfacile factū* (I, 3, 16) lit. *very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.*

### THE ROMAN CALENDAR

**297. The Months.** The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius* (-a, -um), *Februārius*, *Mārtius*, *Aprīlis* (-e), *Maius*, *Iūnius*, *Quīntilis*, *Sextilis*, September (-bris, -bre), *Octōber*, *November*, and *December*. Later *Quīntilis* was changed to *Iūlius*, in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

**298. Calends, Nones, and Ides.** The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Idūs*,—*uum*, *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

**299. Method of Reckoning.** In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

**300. Method of Expressing Dates.** An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example *a. d. IV. Id. Iān.* = *ante diem quārtum Idūs Iānuāriās*. The logical, but less usual form is *diē quārtō ante Idūs Iānuāriās*, *on the fourth day before the Ides of January*. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH)

(ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = *Kal. Iān.*

(13 + 1 - 4 = 10) Jan. 10 = *a. d. iv. Id. Iān.* (13 + 1 - 10 = 4).

(28 + 2 - 8 = 22) Feb. 22 = *a. d. viii. Kal. Mār.* (28 + 2 - 22 = 8).

(7 + 1 - 4 = 4) July 4 = *a. d. iv. Nōn. Iūl.* (7 + 1 - 4 = 4).



## GENERAL VOCABULARY

**A.**, *abbr. for Aulus.*

**ā, ab**, or **abs**, *prep. with abl.; of place, from, away from, from the neighborhood of; with expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of; of position or direction, at, on, in, on the side of; of time, from, since, after; of separation, source, etc., from; of agency, by, at the hands of.*

**ab-aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *tr.* [**aliēnō**, alienate], estrange.

**ab-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *tr.*, disavow; *with sē and the abl.*, resign, abdicate.

**ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, *tr.*, remove, withdraw, conceal; hide.

**ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, *tr.*, lead away, take away, drive away.

**ab-eō, -ire, -ivi and -ii, -itum**, *intr.*, go away, retire, vanish; come off, turn out.

**ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum**, *tr.* [**ab+iaciō**], throw or cast away, cast.

**abiēs, -etis, f.**, the silver fir, fir-tree.

**abscidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum**, *tr.* [**abs+caedō**], cut off, tear off or away.

**absēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of ab-sum*], absent, away.

**ab-similis, -e, adj.**, unlike.

**ab-sistō, -ere, -stiti, —, intr.**, stand from or aloof, withdraw.

**abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersum**, *tr.*, wipe off or away.

**abstinentia, -ae, f.** [**abstineō**], abstinence, self-restraint.

**abstineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum**, *tr. and intr.* [**abs+teneō**], keep from, abstain from; absent oneself from; withhold, hinder.

**abs-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum**, *tr.*, drag away, carry away by force.

**ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, intr.**, be away from, be lacking, be absent, be distant from; take no part in; **ā bellō abesse**, take no part in war.

**ac**, *see atque.*

**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, *intr.* [**ad+cēdō**], draw near, approach; come to in addition, be added, enter into, be inspired in; undertake, take part in.

**accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *tr. and intr.* [**ad+celerō**, hasten], hurry, make haste.

**accendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum**, *tr.* [**ad+cendō**, burn], set fire to, kindle, light.

**acceptus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of accipio*], acceptable, pleasing, popular.

**accidō, -ere, -cidi, —, intr.** [**ad+cadō**], fall to, fall; *of weapons*, strike; come to pass, happen, take place; be true of.

**accidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum**, *tr.* [**ad+caedō**], cut at or into, cut deep, hew, notch.

**accingō, -ere, -cinxī, -cinctum**, *tr.* [**ad+cingō**], gird, arm, equip.

**accipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum**, *tr.* [**ad+capiō**], take, take in, receive, accept; learn, hear, hear of; deal with, treat; *w. finem*, have, come to; *w. incommodum or dētrimentum*, suffer.

**acclivis, -e, adj.** [**ad+clivus**], sloping upward, rising, ascending, uphill.

**acclivitās, -ātis, f.** [**acclivis**], an ascent, acclivity.

**accommodātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accommodō*], adapted, fit, suited.

**accommodō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, arrange, adjust, put on.

**accubō**, -āre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [*cubō*, lie down], lie down.

**accumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [*ad+cumbō*, recline], lay oneself down, recline at table

**accūrātē**, *adv.* [*accūrātus*, carefully wrought], carefully, with care.

**accurrō**, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [*ad+currō*], run to, hasten to.

**accūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ad+causa*], accuse, blame, censure.

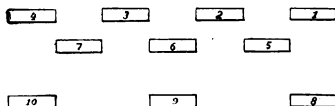
**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *adj.*, sharp, harsh, severe; *w. favilla*, glowing.

**acervus**, -ī, *m.*, a heap.

**Achaea**, -ae, *f.*, the province of southern Greece. Map I, H, 6.

**Achillēs**, -is, *m.*, the hero of the Iliad, and the most famous Greek warrior in the Trojan war.

**aciēs**, -eī, *f.*, sharp edge; line of battle, battle-line; battle, engagement; **aciēs triplex**, a triple battle-line, the usual formation adopted by Caesar. In this arrangement, each legion was drawn up in three lines, one behind another, the first one consisting of four cohorts, and the second and third of three each. The cohorts were placed checkerwise, with the third line a little farther back from the second than the latter was from the front line. After the



preliminary skirmishing of the light-armed troops, with which the Romans commonly began battle, the three cohorts of the second line moved forward into the spaces be-

tween the four in front of them, thus presenting a solid front of seven cohorts. This was continued on the right and the left by the front lines of the neighboring legions, drawn up in a similar fashion. The three cohorts composing the rear line remained in their original position, for the purpose of affording support to the others.

**ācriter**, *adv.* [*ācer*], sharply, bravely, fiercely, vigorously, vehemently; *comp.*, **ācrius**, *sup.*, **ācerrimē**.

**acta**, -ae, *f.*, sea-shore.

**Actium**, -ī, *n.*, promontory and town in Epirus. Map I, G, 5.

**actuārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*agō*], swift, swift-sailing; **actuāria** (*sc. nāvis*), swift boat, cutter. See **nāvis**.

**acūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of acuō*, sharpen], sharpened, sharp, pointed.

**ad**, *prep.* with *acc.*; with *verbs of motion*, to, up to, toward; to the vicinity of; of *position*, at, near to, close by; to *express purpose*, for, to; of *time*, up to, until, on; **ad diem**, on the day, at the appointed time; with *expressions of number or amount*, almost, about, toward; in *other relations*, at, according to, up to, among, in the eyes of; used *adverbially*, with *numerals*, about.

**ad-aequō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, make equal, equal; keep up with; **cursum adaequāre**, keep up with; be on a level or equal.

**ad-amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, desire eagerly, covet.

**ad-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, bring to, add; give, impart; **addere animum** or **animōs**, give courage, embolden; **sē addere**, add oneself to, i.e., turn into.

**ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, bring to, lead, pull; induce, draw.

**ad-eō**, *adv.*, to this point, to such an extent, so far, so very, so; indeed.

**ad-eō, -īre, -iī or -īvi, -itum, tr. and intr.,** go to, approach, reach; apply to; attack, assail; visit.

**ad-equitō, -āre, -āvi, —, tr.** [equitō, ride], ride up to.

**ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum, tr.,** bring or carry to, present; cause; bring forward, allege.

**ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [ad+faciō], do something to, treat, afflict, punish; with acc. and abl., reward with, visit with, inflict upon.

**ad-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.,** affix, fasten to, attach.

**ad-finis, -e, adj.,** adjacent to; as subst., m. and f., connection by marriage, connection.

**ad-finitās, -ātis, f.** [adfinis], alliance by marriage; relationship.

**ad-fligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [freq. of adfligō], damage greatly, shatter, injure, wreck; throw down, overthrow; harass, destroy.

**ad-flictus, -a, -um, adj.** [pf. part. of adfligō], overwhelmed, distressed.

**ad-fligō, -ere, -fixī, -flictum, tr.** [fligō, dash], strike, damage, injure; throw down, overthrow, overturn.

**ad-for, -fārī, -fātus, tr.** [for, speak], say or speak to, address.

**ad-gredior, -i, -gressus, tr. and intr.** [ad+gradior], advance against, attack, undertake.

**ad-gregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [gregō, collect in a flock], gather, assemble; join, attach.

**ad-haereō, -ēre, —, —, intr.,** cleave or stick to, cling to.

**ad-hibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr.** [ad+habeō], apply; bring to, summon; admit, invite; turn to for counsel, consult; employ, use.

**ad-hortor, -ārī, -ātus, tr.,** encourage, urge, incite.

**ad-hūc, adv.,** up to this time, yet, as

yet, heretofore, to this day; **adhūc nōn or neque adhūc**, not as yet, not to this time.

**Adiatunnus, -i, m.,** leader of the *Sotiates*.

**ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [ad+iaciō], throw to, join to, annex, add; w. **aggerem**, throw up; pf. part. as adj., adjacent.

**ad-igō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [ad+agō], urge, compel, drive or bring by force; cast, ram in, thrust; w. **iūs iurandum**, bind by oath.

**ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, tr.** [ad+emō], take away, remove, deprive of; destroy.

**aditus, -ūs, m.** [adeō], a going to, access, approach; way of approach, entrance.

**ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.,** join to, add; associate.

**ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtum, tr.,** help, assist; contribute to, support.

**ad-minister, -trī, m.,** assistant, attendant, priest.

**ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [ministrō, serve], manage, administer; attend to, carry out, do.

**admirābilis, -e, adj.** [admiror], wonderful, admirable.

**admirātiō, -ōnis, f.** [admiror], admiration.

**ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr.,** wonder at, admire; be astonished.

**ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.,** admit, receive, grant audience to; permit, incur; of a crime, commit; w. **equum**, give reins to.

**ad-modum, adv.,** to the limit; very, very much, quite.

**ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr.,** move toward, bring near or up; put to, apply; offer.

**adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, intr.** [ad+alēscō, grow up], grow up, reach maturity or man's estate.

**ad-operiō, -īre, -operuī, -opertum, tr.**

- [operiō, cover], cover up or over, wrap, muffle.
- ad-optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, choose, adopt.
- ad-orior, -iri, -ortus, tr.**, rise up against, fall upon, attack, assail; approach, address.
- ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, beseech, implore; worship, do homage to.
- ad-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, prepare, prepare for.
- ad-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. and intr.**, drive or force to, land, put ashore, put in.
- ad-petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr.**, strive for, reach after; long for, desire; draw nigh, approach, be at hand.
- ad-plicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [plicō, fold], fold a thing on another, fold or bring near, apply; *sē adplicāre*, bend toward, lean; join.
- ad-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, carry, bring or convey to.
- ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [propinquō, approach], come near, approach.
- adripiō, -ere, -ripiui, -reptum, tr.** [ad-rapiō], snatch or take up, grasp.
- ad-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētum, intr.**, become quiet, rest; die.
- adroganter, adv.** [adrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly.
- adrogantia, -ae, f.** [adrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, insolence.
- ad-sciscō, -ere, -scivi, -scitum, tr.** [sciscō, approve], take to oneself as allies, admit, receive.
- adsiduus, -a, -um, adj.** [adsidēō, sit by], close at hand, ever present; continual, constant.
- ad-sistō, -ere, adstiti, —, intr.**, stand by or near, stand.
- adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr.** [adsuētus+faciō], accustom, inure.
- ad-suēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, tr.** and *intr.* [suēscō, become used], accustom; become accustomed or familiarized; be accustomed or wont.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr.**, be at, near, or present, be at hand; come, appear; help.
- ad-surgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum, intr.**, rise, rise out of respect to.
- adulēscēns, -entis, adj.** [pres. part. of *adolēscō*], young; as *subst., m. and f.*, youth, young man or woman.
- adulēscēntia, -ae, f.** [adulēscēns], youth.
- adulēscēntulus, -i, m.** [dim. of *adulēscēns*], very young man, strippling.
- aduncus, -a, -um, adj.**, curved inward, curved, hooked.
- adventus, -ūs, m.** [ad+veniō], a coming to, coming, arrival.
- adversārius, -a, -um, adj.** [advertō], hostile; as *subst., m.*, opponent, enemy.
- adversum or adversus, adv. and prep.** [advertō], opposite; against.
- adversus, -a, -um, adj.**, turned toward, facing, in front, opposite; unfavorable, hostile.
- ad-vertō, -ere, -i, -versum, tr.**, turn or direct toward, steer; *animum advertere*, observe, notice.
- ad-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**, fly to or against, rush on or at, make an onset.
- aedificium, -i, n.** [aedificō], building.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [aedēs, house+faciō], build.
- aedilis, -is, m.** [aedēs, house], aedile.
- Aegātēs, -ium, f.**, a group of islands west of Sicily. *Map II, C, 7.*
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj.**, ill, sick.
- aegrē, adv.** [aeger], painfully, with difficulty, scarcely; *aegrē ferre*, feel distress at, be annoyed at.

**Aegyptus**, -ī, *f.*, Egypt, the country round about the lower Nile. Map I, J, 7-8.

**Aemilius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Aemilius Paulus, consul in 219 and 216 B.C.

(2) Marcus Aemilius Lepidus, member of the second triumvirate, and consul in 46 B.C.

(3) Lucius Aemilius, a decurion in Caesar's army.

**aëneūs**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of bronze or copper.

**aënus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of copper or bronze; as *subst.*, *n.*, a brazen vessel, kettle.

**Aeolius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Aeolian; of Aeolus, god of the winds.

**aequālis**, -e, *adj.*, equal, like; of the same age; as *subst.*, *m.*, contemporary.

**aequāliter**, *adv.* [aequālis], equally, uniformly, evenly.

**aequē**, *adv.* [aequus], equally, in like manner; **aequē . . . quam**, as . . . as.

**Aequi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of central Italy. Map I, B, 7.

**aequinoctium**, -ī, *n.* [aequus+nox], the equinox.

**aequitās**, -ātis, *f.* [aequus], equality; fairness; evenness of mind, contentment.

**aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [aequus], make equal or even, equalize, make level; *pass.*, be equal, be as large as.

**aequor**, -oris, *n.* [aequus], even surface; surface of the sea; the sea generally.

**aequum**, -ī, *n.* [aequus], level place, plain; fairness, justice.

**aequus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level; fair, just; favorable.

**āēr**, **āeris** (*acc.* āera), *m.*, the air, atmosphere.

**aerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of cop-

per, copper; as *subst.*, *f.*, mine; *n.*, treasury, fund.

**aes**, **aeris**, *n.*, copper; money; **aes aliēnum**, another's money, debt.

**aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

**aestimātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [aestimō], valuation.

**aestimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, reckon, estimate, regard; consider.

**aestuārium**, -ī, *n.* [aestus], low marsh-land, tidal swamp, estuary, marsh.

**aestuō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [aestus], be in violent agitation, boil; rage; glow.

**aestus**, -ūs, *m.*, heat, boiling, surging; summer; tide.

**aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, time of life, life, age; old age, years; life of man, a generation, men of an age.

**aeternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aevum], perpetual, for all time, immortal.

**aethēr**, -eris, *m.*, the upper air, air; sky, heaven.

**aevum**, -ī, *n.*, eternity; lifetime, generation; age, old age.

**Āfer**, **Āfri**, *m.*, an African; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, Africans, Carthaginians.

**Āfrānius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, the continent of Africa. Map I, C-F, 6-8.

**Āfricānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or in Africa, African; as *subst.*, *m.*, a cognomen.

**Āfricus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, African; (*sc. ventus*) the southwest wind, which blows from Africa to Italy.

**ager**, **agrī**, *m.*, field, farm; land, country; territory, district; plain.

**Agēsīlāus**, -ī, *m.*, a king of Sparta.

**agger**, -eris, *m.* [ad+gerō], materials for making a mound or earthwork; a mound, rampart; earthwork surrounding a Roman camp. The agger constructed by the Romans in besieging a city was a dike or earth-

work, built of tree-trunks, earth, and massive stones. If the country round the besieged town offered no great hindrance to the operations of the besiegers, the **agger** was built parallel with the city wall, and equal to it in height; and, being provided with palisades and towers, served to protect the attackers and render their offensive operations secure. If the country was rough and broken, the construction of the **agger** was more difficult. It was begun at a considerable distance from the town, and, gradually rising in height, approached the wall at right angles with the latter. Covered galleries within the structure itself assured safety to the besiegers. It was built up to the ditch in front of the town, and its highest point was on a level with the foot of the city wall, or, in some cases, as high or even higher than the top of the wall. The breadth varied from 40 to 60 feet. When the **agger** was completed, it afforded a point of vantage for the attack, or a gradual approach by which the movable tower and the battering ram could be brought up against the wall.

**Agis**, -ídīs, *m.*, a king of Sparta.

**agitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of **agō**], set in motion, shake; revolve, consider.

**agmen**, -ínis, *n.* [**agō**], a marching army or column; army, band, troop; line; in **agmine**, on the march; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.

**agnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**ad** + (**g**)**nōscō**], recognize, acknowledge.

**agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, put in motion, drive, extend, bring up, advance; pursue; do, act, transact, perform; *w.* **triumphum**, celebrate; *w.* **bellum**, carry on, wage; treat, confer; arrange, decide, urge; of time, pass, live through;

**annum agēns vicēsimum**, in his twentieth year; *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, past; *w.* **silentium**, keep; *inv.* as *interj.*, age! come now!

**agricola**, -ae, *m.* [**ager** + **colō**], farmer.

**aiō**, *defect.*, say yes, say; tell.

**āla**, -ae, *f.*, a wing.

**alacer**, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, active, eager, ready.

**alacritās**, -ātis, *f.* [**alacer**], activity, spirit, eagerness, readiness.

**ālārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla**], belonging to a wing; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, auxiliary troops.

**Albānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alba**], Alban, of Alba; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Albans.

**Albinus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**albus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

**alcēs**, -is, *f.*, an elk; moose-deer.

**Alesia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the *Mandubii*, the modern Alise Sainte Reine. *Map IV, F, 3.*

**Alexandria**, -ae, *f.*, a city at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great. *Map I, J, 7.*

**aliās**, *adv.* [**alius**], at another time; **aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another.

**aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**], of another, of others; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable.

**alimentum**, -ī, *n.* [**alō**], nourishment, maintenance, sustenance.

**aliō**, *adv.* [**alius**], to another place, elsewhere.

**aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a while.

**aliquandō**, *adv.*, once upon a time, once; finally, at length; of the future, one day, some time or other.

**aliquantus**, *adv.* [**aliquantus**], in some degree, somewhat, considerably.

**aliquantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, a little; as *subst.*, *n.*, a good deal, some.

**aliquis** (-quī), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (-quod), *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, some one, somebody, something; anyone; as *adj.*, some, any.

**aliquot**, *indecl. num. adj.*, several, some, a small number of.

**aliter**, *adv.* [**alius**], otherwise, in any other way, on any other condition; **aliter ac**, otherwise than, different from (what).

**alius**, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other, different, else; **alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another, the one . . . the other, **alii** . . . **alii**, some . . . others.

**Allia**, -ae, *f.*, a small tributary of the Tiber. Map I, B, 7.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic tribe of the Province. Map IV, F-G, 4.

**alō**, -ere, **alui**, **altum** (**alitur**), *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; keep, rear; increase, foster.

**Alpēs**, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. Map I, D-E, 3-4.

**Alpicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alpēs**], Alpine; as *subst. m.*, the inhabitants of the Alps.

**altē**, *adv.* [**altus**], high, on high.

**alter**, -tera, -terum, *adj.*, one of two, the other; a second, another; **alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other; *in pl.*, **alteri** . . . **alteri**, the one party . . . the other.

**altitudō**, -inis, *f.* [**altus**], height, depth.

**altus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of alō*], nourished, well-grown, high, lofty; deep; of *silence*, profound; proud; as *subst. n.*, the deep, the sea.

**alūta**, -ae, *f.*, tanned leather, leather.

**alveus**, -i, *m.* [**alvus**, belly], the bed or channel of a river.

**amāns**, -antis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of amō*], fond of, attached or devoted to; as *subst. m. and f.*, a lover.

**ambactus**, -i, *m.* [*Celtic*], a dependant, retainer, vassal.

**Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. Map IV, F, 3-4.

**ambi-** (**amb-**, **am-**, **an-**), *prep.*, in composition only, around, on both sides.

**Ambiāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe about modern Amiens. Map IV, D-E, 1-2.

**Ambibarii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Normandy. Map IV, B-C, 2.

**Ambiliati**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Picardy. Map IV, C, 3.

**Ambiorix**, -igis, *m.*, king of the Eburones.

**Ambivareti**, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Haedui. Map IV, E, 3.

**Ambivariti**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. Map IV, F, 1.

**ambō**, -ae, -ō, *num. adj.*, both.

**āmentia**, -ae, *f.* [**āmēns**], bewilderment of mind, madness, folly.

**amicē**, *adv.* [**amicus**], in a friendly manner, kindly.

**amicitia**, -ae, *f.* [**amicus**], friendship, alliance.

**amictus**, -ūs, *m.* [**amiciō**, wrap about], any article of outer clothing, a veil, mantle.

**amicus**, -i, *m.*, a friend.

**amicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly, loving, kind.

**ā-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, dismiss, lose.

**amnis**, -is, *m.*, a river.

**amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, love, be in love; **amātus**, beloved.

**amor**, -ōris, *m.* [**amō**], love, lover.

**amphora**, -ae, *f.*, amphora, jar.

**amplector**, -i, -plexus, *tr.* [**ambi+plectō**, weave], cling to, embrace.

**amplificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**amplus+faciō**], enlarge, increase.

**ampliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**amplus**], increase, extend, enlarge.

**amplitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**amplus**], wide

extent, size, breadth; importance, consequence.

**amplius**, *n. comp. adj.* [amplus], as *adv.*, more; as *subst.*, more, a greater amount.

**amplus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, of large extent, spacious; noted, illustrious, renowned, magnificent, splendid.

**an**, *conj.*, introducing the second part of a disjunctive question, or, rather, or indeed; elliptically, implying a negative answer, before an apparently single question, or is it that? can it be that? with the first member omitted, whether.

**Anartēs**, -ium, *m.*, a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.

**Ancalitēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of south-east Britain. *Map IV, C, 1.*

**anceps**, -cipitis, *adj.* [an = ambi + caput], with two sides or fronts, double; two-edged.

**ancilla**, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of *ancula*, maid-servant], a handmaid, maid-servant.

**ancora**, -ae, *f.*, an anchor.

**Ancus**, -ī, *m.*, praenomen of Ancus Marcius, fourth king of Rome.

**Andebrogius**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi.

**Andēs**, -ium, *m.*, a people of Anjou. *Map IV, C, 3.*

**Andriscus**, -ī, *m.*, a Persian pretender to the throne of Macedonia.

**angulus**, -ī, *m.*, a corner, angle.

**angustiae**, -ārum, *f.* [angustus], narrowness, smallness, narrow place, defile; straits, difficulties.

**angustus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined; in angustō, at a crisis.

**anhēlitus**, -ūs, *m.* [anhēlō, pant], panting, breath, breathing.

**anilis**, -e, *adj.* [anus], of an old woman, old woman's.

**anima**, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, breath of life, vital principle; soul.

**animadvertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [animum advertō], give attention to, observe, notice; *w. in and acc.*, punish.

**animal**, -ālis, *n.* [anima], a living being, animal.

**animus**, -ī, *m.*, soul, mind; feelings, heart, spirit; disposition, nature; impulse; courage, encouragement; pleasure; animi causā, for pleasure.

**annōtinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], of last year, a year old.

**annus**, -ī, *m.*, a year; *pl.*, years, life.

**annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], lasting a year; annual.

**ānser**, -eris, *m.*, a goose.

**ante**, *adv. and prep.*; as *adv.*, before; in front; formerly, previously, ago; *ante-quam* or *ante* . . . *quam*, sooner . . . than, before; as *prep.*, before, before the time of, in front of.

**anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously, formerly.

**ante-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.*, precede, go ahead; surpass.

**ante-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry before, prefer.

**antemna**, -ae, *f.*, a sail-yard, sail.

**Antemnātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of Antemnae, a town north of Rome. *Map I, A, 7.*

**ante-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place or set before, regard of more importance, prefer.

**ante-stō**, -stāre, -steti, —, *intr.*, excel, be superior to.

**Antiochus**, -ī, *m.*, name of a Syrian king, Antiochus III.

**antiquitus**, *adv.* [antiquus], from early times, long ago, anciently.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante], old, belonging to former times.

**Antistius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.



**Antōnius, -i, m.,** a Roman name. (1)

Gaius Antonius, consul in 63 B.C.

(2) Marcus Antonius, a lieutenant of Caesar, a member of the second triumvirate, and consul in 44 B.C.

(3) Lucius Antonius, brother of (2), consul in 41 B.C.

**antrum, -ī, n.,** cave, cavern.

**ānulus, -ī, m.** [*dim.* of **ānus**, ring], ring, signet-ring.

**anus, -ūs, f.,** an old woman, old wife; as *adj.*, old.

**Āonius, -a, -um, adj.,** of Aonia or Boeotia, Boeotian; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, Boeotians.

**Ap.,** *abbr.* for Appius.

**Apenninus, -ī, m.,** the Apennines. *Map II, B-D, 2-3.*

**aper, apri, m.,** a wild boar.

**aperiō, -īre, aperui, apertum, tr.,** open, unlock; disclose, make known.

**apertē, adv.** [**apertus**], openly, manifestly.

**apertus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part.* of **aperiō**], uncovered, exposed, open.

**Apollō, -inis, m.,** son of Jupiter and Latona, god of archery, prophecy, music, poetry, and medicine.

**appāreō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr.** [**ad + pāreō**], appear, make one's appearance.

**appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** call by name; name, call; call upon.

**Appius, -ī, m.,** a *praenomen*; as *adj.*, Appius, -a, -um, of Appius, Appian.

**Apr.,** *abbr.* for Aprilis, -e, *adj.* [**aperiō**], of April, April.

**aptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**aptus**], fit, place, adjust.

**aptus, -a, -um, adj.,** fitted, suited, adapted.

**apud, prep. with acc.,** at, at the house of, with; near, among, in; in the possession of; in the opinion of, in the writings of.

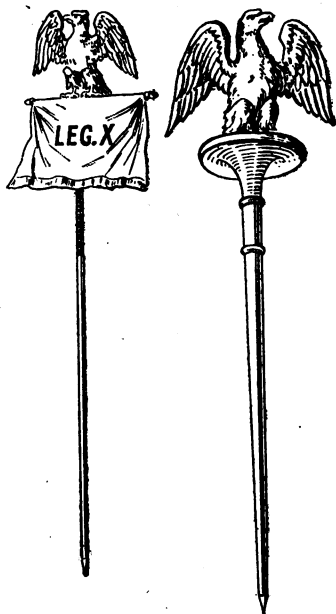
**Āpūlia, -ae, f.,** Apulia, a district of southeastern Italy. *Map II, E-F, 4-5.*

**aqua, -ae, f.,** water.

**aquatiō, -ōnis, f.** [aqua, fetch water], getting or bringing water.

**aquila, -ae, f.,** an eagle; standard.

The aquila, the standard of the legion, was a gold, silver, or bronze eagle set on a long staff. It was in the care of the *primi pilus* and served to show the position of the legion's commander.



AQUILAE

**Aquileia, -ae, f.,** a city of Cisalpine Gaul. *Map II, D, 1.*

**Aquilō, -ōnis, m.,** the north wind, wind.

**Aquitānia, -ae, f.,** Aquitania, southern Gaul between the Garonne

and the Pyrenees. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

**Aquitānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Aquitanian; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Aquitani.

**āra**, -ae, *f.*, an altar.

**Arar**, -aris, *m.*, a tributary of the Rhone, the modern Saône. Map IV, F-G, 3-4.

**arbiter**, -trī, *m.*, judge, arbitrator.

**arbitrium**, -ī, *n.* [arbiter], judgment, opinion; discretion, pleasure.

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [arbiter], testify; judge, decide, think, believe.

**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, a tree.

**arboreus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [arbor], of a tree, tree's.

**arbusum**, -ī, *n.* [arbor], a place where trees are planted, grove, orchard.

**arcessō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, call.

**Ardea**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Rutuli, south of Rome. Map I, A, 8.

**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsi, ārsurus, *intr.*, burn, be burned, be consumed; be inflamed with emotion or passion.

**Arduenna**, -ae, *f.*, a forest of north-eastern Gaul, the Ardennes. Map IV, F-G, 1-2.

**arduum**, -ī, *n.* [arduus], a steep place, height.

**arduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep, difficult; lofty, towering aloft.

**Aremoricae**, -ārum, *f.*, *adj.* [Celtic], along the sea, Aremonic; **Aremoricae civitatēs**, the coast peoples between the Loire and the Seine. Map IV, B-D, 2.

**argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver.

**Argos**, *n.* (only in *nom.* and *acc.*), or **Argi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of the eastern part of the Peloponnesus. Map I, H, 6.

**āridus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ārdeō, be dry], dry, parching; as *subst.*, *n.*, dry land.

**ariēs**, -ietis, *m.*, a ram; battering ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; a buttress.



**Ariminum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of Umbria, on the Adriatic. Map II, D, 3.

**Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, a German king, defeated in Gaul by Caesar in 58 B.C.

**Aristidēs**, -is, *m.*, an Athenian statesman.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, tools; arms; weapons, equipment; *fig.*, war; in *armis esse*, be under arms, be ready for service.

**armāmenta**, -ōrum, *n.* [armō], implements; esp. tackle or rigging of a ship.

**armātūra**, -ae, *f.* [armō], armor, equipment; armed soldiers; **levis armātūra**, light infantry. The auxiliaries of the *levis armātūra* were generally equipped with the weapons of their own countries. They wore leathern cuirasses and carried small round shields. Caesar placed no great reliance on them, but usually employed them at the beginning of his battles, to make a show of numbers and force. When a battle had been won by the legionaries, it was also the duty of the light-armed soldiers to join the *equitēs* in the pursuit of the enemy. For the equipment of the light-armed soldier see *illus.* facing p. 201.

**Armenia**, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia, divided into Armenia Major and Minor. Map I, J, 4.

**armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [arma], arm, equip, fit out; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, armed, in arms; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, armed men.

**arō**, arāre, arāvī, arātum, *tr.*, plow.

**ars, artis, f.**, skill, art, the arts; artifice, craft, cunning.

**Artaxerxēs, -is** (acc. -ēn), *m.*, a king of the Persians.

**artē, adv.** [artus, shut up], in narrow compass, closely, tightly.

**articulus, -i, m.** [dim. of artus], a little joint, joint, knuckle.

**artificium, -i, n.** [artifex, artisan], a trade, handicraft.

**Arvernī, -ōrum, m.**, a people of Celtic Gaul. Map IV, E, 3-4.

**arvum, -i, n.** [arō], arable land, field; *pl.*, fields, plain, country.

**arx, arcis, f.**, citadel, fortress.

**ascendō, -ere, -scendi, -scensum, tr. and intr.** [ad+scandō, climb], mount, climb, ascend; go on board.

**ascēsus, -ūs, m.** [ascendō], a climbing up; way up, ascent, approach.

**Asia, -ae, f.**, Asia Minor. Map I, I-J, 4-6.

**Asina, -ae, m.**, a cognomen; esp. Gn. Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul 260 B.C.

**aspectus, -ūs, m.** [aspiciō], look; appearance, aspect.

**aspergō, -inis, f.** [aspergō, scatter], a sprinkling; spray, drops.

**aspis, -idis, f.**, a viper, asp, adder; *ast*, see *at*.

**astrum, -i, n.**, a star; *pl.*, stars, the sky, heaven.

**at (ast), conj.** with stronger adversative force than *autem* or *sed*, used to contradict or introduce objections, but, yet.

**Ātella, -ae, f.**, a town in Campania. Map II, D, 5.

**āter, ātra, ātrum, adj.**, black, dark.

**Athēniēnsis, -e, adj.**, of Athens; *m.*, as *subst.*, an Athenian.

**Atilius, -i, m.**, name of a Roman gens.

**Atlantiadēs, -ae, m.**, a descendant of Atlas, esp. Mercurius, his grandson.

**atque** or (*before consonants*) **ac, conj.** [ad+que], and; and also, and even, and especially; with words of likeness or unlikeness, as, than; after *alius*, from.

**Atrebās, -ātis, m.**, an Atrebatian; **Atrebātēs, -um** (-ī, -ōrum), a Belgic tribe. Map IV, E, 1.

**Atrius, -i, m.**, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Atrius, one of Caesar's officers.

**attingō, -ere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr.** [ad+tangō], touch, reach, attain; touch upon, border upon, adjoin.

**attollō, -ere, —, —, tr.** [ad+tollō], to raise, lift up.

**attonitus, -a, -um, adj.** [attonō, stun], thunderstruck, amazed.

**attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr.** [ad+tribuō], allot to, assign.

**Atuatuci, -ōrum, m.**, a tribe of Belgic Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutons. Map IV, F, 1.

**auctor, -ōris, m.** [augeō], a producer, originator, instigator, author; giver; cause; of a weapon, wielder, thrower.

**auctōritās, -ātis, f.** [auctor], a producing; authority, influence, dignity; prestige.

**auctus, -a, -um, adj.** [augeō], increased, rich.

**audācia, -ae, f.** [audāx], daring, boldness.

**audācter, adv.** [audāx], boldly, bravely, fiercely.

**audāx, -ācis, adj.**, bold, daring; presumptuous; violent.

**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, tr. and intr.**, dare, venture, be courageous or daring; *pres. part.* as *adj.*, daring, bold.

**audiō, -ire, -īvi, -itum, tr.**, hear, listen to; hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient.

**auditiō, -ōnis, f.** [audiō], hearing, hearsay, rumor.

**aufērō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum**, *tr.* [ab+ferō], take away, snatch away, carry away, remove; carry off; bear, waft.

**augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum**, *tr.*, increase, augment.

**augurium, -i, n.** [augur, augur], observance of omens, augury.

**Augustus, -i, m.**, Majestic, a cognomen conferred on all the Roman emperors; especially the emperor Octavianus, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar.

**Aulerci, -ōrum, m.**, a Gallic people divided into several branches: (1) Aulerci Brannovices, *Map IV, F, 3*; (2) Aulerci Cenomani, *Map IV, D, 2*; (3) Aulerci Eburvices, *Map IV, D, 2*, and perhaps (4) Aulerci Diablintes, *Map IV, C, 2*.

**aura, -ae, f.**, air in motion, breeze, wind; air, atmosphere.

**aurātus, -a, -um, adj.** [aurum], adorned or covered with gold, gilded.

**Aurēlius, -i, m.**, a Roman name.

**aureus, -a, -um, adj.** [aurum], of gold, golden.

**aurīga, -ae, m.**, charioteer, driver.

**auris, -is, f.**, the ear.

**aurōra, -ae, f.**, the dawn, daybreak, morning.

**aurum, -i, n.**, gold, anything made of gold.

**Aurunculeius, -i, m.**, a Roman name.

**Ausci, -ōrum, m.**, a tribe of central Aquitania. *Map IV, D, 5*.

**aut, conj., or; aut ... aut**, either ... or.

**autem, conj.**, the weakest form of adversative, and so never first in its clause, but, however; used merely to indicate transition, moreover.

**autumnālis, -e, adj.** [autumnus, autumn], of autumn, autumnal.

**auxiliāris, -e, adj.** [auxilium], aiding,

auxiliary; *m. pl. as subst.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

**auxilior, -āri, -ātus, intr.** [auxilium], give aid, help, assist.

**auxilium, -i, n.** [augeō], aid, help; resource, resort; *n. pl.*, auxiliary troops, reinforcements. *The auxilia consisted of troops raised in the provinces or in allied states, and placed under the command of Roman praefecti. Though some were armed in the Roman fashion, they were for the most part equipped with the weapons of their native countries. Caesar employed auxiliaries from Gaul, Spain, Illyricum, Numidia, and Germany, as well as his Balearic slingers and Cretan bowmen. The whole number of his light-armed troops, his slingers and bowmen, and his cavalry, belonged to the auxiliary force.*

**avāritia, -ae, f.** [avārus, greedy], greed.

**Aventinus, -a, -um, adj.**, Aventine; mōns Aventinus, the Aventine Hill. *Map III, D, 5*.

**ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr.**, turn away, turn; *pf. part.*, āversus, turned away; having the head turned; in the rear.

**avis, -is, f.**, bird.

**avus, -i, m.**, grandfather.

**Axona, -ae, m.**, a river of Belgic Gaul, the Aisne. *Map IV, E-F, 2*.

## B

**Babylōnius, -a, -um, adj.**, of Babylon, Babylonian.

**Baccheius, -a, -um, adj.**, Bacchic, of Bacchus.

**Bacēnis, -is, f.** (*sc. silva*), the forest Bacenis; probably the modern Harz and Thüringerwald. *Map IV, H-I, 1*.

**baculum, -i, n.**, stick, walking-stick.

**Baculus, -i, m.**, a cognomen.

**Baleāris**, -e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic isles. *Map I, C-D, 5.*

**barba**, -ae, *f.*, the beard.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, strange, barbarous; *as subst., m. pl.*, foreigners, barbarians.

**Barca**, -ae, *m.*, surname of *Hamilcar*.

**Basilus**, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of one of *Caesar's* lieutenants.

**Batāvī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe living about the mouths of the Rhine. *Map IV, F, 1.*

**Baucis**, -idis (*acc. -in*), *f.*, an old woman, wife of *Philemon*.

**beātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*beō*, bless], blessed; rich.

**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, a nation of northern Gaul. *Map IV, D-G, 1-2.*

**Belgium**, -ī, *n.*, Belgium, the country of the *Belgae*. *Map IV, D-G, 1-2.*

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*bellicus*], warlike, fierce.

**bellicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*bellum*], of or in war; military.

**bellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [*bellum*], wage war, fight.

**Bellovaēi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe about modern *Beauvais*. *Map IV, D-E, 2.*

**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war.

**bene**, *adv.* [*bonus*], well, rightly, successfully, highly; *comp.*, *melior*, *sup.*, *optimē*.

**beneficium**, -ī, *n.* [*bene+faciō*], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness.

**Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, a city of the *Haedui* on Mount *Bewray* near modern *Autun*. *Map IV, E-F, 3.*

**Bibrax**, -ctis, *f.*, a town of the *Remi*. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**Bibroci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of south-east Britain. *Map IV, C, 1.*

**Bibulus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; *esp.* *Lucius Calpurnius Bibulus*, consul in 59 B.C.

**bi-color**, -ōris, *adj.*, of two colors, two-colored.

**bicornis**, -e, *adj.* [*bis+cornū*], with two horns, two-pronged.

**bīduum**, -ī, *n.* [*bis+diēs*], period of two days, two days.

**biennium**, -ī, *n.* [*bis+annus*], period of two years, two years.

**Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m.*, an *Aquitanian* people in modern *La Bigorre*. *Map IV, C-D, 5.*

**bīnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by twos, two each, two apiece.

**bipedālis**, -e, *adj.* [*bis+pedālis*, of a foot], of two feet, two feet in length or thickness.

**bipertitō**, *adv.* [*bis+partior*], in two parts or divisions.

**bis**, *num. adv.*, twice, doubly, in two ways.

**Bithŷnia**, -ae, *f.*, a country in *Asia Minor*. *Map I, I, 5.*

**Bithŷnii**, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of *Bithynia*.

**Biturigēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul. *Map IV, D-E, 3.*

**blanditia**, -ae, *f.* [*blandus*], flattery; *pl.*, flatteries, blandishments; fondness.

**Boduognātus**, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the *Nervii*.

**Boeōtī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of *Greece*.

**Bōi** (*Boii*), -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe, part of which settled among the *Haedui*. *Map IV, E, 3.*

**bonitās**, -ātis, *f.* [*bonus*], goodness, fertility.

**bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, worthy, kind, kindly, well-disposed; skillful; *n. as subst.*, good, excellence, advantage; *n. pl. as subst.*, goods, property; *comp.*, *melior*, *melius*; *sup.*, *optimus*, -a, -um, best; excellent.

**bōs**, *bovis*, *m. and f.*, bull, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle.

**bracchium**, -ī, *n.*, forearm, arm.

**Brannovicēs**, -um, *m.*, a division of the Aulerici. *Map IV, F, 3.*

**Bratuspantium**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovaci. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short, brief; small; *brevis* (*sc. tempore*), in a short time, quickly.

**brevitās**, -ātis, *f.* [*brevis*], shortness, short stature.

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain. *Map IV, A-D, 1.*

**Britannicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Britain, British. *Map I, C, 1.*

**Britannus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *as subst., m. pl.*, the people of Britain, Britons.

**brūma**, -ae, *f.* [*for brevima = brevis-sima*], the shortest day, the winter solstice; winter.

**Bruttii**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Bruttians, inhabitants of the southwestern point of Italy. *Map II, F, 6.*

**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, a family name of the gens Junia (*literally*, Dull).

(1) Lucius Junius Brutus, nephew of Tarquinius Superbus, and one of the first consuls at Rome.

(2) Marcus Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

(3) Decimus Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

**būcina**, -ae, *f.*, a crooked horn or trumpet; a Triton's shell. The name *būcina* was applied to a large curved horn used in the Roman army to indicate the ends of the watches at night, and to sound the reveille in the morning. See *illus. facing page 201.*

**busta**, see *bustum*.

**bustum**, -ī, *n.*, often *pl.*, a lighted or burned-out funeral pyre, tomb, grave.

**buxum**, -ī, *n.* [*buxus*, box-tree], box-wood.

C

**C.**, *abbr. for Gāius.*

**C.**, *for centum, etc.*

**Cabūrus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

**cacūmen**, -inis, *n.*, the top, tip, summit, peak; top of a tree.

**cadāver**, -eris, *n.* [*cadō*], fallen or dead body, corpse.

**cadō**, -ere, *cecidi*, *cāsūrus*, *intr.*, fall; fall dead, be slain.

**cadūceus**, -ī, *m.*, herald's staff.

**cadūcifer**, -ī, *m.*, *adj.* [*cadūceus + ferō*], bearing a herald's staff, an epithet of Mercury.

**Cadūrci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Aquitania. *Map IV, D, 4.*

**caecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind; not seen, concealed, hidden, obscure.

**caedēs**, -is, *f.* [*caedō*], cutting, slaughter, bloodshed, murder.

**caedō**, -ere, *cecidi*, *caesum*, *tr.*, cut, hew, cut down; beat, strike; rout; kill, slay.

**caelestis**, -e, *adj.* [*caelum*], of heaven, heavenly, divine; *m. pl. as subst.*, heavenly beings or objects, divinities.

**caelicola**, -ae, *m. and f.* [*caelum + colō*], a god, divinity.

**Caelius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Caelian; *mōns Caelius*, the Caelian Hill at Rome. *Map III, F, 4.*

**caelō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, to engrave in relief, carve, engrave.

**caelum**, -ī, *n.*, the sky, heaven, esp. as the abode of the gods.

**Caemāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, F, 1.*

**Caeninēnsēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of the town of Caenina, northeast of Rome. *Map I, B, 7.*

**caenum**, -ī, *n.*, filth, mire.

**Caerōsi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, G, 1.*

**caeruleus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*caelum*], like the sky, dark-blue, azure.

**Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, a family name in the Julian gens. (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror and dictator. (2) Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, the emperor, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar.

**caespes**, -itis, *m.* [caedō], a cut sod, turf; grassy field, sward.

**calamitas**, -ātis, *f.*, loss, misfortune, calamity; casualty, defeat.

**caleō**, -ēre, -ui, **calitūrus**, *intr.*, be warm or hot.

**Caleti**, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), *m.*, a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

**cāligō**, -inis, *f.*, mist, fog; darkness.

**calliditas**, -ātis, *f.* [callidus], cunning, shrewdness.

**callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [calleō, be skillful], shrewd, adroit, skillful.

**cālō**, -ōnis, *m.*, soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. The cālōnēs were usually slaves.

**Camillus**, -i, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Lucius Furius Camillus, a famous leader of the Romans in the war against the Samnites.

**Campānia**, -ae, *f.*, a district south of Latium. Map II, D-E, 5.

**campester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [campus], of a plain, flat, level; loca campestria, level ground.

**campus**, -i, *m.*, a plain, open space or country, field; of the sea, surface, expanse; Campus Mārtius, a grassy plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars. Map III, C, 1-2.

**candidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [candeō, be bright], shining, radiant, white, bright, fair.

**Canīnius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Caninius Rebilus, a legate of Caesar.

**canistrum**, -i, *n.*, basket of reed, plaited basket.

**canna**, -ae, *f.*, a reed, cane.

**Cannae**, -ārum, *f.*, a small town in Apulia. Map II, E, 4.

**Caninēsis**, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae.

**canō**, -ere, cecini, —, *tr.* and *intr.*, sing; play, sound.

**Cantabri**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of northern Spain. Map IV, A-B, 5.

**Cantium**, -i, *n.*, a district of south-eastern England, Kent. Map IV, D, 1.

**cānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white, gray, hoary; *w.* seges, yellow.

**capella**, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of caper], a she-goat, goat.

**caper**, -pri, *m.*, a he-goat, goat.

**capillus**, -i, *m.* [*dim.* akin to caput], the hair of the head, hair.

**capiō**, -ere, cēpi, captum, *tr.*, take, take possession of, capture, seize; reach, receive, get; choose; take on, assume; tempt, attract; be large enough for, contain, hold; of mental impressions, take in, conceive; *w.* cōsiliū, form; *w.* arma, take up.

**Capitōlium**, -i, *n.* [caput], the chief temple of Jupiter at Rome, the Capitol; the Capitoline Hill on which the temple was built; the citadel of Rome. Map III, D, 3.

**capitulātum**, *adv.* [caput], by heads, summarily.

**capra**, -ae, *f.* [caper], a she-goat.

**captiva**, -ae, *f.* [captivus], a female captive, captive.

**captivus**, -i, *m.* [capiō], prisoner, captive.

**captō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of capiō], try to catch, catch at eagerly, strive for, seize.

**captus**, -ūs, *m.* [capiō], taking, seizing; capacity.

**Capua**, -ae, *f.*, a city in Campania. Map II, D, 5.

**caput**, -itis, *n.*, the head, top; source, mouth; a person, individual; life, citizenship; capitis poena, capital

punishment; *capitis damnātus*, condemned on a capital charge.

**Carcasō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a town of the Province, modern Carcassonne. Map IV, E, 5.

**carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison, dungeon.

**cardō**, -inis, *m.*, the pivot and socket on which the doors of the ancients turned; a hinge.

**Cāria**, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia Minor. Map I, I, 5-6.

**cārica**, -ae, *f.* [*Cāricus*, of Caria], a Carian fig; dried fig.

**carīna**, -ae, *f.*, a hull, bottom of a ship; *poet.*, a boat, craft, ship.

**carmen**, -inis, *n.*, a song, verse, air; prophecy; charm, incantation.

**Carnutēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe between the Seine and Loire, near modern Chartres. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

**carō**, *carnis*, *f.*, flesh, meat.

**carpō**, -ere, -psī, -ptum, *tr.*, to pluck, pick; crop, graze; carp at, censure.

**carrus**, -ī, *m.*, a cart.

**Carthāginiēnsis**, -e, *adj.*, of Carthage; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Carthaginian.

**Carthāgō**, -inis, *f.*, Carthage, a city on the northern coast of Africa. Map I, E, 6.

**cārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, beloved.

**Carvilius**, -ī, *m.*, a British prince of Kent.

**casa**, -ae, *f.*, a hut, cottage.

**Casca**, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

**cāseus**, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

**Cassi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of southeast Britain. Map IV, C, 1.

**Cassiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with Cassius.

**Cassius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) *Spurius Cassius Viscellinus*, first *magister equitum*, 501 B.C.

(2) *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the

*Tigurini*. (3) *Gaius Cassius Longinus*, one of the murderers of Caesar.

**Cassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, the British commander-in-chief who fought against Caesar.

**castellum**, -ī, *n.* [*dim.* of *castrum*], a fortress, stronghold; redoubt.

**Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequanians.

**castrum**, -ī, *n.*, a fortress; usually *pl.*, **castra**, -ōrum, a military encampment, camp; **castra pōnere** or **castra mētārī**, to pitch a camp. The site of the **castra** was always chosen with the utmost care. When the army was nearing the end of a march, a detachment was sent forward under the command of several centurions, to find the best ground for the purpose. If possible, a gently-sloping hill was selected, which commanded the country around, and about which wood, water, and fodder were easily to be had. Before the main body of the army arrived, the camp had been surveyed and staked off, and immediately upon the coming up of the legions, their packs and weapons were laid aside, and the work of fortification was begun. The camp was usually laid off in the form of a square or oblong, with rounded corners (though the nature of the ground often made some modification of the normal plan necessary) and was invariably surrounded by a rampart and a trench. Inside the wall stretched an open space (*intervallum*) of sometimes 200 feet in breadth, which served not only as a place where the pack-animals and baggage might be bestowed, but also afforded the soldiers security from missiles or firebrands that might be thrown by the enemy. At or near the middle of the camp lay the **praetōrium**, where the tents of the general and



his staff were placed. In front of this were the *augurāle* or place of sacrifice, and the *forum*, where the soldiers assembled when the commander addressed them; and back of the *praetorium* was placed the *quaestorium*, where were kept the booty, in charge of the quaestor, and the hostages. Three large roadways or *viae* ran through the camp, the *via principālis* and *via quintāna*, which lay along the front and rear of the *praetorium*, and the *via praetōria*, which ran from the forum to the front or praetorian gate. Four entrances were made in the wall, the *porta praetōria* at the front, the *porta decumāna* at the rear, and the *portae principālis dextra* and *principālis sinistra* on the right and left sides respectively. The gates were cleverly protected by earthworks in such a way that an enemy must turn to the left in order to enter, thus exposing his right side, unprotected by the shield, to the defenders of the gate. The way in which Caesar's soldiers were distributed in their camp is not precisely known, but every part of the army had its allotted place, which it invariably took, and, to the slightest detail, the utmost system and order prevailed throughout. Usually about three hours were required to complete the fortification of a camp. For plan of the *castra* see p. 47.

**cāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [*cadō*], a falling, fall; an accident, chance, occurrence; emergency; pass, extremity; mischance, misfortune, calamity, fate.

**Catamantaloedēs**, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequanians.

**catēna**, -ae, *f.*, a chain, fetter.

**Catilina**, -ae, *m.*, Catiline, a cognomen; esp. Lucius Sergius Catiline, who conspired against the Roman government in 63 B.C.

**Catō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis, a champion of the senatorial party against Caesar.

**Catulus**, -i, *m.*, a cognomen.

**Caturigēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

**causa**, -ae, *f.*, a cause, reason, excuse; *abl. with gen.*, on account of, for the sake of; a position, condition.

**cautēs**, -is, *f.*, a sharp or pointed rock, reef.

**caveō**, -ēre, *cāvi*, *cautum*, *tr. and intr.*, beware, be on one's guard; followed by *acc.*, or *abl. with ā*, be on one's guard against, avoid.

**Cavillōnum**, -i, *n.*, a town of the Haedui, modern Chālon-sur Saône. Map IV, F, 3.

**cavus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hollow, hollowed out.

**cēdō**, -ere, *cessi*, *cessum*, *intr.*, give way, retreat, yield; go, pass.

**celeber**, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, frequented, thronged, celebrated, famous.

**celer**, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, speedy, sudden.

**celeritās**, -ātis, *f.* [*celer*], speed, quickness.

**celeriter**, *adv.* [*celer*], quickly, rapidly, speedily.

**cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, keep covered, hide from one, conceal; *pass.*, be concealed or unnoticed.

**Celtae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Celts, a nation of central Gaul. Map IV, B-H, 1-4.

**Cēnimagnī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of southeast Britain. Map IV, D, 1.

**Cēnomani**, -ōrum, *m.*, a branch of the Aulerci. Map IV, D, 2.

**cēnsēō**, -ēre, *cēnsui*, *cēnsum*, *tr.*, estimate; be of opinion, think, decide; be in favor of.

**cēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* [*cēnsēō*], censor, a Roman magistrate.

**Cēnsōrinus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**cēnsōrius**, -ī, *m.* [cēnsor], a former censor.

**cēnsūra**, -ae, *f.* [cēnsor], censorship.

**cēnsus**, -ūs, *m.* [cēnsēō], a census, enumeration of people according to wealth for purposes of taxation and military service.

**Centēnius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**centēnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [centum], one hundred times.

**centēsimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [centum], hundredth.

**centum**, *num. adj.*, *indecl.*, a hundred.

**centuriō**, -ōnis, *m.* [centuria, company of a hundred], a centurion, captain. The centurions were plebeian under-officers who had risen from the ranks by their own superior military ability. There were sixty in each legion, chosen by the general himself; and, as they were the bravest and most experienced soldiers of the army, they had great influence in maintaining a high standard of discipline and efficiency among the rank and file. A centurion, being a plebeian, could rise to no higher command. The six who belonged to the first cohort took the highest rank (**primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs**), and, on account of their experience and courage, joined with the higher officers to form the general's standing council of war. For the dress of the centurion see *illus. facing p. 135*.

**Cēphiseis**, -idis (*acc. pl. -idas*), *f. adj.*, of the Cephisus, a river of Phocis and Boeotia.

**cēra**, -ae, *f.*, wax.

**cernō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *tr.*, separate, distinguish, perceive.

**certāmen**, -inis, *n.* [certō, struggle], contest, rivalry; struggle, battle.

**certē**, *adv.* [certus], certainly, at least, at all events, assuredly.

**certus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of cernō*], definite, settled, certain, fixed; exact, trustworthy, undoubted; sure; **certiōrem facere**, inform; sure of aim, unerring; true, constant.

**cervus**, -ī, *m.*, a stag, deer; forked branches used to break cavalry charges.

**cessō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of cēdō*], be remiss, delay; cease; of time, leave idle or unemployed; be unemployed or disused.

**cēterus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of, other, remaining; *m. pl. as subst.*, the rest, the others.

**Ceutronēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 4.*

**Cherūscī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe between the Weser and the Elbe. *Map IV, H-I, 1.*

**cibārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions.

**cibus**, -ī, *m.*, food.

**Cibyrei**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or from Cibyra, a Phrygian town.

**Cicerō**, -ōnis, *m.* [cicer, chickpea], a cognomen. (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, consul in 63 B.C. (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of (1), a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Cimber**, -brī, *m.*, a Cimbrian; *pl.*, **Cimbri**, a people from Jutland who invaded Italy and were conquered by Marius. *Map I, E, 1.*

**Cimberius**, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Suebi.

**Cincinnātus**, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of a famous Roman dictator.

**Cineās**, -ae, *m.*, the minister of Pyrrhus.

**Cingetorix**, -igis, *m.*, (1) a chief of the Treveri, and a rival of his father-in-law Indutiomarus; (2) a British chief in Kent.

**cingō, -ere, cīnxi, cinctum, tr.,** en-compass, surround, encircle; surround with a girdle, gird on, gird.

**cinis, -eris, m.,** ashes.

**Cinna, -ae, m.,** a cognomen; esp. Lucius Cornelius Cinna, a partisan of Marius, and father-in-law of Julius Caesar.

**cippus, -i, m.,** a pillar, boundary-stone; *pl.*, a stockade formed of tree-trunks driven into the ground.

**circā, adv. and prep. with acc.,** round about, all around, round.

**circinus, -i, m.,** a pair of compasses.

**circiter, adv. and prep. with acc. [circus];** as *adv.*, about, nearly; as *prep.*, near, about.

**circuitus, -ūs, m. [circumeō],** a going round, circuit, compass; in **circutū**, all around, on all sides.

**circum, prep. w. acc. and adv.,** around, about, round about.

**circum-arō, -arāre, -arāvī, —, tr.,** plow around.

**circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [circum+claudō],** shut in, inclose, surround.

**circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, tr.,** put around, bind around, surround, encircle, inclose.

**circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead around.

**circum-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr.,** go or march around; surround, inclose; traverse, visit.

**circum-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.,** surround, overwhelm.

**circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [circum+iaciō],** hurl around, set or place around.

**circum-muniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, tr.,** fortify around, fortify, protect.

**circumplector, -i, -plexus, tr. [circum+plector, embrace],** fold one-self about, infold, surround.

**circum-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr.,** sit around; besiege, blockade.

**circum-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, tr.,** surround.

**circum-vallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vāllō, intrench],** surround with a rampart, beleague, invest.

**circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, tr.,** come around, surround, out-flank; deceive, defraud.

**circus, -i, m.,** a circle or inclosure for athletic sports; a circus. *Map III, D-E, 4.*

**cis, prep. with acc.,** on this side of. **citerior, -ius, comp. adj. [citer, on this side],** on this side, nearer; **Gallia Citerior, Cisalpine Gaul.**

**citō, adv. [citus],** quickly, speedily; *comp.*, **citius, sup.**, **citissimē.**

**citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part of citō, put in quick motion],** rapid, in a rapid course.

**citrā, adv. and prep. with acc. [citer, on this side],** on this side of, within; before; less than, short of. **citrō, adv. [citer, on this side],** hither; **ultrō citrōque, back and forth.**

**civilis, -e, adj. [civis],** of citizens, civic; civil; befitting a citizen, moderate.

**civiliter, adv. [civilis],** in a manner befitting a citizen.

**civis, -is, m. and f.,** citizen, fellow-citizen.

**civitas, -ātis, f. [civis],** citizenship; state, community, nation; city.

**clam, adv.,** secretly.

**clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of clāmō],** call out loudly or repeatedly, cry out, shout.

**clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.,** call, cry out, shout.

**clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō],** outcry, shouting; clamor, noise, din.

**clandestinus, -a, -um, adj.,** secret, hidden.

**clārus, -a, -um, adj.,** clear, loud, shrill; renowned.

**classiarius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [classis], belonging to the fleet; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, marines, naval forces.

**classis**, -is, *f.*, a division; fleet.

**Clastidium**, -i, *n.*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul.

**Claudius**, -i, *m.*, name of one of the oldest and most illustrious Roman gentes; as *adj.*, **Claudius**, -a, -um, of Claudius, Claudian.

(1) Appius Claudius Crassus Sabinus Regillensis, consul and decemvir in 451 B.C.

(2) Appius Claudius Caecus, censor in 312, and consul in 307 and 296 B.C.

(3) Appius Claudius Caudex, consul in 264 B.C.

(4) Appius Claudius Nero, consul in 207 B.C.

(5) Appius Claudius, consul in 54 B.C.

**claudō**, -ere, **clausi**, **clausum**, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line of march, bring up the rear; shut in, shut up.

**claudus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, lame.

**clāvus**, -i, *m.* [claudō], nail, pin, spike, usually of metal.

**clēmētia**, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, mild], gentleness, mercy, clemency.

**Cleopātra**, -ae, *f.*, the last queen of Egypt.

**cliēns**, -entis, *m.* [originally **cluēns**, from **clueō**, hear], a dependent, vassal, client, subject, ally.

**clientēla**, -ae, *f.* [cliēns], the relation of client and patron, vassalage, patronage; *pl.*, bodies of clients; of nations, allies, dependants.

**clivus**, -i, *m.*, declivity, slope, pitch.

**clōāca**, -ae, *f.*, sewer.

**Clūsīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Clusium; **rēs Clūsīna**, the commonwealth of Clusium. *Map II, C, 3.*

**Clypea**, -ae, *f.*, a town of northern Africa, not far from Carthage. *Map I, E, 6.*

**Cn.**, *abbr. for* Gnaeus.

**coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+acervō, heap up], heap or mass together, pile up.

**coartō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+artō, contract], press together, crowd together.

**Coclēs**, -itis, *m.*, a cognomen (lit. one-eyed).

**Cocosātēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of north-western Aquitania. *Map IV, C, 4.*

**coctilis**, -e, *adj.* [coquō, cook], baked; built of burned bricks, brick-.

**coēmō**, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [com-+emō], buy up, purchase.

**coēō**, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *intr.* [com-+eō], go or come together, assemble, meet; unite, be joined.

**coepi**, -isse, **coeptum**, *tr. and intr.*, begin, commence; *pf. part.*, **coep-tus**, begun, undertaken.

**coērcēō**, -ēre, -i, -itum, *tr.* [com-+arceō], inclose; restrain, check, curb, correct; subdue.

**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+agitō], consider thoroughly, reflect, ponder; think, intend, plan.

**cognātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cognātus], blood relationship; body of kinsmen, family.

**cognātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+(g)nāscor], related; as *subst.*, *m.*, a kinsman, blood-relation.

**cognitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of cognōscō], known.

**cognōmen**, -inis, *n.* [com-+(g)nōmen], a surname, family name.

**cognōscō**, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, *tr.* [com-+(g)nōscō], become acquainted with, learn about, investigate, learn, come to a decision; in the *pf. tenses*, know, be aware; recognize.

**cōgō**, -ere, **coēgi**, **coāctum**, *tr.* [com-+agō], drive or bring together, collect, assemble; of liquids, thicken, curdle; urge, compel, drive.

**cohors**, -rtis, *f.*, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion. The illustration shows the arrangement of the cohort in battle.

III Manip	II Manip	I Manip
I Cent	I Cent	I Cent
II Cent	II Cent	II Cent

**cohortatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor], exhortation, encouragement.

**cohortor**, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+hortor], encourage, rally, address.

**coiciō**, see coniciō.

**Collātinus**, -i, *m.*, cognomen of Lucius Tarquinius.

**collēga**, -ae, *m.*, colleague, associate in office.

**collis**, -is, *m.*, height, hill.

**collum**, -i, *n.*, the neck.

**colō**, -ere, colui, cultum, *tr.*, till, cultivate; cherish, protect; honor, worship; practise, observe.

**colōnia**, -ae, *f.* [colōnus], colony.

**colōnus**, -i, *m.* [colō], farmer, husbandman, yeoman.

**color**, -ōris, *m.*, hue, color.

**columna**, -ae, *f.*, column.

**com-**, old form of the prep. **cum**, used only in composition.

**coma**, -ae, *f.*, the hair of the head, hair; *pl.*, locks; foliage, leaves.

**combūrō**, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

**comes**, comitis, *m. and f.*, companion, comrade, associate.

**comitium**, -i, *n.* [com-+eō], place of meeting; esp. a place adjacent to the Forum where assemblies and courts of law were held, the Comitium. Map III, A, 5.

**comitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [comes], accompany, follow.

**commeātus**, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go and come], communication, trip; supplies, provisions, military stores.

**com-memorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,

remind one of, speak of, describe, state.

**commendō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+mandō], intrust entirely, commend, surrender.

**commenticius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-miniscor, invent], pretended, false.

**com-meō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [meō, go], go back and forth; with *ad*, visit.

**commilitō**, -ōnis, *m.* [com-+mīles], fellow-soldier, comrade.

**comminus**, *adv.* [com-+manus], hand to hand.

**com-miseror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [miseror, bewail], pity, bewail.

**commissūra**, -ae, *f.* [committō], uniting; joint, junction.

**com-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, bring together; engage in, begin; trust, intrust.

**Commius**, -i, *m.*, a prince of the Atrebates.

**conmodē**, *adv.* [commodus], conveniently, easily, efficiently, well.

**commodum**, -i, *n.* [commodus], convenience, advantage, privilege.

**com-modus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, in full measure; suitable; advantageous; easy, agreeable.

**commonefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [com+moneō+faciō], remind.

**com-moror**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.*, tarry, wait, stop.

**com-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move, disturb, alarm; excite, begin.

**communicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, [communis], make common, communicate, share; join, add, connect.

**com-muniō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, fortify strongly, fortify.

**communis**, -e, *adj.*, general, common, in common; ordinary, natural.

**commūtatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō], a change, turn.

**com-mûtô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr.**, change entirely, change; exchange.

**com-pâreô, -êre, -uî, —, intr.**, appear, make one's appearance.

**comparô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr. [com-+pâr, like]**, match, compare.

**com-parô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr.**, prepare, prepare for; get, get together, secure, obtain.

**com-pellô, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr.**, drive together, collect; force, drive.

**comperiô, -îre, -perî, -pertum, tr.**, discover, learn.

**compescô, -ere, -uî, —, tr.** restrain, check; *fig.*, allay.

**complector, -î, -plexus, tr. [com-+plector, embrace]**, embrace, include, include.

**compleô, -êre, -êvi, -êtum, tr. [com-+pleô, fill]**, fill up; make full, complete; man.

**complexus, -ûs, m. [complector]**, an embrace.

**com-plûrês, -a (-ia), adj.**, several, many, a great many.

**com-pônô, -ere, -posuî, -positum, tr.**, place together, unite; contrive; settle, finish; lay away, entomb; *v. vultum*, make up, compose.

**com-portô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr.**, bring together, collect.

**com-prehendô, -ere, -hendî, -hêns-um, tr.**, seize, catch; apprehend, arrest, take prisoner.

**com-probô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr.**, approve, adopt.

**cônâtum, -î, n. [cônor]**, attempt, undertaking.

**cônâtus, -ûs, m. [cônor]**, attempt, undertaking.

**concêdô, -ere, -cessî, -cessum, tr. and intr. [com-+cêdô]**, go away, yield, give way; concede, permit, grant, yield; assign.

**concha, -ae, f.**, shell-fish; shell.

**concidô, -ere, -cidi, -câsum, intr. [com-+cadô]**, fall down together, collapse; fall, fall dead.

**concidô, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [com-+caedô]**, cut down, cut to pieces, kill; cut up, cut off; intersect.

**conciliô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr. [concilium]**, reconcile, conciliate; bring about, win, secure.

**concilium, -î, n.**, meeting, assembly, council.

**concipiô, -ere, -cêpi, -ceptum, tr. [com-+capiô]**, take hold of, draw up; draw in, catch; conceive *in the mind*; begin to say, stammer.

**conciô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr. [freq. of concîô]**, call, summon; arouse, urge, excite.

**conclâmô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr. and intr. [com-+clâmô]**, cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.

**conclûdô, -ere, -sî, -sum, tr. [com-+claudô]**, shut up, close, confine; **conclûsum mare**, an inland sea.

**concors, -cordis, adj. [com-+cor]**, of the same mind, harmonious.

**concurrô, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, intr. [com-+currô]**, run or rush together, encounter; rush, hasten; assemble, flock together.

**concursum, -ûs, m. [concurrô]**, running together, dashing together, collision; attack; running about.

**concutiô, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, tr. [com-+quatiô]**, strike together, shake violently, shake up.

**condiciô, -ônîs, f. [condicô]**, agree, agreement, terms, condition, terms of service; state, situation, condition.

**conditor, -ôris, m. [condô]**, a founder.

**condô, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [com-+dô]**, put together, found; build; put away, store, treasure; preserve, pickle; plunge, strike deep.

**condônô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr. [com-+dônô]**, give up, grant; forgive, pardon.

**Condrūsī, -ōrum, m.,** a *Belgic* tribe about modern *Condroz*. Map IV, F, 1.

**conducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [**com-+ducō**], lead or bring together; assemble; induce; lead; hire.

**cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.** [**com-+ferō**], bring together, collect; remove, transfer, betake; compare; **sē cōnferre**, betake oneself, go, withdraw; ascribe; lay blame; **sc. sē**, match oneself, contend.

**cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pf. part. of cōnferciō**, press close], crowded, closely crowded.

**cōnfestim, adv.,** immediately, at once.

**cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [**com-+faciō**], make ready, do thoroughly, complete, finish up; wear out, exhaust; kill; furnish, prepare, dress; compose, write; masticate.

**cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, intr.** [**com-+fidō**], be confident, believe, trust, rely upon.

**cōnfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.** [**com-+figō**], fix, fasten or nail together, fasten.

**cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**cōnfirmō**], confirmation, assurance, evidence.

**cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [**com-+firmō**], strengthen, establish, confirm; assert, declare; assent.

**cōnfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictum, intr.,** strike together; contend, fight.

**cōnfluēns, -entis, m.** [**pres. part. of cōnfluō**], a flowing together, confluence.

**cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr.** [**com-+fodiō**], dig up; stab.

**cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr.** [**com-+fugiō**], flee, take refuge, resort.

**cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.**

[**com-+fundō**], pour together, mingle; join, combine.

**cōnfūsus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pf. part. of cōnfundō**], confused, disordered, unregulated.

**congređior, -ī, -gressus, intr.** [**com-+gradior**], come together, meet, encounter, contend.

**congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [**com-+grex**], collect, assemble, unite.

**congressus, -ūs, m.** [**congređior**], a meeting, encounter, conflict.

**coniciō or coiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [**com-+iaciō**], throw or put together; throw, cast; **in fugam conicere**, put to flight; put, place.

**coniūctim, adv.** [**coniungō**], jointly, unitedly, in common.

**coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.** [**com-+iungō**], join together, join, unite.

**coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**coniūrō**], a conspiracy, confederacy, league.

**coniūrātus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pf. part. of coniūrō**], swearing together, conspiring; **m. pl. as subst.**, conspirators.

**coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.** [**com-+iūrō**], take oath together, league together, conspire.

**coniūnx or coniux, -ugis, m. and f.** [**coniungō**], a husband, wife.

**conlabefiō, -fierī, -factus, pass. of conlabefaciō, tr.** [**com-+labefaciō**, cause to totter], be overthrown.

**conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [**com-+laudō**], praise highly, eulogize.

**conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [**com-+ligō**, bind], bind or fasten together.

**conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.** [**com-+legō**], gather together, collect, assemble; rally; **sē conligere**, rally; recover; acquire.

**conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [**com-+locō**, place], place, post, arrange; marry.

**conloquium**, -i, *n.* [conloquor], a conversation, conference.

**conloquor**, -i, -locūtus, *intr.* [com-+loquor], talk (with), confer.

**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, undertake, attempt.

**conquirō**, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsitus, *tr.* [com-+quaerō], seek for carefully, search out, collect.

**cōnsalūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+salūtō], greet, salute.

**cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sanguineus, of blood], of the same blood, related; *as subst.*, *m.*, kinsman, relative.

**cōnscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr.* [com-+scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark on.

**cōnsciscō**, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [com-+sciscō, approve], decree, adjudge; *necem sibi cōnsciscere*, commit suicide.

**cōnscius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sciō], partaking with another in the knowledge of anything, conscious, aware; *as subst.*, a confidant, go-between.

**cōnscrībō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [com-+scrībō], enroll, levy, enlist.

**cōnsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+sacrō], set apart, consecrate; honor as a deity, deify; *pf. part. as adj.*, consecrated, sacred.

**cōnsector**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sector, follow eagerly], follow eagerly, pursue, chase.

**cōnsenēscō**, -ere, -senūi, —, *intr.* [com-+senēscō, grow old], grow old together, grow old.

**cōnsēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnsentiō], agreement, unanimity.

**cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō], agreement, consent.

**cōnsentiō**, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēsum, *intr.* [com-+sentiō], think together, agree, combine, conspire.

**cōnsequor**, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.* [com-+sequor], follow after, follow up, follow, overtake, reach; gain, succeed in.

**cōnserō**, -ere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [com-+serō, join], bind together; *manūs cōnserere*, fight hand to hand, come to close quarters.

**cōnservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+servō], save, spare; protect, maintain; observe, regard.

**cōnsiderō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, look at closely, observe; consider.

**Cōnsidius**, -i, *m.*, Publius Considius, one of Caesar's officers.

**cōnsidō**, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [com-+sidō, sit], sit down together, sit down, hold a sitting; halt, encamp; settle.

**cōnsilium**, -i, *n.*, deliberation; advice, purpose, design, plan; *cōnsilium capere* or *inire*, form a plan; conspiracy; understanding, judgment, discretion, wisdom; behavior, course; council, assembly; *commūni cōnsiliō*, by or with common consent.

**cōnsimilis**, -e, *adj.* [com-+similis], very like, just like.

**cōnsistō**, -ere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [com-+sistō], stand, halt, stay; make a stand, take or keep a position, get a foothold; *of a ship*, run aground; consist in, depend or rest on.

**cōnsobrinus**, -ī, *m.* [com-+soror], a mother's sister's son, cousin.

**cōnsolor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+solor, comfort], cheer, comfort.

**cōnsors**, -sortis, *adj.* [com-+sors], having an equal share in, having a common lot, a brother's; *as subst.*, *m. and f.*, a partner, husband or wife.

**cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [cōnspiciō], sight, presence.

**cōnspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.*



[*com*-+*speciō*, spy], look at, sight, perceive, observe, contemplate.  
**cōspicor**, -*ārī*, -*ātus*, *tr.*, get sight of, see.

**cōspirō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *intr.* [*com*-+*spirō*], breathe together, agree together, combine; conspire.

**cōstanter**, *adv.* [*cōstāns*, firm], stubbornly, uniformly, consistently.

**cōstantia**, -*ae*, *f.* [*cōstāns*, firm], firmness, resolution, constancy.

**cōsternō**, -*ere*, -*strāvī*, -*strātum*, *tr.* [*com*-+*sternō*], strew over, cover, thatch.

**cōstituō**, -*ere*, -*uī*, -*ūtum*, *tr. and intr.* [*com*-+*statuō*], place, station; set up, raise; arrange, draw up; build, found, establish; institute, appoint; determine, determine upon, render a decision; of ships, moor.

**cōstō**, -*āre*, -*stiti*, -*stātum*, *intr.* [*com*-+*stō*], stand together, stand firm; agree, correspond; **cōstat**, it is known, it is ascertained or settled; be evident, clear; be dependent.

**cōsuēscō**, -*ere*, -*suēvī*, -*suētum*, *intr.* [*com*-+*suēscō*, become used], become accustomed; in the *pf.* tenses, be accustomed or wont.

**cōsuētūdō**, -*inis*, *f.* [*cōsuētus*], habit, custom; way of life, manner of living; precedent, tradition.

**cōsul**, -*ulis*, *m.*, consul.

**cōsulāris**, -*e*, *adj.* [*cōsul*], of a consul, consular; as *subst.*, *m.*, a man of consular rank, ex-consul.

**cōsulātus**, -*ūs*, *m.* [*cōsul*], consulship.

**cōsulō**, -*ere*, -*sulūī*, -*sultum*, *tr. and intr.*, take counsel for, consult for, promote the welfare of; take measures; consult, ask for advice.

**cōsultō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *intr.* [*freq. of cōsulō*], reflect, consider, take counsel.

**cōsultō**, *adv.* [*cōsultus*], deliberately, designedly, intentionally, on purpose.

**cōsultum**, -*ī*, *n.* [*cōsulō*], decree.

**cōsultus**, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*pf. part. of cōsulō*], skillful, experienced; *iūris cōsultus*, lawyer.

**cōsūmō**, -*ere*, -*sūmpsi*, -*sūmptum*, *tr.* [*com*-+*sūmō*], devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste; of time, pass.

**cōsurgō**, -*ere*, -*surrēxi*, -*surrēctum*, *intr.* [*com*-+*surgō*], arise together, rise up.

**contāgiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*com*-+*tangō*], touching; contagion, pollution.

**contegō**, -*ere*, -*tēxi*, -*tēctum*, *tr.* [*com*-+*tegō*], cover up, cover over.

**contemnō**, -*ere*, -*tempsi*, -*temptum*, *tr.* [*com*-+*temnō*, scorn], think slightly of, disparage; despise, disregard.

**contemptiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*contemnō*], disdain, contempt.

**contemptus**, -*ūs*, *m.* [*contemnō*], a despising, contempt, an object of contempt.

**contendō**, -*ere*, -*dī*, -*tum*, *tr. and intr.* [*com*-+*tendō*], stretch; strive for, make an effort for; exert oneself; *ad salūtem contendere*, make for a place of safety; march rapidly, hasten; fight, contend; ask, entreat.

**contentiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*contendō*], straining, effort; struggle, contest; dispute, strife.

**contentus**, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*contineō*], content, satisfied.

**conterminus**, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*com*-+*terminus*, limit], bordering upon, nigh to, adjoining.

**contexō**, -*ere*, -*texui*, -*textum*, *tr.* [*com*-+*texō*, weave], plait, bind together, interweave, connect.

**contiguus**, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*contingō*], touching, adjoining, close together.

**continēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of contineō*], holding together, continuous, extensive; neighboring; *as subst., f.*, mainland, continent.

**continenter, adv.** [*continēns*], continuously, without interruption, continually.

**contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.** [*com-+teneō*], keep together, keep, detain, shut or hem in, bound; hold in check, restrain, hold; *sēsē continēre*, maintain oneself, remain.

**contingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, tr. and intr.** [*com-+tangō*], touch, reach, extend to; strike; happen, come to, fall to one's lot.

**continuātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*continuo*, connect], a continuance, succession, series.

**continuus, -a, -um, adj.** [*contineō*], holding together, uninterrupted, continuous, one after another.

**contrā, adv. and prep.; as adv.**, on the contrary; **contrā atque**, contrary to what, otherwise than; in opposition, on the opposite side; on the other hand, in answer; *as prep.*, against, over against, opposite to; contrary to.

**contrā-dicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, intr.**, speak against, oppose.

**contrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.** [*com-+trahō*], collect, get together.

**contrārius, -a, -um, adj.** [*contrā*], opposite, contrary.

**contrōversia, -ae, f.** [*contrōversus*, disputed], a dispute, quarrel, controversy.

**contumēlia, -ae, f.**, insult, affront, outrage, injury.

**convallis, -is, f.** [*com-+vallis*], an inclosed valley, basin, defile.

**convehō, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, tr.** [*com-+vehō*], carry or bring together, collect, fetch in.

**conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, intr.**

[*com-+veniō*], come together, assemble, come to; be fitting or suitable; *impers.*, **convenit**, it is agreed or agreed upon.

**conventus, -ūs, m.** [*conveniō*], a coming together, meeting, assembly; judicial session, assizes.

**convertō, -ere, -ti, -sum, tr.** [*com-+vertō*], turn around, turn; **signa convertere**, wheel around, face about; *pass.*, turn oneself.

**convincō, -ere, -vici, -victum, tr.** [*com-+vincō*], convict.

**convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [*com-+vocō*], call together, call, summon.

**coōrior, -iri, -ortus, intr.** [*com-+orior*], arise, spring up, break forth.

**cōpia, -ae, f.**, abundance, supply; resources; *pl.*, supplies, provisions, troops, forces, army; number, amount; opportunity.

**cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [*cōpia*], well-supplied, rich, abundant.

**cōpula, -ae, f.**, bond; grappling-hook, fastening.

**cor, cordis, n.**, the heart, *esp. as the seat of the affections and passions*; **cordi esse**, be dear.

**cōram, adv. and prep. with abl.** [*com-+ōs*]; *as adv.*, before one's eyes, in person, in one's presence; *as prep.*, before, in the presence of.

**Corinthius, -a, -um, adj.** [*Corinthus*], Corinthian; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Corinthians.

**Corinthus, -i, f.**, Corinth, a city on the isthmus of Corinth. *Map I, H, 5.*

**Coriosolitēs, -um, m.**, a tribe of Britany near Corseult. *Map IV, B, 2.*

**Cornēlius, -i, m.**, a Roman name; *esp.* Publius Cornelius Rufinus, consul in 321 B.C. For others see Lentulus, Cinna, Gallus, Scipio, Sulla.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn; horn of the moon; wing, flank. The name **cornū** was applied to a large, almost circular horn, with a shrill tone. It was used in the Roman army to repeat the signals for advance or retreat that were sounded by the tuba.

**cornum**, -ī, *n.* [cornus, cornel-tree], a cornel-cherry; a javelin of cornel-wood.

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, a crown, wreath, garland; line of soldiers.

**Corōnēa**, -ae, *f.*, a town in Boeotia, in Greece.

**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, the body; frame, mass; size of body, shape.

**corrumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [com-+rumpō], corrupt, seduce.

**cortex**, -icis, *m.* and *f.*, bark.

**Cōrus**, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

**Cōrycides**, -um (*acc.* -as), *f. adj.*, of the Corycian cave on Mount Parnassus, Corycian; **Cōrycides nymphae**, the nymphs of the Corycian cave.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē], daily; ordinary, usual.

**cotidiē**, *adv.* [quot+diēs], every day, daily.

**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, cognomen of one of Caesar's legates, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

**crassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness.

**Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen. (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus the triumvir, noted for his wealth. (2) Publius Crassus, son of (1), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**crāter**, -ēris, *m.*, mixing vessel, wine-bowl.

**crātis**, -is, *f.*, wicker-work, hurdle.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, repeated, numerous, frequent.

**crēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* and *intr.*, intrust, trust, place confidence in; believe, think.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, burn to ashes, burn.

**creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, produce, make; choose, appoint.

**crēscō**, -ere, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *intr.*, come into being; increase, grow, thrive, prosper; *pf. part.*, **crētus**, arisen, born, sprung from.

**Crēta**, -ae, *f.*, the island of Crete. *Map I, H-I, 6.*

**Crētēnsis**, -e, *adj.*, Cretan; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, Cretans.

**Crētēs**, -um, *m.*, Cretans. *Map I, H-I, 6.*

**Critognātus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Arverni.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, crucify], crucifying, torture, torment.

**crūdēlītās**, -ātis, *f.* [crūdēlis], cruelty, barbarity.

**crūdēliter**, *adv.* [crūdēlis], cruelly.

**cruentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [cruentus], make bloody, stain with blood.

**cruentus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cruor], spotted with blood, blood-stained; cruel.

**cruor**, -ōris, *m.*, blood, gore, a stream of blood; bloodshed, murder.

**crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, the leg below the knee, shank.

**Crustumīni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Crustumeria, a town northeast of Rome. *Map I, B, 7.*

**cubile**, -is, *n.* [cubō, recline], resting place, couch, lair; marriage-bed.

**culmen**, -inis, *n.*, top, summit, ridge; roof.

**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt.

**cultor**, -ōris, *m.* [colō], a cultivator, farmer; worshiper.

**cultūra**, -ae, *f.* [colō], cultivation; **agrī cultūra**, agriculture.

**cultus**, -ūs, *m.* [colō], cultivation, training, civilization; clothing, attire; outward bearing.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with, at the same time with.

**cum**, *conj.* [= **quom**, *acc. of qui*]; *of time*, when, while, whenever, after; **cum** . . . **tum**, while . . . especially, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as; *of cause*, since, because; *of opposition*, though, although.

**cumba**, -ae, *f.*, little boat, skiff.

**cumulus**, -i, *m.*, heap, pile, mass.

**cunctātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūctor**], delay, hesitation, reluctance.

**cūctor**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant.

**cūctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**coniūctus**], all together, all.

**cuniculus**, -i, *m.*, rabbit-burrow, tunnel, mine.

**cupidē**, *adv.* [**cupidus**], desirously, eagerly.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, *f.* [**cupidus**], desire, longing.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**], desirous, eager, zealous, fond.

**cupiō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, wish ardently, desire, be eager.

**cūr**, *adv.*, *interrog.*, why? wherefore? *rel.*, why, by reason of which, that.

**cūra**, -ae, *f.*, care, concern, task, trouble; object of care.

**cūria**, -ae, *f.*, court, curia; the senate house.

**Curius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**cūra**], care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done.

**currō**, -ere, **cucurrī**, **cursum**, *intr.*, run.

**currus**, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], chariot.

**Cursor**, -ōris, *m.* [**cursor**, a runner], surname of L. Papirius.

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], a running,

race; pace, speed; **magnō cursū**, at full speed; course, way; journey, voyage.

**curvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, curved, rounded.

**custōdia**, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**], watch, care, custody; watcher, guard.

**custōs**, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, a guard, guardian, watcher.

**Cyrēnae**, -ārum, *f.*, a city in northern Africa. *Map I, H, 7.*

**Cyrēnaei**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of northern Africa. *Map I, H, 7.*

## D

**D.**, *abbr. for Decimus.*

**D**, *for quingenti, etc.*

**Dāci**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Dacians, people of Dacia. *Map I, H, 3.*

**Dalmatae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Dalmatians, people of Dalmatia. *Map I, F-G, 4.*

**damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**damnum**], condemn, sentence; censure, find fault with.

**damnum**, -i, *n.*, hurt, loss; source of loss, bane, calamity.

**Dānuvius**, -i, *m.*, the Danube. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*

**daps**, **dapis**, *f.* (usually *pl.*), solemn feast; meal, victuals.

**Dardani**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of southern Moesia. *Map I, G, 4.*

**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, of place, from; of time, from, just after, about; of partition, from, of; of respect, about, concerning, of, in regard to; of cause, on account of, over, for; in other relations, from, of, on, according to.

**dea**, -ae, *f.*, goddess.

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**dē+habeō**], keep away or back; owe, be under obligation; ought, must.

**dēbilitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**dē-bilis**, weak], disable, weaken.

**dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.,** go away, depart, withdraw; (*sc. vitā*) die.

**decem, indecl. num. adj.,** ten.

**dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr.,** decide, determine; decree, allot by decree; decide by combat, fight.

**dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [certō, fight],** fight to the end, fight out, contend.

**dēcessus, -ūs, m. [dēcēdō],** a withdrawal, departure; of tide, ebb or fall.

**dēcīdō, -ere, -cidī, —, intr. [dē+cadō],** fall down, drop, sink.

**decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem],** tenth.

**Decimus, -ī, m.,** a Roman praenomen.

**dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [dē+capiō],** take in, deceive.

**Decius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

(1) Publius Decius Mus, a Roman consul who devoted himself to the Manes in the Latin war of 337 B.C. (2) Publius Decius Mus, grandson of (1), who devoted himself to the Manes in the war against Pyrrhus, 280 B.C.

**dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [clārō, make clear],** make clear, reveal.

**dēclivis, -e, adj. [dē+clivus],** sloping downward, descending; as *subst., n.,* a slope.

**dēclivitās, -ātis, f. [dēclivis],** a slope, declivity.

**dē-crēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, intr.,** grow less, decrease.

**dēcrētum, -ī, n. [dēcernō],** decision, decree, order.

**decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus],** of a tenth, decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate or main entrance, near which the tenth cohort of each legion was stationed.

**decuriō, -ōnis, m.,** decurion, commander of a squadron of ten men.

**dē-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, tr. and intr.,** run down, run away, hurry off.

**decus, decoris, n.,** grace, beauty, honor.

**dē-decus, -oris, n.,** dishonor, disgrace.

**dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō],** surrendered; as *subst., m. pl.,* prisoners of war, captives.

**dēditō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō],** a surrender; in *dēditionem venire* or *dēditionem facere*, to surrender.

**dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.,** give over, surrender; devote, dedicate.

**dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead down; lead away, withdraw; remove, drive away; *w. nāvēs,* launch; *w. vēla,* unfurl; lead, bring, conduct, escort, bring as a wife; induce.

**dēfatigatiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō],** weariness, exhaustion.

**dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** tire out, weary, exhaust.

**dēfectiō, -ōnis, f. [dēficiō],** a falling away, desertion, revolt.

**dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsū, tr. and intr. [dē+fendō, strike],** keep or ward off, repel, defend, protect; make a defense.

**dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō],** a defense.

**dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō],** a defender.

**dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,** bring down, carry away, bring from one place to another, convey; *pass.,* be driven, fall; assign, grant, confer; report, submit; register.

**dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dēfetiscor, grow tired],** exhausted, worn out.

**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [dē+faciō],** be wanting, fail, fall away, be insufficient, be exhausted; revolt; desert.

**dē-figō, -ere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.,** fix or fasten down, drive in, plant.

**dē-finiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr.,** set bounds to, mark off, define, determine.

**dē-fleō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, intr.,** weep over, bewail, lament.

**dēfōrmis, -e, adj. [dē+fōrma],** ill-shaped, unsightly, ugly.

**dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f. [dēfōrmis],** blemish, deformity.

**dē-frēnātus, -a, -um, adj. [dē+frēnō, bridle],** unbridled, unchecked.

**dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, —, tr. and intr.,** flee from, shun, avoid.

**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [dē+iaciō],** throw down, bring down, strike down; cast down, disappoint; drive, carry.

**dēiectus, -ūs, m. [dēiciō],** a throwing down; slope, descent.

**deinceps, adv. [dein+caput],** one after another, successively; without intermission; next.

**deinde or dein, adv.,** thence, from there; afterwards, then, hereafter, in the second place, next.

**dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** allure, delight; *pass.,* delight or take pleasure in.

**dēleō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, tr.,** efface; destroy, overthrow, ruin.

**dē-liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** weigh well, deliberate, consider.

**dēlibrō, -āre, —, -ātum, tr. [liber, bark],** strip off the bark, peel.

**dē-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** bind down, bind, fasten, moor.

**dēligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [dē+legō],** choose, select.

**dēlitiscō, -ere, -litui, —, intr. [dē+latēscō, hide],** hide, lie hidden.

**delphin, -inis, m.,** dolphin.

**dēlūbrum, -i, n.,** a place of cleansing, temple, shrine.

**dēmentia, -ae, f. [dēmēns, mad],** madness, infatuation, folly.

**dē-mergō, -ere, -si, -sum, tr.,** sink.

**dē-metō, -ere, -messui, -messum, tr.,** mow or cut down, reap, harvest.

**dē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** remove, move away, depart.

**dē-minuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr. and intr.,** lessen, diminish, impair.

**dēmissus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dēmittō],** let down, low-lying, low.

**dē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr.,** send or let down, lower, bow; sink, plunge.

**dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** point out, show, prove; mention, state.

**dē-moror, -āri, -ātus, tr. and intr.,** delay, retard; restrain, hinder.

**dēmum, adv. [dē],** at length, at last.

**dē-negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.,** deny outright, refuse; say no.

**dēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [decem],** ten each.

**dēnique, adv.,** afterwards, at last, finally; at least.

**dēnsus, -a, -um, adj.,** closely set or packed, thick, dense.

**Dentātus, -i, m., cognomen of M. Curius, celebrated for his victories over the Samnites and over Pyrrhus.**

**dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** announce, give notice; warn.

**dē-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr.,** drive from or away, ward off.

**dē-perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** destroy utterly; lose entirely, lose.

**dē-pereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.,** go to ruin, perish, be lost.

**dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [plōrō, wail],** lament, bewail the loss of, deplore.

**dē-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr.,** lay down, lay aside, put away or off; give up, resign; quench, slake; place, station.

**dē-populor, -āri, -ātus, tr.,** lay waste, ravage; *pf. part. with pass.* force, ravaged.

**dē-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** carry off or away, remove.

**dēprecātor, -ōris, m. [dēprecor],** mediator, intercessor.

**dē-precor, -āri, -ātus, tr. and intr.,** beg off, pray against; pray for deliverance, beseech; plead for.

**dē-prehendō, -ere, -di, -ēnsum, tr.,** seize, capture; detect.

**dē-prēndō, a shorter form of dēpre-**  
**hendō.**

**dērēctē, adv. [dērēctus],** straight, directly, exactly.

**dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dērigō, lay straight],** direct, straight; perpendicular.

**dērīvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [dē+ rīvus],** draw off.

**dē-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** take from or away, withdraw.

**dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, intr. [dē+scandō, climb],** climb down, descend, dismount; resort.

**dē-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītum, intr. [sciscō, approve],** withdraw, revert.

**dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.,** write out; mark off, divide.

**dē-serō, -ere, -serui, -sertum, tr. [serō, join],** leave, abandon, desert.

**dēsertor, -ōris, m. [dēserō],** deserter.

**dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** long for, desire, miss; demand, expect; *pass.*, be missing, be lost.

**dēsidia, -ae, f. [dēsideo, sit idle],** a sitting still; inactivity, indolence.

**dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** mark out, mean, designate.

**dēsiliō, -īre, -silui, —, intr. [dē+ saliō],** leap down; alight, dismount.

**dē-sinō, -ere, -sivī or -sii, -situm (pf. inf. dēsisse), intr.,** cease, stop.

**dē-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, intr.,** stop, cease, desist, forbear; desist from, abandon.

**dēsōlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [dē+ sōlus],** leave alone; *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, desolate.

**dēspēctus, -ūs, m. [dēspiciō],** a looking down, view, outlook.

**dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēspērō],** despair.

**dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.,** be hopeless, give up hope, despair of.

**dēspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. and intr. [dē+speciō, spy],** look down upon, scorn, despise.

**dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** strip off, plunder, despoil, deprive.

**dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** fasten down, secure, make fast; fix upon, design, resolve; detail; **operi dēstināti,** detailed for the work.

**dēstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. [dē+statuō],** desert, betray.

**dē-stringō, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, tr.,** draw off; draw, unsheathe.

**dē-sum, deesse, defui, —, intr.,** be wanting, fail.

**dē-super, adv.,** from above.

**dēterior, -ius, comp. adj.,** worse, less.

**dē-terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr.,** frighten away, deter, prevent; repress, control.

**dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [dē+teneō],** keep back, delay, engage.

**dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.,** pull off, take away, strip off, remove; drag or turn around.

**dētrimentum, -i, n. [dēterō, wear away],** loss, injury, damage, defeat.

**dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** strike down; drive off, dislodge.

**Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m.,** son of Prometheus, who, with his wife Pyrrha, survived the flood.

**deus, -ī (nom. pl., dī, dat. and abl. pl., dīs), m.,** a god, deity.

**dē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr.,** carry away, take away, bring.

**dē-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr.,** come down, go or come (to), reach.

**dēvexus, -a, -um, adj. [dēvehō],** sloping; *n. pl. as subst. (sc. loca),* slopes, hillsides.

**dē-vincō, -ere, -vici, -victum, tr.,** conquer completely, overthrow.

**dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr.,** devote, offer, consecrate; *pf. part. dēvōtus, as subst.,* a sworn follower.

**dexter, -tra, -trum, adj.,** right, right-hand, on or to the right; *as subst., f., dextra,* the right hand.

**dī-,** see *dis-*.

**Diablitēs, -um, m.,** probably a part of the Aulerci. *Map IV, C, 2.*

**Diāna, -ae, f.,** daughter of Jupiter and Latona and goddess of the chase.

**diciō, -ōnis, f. [dicō],** saying; jurisdiction, dominion, sway.

**dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** proclaim; consecrate; give over.

**dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, tr.,** say, declare, speak, utter; express, mention; appoint; *v. iūs,* pronounce, interpret, administer.

**dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate],** a dictator.

**dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor],** the office of dictator, dictatorship.

**dictiō, -ōnis, f. [dicō],** a speaking, pleading.

**dictum, -ī, n. [dicō],** a saying, assertion; word; command.

**dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead or draw apart, separate, divide.

**diēs, -ēī, f. and m.,** a day; time, period of time, appointed time; *ad diem,* on the day, at the appointed time; *in diēs,* day by day, from day to day.

**differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, tr. and intr. [dis-+ferō],** bear apart; postpone, delay; differ.

**difficilis, -e, adj. [dis-+facilis],** not easy, hard, difficult.

**difficulter, adv. [difficilis],** with difficulty; *comp., difficilius; sup., difficillimē.*

**difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis],** difficulty, trouble, embarrassment.

**diffidō, -ere, -fisis sum, intr. [dis-+fidō],** distrust; lose confidence, despair.

**diffuō, -ere, -fluxī, —, intr. [dis-+fluō],** flow in different directions.

**diffugiō, -ere, -fugī, -fugitūrus, intr. [dis-+fugiō],** flee in various directions, scatter.

**diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [dis-+fundō],** pour or spread out, branch widely.

**digitus, -ī, m.,** a finger; a toe; an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot.

**dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus],** worthiness; honor, prestige, distinction; rank, dignity; authority, office.

**dignor, -āri, -ātus, tr. [dignus],** deem worthy, accept; condescend.

**dignus, -a, -um, adj.,** worthy, deserving, fit.

**dilēctus, -ūs, m. [diligō],** a choosing; levy, draft.

**diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful],** carefully, with exactness or pains.

**diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful],** heedfulness, care, diligence.

**diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [dis-+legō],** single or choose out, love, be attached to.



**dī-mētiōr**, -iri, -mēnsus, *tr.*, measure out or off, measure.

**dīmīcātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dīmīcō], combat, struggle.

**dī-mīcō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [mīcō, flash], fight, contend, battle.

**dīmīdius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dis-+mēdius], divided in the middle, halved, half; *as subst., n.*, a half.

**dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send away, let go; dispatch, detail; leave, abandon; lose.

**dī-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move or put apart, remove.

**dirimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [dis-+emō], interrupt, break up.

**dīripiō**, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], tear in pieces; plunder, ravage.

**dī-ruō**, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, demolish, destroy.

**dis-** or **dī-**, *inseparable particle used in composition*, apart, in different directions, in pieces, not.

**Dīs**, **Dītis**, *m.*, Pluto, brother of Jupiter and god of the underworld, the region of darkness and night.

**dis-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, depart, go or come away, withdraw.

**dis-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, separate, distinguish, discern.

**discessus**, -ūs, *m.* [dis-cēdō], a going asunder, departure; defection.

**disciplina**, -ae, *f.* [discipulus, learner], instruction, training, discipline; system of instruction, system.

**disclūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.* [dis-+claudō], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate.

**discō**, -ere, didici, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught, learn to know.

**discrimen**, -inis, *n.* [discernō], a separation, distinction; danger.

**disiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [dis-

+iaciō], drive asunder, disperse, rout; destroy.

**dis-pālātus**, -a, -um, *pf. part. of dispālōr* [pālōr, wander], scattered, dispersed.

**dis-pār**, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, unlike, ill-matched.

**dispergō**, -ere, -persī, -persum, *tr.* [dis-+spargō], scatter; *pf. part. as adj.*, scattered, dispersed.

**dispartiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [partiō], distribute.

**displiceō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *intr.* [dis-+placeō], displease, be unsatisfactory.

**dis-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, distribute; arrange; place at intervals, station.

**dis-putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, debate about, dispute.

**dissēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dissentiō, disagree], disagreement, dissension.

**dis-sentiō**, -ire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *intr.*, dissent, disagree.

**dis-serō**, -ere, —, —, *tr.*, sow here and there, plant or set at intervals.

**dissideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [dis-+sedeō], sit apart; disagree, differ; be hostile to.

**dis-simulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, make unlike; disguise, dissemble.

**dissipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse.

**distineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [dis-+teneō], hold apart, keep apart, divide, isolate.

**distō**, -āre, —, —, *intr.* [dis-+stō], stand apart, be apart, be distant; differ, be different.

**dis-tribuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *tr.*, assign, apportion, divide, distribute.

**di-stringō**, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.*, draw asunder; occupy, engage.

**diū**, *adv.*, long, for a long time; *comp.*, **diūtius**, *sup.*, **diūtissimē**.

**diurnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **diēs**], by day.

**diuturnitās**, -ātis, *f.* [**diuturnus**], long continuance, length of time.

**diuturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū**], of long duration, long.

**di-vellō**, -ere, -velli (-vulsi), -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō**, tear], rend asunder, tear to pieces, destroy.

**di-versus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, facing different ways, turned in the opposite direction, opposite; contrary, different; opposed, separate.

**dītissimus**, -a, -um, *sup.* of **dīves**, rich.

**Diviciācus**, -ī, *m.*, (1) a chief of the *Haedui*, friendly to the Romans; (2) a chief of the *Suessiones*.

**Dīvicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a chief of the *Helvetians*.

**dīvidō**, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, *tr.*, part, divide; distribute, share, allot.

**dīvinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**dīvinus**], foresee, divine.

**dīvinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dīvus**, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred; **rēs divinae**, religious exercises, divine worship, sacrifices.

**dīvisor**, -ōris, *m.* [**dīvidō**], one who divides, a distributor.

**dō**, dare, **dedī**, **datum**, *tr.*, give, concede, grant, afford; impart, intrust, offer; cause, make; assign, appoint; **negōtium dare**, assign a matter, employ; pay, suffer; put; inflict; give forth; utter; of a letter, send, write; indicate; inspire; *w.* **tergum**, turn; **tergum dare**, take to flight; **vēla dare**, set sail; **locum dare**, make room for, yield to; in **fugam dare**, put to flight; **sē ventō dare**, run before the wind.

**doceō**, -ēre, -uī, **doctum**, *tr.*, teach, inform, show, declare.

**doctor**, -ōris, *m.* [**doceō**], teacher.

**doctrina**, -ae, *f.* [**doceō**], learning.

**documentum**, -ī, *n.* [**doceō**], evidence, proof.

**doleō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intr.*, grieve, be sorry, suffer, be grieved, be afflicted.

**dolor**, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō**], pain, suffering, distress, grief, cause of grief.

**dolus**, -ī, *m.*, deceit, trickery.

**domesticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus**], of or belonging to the home, home; one's own; internal, civil.

**domicilium**, -ī, *n.* [**domus**], fixed abode, home, dwelling.

**dominor**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.* [**dominus**], be master, exercise authority, rule.

**dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master, owner, ruler, lord.

**Domitius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. **Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus**, consul in 54 B.C., who fell at *Pharsalus* in 48.

**domō**, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, tame; conquer; destroy; of food, boil soft.

**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; household, family; *loc.* **domī**, at home.

**dōnec**, *conj.*, while, as long as; until, till.

**dōnicum**, *conj.*, until.

**dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**dōnum**], give, present, bestow.

**dōs**, **dōtis**, *f.* [**dō**], a marriage gift or portion, dowry; a gift, offering.

**Dūbis**, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a river of Celtic Gaul. Map IV, F-G, 3.

**druidēs**, -um, *m.*, the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

**dubietās**, -ātis, *f.* [**dubius**], doubt, hesitation.

**dubitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**dubitō**], doubt, uncertainty.

**dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [**du-bius**], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay.

**dubius, -a, -um, adj.,** wavering, doubtful, uncertain; slight, hard to discern; *as subst., n.,* doubt; **procul dubiō, without doubt; in dubiō, in doubt, uncertain.**

**ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj.** [**duo+centum**], two hundred.

**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, tr.,** lead, conduct, march; *w. rēmōs, ply; w. fōrmam, assume; get, receive, take as wife; trace, inscribe; of a ditch or wall, make, run; think, consider.*

**Duilius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; *esp. Gaius Duilius, who conquered the Carthaginians in the battle of Mylae.*

**dum, conj.,** while, as long as; till, until.

**Dumnorix, -igis, m.,** a Haeduan chief, brother of Diviciacus.

**duo, -ae, -o, num. adj.,** two.

**duodecim, indecl. num. adj.** [**duo+decem**], twelfth.

**duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [**duodecim**], twelfth.

**duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,** twelve each.

**duo-dē-vigintī, indecl. num. adj.,** two from twenty, eighteen.

**duplex, -icis, adj.** [**duo+plicō**, fold], twofold, double.

**uplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**duplex**], to double.

**dūritia, -ae, f.** [**dūrus**], hardness; hardship.

**dūritiēs, -ēi, f.** [**dūrus**], hardness.

**dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [**dūrus**], harden, make hardy; hold out, last, remain.

**dūrus, -a, -um, adj.,** hard; rough, harsh; severe, unyielding, pitiless, unfeeling; adverse.

**Dūrus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

**dux, ducis, m.** [**dūcō**], leader, guide; general; chief.

**dynastēs, -ae, m.,** prince, ruler.

## E

**ē, see ex.**

**eā, adv.** [**is**], there, by that way.

**ebur, -oris, n.,** ivory; a thing made of ivory, *esp. a scabbard.*

**Eburōnēs, -um, m.,** a Belgic people between the Meuse and Rhine. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

**Eburovicēs, -um, m.,** a division of the Aulerci. *Map IV, D, 2.*

**ecce, interj.,** lo! behold! there!

**ēdictum, -ī, n.** [**ēdicō**, declare], edict.

**ē-discō, -ere, -didici, —, tr.,** learn in detail, learn by heart, learn.

**ēditus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pf. part. of ēdō**], raised high, elevated.

**ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.,** give out, disclose; produce, inflict.

**ē-doceō, -ēre, -cui, -ctum, tr.,** teach thoroughly, show in detail, explain.

**ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead out, march out.

**effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**ex+fēmina**], make feminine, make womanish, enervate, weaken.

**efferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum, tr.** [**ex+ferō**], bring or carry out; bring; spread or publish abroad, make known; bury.

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [**ex+faciō**], make out; make, effect, accomplish, bring about, form; finish; render; make up, amount to.

**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, tr. and intr.** [**ex+fugiō**], flee from or away, avoid, escape.

**effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.** [**ex+fundō**], pour out, pour, spread abroad; **sē effundere**, rush out, spread abroad; spend, waste.

**egeō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.**, need, lack, want.

**egestās, -ātis, f.** [egeō], need, want, poverty.

**ego, mei, pers. pron.**, I, I myself.

**ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, intr.** [ex+gradior], go out or forth, leave; land from a ship, disembark.

**ēgregiē, adv.** [ēgregius], excellently, admirably, remarkably.

**ēgregius, -a, -um, adj.** [ex+grex], extraordinary, remarkable, unusual; distinguished, illustrious.

**ēgressus, -ūs, m.** [ēgredior], a going forth, landing, landing-place.

**ē-iaculor, -ārī, -ātus, tr.** [iaculor, hurl a dart], shoot or throw out.

**ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [ex+iaciō], cast or drive out, expel; cast up, strand; sē ēicere, rush.

**elephantus, -ī, m.**, an elephant.

**Eleuteti, -ōrum, m.**, dependents of the Arverni. Map IV, D, 4.

**ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.** [ex+legō], pick out; choose; *pf. part.* **ēlēctī**, picked (men, etc.).

**ēloquentia, -ae, f.** [ēloquēns, eloquent], eloquence.

**ē-lūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, tr.**, elude, escape; cheat, deceive.

**Elusātēs, -um, m.**, an Aquitanian tribe about modern Eauze. Map IV, D, 5.

**ē-micō, -āre, -uī, —, intr.**, spring out, break forth, leap up or forth.

**ē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**, emigrate.

**ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.** [ēminus], stand out, project.

**ē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr.**, send forth; throw, discharge, hurl; let go, let drop, release; utter.

**emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr.**, buy, purchase, take (in compounds).

**ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, intr.**, be born from, spring or sprout up.

**enim, conj.**, *postpositive*, for, really; but; with ellipsis of a cl. to be supplied, for, of course, naturally.

**Ennius, -ī, m.**, a famous Roman poet.

**ēnsis, -is, m.**, a sword.

**ē-numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, enumerate, relate.

**ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.**, report, disclose.

**eō, adv.** [is], to that place, there, thither.

**eō, ire, iī or ivī, itum, intr.**, go, proceed, walk; of different sorts of motion, move, fly, dart, etc.; set out.

**eōdem, adv.** [idem], to the same place, thither.

**Epaminōndās, -ae, m.**, a famous Theban general.

**Ephesus, -ī, f.**, an Ionian city near the coast of Asia Minor. Map I, I, 5.

**ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj.** [ephippium], caparisoned; using pads or saddles.

**ephippium, -ī, n.**, a horse-cloth, saddle-pad, saddle.

**ephorus, -ī, m.**, an ephor, a Spartan magistrate.

**Epimēthis, -idis, f.**, daughter of Epimetheus, Pyrrha.

**Ēpirus, -ī, f.**, the northwest district of Greece. Map I, G, 5.

**Eporēdorix, -igis, m.**, a Haeduan chief.

**epulae, -ārum, f.**, only in pl., food; a banquet, dinner.

**eques, -itis, m.** [equus], a horseman, knight; pl., cavalry. The cavalry of Caesar's army, in contrast to that of an earlier day, was made up entirely of foreign auxiliaries, placed under the command of a Roman officer. Part of it remained with his forces the year round, and was detailed to serve with the infantry in divisions of

*ten turmae* or squadrons to each legion (about 330 men altogether). This force consisted of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. In addition, the Gallic tribes sent a cavalry force for the summer campaigns, usually amounting to about 4,000 men, which was commanded by Gallic officers. The Gallic cavalry wore the cavalry helmet (*cassis*) and carried small round shields (*parmae*). They were provided with long swords and with Gallic javelins (*trāgulae*), which could be used for thrusting, or could be hurled by means of a thong.

**equester, -tris, -tre, adj.** [*equēs*], of or belonging to a horseman; of cavalry, cavalry-.

**equitātus, -ūs, m.** [*equitō*], cavalry.

**equus, -i, m.**, a horse.

**Eratosthenēs, -is, m.**, a Greek poet, astronomer, philosopher, and geographer, born 276 B.C.

**ergā, prep.** with *acc.*, toward, in relation to, to, for.

**ergō, adv.**, therefore, so then, then, now.

**ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr.** [*ex+regō*], lift, raise; *sē ērigere*, stand up; *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high.

**ēripō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, tr.** [*ex+rapio*], snatch away, deprive, take away; rescue.

**errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.**, wander up and down, wander, go astray; be in doubt, waver.

**error, -ōris, m.** [*errō*], mistake, error.

**ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr.** and *intr.*, burst forth, rush out, sally; arise.

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.** [*ērumpō*], a breaking out, sortie, sally.

**Eryx, -cis, m.**, a mountain and town in western Sicily.

**Esquilinus, -a, -um, adj.**, Esquiline; *as ubst., m.* (*sc. mōns*), the Esquiline Hill. *Map III, F, 2-3.*

**essedārius, -i, m.** [*essedum*], a fighter in a war chariot, chariot-eer.

**essedum, -i, n.**, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons.



**Esuvii, -ōrum, m.**, a Gallic people living near modern Essey. *Map IV, C, D, 2.*

**et, conj. and adv.**, and, also, too, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

**et-iam, adv. and conj.**, yet, even yet, still, even; **etiam nunc**, yet, even now, still; also, too.

**etiam-num, adv.**, still, yet.

**Etrūria, -ae, f.**, a country on the west coast of Italy. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

**Etrūscī, -ōrum, m.**, the Etruscans, people of Etruria. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

**et-si, conj.**, even if, although, though.

**Eumenēs, -is, m.**, a king of Pergamus.

**Eurōpa, -ae, f.**, Europe.

**Eurysthenēs, -is, m.**, brother of Procles.

**ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, intr.**, go away, escape; get up, climb.

**ē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr.**, carry out; elevate.

**ē-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, tr.** [*vellō*], pluck, pluck or pull out.

**ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr.**, come out, result, happen.

**ēventus, -ūs, m.** [*ex+veniō*], an outcome, result; fate, disaster.

**ē-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr.**, overturn, overthrow; destroy, ruin.

**ē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** call forth, summon.

**ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** fly or rush forth.

**ex** or (only before consonants) **ē,** *prep. w. abl.; of space, out of, from; on the side of, on; of time, from, since, after; ex itinere, immediately after the march; of source, out of, from; of cause, because of, in consequence of, in accordance with; in partition, of, from, from among; in other relations, from, in conformity with, according to, by, of.*

**ex-agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** drive out or away, stir up, rouse; disturb, harass.

**exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [exāmen, the tongue of a balance],** weigh, balance.

**exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [exanimus, breathless],** deprive of breath, exhaust; *pf. part., exanimātus, breathless, exhausted.*

**ex-ardescō, -ere, -ārsi, -ārsurus, intr. [ārdescō, take fire],** be kindled, be inflamed or excited.

**ex-audiō, -ire, -īvi, -itum, tr.,** hear, discern; hearken to, listen, heed.

**ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, intr.,** go out or away, withdraw, retire.

**excellō, -ere, —, —, tr. and intr.,** be eminent or superior, surpass.

**excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of excellō],** high, lofty, tall.

**excidium, -i, n. [cadō],** downfall, destruction, ruin.

**ex-ciō, -ire, -īvi, -itum, tr. [cieō, stir up],** rouse, awaken; disturb.

**excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [ex+capiō],** take out; take up, catch, capture; intercept, withstand, resist; meet, receive, welcome; listen to, overhear; come after, succeed; *abs.,* follow immediately.

**excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq.**

**of exciō],** call out, arouse, rouse; excite, incite; erect, raise.

**exclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr. [ex+claudō],** shut out, exclude; cut off, hinder, prevent.

**ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [cruciō, torture],** torture, torment.

**excubitor, -ōris, m. [ex+cubō, recline],** one who lies out on guard, a watchman, sentinel.

**excultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ex+calcō],** trample out, tread down.

**excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run out],** a running out or forth, sally, sortie.

**excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ex+causa],** excuse, justify.

**exemplum, -i, n.,** specimen, representative; example, precedent.

**ex-eō, -ire, -iī or -īvi, -itum, intr.,** go out, come forth; rise, appear.

**exerceō, -ēre, -cui, -citum, tr. [ex+arceō],** drive forward; train; practise, exercise; *pass.,* be busy.

**exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [exercitō, train],** exercise, practise.

**exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of exercitō, train],** trained, experienced.

**exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō],** army.

**ex-hauriō, -ire, -hausi, -haustum, tr.,** exhaust.

**ex-horrēscō, -ere, -horruī, —, tr. and intr. [horrēscō, begin to bristle],** tremble, shudder; shudder at.

**exigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, tr. [ex+agō],** drive out, expel; require, demand; question, consider; complete; spend, pass.

**exiguē, adv. [exiguus],** meagerly, scarcely.

**exiguitās, -ātis, f. [exiguus],** scantiness, smallness, shortness, want.

**exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [exigō],** weighed out; limited, small, slight, light; a little; as *subst., n.,*

a small amount, a little; *temporis exiguum*, a little while.

*eximiē*, *adv.* [*eximius*], particularly, remarkably.

*eximius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*eximō*], selected, eminent, remarkable.

*eximō*, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [*ex+emō*], take away, remove.

*existimātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*existimō*], opinion, judgment.

*existimō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*ex+aestimō*], estimate; consider; suppose, believe.

*exitus*, -ūs, *m.* [*exeō*], a going out, exit; result, end, outcome.

*exōrdium*, -i, *n.* [*ex+ōrdō*], a beginning.

*ex-pallēscō*, -ere, -pallui, —, *tr. and intr.*, turn or grow pale.

*ex-pavēscō*, -ere, -pāvi, —, *tr. and intr.* [*pavēscō*, begin to fear], fear greatly, dread.

*expeditiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*expediō*], a military expedition, campaign.

*expeditus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of expediō*], unimpeded, free, light-armed, unencumbered; easy.

*ex-pellō*, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive out or forth, expel; shoot.

*experiēns*, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of experior*], experienced, used to, inured to.

*experior*, -iri, -pertus, *tr.*, make trial of, try; experience; prove; contend with.

*expers*, -pertis, *adj.* [*pars*], having no part in or knowledge of.

*ex-pleō*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [*-pleō*, fill], fill up, finish, complete; fulfil, discharge, execute.

*ex-plicō*, -āre, -āvi (-ui), -ātum (-itum), *tr.* [*plīcō*, fold], unfold; set forth in writing.

*explōrātor*, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*], a scout, spy. *Explōrātōrēs* were not individual spies, but reconnoiters who were sent out in detachments.

*ex-plōrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, investigate, examine, find out, spy out, reconnoitre, try; *pf. part.*, assured, certain.

*ex-pōnō*, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, put forth, expose; set ashore, land; *ex nāvibus expōnere*, disembark; abandon; draw up, station; set forth, relate, explain.

*ex-portō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry out or away.

*ex-poscō*, -ere, -poposci, —, *tr.*, demand.

*exprimō*, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [*ex+premō*], press, force out; draw from.

*ex-pugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, take by storm, capture, conquer.

*exquirō*, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *tr.* [*ex+quaerō*], seek or search out, inquire, investigate.

*exsecror*, -āri, -ātus [*ex+sacrō*], curse, execrate; *part. exsecrandus*, as *adj.*, detestable, deplorable.

*ex-sequor*, -i, -secutus, *tr.*, follow out, enforce, assert.

*ex-sistō*, -ere, -titi, -titum, *intr.*, stand or come forth, project, appear; ensue.

*ex-spatior*, -āri, -ātus, *intr.*, wander from the way, spread, overflow.

*ex-spectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, wait for, await, wait to see; anticipate, hope for.

*ex-spoliō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, plunder completely, rob; utterly deprive of.

*ex-stinguō*, -ere, -tinxi, -tinctum, *tr.* [*stinguō*, quench], put out, quench; kill, slay; *pf. part.*, *extinctus*, quenched, slain, dead.

*ex-stō*, -āre, —, —, *intr.*, stand out, rise above; appear.

*ex-struō*, -ere, -struxi, -structum, *tr.* [*struō*, heap up], heap up, rear; erect, construct.

**exsul**, -ulis, *m.*, an exile.

**exsulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [exsul], be in exile.

**exterior**, *see* **exterus**.

**externus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [exterus], external, foreign.

**ex-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten outright, terrify, frighten, dismay.

**exterus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ex], on the outside; *comp.*, exterior, -ius, outward, outer, exterior; *sup.*, **extrēmus**, -a, -um, outermost, extreme, farthest; the end or last part of, extremity of; in **extrēmā spē**, in utter despair; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the rear, last; *ad* **extrēmum**, at last.

**ex-timēscō**, -ere, -timuī, —, *tr. and intr.* [timēscō, fear], be afraid or panic-stricken; fear greatly, dread.

**ex-torqueō**, -ēre, -sī, -tum, *tr.*, twist out; wrest away, extort, obtain by force.

**extrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [exterus], outside, beyond, outside of.

**ex-trahō**, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw, pull, or drag out; remove; of time, waste, lose, fritter away.

**extrēmō**, *adv.* [extrēmus], at last.

**extrēmus**, *see* **exterus**.

**ex-trūdō**, -ere, -trūsi, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, shove], thrust or push out, shut out, drive away.

**exuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out or off, strip, despoil; lay aside, put away.

**ex-ūrō**, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.*, burn up, consume, destroy.

## F

**faber**, -bri (*gen. pl.* **fabrum**), *m.*, workman, smith, carpenter, mechanic. In the Roman army the **fabri** or engineers usually constituted a separate corps, under the

*command of the praefectus fabrum. Caesar, however, seems to have drawn his fabri from the legions, and they returned to military duty when their engineering work was completed.*

**Fabius**, -i, *m.*, name of a Roman gens.

(1) Quintus Fabius Maximus Rullianus, *magister equitum* in 325 B.C., consul five times, dictator twice.

(2) Quintus Fabius Maximus Gurges, son of (1), consul three times.

(3) Quintus Fabius Maximus Verucosus, son of (2), surnamed *Cunctator* from his caution; dictator and five times consul.

(4) Quintus Fabius Maximus, conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni, 121 B.C.

(5) Gaius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Fābricius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Fabricius, famous for his part in the wars against the Samnites and against Pyrrhus.

**fabricō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [fabrica, workshop], make, construct; carve.

**faciēs**, -ēi, *f.* [faciō], form, figure, look; face, countenance, aspect.

**facile**, *adv.* [facilis], easily, without effort, readily; *nōn* . . . *facile*, hardly.

**facilis**, -e, *adj.*, easy, without difficulty; easily found or obtained.

**facinus**, -oris, *n.* [faciō], an act, deed; misdeed, outrage, crime.

**faciō**, -ere, **fēci**, **factum**, *tr.*, make, form, construct, do, perform; **verba facere**, speak; cause, render, bring to pass, effect, act; *w. nefās*, commit; *vim facere*, use violence; *w. vulnus*, inflict; choose, gain, acquire; give; *pass. impers. fit*, it results; *abs.*, act, conduct oneself.



**factiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō], a making, combination, party, faction.

**factiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [factiō], ambitious, intriguing.

**factum**, -ī, *n.* [faciō], deed, act; event.

**facultās**, -ātis, *f.* [facilis], opportunity, power; supply, provision; *pl.*, means, resources.

**faex**, **faecis**, *f.*, grounds, dregs; the brine of pickles.

**fāgus**, -ī, *f.*, a beech-tree, beech, beech-wood.

**Falernus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Falernian; **ager Falernus**, a district in northern Campania.

**fallāx**, -ācis, *adj.* [fallō], deceitful, deceptive, fallacious.

**fallō**, -ere, **fefelli**, —, *tr. and intr.*, deceive, disappoint; elude, escape; of time, beguile, while away.

**falsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of fallō], deceived, cheated; false, unfounded.

**falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, a sickle, pruning-hook, scythe; hook, wall-hook; **mūrālis falx**, a long hook used in demolishing walls.

---

**fāma**, -ae, *f.* [for, say], talk, common talk, report; reputation, fame.

**Famea**, -ae, *m.*, surname of Himilco, a Carthaginian general.

**famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation.

**familia**, -ae, *f.* [famulus], slaves, a household; family, race.

**familiāris**, -e, *adj.* [familia], belonging to the household, private; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate.

**familiāriter**, *adv.* [familiāris, intimately], kindly.

**famulus**, -ī, *m.*, a slave, minister, attendant.

**fānum**, -ī, *n.*, temple, shrine.

**fās**, *n.*, *indecl.* [for, speak], divine sanction or law, as opposed to iūs, human law or right; right in the sight of the gods.

**fastigātē**, *adv.* [fastigātus], sloping, in a sloping direction.

**fastigātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of fastigō, make pointed], inclined, sloping.

**fastigium**, -ī, *n.*, top of a gable, top of a building, roof, pinnacle; height, elevation; rank, dignity; slope.

**fateor**, -ērī, **fassus**, *tr.* [for, speak], confess, own, admit.

**fātidicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fātum + dicō], predicting fate, prophetic.

**fatigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, weary, fatigue; test.

**fātum**, -ī, *n.* [for, speak], that which is said, an utterance; what is ordained, fate; death; *pl.*, the Fates.

**fautrix**, -īcis, *f.* [faveō], a favorer, patron.

**faveō**, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**, *intr.*, be favorable or friendly to, favor.

**favilla**, -ae, *f.*, cinders, hot ashes, ashes.

**favor**, -ōris, *m.* [faveō], favor, goodwill.

**favus**, -ī, *m.*, honeycomb, honey.

**fax**, **facis**, *f.*, a torch, fire-brand.

**fēlicitās**, -ātis, *f.* [fēlix], good fortune.

**fēliciter**, *adv.* [fēlix], happily, successfully, auspiciously; *comp.*, **fēlicius**; *sup.*, **fēlicissimē**.

**fēlix**, -īcis, *adj.*, fruit-bearing; successful, fortunate, happy.

**fēmina**, -ae, *f.* [fēō, bear], a female, esp. a woman; the female sex, woman-kind.

**fēmineus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fēmina], of a woman, woman's.

**femur**, -oris or -inis, *n.*, the thigh.  
**fera**, -ae, *f.* [ferus], a wild beast, wild animal.

**ferāx, -ācis, adj.** [ferō], productive, fertile.

**ferē or fermē, adv.**, nearly, usually, generally; about, for the most part.

**fermē, see ferē.**

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, tr.**, bear, carry, bring; offer; move; **pedem ferre**, move, step; *pass. or reflex.*, hasten, rush, flee; render; *w. fors or cōsuetūdō*, impel, bring about; *of the wind*, drive, blow; lift; bear away, win, get, acquire, earn; bear, brook; **graviter ferre**, be annoyed or indignant at; endure, withstand; **ferendus**, bearable, tolerable; report, say, call; propose; **conditiōnem ferre**, propose conditions; enact; *abs., w. opiniō*, go, be current; **impūne ferre**, go unpunished.

**ferōcia, -ae, f.** [ferōx, *fierce*], fierceness, courage.

**ferōx, -ōcis, adj.** [ferus], fierce, savage, bold; headstrong, insolent.

**ferreus, -a, -um, adj.** [ferrum], of iron, iron.

**ferrum, -i, n.**, iron; a weapon of iron or steel, spear-head, spear, sword.

**fertilis, -e, adj.** [ferō], fruitful, fertile, productive.

**fertilitās, -ātis, f.** [fertilis], fertility.

**ferus, -a, -um, adj.**, wild, fierce, cruel; *as subst., m.*, a wild beast.

**fervēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of ferveō*, boil], boiling hot, glowing, burning; boiling; *fig.*, inflamed, violent.

**fervidus, -a, -um, adj.** [fervor, glowing heat], burning, hot; yeasty.

**fessus, -a, -um, adj.**, wearied, weak, exhausted.

**festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.**, hasten.

**festūca, -ae, f.**, pile-driver.

**fēstus, -a, -um, adj.**, of holidays, festive, festal.

**fētus, -ūs, m.**, bringing forth; produce, fruit.

**fibula, -ae, f.**, a fastening, clasp, brace; pin, brooch.

**ficilis, -e, adj.** [fingō], of clay.

**fidēlis, -e, adj.** [fidēs], trustworthy, faithful, reliable; safe.

**Fidēnātēs, -ium, m.**, the inhabitants of Fidenae, a town north of Rome. *Map I, B, 7.*

**fidēs, -entis, adj.** [fidō], confident.

**fidēs, -ei, f.** [fidō], faith, belief, confidence; good faith, truth, faithfulness; promise, word, assurance; **fidem facere or interpōnere**, give assurance; fulfillment; proof; protection; *in fidem recipere*, take under one's protection; dependence, alliance; **fidem sequi, w. dat.**, be loyal to; **fidem servāre**, keep one's word.

**fidō, -ere, fisis sum, intr.**, trust, put confidence in, rely upon.

**fidūcia, -ae, f.** [fidus], confidence, assurance, reliance.

**fidus, -a, -um, adj.** [fidō], faithful, loyal.

**figō, -ere, fixī, fixum, tr.**, fix, fasten, set firmly, plant; *w. ōscula*, imprint; thrust in; direct.

**figūra, -ae, f.** [fingō], form, shape, figure.

**filia, -ae, f.**, daughter.

**filius, -i, m.**, son.

**findō, -ere, fidī, fissum, tr.**, cleave, split, part, divide.

**fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum, tr.**, form, devise, invent, imagine; *pf. part. as adj.*, pretended, false.

**finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr.** [finis], bound, mark off, limit, define, measure; end, finish, decide.

**finis, -is, m. and f.**, a boundary, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory, land; end, close; death.

**finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis], bordering, adjacent, neighboring; *m. pl. as subst.*, neighbors.

**fiō**, fieri, factus, *used as pass. of faciō*, be made, be done, be occasioned; come to pass, take place, become, result, happen.

**firmiter**, *adv.* [firmus], strongly, steadily, firmly.

**firmitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [firmus], strength, firmness, solidity.

**firmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [firmus], strengthen; fortify; strengthen in resolution.

**firmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, vigorous, firm.

**fiscus**, -ī, *m.*, basket, purse; treasury.

**fistula**, -ae, *f.*, pipe, tube, water-pipe; reed-pipe, Pan's pipe.

**Flaccus**, *see* Valerius.

**flāgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, demand, dun.

**flāgitium**, -ī, *n.* [flāgitō], shame, disgrace.

**flagrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, flame, blaze, burn.

**flāmen**, -inis, *n.* [flō], a blowing, blast, wind.

**Flāminius**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**Flāminius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**flamma**, -ae, *f.*, blaze, fire, flame; *fig.*, flame of love, flame.

**flāvēō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [flāvus], be golden yellow, light yellow; *pres. part.*, yellow.

**flāvēscō**, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [flāvēō], become golden yellow.

**flectō**, -ere, flexi, flexum, *tr. and intr.*, bend, turn, turn around, incline, curve, guide; appease; *pf. part. as adj.*, bent, curving.

**fleō**, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, *tr. and intr.*, weep, lament.

**flētus**, -ūs, *m.* [fleō], a weeping, lamenting; tears.

**flō**, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *tr. and intr.*, blow.

**flōrēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of flōreō*], flowering, blooming, flourishing, prospering.

**flōs**, flōris, *m.*, flower.

**flūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [fluō], wave, billow.

**flūmen**, -inis, *n.* [fluō], flood, river.

**fluō**, -ere, flūxi, —, *intr.*, flow, stream, drip, pour.

**focus**, -ī, *m.*, hearth, fireplace.

**fodiō**, -ere, fōdi, fossum, *tr.*, dig.

**foederātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [foederō, establish by treaty], leagued together, allied.

**foedus**, -eris, *n.*, agreement, treaty, stipulation.

**folium**, -ī, *n.*, leaf.

**fōns**, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain, source; water.

**forāmen**, -inis, *n.* [forō, pierce], opening, orifice.

**fore**, forem, *forms used for futūrus esse and essem.*

**foris**, -is, *f.*, gate of a house, door of a house or room.

**foris**, *adv.*, out of doors, without, on the outside.

**fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, form, shape; appearance, beauty.

**fōrmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [fōrma], shape, fashion, mould.

**fors**, fortis, *f.*, chance; *abl.*, forte as *adv.*, by chance, perhaps, accidentally.

**forte**, *see* fors.

**fortis**, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, valiant.

**fortiter**, *adv.* [fortis], bravely, stoutly.

**fortitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [fortis], strength, courage.

**fortuitō**, *adv.* [fortuitus], by chance, accidentally.

**fortuitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fors], accidental.

**fortūna**, -ae, *f.* [fors], fortune, fate; good fortune; condition, position.

**fossa**, -ae, *f.* [fossus], a ditch, trench, an indispensable part of every Roman camp. Its size varied with the season of the year and the length of time the camp was to be occupied, the width ranging from 10 to 22 feet, and the normal depth being about 9. The earth from the fossa was thrown up to make the **vāllum**, and, if time permitted, the sides of the slope were covered with turf, stones, or wood to strengthen them. For *illus.* see **vāllum**.

**fovea**, -ae, *f.*, pitfall, snare.

**fragor**, -ōris, *m.* [frangō], a crashing, crash, thunder-peal.

**frangō**, -ere, *frēgī*, **frāctum**, *tr.*, break, wreck, shatter; break down, overcome; weaken, wear out.

**frāter**, -tris, *m.*, a brother.

**frāternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter], of a brother, brother's.

**fraudentus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fraus], deceitful, fraudulent.

**fraus**, **fraudis**, *f.*, deceit, trickery.

**Fregellae**, -ārum, *f.*, a town in Latium.

**fremitus**, -ūs, *m.* [fremō, roar], confused noise, uproar, din.

**frequēns**, -entis, *adj.*, repeated, frequent; in great numbers, crowded; full, filled.

**frequentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [frequēns], resort to, frequent, celebrate.

**frētus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, depending or relying upon, confiding in.

**frigidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frigus], cold.

**frigus**, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold, *pl.*, cold.

**frondeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [frōns], put forth leaves, be in leaf.

**frōns**, **frondis**, *f.*, leaf, foliage; leafy branch, green bough.

**frōns**, **frontis**, *f.*, brow, forehead; front.

**fructuōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūctus], abounding in fruit; productive.

**frūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [fruor], enjoyment; fruit, crop; profit, income; reward.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum], of or pertaining to grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply, provisions, the commissariat.

**frūmentor**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.* [frūmentum], fetch or get grain, forage.

**frūmentum**, -ī, *n.* [fruor], grain, corn.

**fruor**, -ī, **frūctus**, *intr.*, enjoy, delight in, have the benefit of.

**frūstrā**, *adv.*, vainly, in vain; without effect.

**frūstror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [frūstrā], deceive, disappoint.

**frutex**, -icis, *m.*, shrub, bush, shoot.

**frūx**, **frūgis**, *f.* (generally *pl.*), fruit, produce, fruits of the earth; grain.

**fuga**, -ae, *f.* [fugiō], flight.

**fugiō**, -ere, *fūgī*, **fugitūrus**, *tr.* and *intr.*, flee, vanish, pass away; run away from, avoid, escape.

**fugitivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō], fleeing, fugitive; as *subst.*, *m.*, runaway slave.

**fugō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [fuga], compel to flee, rout; discomfit.

**fulica**, -ae, *f.*, coot.

**fulmen**, -inis, *n.* [fulgeō], flash of lightning, thunderbolt; fire.

**Fulvius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**fulvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, yellow, tawny, gold-colored.

**fūmus**, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

**funda**, -ae, *f.*, sling; sling-stone.

**fundāmentum**, -ī, *n.* [fundō, found], foundation.

**funditor**, -ōris, *m.* [funda], slinger. *The funditōrēs were*



armed with slings of leather, which were used in hurling missiles of lead (*glandēs*) or stones. Caesar's slingers were mostly auxiliary troops from the Balearic Isles. *For illius. see p. 201.*

**fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, tr.,** pour forth, shed; scatter, rout, defeat.

**fūnebris, -e, adj.** [fūnus], of a funeral; *n. pl. as subst.*, funeral rites.

**fūnis, -is, m.,** cable, rope.

**fūnus, -eris, n.,** funeral rites, funeral; death, murder.

**furca, -ae, f.,** fork; fork-shaped prop, split stake.

**Furius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**furor, -ōris, m.** [furō], rage, frenzy, madness.

**fūrtum, -ī, n.** [fūr, thief], theft, robbery.

**futūrus, -a, -um, adj.** [fut. part. of sum], future, destined, coming.

## G

**Gabalī, -ōrum, m.,** clients of the *Arvernī*. Map IV, E, 4.

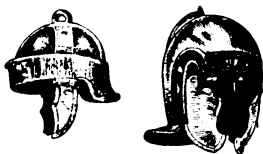
**Gabiī, -ōrum, m.,** an ancient town of *Latium*. Map I, B, 8.

**Gabinus, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; esp. Aulus Gabinus, consul 58 B. C.

**gaesum, -ī, n.,** a heavy Gallic javelin.

**Gāius, -ī, m.,** a Roman praenomen.

**Galba, -ae, m.,** (1) a king of the *Suessiones*; (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a lieutenant of Caesar.



GALEAE

**galea, -ae, f.,** helmet, usually of leather strengthened with brass, and

provided with a crest. On the march, the soldier carried it hanging from his shoulder, but, at the beginning of a battle, he set the crest in its place and put the helmet on at once.

**Gallia, -ae, f.,** the country Gaul; Caesar uses the name **Gallia** in different senses. In its broadest use it includes that part of Italy north of the Rubicon, and all the land between the Alps and the Atlantic, and the Rhine and the Pyrenees, comprising modern France, most of the Netherlands and part of Switzerland, and that part of Germany west of the Rhine. This was divided into: (1) **Gallia Citerior** or **Cisalpina**, "Gaul this side of the Alps," from the standpoint of Rome, its southern boundary being the river Rubicon. It had been a Roman province since 191 B.C. (2) **Gallia Prōvincia** (Map IV, D-G, 4-5), called also **Prōvincia** and **Gallia Nostra**, a Roman province about 118 B.C. (3) **Gallia Ulterior** or **Trānsalpina**, comprising all of Gaul not included in (1) and (2). **Gallia Trānsalpina** is further divided into three parts: (a) the country of the **Belgae** (Map IV, D-G, 1-2), of which the *Matrona* and the *Sequana* form the southern boundary, (b) **Gallia Celtica** (Map IV, B-H, 1-4), often called simply **Gallia**, extending from the *Matrona* and the *Sequana* to the *Garunna*, and (c) **Aquitānia** (Map IV, C-D, 4-5), between the *Garunna* and the *Pyrenees*.

**Gallicus, -a, -um, adj.** [**Gallia**], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic.

**gallina, -ae, f.** [gallus, cock], hen.

**Gallus, -a, -um, adj.,** pertaining to Gaul, Gallic; as *subst. m.*, a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls. Map I, C-D, 2-4.

**Gallus, -i, m.,** a cognomen. (1) Gaius Cornelius Gallus, governor of Egypt under Augustus. (2) Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune under Caesar.

**Garunna** (less correctly, **Garumna**), -ae, m., the Garonne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

**Garunni, -orum, m.,** a tribe living about the sources of the Garonne. Map IV, D, 5.

**Gatēs, -um, m.,** a tribe south of the Garonne. Map IV, D, 4-5.

**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, intr.,** rejoice, be glad, take pleasure.

**gelidus, -a, -um, adj. [gelū, cold],** icy cold, cold.

**geminus, -a, -um, adj. [gignō],** twin-born, twin; as *subst.*, m. pl., twins; double, twofold; both, two.

**Geminus, -i, m.,** a Roman cognomen.

**Genava, -ae, f.,** a town of the Allobroges, modern Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

**genēr, generī, m.,** son-in-law.

**generātim, adv. [genus],** by tribes.

**gēns, gentis, f.,** tribe, people, nation; clan, house.

**genus, -eris, n. [cf. gēns],** birth, descent, race, family; sort, class.

**Germānia, -ae, f.,** Germany. Map I, E-G, 1-3.

**Germānicus, -a, -um, adj.,** of or pertaining to the Germans, German.

**Germānus, -a, -um, adj.,** German; as *subst.*, m., a German; pl., the Germans.

**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, tr.,** bear, wear, have; conduct, wage, carry on; bellum gerere, wage war; rem gerere, fight; hold, manage, do, govern; pass., be done, go on; sē gerere, conduct oneself, behave.

**gestiō, -īre, -īvi, —, intr. [gerō],** desire eagerly, be eager, long.

**gignō, -ere, genui, genitum, tr.,** beget, bear, produce; *pf. part.* **genitus, descend-**ed, born.

**gladius, -i, m.,** sword. The gladius was a straight, two-edged weapon, with a wooden hilt. It was about two feet in length and was adapted for thrusting rather than for cutting. It was worn in a sheath attached to a shoulder belt on the right side.

**glāns, glandis, f.,** acorn; ball of lead or clay for shooting; bullet, slug. The glāns often bore an inscription, as in the illustration: "**Ferī Pompeium**" ("strike Pompey").

**glōria, -ae, f.,** glory, praise, renown.

**glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [glōria],** glory in, boast of.

**glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj. [glōria],** glorious.

**Gnaeus, -i, m.,** a Roman praenomen.

**Gortynii, -orum, m.,** a people on the southern coast of Crete. Map I, H-I, 6.

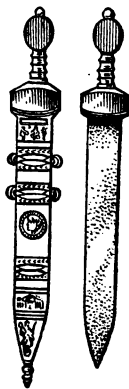
**Gracchus, -i, m.,** a Roman cognomen; esp. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 B.C.

**gracilis, -e, adj.,** slight, slender, small.

**gradior, -i, gressus, intr.,** go, walk.

**gradus, -ūs, m.,** step, footstep, pace, walk; stage, degree; pl., steps, stairs.

**Graecia, -ae, f.,** Greece. Map I, G-H, 5-6.



**Graecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Greek.

**Graioceli**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie* tribe in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 4.*

**Graius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

**grāmen**, -inis, *n.*, grass, herbage, pasture.

**grandis**, -e, *adj.*, great, large, abundant.

**grātia**, -ae, *f.* [grātus], favor, gratitude; friendship; influence; grātiā, for the sake of; *pl.*, thanks.

**grātulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing.

**grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [grātus], exult, rejoice; congratulate.

**grātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, agreeable, pleasant; pleased, grateful, thankful.

**gravis**, -e, *adj.*, heavy; heavily laden, loaded down; of *physical condition*, languid; troublesome; severe; of *age*, advanced; serious, important.

**gravitās**, -ātis, *f.* [gravis], heaviness, weight; power, dignity, importance.

**graviter**, *adv.* [gravis], heavily, severely, seriously, with great force; **graviter ferre**, be annoyed or indignant at; *comp.*, **gravius**, *sup.*, **gravissimē**.

**gravō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [gravis], weigh down, make heavy.

**gravor**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [gravis], be unwilling, hesitate.

**gubernātor**, -ōris, *m.* [gubernō, steer], a helmsman, pilot.

**gurgēs**, -itis, *m.*, raging abyss, whirlpool, gulf, waters.

**gustō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, taste, eat.

# H

**habēna**, -ae, *f.* [habēō], generally *pl.*, reins.

**habēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, have,

hold, possess, contain; consider, regard, think, know; treat, use; utter, make; of *an account*, take; **sē habēre**, be.

**habitābilis**, -e, *adj.* [habitō], fit for an abode, habitable.

**habitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of habēō], live or dwell in, inhabit.

**hāc**, *adv.* [hic], here, by this way.

**Hadrūmētum**, -ī, *n.*, a town on the coast of Africa, west of Zama.

**Haeduius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, a powerful *Gallie* tribe between the upper waters of the Saône and Loire. *Map IV, E-F, 3.*

**haereō**, -ēre, **haesi**, **haesūrus**, *intr.*, hold fast, be fixed; be perplexed.

**Hamilcar**, -aris, *m.*, a Carthaginian general.

**hāmus**, -ī, *m.*, hook.

**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, a great Carthaginian general.

**Hannō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a Carthaginian leader.

**harpagō**, -ōnis, *m.*, hook, grappling-hook.

**Harūdēs**, -um, *m.*, a German tribe.

**Hasdrubal**, -alis, *m.*, a Carthaginian name.

(1) Hannibal's brother, who was slain at the battle of the Metaurus.

(2) The son of Gisco, defeated by Scipio Africanus in the Second Punic war.

(3) A Carthaginian general in the Third Punic war.

**haud** or **haut**, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not.

**hauriō**, -īre, **hausi**, **haustum**, *tr.*, drink, drink in, take in; drain; pierce, tear open.

**haut**, see **haud**.

**Hellēspontus**, -ī, *m.*, the Hellespont, modern Dardanelles, the strait separating Europe and Asia. *Map I, H, 5.*

**Helvētius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; *as subst., m.*, the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe occupying the country between Mt. Jura, Lake Geneva, the Rhine, and the Rhone. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*

**Helvius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

**herba**, -ae, *f.*, herbage, grass; herb, plant.

**Herculēs**, -is, *m.*, a demigod, the national hero of Greece, famous for his wanderings.

**Hercynius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Hercynian; **Hercynia silva**, the mountain country stretching from the sources of the Danube to the Carpathian mountains. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*

**hērēditās**, -ātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], heirship, inheritance; an inheritance.

**hērēdium**, -i, *n.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

**hesternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of yesterday, yesterday's.

**heu!** *interj.*, oh! alas! ah!

**hiberna**, *see* **hibernus**.

**hibernācula**, -ōrum, *n.* [hiberna], winter-quarters.

**Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland. *Map I, B, 1.*

**hibernus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [hiems], of winter, winter-; **hiberna**, -ōrum (*sc. castra*), winter-quarters.

**hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *dem. pron. of 1st pers.*, referring to an object comparatively near in space, time, order of words or of thought, this, this one; he, she, it; the following, as follows; the present; this . . . here; *in contrast with another pronoun*, this, the last named, the latter, the first named, the former; **hic** . . . **ut**, such . . . that.

**hīc**, *adv.*, here, in this place, on this occasion; *of a place just mentioned*, there, in that place.

**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [hiems], winter, pass the winter.

**hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter; storm.

**Hierō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Syracuse.

**hinc**, *adv.*, from this place, hence, on this side; from this time, henceforth.

**Hippō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a town on the coast of Africa west of Utica.

**Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain (*often pl. because it was divided into two provinces*). *Map I, A-C, 4-5.*

**historia**, -ae, *f.*, history.

**hodiē**, *adv.* [hic+diēs], to-day, now.

**holus**, -eris, *n.*, kitchen vegetables, as cabbage, turnips, etc.

**homō**, -inis, *m. and f.*, human being, man.

**honestās**, -ātis, *f.* [honōs], honor, reputation, honesty.

**honestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs], honorable, illustrious.

**honor** or **honōs**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, esteem, value; official honor, office; mark of honor, reward, prize, gift; religious honor, sacrifice.

**honōrificē**, *adv.* [honōrificus], with honor, honorably.

**honōrificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, cf. faciō], honorable, complimentary.

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour, time.

**Horātius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

**horreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, bristle, shudder at, dread.

**horribilis**, -e, *adj.* [horreō], dreadful, fearful.

**hortāmen**, -inis, *n.* [hortor], encouragement, exhortation.

**hortātus**, -ūs, *m.* [hortor], encouragement, exhortation.

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, encourage, urge, urge on, prompt.

**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden.

**hospes**, -itis, *m. and f.*, host; guest, hereditary or family friend.

**hospitium**, -i, *n.* [hospes], the rela-



tion of host and guest, guest-friendship, hospitality.

**hostia**, -ae, *f.*, an animal sacrificed, victim.

**hostilis**, -e, *adj.* [hostis], of an enemy, hostile; usual with an enemy.

**Hostilius**, -ī, *m.*, Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

**hostis**, -is, *m. and f.*, an enemy, public enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy.

**hūc**, *adv.*, to this place, hither; to this or these, besides.

**hūmānitās**, -ātis, *f.* [hūmānus], civilization, refinement.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō], natural to man, human; civilized, refined.

**humilis**, -e, *adj.* [humus], on the ground, low, humble; *m. pl. as subst.*, the more lowly, more humble class.

**humilitās**, -ātis, *f.* [humilis], lowness, shallowness.

**humus**, -ī, *f.*, the earth, ground, soil; *loc. humi*, on the ground.

## I

**I**, for ūnus, etc.

**iaceō**, -ēre, -cuī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate, lie fallen, lie low, lie dead.

**iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct.

**iactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō], throw about, cast; discuss, consider; shake, sway.

**iactūra**, -ae, *f.* [iaciō], a throwing away, loss, expense, sacrifice.

**iactus**, -ūs, *m.* [iaciō], a throwing, throw, cast.

**iam**, *adv.*, presently, at once, straightway, now; nōn iam, no longer; by this time, already, finally; even; then, so then.

**Iāniculum**, -ī, *n.* [Iānus, an old Italian deity], the Janiculum.  
**iānua**, -ae, *f.*, door.

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place, on that side; then.

**ibidem**, *adv.*, in the same place.

**İccius**, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Remi.

**icō**, -ere, icī, ictum, *tr.* (only the *pf.* tenses in classical prose), strike, smite; *w.* foedus, make, conclude.

**ictus**, -ūs, *m.* [icō], stroke, beat, blow; a wound; of water, jet.

**idcirco**, *adv.*, on that or this account, therefore.

**idem**, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same, same one; also, too, besides.

**identidem**, *adv.*, again and again.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, adapted, fit.

**İdūs**, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of the remaining months.

**iēiūnium**, -ī, *n.* [iēiūnus, fasting], a fast, hunger.

**igitur**, *conj.*, usually postpositive, then, therefore, consequently, accordingly.

**ignis**, -is, *m.*, fire; signal-fire; constellation, star; lightning; the flame of love, burning love.

**ignōminia**, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

**ignōrantia**, -ae, *f.* [ignōrō], ignorance.

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant of or unacquainted with; *pres. part. as adj.*, unaware, ignorant.

**ignōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *tr. and intr.* [in-+(g)nōscō], overlook; grant pardon, forgive.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus], unknown, unfamiliar, strange; unacquainted with, ignorant.

**İlia**, -ōrum, *n.*, the abdomen below the ribs, groin, flanks.

**ille**, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, referring to an object comparatively remote in

*space, time, order of words, or order of thought, that, that one; he, she, it; in contrast with another pron., the other, the former; more rarely, the latter; the well-known, the famous.*

**illic**, *adv.* [ille], in that place, there.

**illinc**, *adv.*, from that place, thence, on that side.

**illō**, *adv.* [ille], thither, there.

**illūc**, *adv.* [ille], to that place or subject.

**Illyricum**, -i, *n.*, the country of Illyria. *Map II, E-F, 2-3.*

**imbēcillitās**, -ātis, *f.* [imbēcillus, weak], weakness, feebleness.

**imber**, -bris, *m.*, a rain, storm.

**immānis**, -e, *adj.*, vast, huge, immense; fierce, savage.

**immēsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+mēsus], without measure, vast, immense, excessive, boundless.

**immeritō**, *adv.* [immeritus, undeserving], undeservedly, unjustly.

**imittō**, -ere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [in-+mittō], send or let into, send in; let down, slacken; *pass. or reflex.*, throw oneself, leap, rush.

**immolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [in-+mola, meal], sprinkle sacrificial meal upon; sacrifice, immolate.

**immortālis**, -e, *adj.* [in-+mortālis], immortal, eternal.

**immūnis**, -e, *adj.* [in-+mūnus], free from duty or tribute, untaxed; exempt, not sharing.

**immunitās**, -ātis, *f.* [immūnis], freedom from public services or charges, immunity.

**impār**, -aris, *adj.* [in-+pār], unequal, uneven, not a match for, unable to cope with.

**imparātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+parātus], unprepared.

**impatiēns**, -entis, *adj.* [in-+patiēns], impatient, impetuous.

**impatientia**, -ae, *f.* [impatiēns], impatience, impetuosity.

**impedimentum**, -i, *n.* [impediō], hindrance; *pl.*, baggage, luggage of an army. *This was the heavy baggage of the army, consisting of the engines of war, provisions in bulk, mills for grinding the soldier's grain, etc. It was conveyed in wagons or by beasts of burden, in contrast to the sarcina, or individual baggage, which was carried by the soldier himself.*

**impediō**, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, *tr.* [in-+pēs], entangle, hinder, interfere with; prevent; delay, detain.

**impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of impediō], hindered, occupied, encumbered, entangled; difficult, difficult to pass, impassable.

**impellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [in-+pellō], drive or urge on, incite, impel; push or strike against, strike.

**impendeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [in-+pendeō], overhang.

**impēnsa**, -ae, *f.* [impēnsus], cost, expenditure.

**impēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of impendeō, weigh out], expensive, high, great.

**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* [imperō], general, commander-in-chief. *For illus. see p. 135.*

**imperātum**, -i, *n.* [*pf. part.* of imperō], order, command; **imperāta facere**, carry out orders.

**imperitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+peritus], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant.

**imperium**, -i, *n.* [imperō], command, power, control, authority, leadership, reign, empire; government, form of government; military command.

**imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [in-+parō], command, bid;

- demand; impose, levy; control, rule, govern.
- impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [*in+patrō*, effect], obtain (by request), accomplish; gain one's request.
- impetus, -ūs, m.,** an attack, onset, charge; force, impetuosity, fury.
- impius, -a, -um, adj.** [*in+pius*], undutiful, impious, wicked.
- implicō, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātum (-itum), tr.** [*in+plicō*, fold], enfold, involve, overlap; unite closely.
- implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [*in+plorō*, cry out], beseech, entreat, implore.
- impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr.** [*in+pōnō*], place in, set in, place or lay upon; put, set.
- importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [*in+portō*], carry or bring in, import.
- impraesentiārum, adv.** [= *in praesentiā hārum*], for the present, now.
- improbus, -a, -um, adj.** [*in+probus*, good], bad, wicked, disloyal.
- imprōvisō, adv.** [*imprōvisus*], suddenly, without warning.
- imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj.** [*in+prōvisus*, foreseen], unforeseen, unexpected; *dē imprōvisō*, on a sudden, unexpectedly, without warning.
- imprūdēns, -entis, adj.** [*in+prūdēns*], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, inadvertent.
- imprūdentē, adv.** [*imprūdēns*], imprudently.
- imprudentia, -ae, f.** [*imprūdēns*], want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion.
- impūbēs, -eris (-is), adj.** [*in+pūbēs*, adult], immature, young; unmarried, chaste.
- impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [*in+pugnō*], fight against, attack, charge, fight.
- impūne, adv.** [*impūnis*, unpunished], without retaliation, unpunished, with impunity; **impūne ferre**, go unpunished; without danger, securely, freely.
- impūnitās, -ātis, f.** [*impūnis*, unpunished], freedom from punishment, impunity.
- imūm, imus, see inferus.**
- in, prep.** with acc. or abl.; with acc., into, to, toward, against, upon; for, till; upon, over; with abl., in, in the midst of, on, upon, among, at, over; in the case of.
- in-, inseparable particle used in composition,** in-, un-, not.
- inānis, -e, adj.,** empty; abandoned, desolate; useless; bodiless, unreal.
- incendium, -i, n.** [*incendō*], a burning, conflagration, fire.
- incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēns, tr.,** set fire to, burn.
- in-certus, -a, -um, adj.,** uncertain, indefinite; doubtful; untrustworthy; disturbed, in disorder.
- incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, intr.** [*in+cadō*], fall into, fall upon, fall; happen, occur; *of war*, break out.
- incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr.** [*in+caedō*], cut into, notch.
- incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr.** [*in+capiō*], begin, commence; begin to speak.
- in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** set in rapid motion, urge on, impel, arouse; quicken, hurry.
- inclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr.** [*in+claudō*], shut in, inclose, imprison.
- in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj.,** unknown.
- incohō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** begin, undertake.
- incola, -ae, m.** [*incolō*], inhabitant, dweller.
- in-colō, -ere, -colui, —, tr. and intr.,** dwell in, inhabit; dwell, live.
- incolumis, -e, adj.,** unharmed, safe.

**incommodum**, -i, *n.* [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, loss, harm, disaster.

**in-crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [crēdibilis, believable], not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.

**increpitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of increpō, rattle], call or cry out to; chide, taunt, blame.

**in-cumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cumbō, recline], recline upon, bend to; apply or devote oneself to, exert oneself, strive.

**incursiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [incurrō, run into], an onset, incursion, invasion, attack.

**in-cursō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, run into, run against, strike against.

**incursus**, -ūs, *m.* [incurrō, run into], a running to, rush, dash, onset.

**incūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [in+causa], bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid.

**inde**, *adv.*, of place, from that place, thence; of time, after that, next, then; of cause, thence, therefore; of source, from it, of it.

**in-dēiectus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, not thrown down, not overwhelmed.

**indicium**, -i, *n.* [cf. indicō, reveal], information, disclosure, proof.

**in-dicō**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, say publicly, proclaim, appoint; *w.* bellum, declare.

**indegō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.* [egeō], be in need of, want.

**indignitās**, -ātis, *f.* [indignus], unworthiness, outrage, disgrace.

**indignor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [indignus], deem unworthy, resent, disdain.

**in-diligēns**, -entis, *adj.* [diligēns, careful], heedless, careless, negligent.

**in-diligenter**, *adv.*, carelessly, heedlessly.

**in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*,

bring in, introduce; draw on, cover; gather, overspread.

**indulgeō**, -ēre, -dulsei, -dultum, *intr.*, be kind to, favor.

**in-duō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *tr.*, put on, dress in, clothe, cover; **indūtus**, clad; entangle, impale, pierce.

**indūtia**, -ārum, *f.*, truce, armistice.

**Indūtiomārus**, -i, *m.*, a chief of the Treveri.

**in-eō**, -ire, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *tr.*, go into, enter upon; engage in, begin; *w.* cōsiliū, form; *w.* ratiōnem, make; *numerum* inire, enumerate.

**inermis**, -e, *adj.* [in+arma], without weapons, unarmed.

**iners**, -ertis, *adj.* [in+ars], unskilled; shiftless, inactive, unmanly.

**infāmia**, -ae, *f.* [infāmis], disgrace, degradation; **infāmiam habēre**, be considered disgraceful.

**infāmis**, -e, *adj.* [in+fāma], infamous.

**infectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+factus], not done, unaccomplished.

**in-fēlix**, -icis, *adj.*, unhappy, hapless.

**inferior**, *see* inferus.

**in-ferō**, -ferre, -intuli, -inlātum, *tr.*, bring in, throw into; bear, bring; carry forward, advance; **signa inferre**, charge; inflict, inspire; *w.* bellum, wage; *w.* causam, allege.

**inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, down, low; *comp.*, inferior, -ius, lower, lower down, inferior; *sup.*, **infimus** or **imus**, -a, -um, lowest, at the foot or bottom of; inmost, the depths of; *as subst.*, *n.*, **imūm**, the bottom, depth.

**infestō**, -āre, —, —, *tr.* [infestus], disturb, infest, ravage, trespass on.

**infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe; hostile.

**inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [*in+faciō*], put on; color, stain.

**in-fixō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.,** fix or fasten in or on.

**infirmus, see inferus.**

**in-finitus, -a, -um, adj.,** unlimited, boundless, countless; enormous; *as subst., n.,* a great amount.

**infirmitās, -ātis, f.** [*infirmus*], weakness, inconstancy.

**in-firmus, -a, -um, adj.,** not strong, weak, feeble.

**infītia, -ārī, -ātus, tr.** [*infītia*, denial], deny.

**in-flectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, tr.,** bend down, bend.

**in-flō, -flāre, -flāvī, -flātum, tr.,** blow into, blow.

**in-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr.,** flow into, flow, empty.

**in-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr.,** dig in, drive in deep, plant, bury.

**infrā, adv. and prep.** [= *inferā, sc. parte*], below, underneath; smaller than.

**in-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.,** pour into, communicate, infuse.

**ingenium, -ī, n.,** disposition, nature.

**ingēns, -entis, adj.** [*in+gēns*], out of its kind, enormous, huge; great, very large; *of sound*, loud.

**in-grātus, -a, -um, adj.,** unpleasant, unacceptable; ungrateful, thankless.

**ingredior, -ī, -gressus, tr. and intr.** [*in+gradior*], go into, enter, march upon; advance.

**iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [*in+iaciō*], throw in or upon, put upon, apply; inspire.

**inimicitia, -ae, f.** [*inimicus*], hostility, enmity.

**inimicus, -a, -um, adj.** [*in+amicus*], unfriendly, hostile; *as subst., m.,* an enemy (*personal, or not in war*), an opponent, rival.

**iniquitās, -ātis, f.** [*iniquus*], unevenness, unfairness; unfavorableness.

**iniquus, -a, -um, adj.** [*in+aequus*], uneven, steep; unequal, unfair, unjust; adverse, unfavorable; unkind; impatient, discontented.

**initium, -ī, n.** [*in+eō*], a going in, beginning, commencement; edge, boundary; **initium facere**, begin.

**in-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.,** join or fasten upon; impose.

**in-iūrātus, -a, -um, adv.,** unsworn, not bound by oath.

**iniūria, -ae, f.** [*in+iūs*], injustice, wrong, injury.

**iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m.** [*in+iussus, order*], without command or order.

**in-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [*ligō*, bind], tie or bind on, attach, fasten.

**in-linō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, tr. and intr.** [*linō*, smear], smear or spread over, anoint.

**in-lūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, tr. and intr.,** play, divert oneself with a thing; mock.

**inlūstris, -e, adj.,** bright, light; distinguished; famous, memorable.

**in-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, intr.,** be born, be raised; rise.

**in-nātus, -a, -um, adj.,** native; in-born; adhering.

**in-nītor, -ī, -nīxus, intr.,** lean upon, support oneself upon.

**in-nocēns, -entis, adj.,** harmless, in-offensive, guiltless, innocent.

**innocentia, -ae, f.** [*innocēns*], uprightness, integrity.

**in-nocuus, -a, -um, adj.** [*nocuus*, harmful], harmless, unoffending, innocent.

**in-numerus, -a, -um, adj.,** countless, innumerable.

**inopia, -ae, f.** [*inops*], want, lack, scarcity, *esp. of food*, famine; poverty.

**in-opināns**, -antis, *adj.* [opīnor, think], not supposing, unawares.

**in-ops**, -opis, *adj.*, helpless, destitute; wretched, pitiful.

**inquam**, *intr.*, defect., always placed after one or more words of a quotation, say.

**in-rideō**, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *tr.* and *intr.*, laugh at, ridicule; mock.

**in-ridiculē**, *adv.* [ridiculē, laughably], unwittily.

**inritus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+ratus], invalid, useless, unavailing.

**in-rōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.*, bedew, sprinkle upon.

**in-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* and *intr.*, break in or into, storm.

**inruptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [inrumpō], a breaking in, incursion, attack, onslaught.

**in-sciēns**, -entis, *adj.*, unknowing, unaware, ignorant.

**in-scientia**, -ae, *f.*, lack of knowledge, ignorance.

**in-scius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [scius, knowing], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unaware.

**in-sequor**; -ī, -secūtus, *tr.* and *intr.*, follow up, pursue.

**in-serō**, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine], fix into, insert.

**insidiae**, -arum, *f.*, ambush, stratagem, crafty device; *per insidiās*, by artifice or stratagem.

**insidior**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, lie in ambush; plot against.

**insigne**, -is, *n.* [insignis], a mark, distinguishing mark; signal; decoration, honor.

**insignis**, -e, *adj.* [in+signum], marked, extraordinary, conspicuous; memorable.

**insigniter**, *adv.* [insignis], remarkably.

**insiliō**, -īre, -uī, —, *tr.* and *intr.* [in

+saliō], leap upon, mount; leap in, spring up, bound.

**in-sinuō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.*, wind or work into, introduce.

**in-sistō**, -ere, -stiti, —, *tr.* and *intr.*, stand upon, keep one's footing; enter upon, adopt; *digitis insistere*, stand or rise on tiptoe.

**in-solēns**, -entis, *adj.*, unaccustomed; haughty, insolent.

**insolenter**, *adv.* [insolēns], in an unusual way; haughtily, insolently; *comp.*, insolentius.

**insolentia**, -ae, *f.* [insolēns], insolence, pride.

**in-spirō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, breathe into, blow into or upon.

**in-stabilis**, -e, *adj.* [stabilis, steady], unsteady.

**instar**, *n.*, indecl., likeness; *with gen.*, like, in the manner of.

**instituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* and *intr.* [in+statuō], place; build, found, establish; begin, institute; make preparations; determine upon, adopt, appoint; *of troops*, draw up.

**institutum**, -ī, *n.* [pf. part. of instituō], custom, usage.

**in-stō**, -āre, -stiti, -stātūrus, *intr.*, stand upon; press on; approach, be at hand.

**in-struō**, -ere, -struī, -strūctum, *tr.*, build in, build up, construct; draw up, array; provide, equip, prepare.

**insuēfactus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [insuēscō, grow accustomed+faciō], accustomed, well-trained.

**in-suētus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, unused, unfamiliar.

**insula**, -ae, *f.*, island.

**in-sum**, *in*, *esse*, *infui*, —, *intr.*, be in; belong to.

**in-super**, *adv.*, above, on the top, from above.

**integer**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched; whole, unwounded, unimpaired; uninjured; fresh; full.

**in-tegō**, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *tr.*, cover over, protect.

**intelligō**, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr. and intr.* [inter+legō], distinguish, perceive, discern; understand, comprehend.

**intemperantia**, -ae, *f.* [intemperāns, immoderate], arrogance.

**in-tendō**, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.*, stretch to, extend, direct the eyes, ears, or mind; *pf. part. as adj.*, intent, absorbed.

**inter**, *prep. with acc.*; of space, between, among, in the midst of; of time, during, in the course of; *in recipr. relations*, with, from, by, to; *inter sē*, with or to each other; *in other relations*, between, among, into the midst of, through.

**inter-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, go between, be between; be; pass; occur.

**intercipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], take between, interrupt, intercept, cut off; take away beforehand, take away, rob.

**interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [inter+claudō], cut off, shut off, block.

**inter-dicō**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, intervene by an order, prohibit, interdict.

**interdiū**, *adv.* [inter+diēs], in the daytime, by day.

**inter-dum**, *adv.*, meanwhile, sometimes.

**inter-eā**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

**inter-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go among, be lost; perish, be killed.

**interfector**, -ōris, *m.* [interficiō], slayer, murderer.

**interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [inter+faciō], kill, slay, destroy, murder.

**intericiō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [inter+iaciō], throw between, interpose, put or set between; *pass.*, of time or place, intervene.

**interim**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.

**interimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [inter+emō], kill, slay.

**interior**, -ius, *comp. adj.* [inter], inner, interior; *m. pl. as subst.*, those within, those further inland, inhabitants of the interior.

**interitus**, -ūs, *m.* [intereō], death.

**inter-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr. and intr.*, send between; leave off, cease, interrupt; let pass, allow to elapse; *brevi tempore intermissō*, after waiting a short time.

**interneciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [inter+necō], extermination, annihilation.

**inter-pellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, interrupt, interfere with.

**inter-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place or put between, insert, interpose; cause, occasion; *fidem interpōnere*, give a pledge.

**interpre**, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter.

**intrepretor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [interpres], explain, expound.

**inter-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.*, break through, break down.

**inter-scindō**, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.*, cut through, tear or break down, cut off.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be between, intervene, be present, take part in; have charge of; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; *magmī interesse*, be of great importance.

**inter-vāllum**, -ī, *n.*, space between; interval, distance.

**inter-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come between, intervene, interpose.

**interventus**, -ūs, *m.* [interveniō], a coming between, intervention, in-

terposition; a coming up to *interrupt* or *prevent* something.  
**intestīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [intus, within], internal.  
**in-texō**, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave in or together.  
**intūbum**, -ī, *n.*, endive, succory.  
**intrā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, within, inside of; into, inside; before the completion of.  
**in-tremō**, -ere, -uī, —, *intr.*, shake within, tremble, quake.  
**in-trītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, not worn or exhausted, unwearied.  
**intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, go into, enter, come in; penetrate.  
**intrō-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [intrō, within], lead into, introduce.  
**introitus**, -ūs, *m.* [introeō, go in], a going within, entrance, access.  
**intrō-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, let go in, send into, admit.  
**intrōrsus**, *adv.* [intrō, within+versus], into the interior, inside, within.  
**in-tueor**, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, look upon, gaze at.  
**in-ūsītātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūsītātus, wonted], unusual, strange, startling.  
**in-ūtilis**, -e, *adj.*, useless, worthless, unserviceable.  
**in-vādō**, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *tr.*, invade, seize.  
**in-veniō**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, come upon, find, discover.  
**inventor**, -ōris, *m.* [inveniō], discoverer, inventor, author.  
**in-veterāscō**, -ere, -erāvī, —, *intr.* [veterāscō, grow old], grow old, become established, gain a foothold.  
**in-victus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, invincible.

**in-videō**, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, *tr.* and *intr.*, look askance at, be envious of, grudge.  
**invidia**, -ae, *f.* [invidus], envy, hatred; jealousy; unpopularity.  
**invidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, envious, jealous.  
**in-violātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unharmed, inviolate.  
**invisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [invidēō], hated, hateful.  
**invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, invite, request, urge.  
**invītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's will, unwilling, reluctant.  
**invius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+via], impassable.  
**ipse**, -a, -um, *intens. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; *emphatic*, very, the very.  
**ira**, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.  
**irācundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [īra], passionate.  
**irātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of irāscor, be angry], angry, enraged.  
**Iris**, -idis, *f.*, the goddess of the rainbow, Juno's messenger.  
**is**, *ea*, *id*, *dem. pron.*, that, that one, this; he, she, it; such, of such a sort.  
**iste**, *ista*, *istud*, *dem. pron.*, of 2d pers., referring to that which is close to or belonging to the person addressed, that of yours, that.  
**ita**, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way, to such a degree; on this condition; *ita* . . . ut, just as, so . . . that; *ut* . . . *ita*, as . . . so, while . . . yet.  
**Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy. *Map I, E-F, 4-5.*  
**Italicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Italia], Italian.  
**ita-que**, *conj.*, and so, and thus; accordingly, therefore.  
**item**, *adv.*, also, likewise.



**iter, itineris, n.,** a way, road, passage, journey; march, line of march; **ex itinere,** immediately after the march, on the march; **magnum iter,** forced march; **iter facere,** to march.

**iterum, adv.,** again, for the second time; twice; in turn.

**Itius, -a, -um, adj. (sc. portus),** a port of the Morini, probably Boulogne. *Map IV, D, 1.*

**Iuba, -ae, m.,** a king of Numidia.

**iuba, -ae, f.,** mane.

**iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, tr.,** order, bid, command; enjoin.

**iūdex, -icis, m. and f. [iūs+dicō],** judge; **mē iūdice,** in my judgment.

**iūdicium, -ī, n. [iūdicō],** trial, judgment, decision; the power of judging, discernment, discretion.

**iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [iūdex],** judge, think, consider.

**iūgerum, -ī, n. (gen. pl. iūgerum),** a Roman acre, a little more than half an acre of our land measure.

**iugum, -ī, n.,** a yoke; ridge, crest.

**Iūlius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; see Caesar.

**iumentum, -ī, n. [iungō],** yoke or draft animal, beast of burden.

**iūnctūra, -ae, f. [iungō],** a joining, joint, fastening.

**iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūnctum, tr.,** join, unite, associate; marry; make.

**iūnior, see iuvenis.**

**Iūnius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**Iūnō, -ōnis, f.,** sister and wife of Jupiter, and queen of the gods.

**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.,** Jupiter or Jove, the supreme deity of the Romans.

**Iūra, -ae, m.,** the Jura mountains. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*

**iūrātus, -a, -um, adj. [iūror, swear],** sworn, bound by oath.

**iūre, see iūs.**

**iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [iūs],** take an oath, swear.

**iūs, iūris, n.,** right, justice, law; legal right, authority; judgment; obligation, privilege; *abl. iūre as adv.,* rightfully, justly.

**iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, n.,** oath.

**iussum, -ī, n. [pf. part. of iubeō],** order, command.

**iūstitia, -ae, f. [iūstus],** justice, uprightness.

**iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [iūs],** in accordance with law, just, righteous; right, proper, regular, well-grounded, important.

**iuvenālis, -e, adj. [iuvenis],** youthful, juvenile.

**iuvenus, -ī, m. [iuvenis],** young bullock, steer, bull.

**iuvenilis, -e, adj. [iuvenis],** youthful, juvenile.

**iuvenis, -is, adj.,** young; *as subst., m. and f.,* a young person, youth, *esp. one between the ages of twenty and forty years; comp., iūnior,* younger.

**iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis],** the period of youth, approximately from twenty to forty years; collectively, youth, young men.

**iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtum, tr.,** aid, help.

**iūxtā, adv.,** next, near, near by, by the side of.

**Ixiōn, -onis, m.,** father of Pirithous.

## K

**Kalendae, -ārum, f.,** the first day of the month, the Kalends.

## L

**L.,** abbr. for Lūcius.

**L, for quinquāgintā, etc.**

**Laberius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; *esp. Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune.*

**Labiēnus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen; *esp. Titus Atius Labienus, Caesar's*

*most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war.*

**labor**, -ōris, *m.*, toil, exertion, labor, hardship, pain, suffering; trial.

**lābor**, -ī, lāpsus, *intr.*, slide, slip; course, flow; sink, fall; perish; fall away, commit a fault.

**labōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [labor], strive, labor, take pains; be hard pressed, be in distress or afflicted, suffer, be in danger.

**labrum**, -ī, *n.*, the lip; edge, border.

**lāc**, lactis, *n.*, milk.

**Lacedaemonius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Lacedaemonian; *as subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the Lacedaemonians or Spartans. *Map I, H, 6.*

**lacertus**, -ī, *m.*, upper arm, arm.

**laccessō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, attack.

**Lacō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a Laconian, Lacedaemonian.

**lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, a tear.

**lacrimābilis**, -e, *adj.* [lacrima], worthy of tears, lamentable, mournful.

**lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

**laedō**, -ere, -si, -sum, *tr.*, hurt, injure; *w. fidem*, violate, break, betray; insult; distress, thwart.

**laetitia**, -ae, *f.* [laetus], gladness, joy.

**laetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful, glad, rejoicing.

**Laevinus**, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of P. Valerius.

**languidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, spiritless, faint.

**laniō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [lanius, butcher], tear, rend, tear in pieces.

**lapis**, -idis, *m.*, a stone.

**Larcus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Titus Larcus Flavus, the first dictator.

**largior**, -iri, -itus, *tr.* [largus, abundant], give largely or freely, bestow, supply.

**largiter**, *adv.* [largus, abundant], abundantly, much; **largiter posse**, have great influence.

**largitiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [largior], a giving freely, liberality.

**lassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [lassus], weariness, faintness, exhaustion.

**lassō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [lassus, weary], make faint, weary, exhaust.

**lātē**, *adv.* [lātus], widely, extensively, far and wide.

**latebra**, -ae, *f.* [lateō], a hiding-place, retreat; hidden meaning, mystery.

**lateō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, lie hidden, lurk, be concealed or unseen, be unnoticed.

**Latinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Latium, Latin; *as subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the Latins. *Map II, D, 4.*

**lātitudō**, -inis, *f.* [lātus], width, extent.

**Latobrigi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. *Map IV, H, 2.*

**latrō**, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.

**latrōcinium**, -ī, *n.* [latrōcinor], robbery, brigandage; bandit war.

**latus**, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.

**lātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, extensive; *as subst.*, *n.*, breadth, width.

**laudātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [laudō], a praising, praise, approval.

**laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [laus], praise, commend, admire, approve.

**laus**, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory; flattery; a title to praise, merit, excellence.

**lavō**, -āre (-ere), lāvi, lautum (lōtum), *tr.*, wash, wet, moisten; *pass.*, be washed, bathe.

**laxō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [laxus], extend, open; loosen, relax.

**lea**, -ae, *f.*, lioness.

**leaena**, -ae, *f.*, lioness.

**lectica**, -ae, *f.*, litter, sedan-chair.

**lectus**, -i, *m.*, couch, bed.

**lĕgātĭo**, -ōnis, *f.* [lĕgō], embassy.

**lĕgātus**, -i, *m.*, legate, ambassador; lieutenant. Next in rank to the **imperātor** were the **lĕgātĭ**, who belonged to the senatorial order, and were appointed by the senate at the suggestion of the general whom they were to serve. They were assigned to no permanent command, but acted as general lieutenants, sometimes being placed at the head of a single corps, often of an entire legion, and occasionally of two or more legions at once. Their duties also included occasional service as ambassadors. When the general was absent a **lĕgātus** was intrusted with the chief command, and received the title **lĕgātus prō prae-tōre**. For the dress of the **lĕgātus**, see *illus. facing p. 135*.

**legiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [legō], a legion. The exact strength of the legion in Caesar's time we have no means of knowing. The nominal enrollment was 6,000 men, but in reality the average fighting force was probably about 3,500 to 4,000 men; and this number must have varied greatly with the length of service of the soldiers, the losses that had been sustained, etc. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort consisted of three maniples, and every maniple contained two centuries.

**legiōnārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō], of or pertaining to a legion, legionary. The **miles legiōnārius** was a model soldier, and the infantry, above all other arms of the service, constituted the effective power of the Roman army. Next to Caesar himself, it was the legionary who conquered Gaul. The infantry recruit must be a Roman citizen between the ages of seventeen and forty-six, and he enlisted for a term

of twenty years. He was strong, active, and capable of the greatest endurance. Usually the Italian was a short man, and Caesar tells us that his smallness was sometimes an object of ridicule among the tall, heavy Gauls. He had not only to be a good fighter, but he must be capable of enduring long marches, and must fortify his own camp at the end of his march. On the road, he carried not only his armor and weapons, but his cooking vessels, provisions for at least three days and often longer, his saw, basket, axe, pick, and spade, and very likely some of the palisades that were to help form the **vallum**. He had no uniform, but was clothed in a woolen tunic and a cloak, and wore leathern boots. His defensive armor consisted of the **lōrica** or leathern cuirass, the helmet (**galea**), and an oblong shield (**scūtum**), while his weapons of offense were the **pilum** or heavy javelin, and the short, two-edged **gladius**. The pay of Caesar's legionaries at first amounted to 120 denarii (about twenty-two dollars) a year. Caesar doubled it before the time of the Civil War. Out of this, the soldier must pay for his own arms and equipment; but the purchasing power of money was much greater than it is now. Besides, the soldier might expect substantial additions from the booty that was taken in war, or from the rewards given him by his general for good service. His food consisted regularly of wheaten porridge, occasionally supplemented by vegetables and meat; but other food might be obtained by foraging, or might be bought of the traders who followed in the train of the army. When his term of service was up, the legionary received a present of land or money, as provision for his old age. Frequently, however, he chose to reënter the

service as an *évocatus* (see on *évocātis*, Bk. III, 20, 11). For the dress of the legionary, see *illus. facing p. 201*.

**lēgitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [lēx], fixed by law.

**legō**, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*, *tr.*, gather, collect; pick, pick up; choose, select, appoint; read.

**Lelex**, -egis, *m.*, a Locrian, narrator of the tale of *Baucis and Philemon*.

**Lemannus**, -ī, *m.* (with or without *lacus*), Lake Geneva. *Map IV, G, 3*.

**Lemovicēs**, -um, *m.*, a Celtic people about modern *Limoges*. *Map IV, D, 3-4*.

**lēnis**, -e, *adj.*, smooth, gentle, mild.  
**lēnitās**, -ātis, *f.* [lēnis], smoothness, gentleness.

**lēniter**, *adv.* [lēnis], softly, gently, gradually, moderately.

**Lentulus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. *Cornelius Lentulus*, consul in 275 B.C.

**leō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a lion.

**Leōtychidēs**, -is, *m.*, a son of *Agis*, king of *Sparta*.

**Lepidus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. *Marcus Aemilius Lepidus*, a member of the second *triumvirate*.

**Lepontii**, -ōrum, *m.*, an Alpine tribe between *St. Gothard* and *Lake Maggiore*. *Map IV, H, 3*.

**lepus**, -oris, *m.*, hare.

**Leuci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. *Map IV, F-G, 2*.

**Leuctra**, -ōrum, *n.*, a town in *Greece*, famous for the defeat of the *Spartans* by *Epaminondas*.

**Leuctricus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Leuctra], of *Leuctra*.

**levis**, -e, *adj.*, light in weight or motion, slight, thin, trifling, small; fleet, agile; *fig.*, light, easy.

**levitās**, -ātis, *f.* [levis], lightness, restlessness, fickleness.

**leviter**, *adv.* [levis], lightly.

**levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [levis], uplift, lift; support; lighten, relieve; take away, take down.

**lēx**, *lēgis*, *f.*, law, statute, enactment; condition, terms.

**Lexovii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe southwest of the *Seine*, about modern *Lisieux*. *Map IV, C-D, 2*.

**libenter**, *adv.* [libēns], willingly, with pleasure.

**liber**, -brī, *m.*, the inner bark of trees, which in ancient times was used to write on; book.

**liber**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

**liberālis**, -e, *adj.* [liber], of freedom, liberal, generous.

**liberālītās**, -ātis, *f.* [liberālis], generosity, liberality.

**liberālīter**, *adv.* [liberālis], as befits a freeman; graciously, generously.

**liberē**, *adv.* [liber], freely, without restraint.

**liberī**, -ōrum, *m.* [liber], the free members of the household, children.

**liberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [liber], set free, free, release.

**libertās**, -ātis, *f.* [liber], liberty, freedom.

**libet**, *libēre*, *libuit* or *libitum est*, *intr.*, it is pleasing.

**libidō**, -inis, *f.* [libet], sensual pleasure.

**libō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, take a little of; pour out, pour as a libation, sprinkle; touch lightly, skim.

**libra**, -ae, *f.*, balance; of weight, a pound.

**librīlis**, -e, *adj.* [libra], of a pound weight.

**Liburnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *Liburnian*; *Map I, F, 4*; *nāvēs Liburnae*, light galleys built like those of the *Liburnians*.

**licentia**, -ae, *f.* [licēns, free], freedom, liberty, license.

**liceor**, -ēri, *licitus*, *intr.*, bid.

**licet**, -ēre, -cuit and -citum est, *intr.*, *impers.*, it is allowed, permitted, one is at liberty, may; *passing into a conj.*, granted that, although, notwithstanding.

**lictor**, -ōris, *m.*, [ligō, bind], lictor. *For his dress see illus. facing p. 135.*

**Liger**, -eris, *m.*, the river Loire. *Map IV, C-F, 3-4.*

**Ligurēs**, -um, *m.*, the Ligurians, people of Liguria, a district on the northwest coast of Italy. *Map II, A-B, 2.*

**lilium**, -i, *n.*, lily; a name given to the scrobis, dug out in the form of a lily.

**Lilybaeum**, -i, *n.*, a promontory and town of western Sicily. *Map II, C, 7.*

**limbus**, -i, *m.*, border, edge, fringe.

**Lingonēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of the Vosges Mountains, about modern Langres. *Map IV, F, 2.*

**lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

**lingula**, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of lingua*], little tongue; tongue of land.

**linter**, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

**linum**, -i, *n.*, flax, linen, canvas.

**liquidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [liqueō, be fluid], flowing, liquid, clear, limpid.

**liquor**, -ōris, *m.*, a liquid, water.

**lis**, litis, *f.*, strife, lawsuit, damages.

**Liscus**, -i, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Haeduans.

**littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, writing, inscription, letter, dispatch.

**litus**, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.

**Livius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Marcus Livius Salinator, consul in 219 and 207 B.C.

**locuplēs**, -ētis, *adj.*, rich.

**locuplētō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [locuplēs], make rich, enrich.

**locus**, -i, *m.* (*pl. loci and loca*), a place, spot, point, locality; ground, earth; space, position, situation; destination; room, chance; degree, rank; *abl. with gen.*, in the place of, as.

**longē**, *adv.* [longus], of space, in length; far away, afar; of degree, by far, far; of time, *comp.*, longius, longer.

**longinquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus], far off, distant, remote.

**longitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [longus], length, extent.

**longurius**, -i, *m.* [longus], long pole.

**longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, long-continued; tall.

**loquor**, -i, locūtus, *tr. and intr.*, say, speak, talk, converse.

**lōrica**, -ae, *f.* [lōrum], leathern cuirass covered with metal, which was worn by the legionary; a breast-work, parapet. This was made usually of hurdles, and added to the wall of the camp, in case of a long stay, or in times of unusual danger. It was plaited of wicker-work, and was low enough to enable the soldier to cast the pilum above it; while at the same time its height was great enough to protect his entire body from missiles that might be thrown by the enemy.

**lōrum**, -i, *n.*, thong, strap.

**Lūcānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Lucania, Lucanians. *Map II, E-F, 5.*

**Lūcius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

**Lucrētia**, -ae, *f.*, the wife of Collatinus.

**lūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [lūgeō], grief, sorrow, mourning.

**lūcus**, -i, *m.*, consecrated grove, grove, wood, forest.

**lūdus**, -i, *m.* [lūdō], a game, public game.

**Lugotorix**, -īgis, *m.*, a British chieftain.

**lūna**, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **lūceō**, be light], moon; as *proper noun*, the Moon-goddess.

**luō**, -ere, **luī**, —, *tr.*, to loose; make atonement for; *w.* **poenam**, pay, suffer.

**Lūsitāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Spain. *Map I, A, 4-5.*

**lupus**, -i, *m.*, a wolf.

**Lutātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**lūx**, **lūcis**, *f.*, light, daylight; **primā lūce** or **ortā lūce**, at daybreak.

**lūxuria**, -ae, *f.* [**lūxus**, excess], luxury, high living.

**Lūsander**, -dri, *m.*, a Spartan general.

**Lysimachus**, -i, *m.*, father of *Aristides*.

## M

**M.**, *abbr. for* **Mārcus**.

**M**, for *mille*, etc.

**Macedonia**, -ae, *f.*, a country lying north of *Thessaly*. *Map I, G-H, 5.*

**māceria**, -ae, *f.*, wall, inclosure.

**māchinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**māchinor**, devise], a mechanical device, machine, engine.

**mactō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, honor; honor by offering to the gods.

**madefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**madeō**, be wet+**faciō**], make wet, moisten, drench.

**madidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**madeō**, be wet], moist, wet, drenched.

**Maedi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of western *Thrace*.

**maestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**maereō**], sad, mournful, dejected.

**magis**, *comp. adv.*, more, in a greater degree; rather; **magis . . . quam**, rather than.

**magister**, -trī, *m.*, chief, master; **magister equitum**, master of the horse, aid-de-camp of a dictator; teacher.

**Magetobriga**, -ae, *f.*, a town in *Gaul*. *Map IV, F, 3.*

**magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**magister**], public office, magistracy; body of officers, government; magistrate.

**magnificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus**+**faciō**], splendid, magnificent.

**magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**magnus**], greatness, size, extent.

**magnopere** (**magnō opere**), *adv.*, with great labor, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly.

**magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large, of great extent, much; extreme; of age; *w.* **nātū**, old; of value, great, considerable; *n. abl.* **magnō**, at a great price, dear; as *subst.*, *m.*, the Great, a surname of *Pompey*; *comp.*, **maior**, **maius**; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, **maiōres** or **maiōres nātū**, ancestors; *sup.*, **maximus**, -a, -um.

**Māgō**, -ōnis, *m.*, brother of *Hannibal*.

**maior**, see **magnus**.

**malacia**, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea, calm.

**male**, *adv.* [**malus**], badly, ill; wrongly; cruelly; unsuccessfully; *comp.*, **peius**; *sup.*, **pessimē**.

**malefīcium**, -ī, *n.* [**malefīcus**, wicked], harm, mischief.

**malefīcus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**male**+**faciō**], evil doing; inimical, unpropitious.

**mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui**, —, *tr.* [**magis**+**volō**], prefer, choose.

**malum**, -ī, *n.* [**malus**], evil, misfortune, harm, mischief.

**mālum**, -ī, *n.*, apple.

**malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked, ill-omened; *comp.*, **peior**, -ius; *sup.*, **pessimus**, -a, -um.

**mālus**, -ī, *m.*, pole, mast, beam.

**mandātum**, -ī, *n.* [**mandō**], command, charge.

**mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, enjoin, order, command; commit, intrust, consign; **sē mandāre**, betake oneself, take to.

**Mandubii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people whose territory lay between that of the *Haedui* and the *Lingones*. Map IV, F, 3.

**Mandubracius**, -i, *m.*, a prince of the *Trinovantes*.

**māne**, *adv.*, in the morning.

**manēō**, -ēre, *mānsi*, *mānsum*, *intr.*, stay, remain, stop; be left.

**manifestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, manifest, plain.

**Mānilius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

**manipulus**, -i, *m.* [*manus*+*pleō*, fill], a handful of hay about a pole, anciently used as a standard; a company of two centuries, *maniple*. The *manipulus* was the thirtieth part of a legion.

**Mānlius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Marcus Manlius Capitolinus, who saved the Capitol in the Gallic war, consul in 392 B.C.

(2) Titus Manlius Torquatus, dictator in 353 B.C.

(3) Lucius Manlius Vulso, consul in 256 B.C.

(4) Gnaeus Manlius Vulso, consul in 189 B.C.

(5) Lucius Manlius Censorinus, consul in 149 B.C.

(6) Lucius Manlius, a proconsul who was defeated by the *Aquitani* in 78 B.C.

**mānsuēfaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [*mānsuētus*, tamed+*faciō*], tame; *pass.*, *mānsuēferi*, be tamed.

**mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [*mansuētus*, tamed], tameness; gentleness, compassion.

**manūmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [*manus*+*mittō*], release, emancipate.

**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; blow of the hand, blow, cast; a force, band of troops, number, company; *ferrea manus*, grappling-iron.

**Mārcellus**, -i, *m.*, a cognomen of the

plebeian gens *Claudia*; esp. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, consul in 51 B.C.

**Mārcius**, -i, *m.*, see *Ancus*.

**Marcomāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe.

**Mārcus**, -i, *m.*, a praenomen.

**Mardonius**, -i, *m.*, a Persian general.

**mare**, -is, *n.*, the sea.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*mare*], of the sea; sea-; maritime, on the sea; *maritima pars*, the sea-coast.

**maritus**, -i, *m.* [*mās*], husband.

**Marius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Marius, consul seven times, and opponent of Sulla in the Civil War.

**marmor**, -oris, *n.*, marble.

**Mārs**, -tis, *m.*, the Roman god of war; *fig.*, war, battle.

**Mārtius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*Mārs*], of Mars; of the month of March.

**mās**, *maris*, *adj.*, masculine, male; as *subst.*, *m.*, a male.

**Masinissa**, -ae, *m.*, a king of Numidia.

**māssa**, -ae, *f.*, kneaded dough; a lump (of metal), mass (of curd).

**matara**, -ae, *f.*, javelin, pike.

**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; *mātrēs familiae*, matrons.

**māteria**, -am, and *māteriēs*, -em, *f.* [*māter*] (only in *nom.* and *acc. sing.*), matter, material of which anything is made, timber.

**māterior**, -āri, -ātus, *intr.* [*māteria*], get wood.

**māternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*māter*], of a mother, mother's, maternal.

**Matiscō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a town belonging to the *Haedui*, modern Mâcon. Map IV, F, 3.

**mātrimōnium**, -i, *n.* [*māter*], marriage, matrimony.

**Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, the Marne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, E-F, 2.

**mātūrē**, *adv.* [mātūrus], early, speedily.

**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [mātūrus], make ripe; make haste, hasten.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe, matured; *fig.*, ripened, of ripe judgment; early.

**maximē**, *sup. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, exceedingly, chiefly, especially.

**maximus**, *see* magnus.

**Maximus**, -ī, *m.*, Greatest, a cognomen.

**medicus**, -ī, *m.*, physician.

**mediocris**, -e, *adj.* [medius], middling, ordinary, moderate.

**mediocriter**, *adv.* [mediocris], in a small degree.

**Mediomatrici** (-ēs), -ōrum (-um), *m.*, a Gallic people about modern Metz. *Map IV, F-G, 2.*

**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius+terra], midland, inland, interior.

**meditor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, consider, plan.

**medium**, *see* medius.

**medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, the middle of, the midst of; in the middle or midst; of time, intervening; as *subst.*, *n.*, **medium**, -ī, the middle, midst.

**Meldi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people on the Marne, about modern Meaux. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**melior**, *see* bonus.

**melius**, *see* bene.

**membrum**, -ī, *n.*, limb, member, part.

**memini**, -isse, *tr.*, *defect.*, remember, recollect.

**memor**, -oris, *adj.*, mindful, heedful.

**memoria**, -ae, *f.* [memor], memory, recollection; remembrance, time; narration, record, tradition.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

**Menelāi portus**, *m.*, a port in northern Africa.

**mēns**, **mentis**, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, thought; purpose, resolution; feelings, heart.

**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.* [mētior], table; meal, course; **mēnsae secundae**, dessert.

**mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month.

**mēnsūra**, -ae, *f.* [mētior], measuring, measurement.

**menta**, -ae, *f.*, mint.

**mentiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, mention; **mentiōnem habēre**, make mention.

**mercātor**, -ōris, *m.* [mercor], a merchant, trader; in particular, the traders who followed the army, to traffic with the soldiers. They bought the booty which the men had to dispose of, and bartered or sold them provisions and various wares. When the legions encamped, the **mercātōrēs** remained outside the walls, near the decuman gate; and on the march, they followed the rear of the column.

**mercātūra**, -ae, *f.* [mercor, trade], trade, commerce.

**mercēnnārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mercēs], hired for pay; mercenary.

**mercēs**, -ēdis, *f.* [mereō], price, fee, offer of reward.

**Mercurius**, -ī, *m.* [merx, merchandise], Mercury, the messenger of the gods, son of Jupiter and Maia.

**mereō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum or mereor, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, deserve, earn, gain, acquire.

**mergō**, -ere, **mersi**, **mersum**, *tr.*, plunge, sink, overwhelm.

**mergus**, -ī, *m.* [mergō], diver, waterfowl.

**meridiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [meridiēs], of midday; **meridiānum tempus**, noon.



**meridiēs, -ēi, m.,** midday; the south.

**meritum, -i, n.** [meritus], merit, desert, benefit; demerit, fault, offense.

**meritus, see mereō.**

**Messāla, -ae, m.,** a cognomen; esp. Marcus Valerius Messala, consul in 61 B.C.

**-met, encl. suffix,** self, own.

**Metellus, -i, m.,** a Roman name; esp. Quintus Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus, conqueror of Macedonia, consul 143 B.C.

**mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus, tr.,** measure, deal or measure out, distribute.

**Mētius, -i, m.,** Marcus Metius, a friend of Caesar.

**metō, -ere, messuī, messum, tr.,** cut, reap; destroy, lay waste.

**metuēns, -entis, adj.** [pres. part. of metuō, fear], fearing, afraid; metuēns deōrum, god-fearing, reverent.

**metus, -ūs, m.,** fear, dread, terror; cause of fear.

**meus, -a, -um, poss. pron.** [mē], my, mine, my own, of mine; my own, i.e., master of myself.

**migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** move, migrate.

**mīles, -itis, m.,** soldier, soldiery.

**miliārium, -i, n.** [mille], milestone.

**militāris, -e, adj.** [miles], of war, military; rēs militāris, warfare, the art of war.

**militia, -ae, f.** [mīles], military service, warfare.

**militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [mīles], be a soldier, wage war.

**mille (pl. mīlia or millia), num. adj.,** a thousand.

**Minerva, -ae, f.,** the goddess of wisdom and of the arts and sciences.

**minimē, see parum.**

**minus, see parvus.**

**minor, see parvus.**

**Minturnae, -ārum, f.,** a town of southern Latium. Map II, D, 5.

**Minucius, -i, m.,** a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Minucius, consul in 458 B.C., defeated by the Aequi.

(2) Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Caesar's army, and afterward one of his assassins.

**minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr.,** lessen, diminish, break or chop into pieces; offend against; settle; ebb; minuente aestū, at ebb tide.

**minus, see parum.**

**mīror, -āri, -ātus, tr.,** wonder at, be amazed, marvel; admire.

**mīrus, -a, -um, adj.,** wonderful, marvelous.

**misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum, tr.,** mix, mingle.

**miser, -era, -erum, adj.,** wretched, miserable, unfortunate, sad.

**miserābilis, -e, adj.** [miseror], wretched, unhappy, miserable.

**miserandus, -a, -um, adj.** [miseror], lamentable, miserable.

**misericordia, -ae, f.** [misericors, merciful], mercy, pity, clemency.

**miseror, -āri, -ātus, tr.** [miser], lament, pity.

**missus, -ūs, m.** [mittō], a sending; order.

**Mithridātēs, -is (Greek acc. -ēn), m.,** a famous king of Pontus.

**mītis, -e, adj.,** mild, mellow, soft; gentle, kind.

**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, tr.,** let go, send, send away, dispatch; cast; shoot; give over, cease.

**mōbilis, -e, adj.** [moveō], movable, changeable, inconstant, hasty.

**mōbilitās, -ātis, f.** [mōbilis], movableness, activity, agility; changeableness, inconstancy.

**mōbilitēr, adv.** [mōbilis], rapidly, easily.

**moderātus, -a, -um, adj.** [moderor], self-controlled, temperate.

**moderor**, -āri, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [modus], limit; control, guide; manage, govern.

**modestia**, -ae, *f.* [modus], moderation, humility.

**modicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus], in proper measure; modest, scanty, small.

**modius**, -i, *m.* [modus], measure; peck.

**modo**, *adv.* [modus], only, merely; **nōn modo** . . . *sed etiam*, not only . . . but also or even; *of time*, now, just now, a little while ago; *correl. with another adv.*, now, at one moment; [**modo** . . . **modo**, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another; *in commands or wishes*, only.

**modus**, -i, *m.*, measure, size; limit, amount; fashion; way, manner, method; **quem ad modum**, in what way, how; kind, sort; **eius modi**, of that or this sort; *abl. with gen.*, like, as, in the character of; rhythm, measure, time.

**mōenia**, -ium, *n.*, city walls, walls, ramparts.

**mōlēs**, -is, *f.*, a mass, dam, dike, mole; mass of stone, missile.

**molestē**, *adv.* [molestus], with trouble or difficulty; **molestē ferre**, be annoyed or vexed (at).

**mōlimentum**, -i, *n.* [mōlior], exertion, effort.

**mōlliō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *tr.* [mollis], make soft, soften.

**mollis**, -e, *adj.*, soft, yielding, gentle, mild; inconstant; gently sloping.

**mollitia**, -ae, *f.* [mollis], softness, weakness, irresolution.

**mōlō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [mola, mill], grind.

**mōmentum**, -i, *n.* [moveō], a movement; moment, instant; weight, importance.

**Mona**, -ae, *f.*, usually in ancient writers the island of Anglesey,

probably in Caesar the Isle of Man. *Map I, C, 1.*

**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, remind, advise, warn, instruct, urge; forewarn, predict.

**monitum**, -i, *n.* [*pf. part. of moneō*], admonition, advice, counsel, oracle.

**mōns**, **montis**, *m.*, hill, height; mount, mountain.

**montānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mōns], of mountains, mountain.

**mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay, stopping; *abl. as adv.*, with time, gradually.

**morbus**, -i, *m.*, sickness, disease.

**Morini**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of modern Picardy. *Map IV, E, 1.*

**morior**, -i (-irī), **mortuus**, *intr.*, die.

**moror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [mora], delay, wait, stay; stop, retard, hinder; **nihil morārī**, care nothing for, not value at all.

**mors**, **mortis**, *f.*, death.

**morsus**, -ūs, *m.* [mordeō], a biting, bite.

**mortālis**, -e, *adj.* [mors], mortal, human.

**mortuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of morior*], dead, in death.

**mōrum**, -i, *n.*, mulberry.

**mōrus**, -i, *f.*, mulberry-tree.

**mōs**, **mōris**, *m.*, way, manner, usage, wont, custom.

**Mosa**, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas, a river of Belgic Gaul. *Map IV, F, 1-2.*

**mōtus**, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement, motion; *political movement*, uprising.

**moveō**, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *tr.*, move, stir, set in motion; **castra movēre**, break camp; **sē movēre**, move; remove, expel; excite, arouse; commence; influence, affect.

**mox**, *adv.*, soon, presently, before long, by and by, then, afterward.

**mūcrō**, -ōnis, *m.*, sharp point or edge, sword's point, sword.

**mulceō**, -ēre, **mulsi**, **mulsum**, *tr.*, stroke lightly; soothe, appease.

**muliebris**, -e, *adj.* [**mulier**], a woman's, womanlike.

**mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman.

**multifidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**multus** + **findō**], many-cleft, cleft into many parts.

**multitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**multus**], a multitude, crowd, great number; the common people.

**multō**, *adv.* [**multus**], by much, much, far, by far.

**multō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, punish.

**multum**, *adv.* [**multus**], much, greatly, especially, very; often, frequently; *comp.*, **plūs**, more; *sup.*, **plūrimum**, most, very.

**multus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, many, many a; much, abundant, a great quantity of; extensive, great; *comp.*, **plūs**, **plūris**, more, in greater number or quantity; *pl.*, a number of, several; *n. sing.* as *subst.*, more; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, more, the majority; *sup.*, **plūrimus**, -a, -um, most, very many, very large, abundant, of great volume.

**Mummius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Lucius Mummius, consul in 146 B.C., and conqueror of Corinth.

**mundus**, -i, *m.*, ornament; the universe, world.

**municipium**, -i, *n.*, free town.

**mūnimentum**, -i, *n.* [**mūniō**], fortification, protection, defense.

**mūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *tr.* [**moenia**], wall, fortify, defend; build.

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō**], fortifications, works, intrenchments.

**mūnus**, -eris, *n.*, a service, office; duty, burden; favor, kindness; gift.

**mūrālis**, -e, *adj.* [**mūrus**], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrālis falx**, a

wall-hook; **pilum mūrāle**, a large pike, to be hurled from a wall.

**mūrex**, -icis, *m.*, the purple-fish; hence, collectively, purple-fish.

**murmur**, -uris, *n.*, murmur.

**mūrus**, -i, *m.*, wall, city wall.

**Mūs**, **Mūris**, *m.*, a cognomen; see **Decius**.

**mūscus**, -i, *m.*, moss.

**mutilus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, maimed, mutilated, blunt; **mutilus cornibus**, having short, blunt horns.

**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **moveō**], change, transform, replace; be changed, alter.

**mūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mūtō**], borrowed; in return; mutual.

## N

**nam**, *conj.*, for, inasmuch as.

**Nammeius**, -i, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetians.

**Namnetēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Nantes. Map IV, C, 3.

**nam-que**, *conj.*, for, for in fact, inasmuch as.

**nanciscor**, -i, **nactus** (**nānctus**), *tr.*, get by accident or good fortune, obtain; meet with, find.

**Nantuātēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. Map IV, G, 3-4.

**Narbō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a town of the Province, modern Narbonne. Map IV, E, 5.

**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, report, say, describe.

**nāscor**, -i, **nātus**, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up; be found.

**Nasua**, -ae, *m.*, a leader of the Suebi.

**nātālis**, -e, *adj.* [**nāscor**], pertaining to birth, of one's birth; as *subst.* (*sc. diēs*), *m.*, birthday.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor**], origin; kind;

- nation, tribe, people; often applied to a distant and barbarous people.
- nātivus, -a, -um, adj.** [nāscor], produced by nature, natural.
- nātūra, -ae, f.** [nāscor], birth; nature, character; appearance, shape; natural character or constitution, situation.
- nātus, -a, -um, adj.** [pf. part. of nāscor], born, arisen, occurring, produced; as *subst.*, *m.*, a son, *pl.*, children; old, of age.
- nātus, -ūs, m.** [nāscor], only in *abl. sing.*, birth, age.
- naufragium, -i, n.** [nāvis+frangō], shipwreck.
- nauta, -ae, m.** [=nāvita], sailor.
- nauticus, -a, -um, adj.** [nauta], of a sailor, naval, nautical.
- nāvale, see nāvalis.**
- nāvalis, -e, adj.** [nāvis], naval; as *subst.*, *n.*, usually *pl.*, but *sing.* in *poetry*, a dock, dockyard.
- nāvicula, -ae, f.** [dim. of nāvis], small boat, skiff.
- nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f.** [nāvigō], a sailing; navigation, voyage.
- nāvigium, -i, n.** [nāvigō], vessel, ship, boat.
- nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [nāvis+agō], set sail, sail.
- nāvis, -is, f.**, a ship. *Caesar's ships were of three sorts, the nāvēs longae, nāvēs onerāriae, and nāvēs actuāriae. The war-vessels (nāvēs longae) were long, narrow vessels of small draught, which were ill adapted to rough water. In stormy weather they had not only to make port, but to be drawn up ashore on rollers. They averaged, perhaps, 50 yards in length and about 5 in width, and were provided with high, sharp prows, which were used as rams against the enemy's ships. The sterns were high. The nāvis longa was provided with one sail, and usually three banks of oars,*
- and was capable of great speed. The nāvis onerāria, or freight-boat, was much shorter and broader, and slower than the war-galley. It had a deeper draught, and carried more sail. The nāvis actuāria, or transport, was a low shallow vessel, which Caesar used in conveying troops, horses and munitions of war. It was built in such a way as to attain as much speed as possible.*
- nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [nāvus, busy], do zealously; operam nāvāre, act vigorously, do one's best.
- ne, encl. adv. and conj.**; as *adv.*, in direct questions, it is an untranslatable sign of interrogation; as *conj.*, in indirect questions, whether; **-ne . . . an**, whether . . . or; for **an** in the second part of a double question, or.
- nē, adv. and conj.**; as *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; as *conj.*, that not, for fear that; from with verbals in *-ing*; after verbs of fearing, that.
- nebula, -ae, f.**, cloud, mist, fog.
- nec or neque, conj.**, and not, nor; **nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.
- necessāriō, adv.** [necessārius], unavoidably, under compulsion.
- necessārius, -a, -um, adj.** [necesse], necessary; urgent, critical; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, kinsmen.
- necesse, indecl. adj.**, unyielding; unavoidable, necessary.
- necessitās, -ātis, f.** [necesse], necessity, exigency, need; constraint, compulsion; interest.
- necessitūdō, -inis, f.** [necesse], relationship, friendship, bond.
- nec-ne, conj.**, or not.
- necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [nex], kill, destroy.
- Nectanabis, -bidis, m.**, an Egyptian king.

**nefārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās], impious, execrable.

**ne-fās**, *n. indecl.*, a transgression of the divine law, sin, crime.

**neglegō**, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [nec+legō], not to heed, disregard, neglect.

**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, say no, deny, refuse.

**negōtium**, -i, *n.* [nec+ōtium], concern, business, undertaking; **negōtium dare**, assign a task; trouble, difficulty; **nōn quicquam negōti esse**, be no trouble.

**Nemetēs**, -um, *m.*, a German tribe living about modern Speier. *Map IV, H, 2.*

**nēmō** (*dat.* **nēmīni**, *acc.* **nēminem**), *m. and f.* [ne+homō], nobody, no one.

**nepōs**, -ōtis, *m.*, a grandson, descendant.

**nē-quāquam**, *adv.*, in no way, by no means.

**neque**, *see nec.*

**nequeō**, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -itum, *intr.* [ne+queō, be able], be unable, not to be able, cannot.

**nēquiquam**, *adv.* [nē+old *abl.* of **quisquam**], not in any way, in vain; to no purpose.

**Nēreis**, -idos, *f.*, a daughter of the seagod Nereus, sea-nymph, Nereid.

**Nerō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen. *See Claudius.*

**Nervicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Nervii, Nervian.

**Nervii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Sambre and Scheldt. *Map IV, E-F, 1-2.*

**nervus**, -i, *m.*, sinew, tendon, nerve; a bowstring, cord; energy, power, strength.

**neu**, *see nēve.*

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [ne+uter], neither; *pl.*, neither side or party.

**nē-ve or neu**, *conj.*, and not, nor, and not to, and that . . . not.

**nex**, *necis*, *f.*, death, execution, murder, slaughter.

**niger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black, dark, dusky.

**nihil**, or *poet.* **nīl**, *n., indecl.*, nothing; **nōn nihil**, something; *as adv.*, not at all, not a bit; **nōn nihil**, to some extent, somewhat.

**nihilum**, -i, *n.* [nihil], not a bit, nothing; **nihilō minus**, none the less.

**nimbus**, -i, *m.*, rain-storm, rain-cloud, storm-cloud.

**nimius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nimis, too much], too great, too much, excessive.

**Ninus**, -i, *m.*, the first king of Assyria and husband of Semiramis.

**nisi**, *conj.* [nī+sī], if not, unless; *after a neg. cl.*, save only, except, unless, but; **nisi sī**, except, unless.

**Nitiobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, a people of Aquitania. *Map IV, D, 4.*

**nītor**, -i, **nīsus** or **nīxus**, *intr.*, rely upon; strive, endeavor.

**niveus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nix, snow], of snow; snowy; snow-white, white.

**nō**, **nāre**, **nāvi**, *intr.*, swim.

**nōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [nōscō], well-known, famous, renowned; high-born, noble; excellent.

**nōbilitās**, -ātis, *f.* [nōbilis], fame; rank, nobility; the nobility, nobles.

**nocēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of **noceō**], harmful, wicked, guilty.

**noceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.*, hurt, injure, do harm; be an obstacle, hinder.

**noctū**, *adv.* [nox], by night.

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], of night, at night, nocturnal.

**nōdus**, -i, *m.*, knot, joint.

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *tr. and intr.*, [ne+volō], not to wish, be unwilling.

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, a name; the gentile or clan name; reputation, renown, responsibility; account, sake; *abl. with gen.*, as.

**nōminātim**, *adv.* [nōminō], by name.

**nōminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], name, call; mention.

**nōn**, *adv.*, not.

**nōnāgēsimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [nōnāgintā], ninetieth.

**nōnāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety.

**nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet.

**nōn-nūllus** or **nōn nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

**nōn-numquam** or **nōn numquam**, *adv.*, sometimes, at times.

**nōnus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [novem], ninth.

**Norbānus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**Nōreia**, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Norici.

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Norici, Norican.

**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; *pf. tense*, have learned and hence know; *pf. part. as adj.*, known, familiar.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [nōs], our, ours, our own; *my*; *m. pl. as subst.*, our soldiers, our men.

**nota**, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], mark, mark of ignominy, reproach.

**nōtitia**, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], celebrity, fame; acquaintance, knowledge.

**notō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nota], mark; censure; observe, note.

**Notus**, -ī, *m.*, the south wind, wind.

**nōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of nōscō*], known, familiar, well-known.

**novem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine.

**Noviodūnum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Suessiones, modern Soissons. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**novitās**, -ātis, *f.* [novus], newness, novel kind or nature, strangeness.

**novus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, fresh, recent; novel, strange, unheard-of; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, last, hindermost, the end of, rear; **novissimum agmen**, the rear; *m. pl. as subst.*, those at the rear, the rear.

**nox**, noctis, *f.*, night; **multā nocte**, late at night.

**noxia**, -ae, *f.* [noxius, harmful], injury, crime, offense.

**nūbēs**, -is, *f.*, cloud, mist.

**nūbilum**, -ī, *n.* [nūbilus, cloudy], cloudy weather; *pl.* clouds.

**nūbō**, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil oneself, be married, marry (*of the woman only*).

**nūdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nūdus], strip, uncover; expose, leave exposed; bring to view; deprive of.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked; lightly clad.

**nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ne+ūllus], no, not any; *as subst.*, *m.*, no one, nobody.

**num**, *interrog. adv.*; with a direct question to which an answer in the negative is expected, often best untranslated; not so . . . is it? with indirect question, whether.

**Numa**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman proper name; esp. Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

**nūmen**, -inis, *n.*, will, divine will; divinity, power, majesty; god.

**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, a number; amount, quantity; account, estimation; *abl. with gen.*, in the number of, as.

**Numidae**, -arum, *m.*, the Numidians.

**Numidia**, -ae, *f.*, a country of northern Africa, west of Carthage. *Map I, D, 6.*

**nummus**, -ī, *m.*, piece of money, coin.

**numquam**, *adv.* [ne+umquam], never, not at all.

**nunc**, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time; in these circumstances.

**nūntia**, -ae, *f.* [nūntius], female messenger, messenger.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nūntius], announce, report; give orders, direct.

**nūntius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, announcing; *as subst.*, *m.*, messenger, message, news, tidings.

**nūper**, *adv.*, lately, not long since.

**nūtriō**, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itum, *tr.*, nurse, nourish, feed.

**nūtus**, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod, nodding; sign, command.

**nux**, nucis, *f.*, nut.

**nympha**, -ae, *f.*, a nymph; *pl.*, the nymphs, goddesses who dwell in the sea, fountains, woods, mountains, etc.

## O

**ō**, *interj.*, O! oh!

**ob**, *prep.* with *acc.*, toward; on account of; by reason of.

**obaerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+aes], in debt; *as subst.*, *m.*, debtor.

**ob-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead toward; prolong, extend.

**ob-eō**, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itum, *tr.* and *intr.*, go to or against; perish, die.

**obiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ob+iaciō], throw before, interpose; *pf. part.* *as adj.*, interposed, lying before, opposite.

**obitus**, -ūs, *m.* [obeō], approach to death, death; destruction, overthrow.

**ob-linō**, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, *tr.* [linō, smear], smear, defile.

**obliquē**, *adv.* [obliquus], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

**obliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sidewise, slanting, oblique.

**oblitus**, *see* oblinō.

**oblitus**, *see* obliviscor.

**obliviscor**, -i, **oblitus**, *tr.* and *intr.*, forget, disregard.

**ob-orior**, -iri, -ortus, *intr.*, spring up, rise, appear.

**ob-ruō**, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, overwhelm, destroy.

**obscurus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark; obscure, unintelligible.

**obsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+sacrō], implore, entreat.

**ob-sequor**, -i, -secūtus, *intr.*, yield, submit, obey; assist.

**ob-servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, heed, observe, mark; celebrate.

**obses**, -idis, *m.* and *f.*, hostage, pledge, security.

**obsideō**, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.* [ob+sedeō], obstruct, blockade, besiege.

**obsidiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege; peril; oppression.

**ob-signō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, seal, sign, execute.

**ob-sistō**, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.*, stand in the way, oppose.

**obsolētus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [obsolēscō, wear out], worn out, shabby.

**obsōnium**, -i, *n.*, food, side-dish.

**obstinātē**, *adv.* [obstinātus, resolved], firmly, inflexibly, resolutely.

**ob-stipēscō**, -ere, -stipui, —, *intr.* [ob+stupeō, be stunned], bestupefied, be struck dumb.

**ob-stō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *intr.*, stand in the way; oppose.

**ob-stringō**, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, *tr.*, bind, place under obligations.

**ob-stupefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [stupefaciō, make stupid], amaze, stupefy.

**ob-temperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [temperō, be moderate], comply with; obey, be subject to rule.

**obtestātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [obtestor], entreaty.

**ob-testor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, call to witness, invoke, entreat, call upon.

**obtinēō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [ob+teneō], hold, govern; occupy; retain, have control of, administer; gain, obtain; prevail, gain one's point; **rem obtinēre**, gain the victory.

**obtingō**, -ere, -tigi, —, *intr.* [ob+tangō], fall to one's lot, befall.

**obtrectātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [obtrectō, decry], disparagement, detraction.

**ob-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come in the way, meet; fall to the lot of, be allotted; be revealed.

**obviam**, *adv.* [ob+viam], in the way, against; **obviam venīre**, come to meet.

**occāsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+cadō], occasion, opportunity.

**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [occidō], a falling, setting; **occāsus sōlis** and **occāsus**, sunset; the west.

**occidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [ob+cadō], fall or go down, perish, be lost; set; **occidēns sōl**, the setting sun, west.

**occidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ob+caedō], cut down, put to death, kill.

**occultē**, *adv.* [occultus], in concealment, secretly.

**occultō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* occultō, hide], hide, conceal.

**occultus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* occultō, cover], covered, concealed; as *subst.*, *n.*, in **occultō**, in concealment.

**occupātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō], a seizing, occupying; business, affair; occupation, engagement.

**occupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+capiō], take possession of, occupy, seize; hold, fill; anticipate; *pf. part.*, busy, engaged in.

**occurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō], run to meet, meet, encounter, oppose, offer resistance; rush; find; occur, suggest itself.

**Ōceanus**, -ī, *m.*, the ocean.

**Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul. *Map IV, G, 4.*

**Octāviānus**, -ī, *m.*, a surname of the Emperor Augustus.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [octō], eighth; **octāvus decimus**, eighteenth.

**octingenti**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [octō+centum], eight hundred.

**octō**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight.

**Octodūrus**, -ī, *m.*, a town of the *Veragri*, modern Martigny. *Map IV, G, 3.*

**octōgēni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [octō], eighty each.

**octōgēsimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [octōgintā], eightieth.

**octōgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.* [octō], eighty.

**octōni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [octō], eight at a time, eight each, eight.

**oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye.

**ōdī**, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrus**, *tr.*, *defect.*, hate, detest.

**odium**, -ī, *n.* [ōdī], hatred, aversion.

**Oetaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Mount Oeta in Thessaly; Thessalian.

**offendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ob+fendō, strike], dash against, strike; come upon, find; offend; cause to stumble.

**offēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō], a striking against; offense.

**offerō**, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō], bring before, bring in one's way, expose, offer, present, show; **sē offerre**, expose oneself, cast oneself in the way of.

**officina**, -ae, *f.*, workshop, arsenal.



**officiū**, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], courtesy, honor; allegiance, duty, performance of duty; obedience.

**olim**, *adv.*, once, formerly.

**oliva**, -ae, *f.*, olive, olive-tree.

**omittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō], let go; let fall, give up, neglect, omit.

**omniñō**, *adv.* [omnis], altogether, entirely, in all; only, alone; *with negatives*, at all.

**omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole, the whole of.

**onerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], fitted for burdens, transport-, (*sc. nāvis*) transport-ship, freight-ship.

**onerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [onus], load, burden.

**onus**, -eris, *n.*, a load, pack, burden; weight; freight, cargo.

**onustus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], burdened, laden.

**opera**, -ae, *f.* [opus], work, pains, aid, effort; **operam dare**, take pains, exert oneself, give one's attention, listen.

**operiō**, -ire, operui, opertum, *tr.*, cover.

**opiniō**, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, think], way of thinking, belief, opinion; reputation; expectation; **opiniōnem habēre**, *with the gen.*, have a reputation for anything.

**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*, it behooves, it ought, it is best.

**opportūnē**, *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, at the right time.

**opportunitās**, -ātis, *f.* [opportūnus], fitness, convenience; fit time, favorable position or opportunity, advantage.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+por-tus], fit, convenient, opportune.

**oppidānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, townspeople.

**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town, city; stronghold.

**oppleō**, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [ob+pleō, fill], fill completely, fill.

**opprimō**, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], weigh down, burden, crush; overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise.

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō], a storming, besieging, attack. *When it was practicable, the Romans preferred to take a stronghold by assault (oppugnātiō repentina). While the light-armed troops discharged a shower of darts and stones upon the walls, to dislodge the defenders, the soldiers filled up the moat with earth, hurdles, etc., and then the attacking column rushed forward under the protection of their interlocked shields (testūdō), to storm the gates and break through the walls. If the town could not be taken by these means, a blockade (obsidiō) might be resorted to, and the inhabitants starved into surrender, if possible. But when the town could not be stormed, and was too well provisioned to be reduced by a blockade, the regular siege (oppugnātiō) was the only means left to break down the defense. The first measure taken was the construction of the agger (see agger), which was pushed rapidly forward to the ditch about the town, or sometimes ran parallel with it. The workmen were protected by the movable screens called plutei, and by sheds (vineae, testūdines, mūscoli), and the slingers and bowmen kept up a constant fire of missiles to drive the defenders from the walls. When the agger was completed, the ditch was filled up with earth, stones, etc., usually carried through the covered galleries of the agger; and the besiegers were then ready for the actual assault (expugnātiō) to begin. Parties of soldiers,*

protected by sheds (*testudinēs*), labored with pickaxes to make breaches in the walls, or strove to tear down the masonry by means of wall-hooks (*falcēs mūrālēs*). But their principal reliance was placed on the battering-ram (see *ariēs*) and the movable tower (see *turris*). Engines (see *tormentum*) for hurling missiles discharged heavy stones upon the besieged. On the other hand, the townspeople were using every means in their power to prevent the entrance of the enemy. Towers were erected on their walls, opposite those of the besiegers; sallies were made; firebrands and stones were hurled upon the wood-work of the sheds and the siege-towers. If a breach was made in the wall, the besiegers fought their way in under cover of their shields, locked into a *testūdō*, and, unless the townspeople were able to make an unusually desperate resistance, the sack of the city followed, and the inhabitants were generally sold as slaves. The various means of assault are shown in the *illus.* facing p. 233.

**oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [*ob*+*pugnō*], attack, storm, besiege.

**ops, opis, f.** (*without nom. or dat. sing.*), aid, help; power; *pl.*, power, influence, resources, wealth, riches.

**optimē, see bene.**

**optimus, see bonus.**

**optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, choose; desire, demand, wish for, pray for; select, choose.

**opulēns, -entis, adj.** [*ops*], rich, powerful.

**opus, -eris, n.**, work, task; handicraft, art; deed, achievement; structure, siege-work; fortification; want, need; **opus est**, there is need of, it is necessary; **magnō opere**, greatly; **tantō opere**, so

much, so greatly, so earnestly; **quantō opere**, how much.

**ora, -ae, f.**, margin, border; coast, shore.

**orāclum, see orāculum.**

**orāculum or orāclum, -ī, n.** [*ōrō*], an oracle, prophecy.

**orātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*ōrō*], a speech, harangue, argument, words.

**orātor, -ōris, m.** [*ōrō*], orator; ambassador.

**orbis, -is, m.**, a circle, circuit, round surface; disk, quoit; orb of the eye, eye; the world; also **orbis terrae or terrarum**, the world.

**Orcynia, -ae, f. adj.**, a Greek name for the Hercynian forest.

**ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [*ōrdō*], arrange, regulate.

**ōrdō, -inis, m.**, a row, rank of soldiers, series; **ordinēs servāre**, keep in line; order, arrangement; **sine ordine**, without order, aimlessly, promiscuously; rank, dignity.

**Orgetorix, -igis, m.**, a chief of the Helvetians.

**oriēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of orior*], rising; as *subst.*, *m.*, the rising sun, east; the orient.

**origō, -inis, f.** [*orior*], source, origin lineage; ancestry, ancestors; **Originēs, title of a work by Cato.**

**orior, -irī, ortus, intr.**, arise, spring; come forth, grow; be born; take place, begin; **ortā luce**, at day-break.

**ōrnāmentum, -ī, n.** [*ōrnō*, furnish], adornment, decoration.

**ōrnātus, -ūs, m.** [*ōrnō*, furnish], equipment, dress.

**ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of ōrnō*, furnish], furnished, fitted out; distinguished, illustrious.

**ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.**, speak, entreat, beseech.

**ortus, -ūs, m.** [*orior*], a rising; **ortus (sōlis)**, the rising of the sun, sunrise, east; an origin, source.

**os, ossis, n.,** a bone.

**ōs, ōris, n.,** mouth; opening.

**ōsculum, -ī, n.** [ōs], a little mouth; kiss.

**Osismī, -ōrum, m.,** a tribe of Britany. *Map IV, B, 2.*

**ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, tr.** [obs = ob + tendō], display, show, point out; disclose, make known, make heard; set forth, state, declare.

**ōstium, -ī, n.** [ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

**ōtium, -ī, n.,** leisure; peace; **per ōtium**, at leisure, at one's ease.

**ovis, -is, f.,** a sheep.

**ōvum, -ī, n.,** an egg.

# P

**P.,** *abbr. for Pūblius.*

**pābulātor, -ōris, m.** [pābulator], forager.

**pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, intr.** [pābulum], get fodder, forage.

**pābulum, -ī, n.,** fodder, pasture, forage.

**pacīscor, -ī, -pactus, tr.,** agree.

**pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [pāx], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; *pf. part. as adj.*, subdued, quiet.

**pactiō, -ōnis, f.** [pacīscor], agreement.

**pactum, -ī, n.** [pacīscor], agreement, arrangement, manner, way.

**pactus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of pacīscor*], agreed upon, stipulated.

**Padus, -ī, m.,** the river Po. *Map II, A-C, 2.*

**paene, adv.,** nearly, almost.

**paenitet, -ēre, -uit, tr.,** *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing*, it makes one sorry for, one repents of, one is sorry for or regrets.

**pāgus, -ī, m.,** district, canton.

**Palaeopharsālus, -ī, f.,** a city of Thessaly, Old Pharsalus. *Map I, H, 5.*

**palam, adv.,** openly, publicly.

**Palātinus, -a, -um, adj.,** Palatine, of the Palatium. *Map III, D-E, 4.*

**palleō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.,** be pale; be discolored; grow yellow.

**pallidus, -a, -um, adj.** [palleō], pale, pallid, colorless.

**palma, -ae, f.,** the palm of the hand, hand; a date-palm, date.

**palūs, -ūdis, f.,** swamp, morass, marsh, pool.

**palūster, -tris, -tre, adj.** [palūs], marshy; of the swamp, swamp.

**Pamphylīus, -a, -um, adj.,** Pamphylian; **Pamphylīum mare**, that part of the Mediterranean south of Pamphylia. *Map I, I-J, 5.*

**pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, tr.,** spread, stretch out; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands.

**Papīrius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name.

**pār, paris, adj.,** equal, well-matched; similar; of the same age; *as subst., m.*, an equal; a pair.

**parātus, -ūs, m.** [parō], preparation, provision.

**parātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of parō*], prepared, equipped, ready; skilled.

**parcē, adv.** [parcus], sparingly, carefully.

**parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, intr.,** spare, preserve; treat with forbearance, not injure; *abs.*, be sparing.

**parēns, -entis, m. and f.** [pariō], father or mother, parent; a relative.

**pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.,** appear; obey, be subject to.

**pariēs, -etis, m.,** wall of a building.

**parilis, -e, adj.** [pār], equal, like.

**Parisiī, -ōrum, m.,** a Celtic people about modern Paris. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**pariter**, *adv.* [pār], equally, in like manner; at the same time.

**Parnāsus**, -ī, *m.*, a two-peaked mountain in Boeotia, sacred to Apollo and the Muses, Mount Parnassus.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare, provide, prepare for, equip, obtain; get, acquire; determine.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, a part, share, division; **ex maximā parte**, in a very great degree, in very many respects; side, direction; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side; district; party, faction.

**partim**, *adv.* [pars], partly; **partim** . . . **partim**, partly . . . partly, some . . . others.

**partior**, -īrī, -ītus, *tr.* [pars], part, divide, distribute.

**parum**, *adv.*, too little, not enough; *as subst., n.*, an insufficiency, lack; *comp.*, **minus**, less, in a less degree, not; *sup.*, **minimē**, least, very little, by no means, not at all.

**parvulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of parvus*], little; slight, insignificant; young; *as subst., m.*, little child.

**parvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little, slight; young; mean, humble; *comp.*, **minor**, **minus**; *sup.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, least, very small, insignificant; *n. as subst. or adv.*, least, the least, very little.

**passim**, *adv.* [pandō], spread out, in every direction.

**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; stride; **mille passuum**, thousand paces, mile.

**patefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō+faciō], lay open, open.

**patefiō**, -fierī, -factus sum [*pass. of patefaciō*], be made open, be opened.

**patēns**, -entis, *adj.* [pateō], open, exposed, unprotected.

**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, stand open, stretch out, extend.

**pater**, -tris, *m.*, father; *pl.*, ancestors, senators, patricians.

**paternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, father's, paternal.

**patienter**, *adv.* [patior], with sufferance or submission, patiently.

**patientia**, -ae, *f.* [patior], the power of bearing or suffering, patience, patient endurance, contentment.

**patior**, -ī, **passus**, *tr.*, suffer, endure, permit.

**patria**, -ae, *f.* [patrius], fatherland, native country.

**patrimōnium**, -ī, *n.* [pater], patrimony, inheritance, property.

**patrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, father's; ancestral.

**patruēlis**, -e, *adj.* [patruus], of a father's brother, uncle's; of a cousin; of cousins.

**patruus**, -ī, *m.* [pater], father's brother, uncle.

**patulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pateō], spread out, spreading wide; standing open, open.

**paucitās**, -ātis, *f.* [paucus], fewness, scarcity, small number.

**paucus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, few; *as subst., m. pl.*, a few, only a few; *n. pl.*, a few things, few words, briefly.

**paulatim**, *adv.* [paulum], little by little, gradually.

**paulisper**, *adv.* [paulum], a short time, a little while.

**paulō**, *adv.* [paulus, little], by a little, a little, just a little, somewhat.

**paululum**, *adv.* [paululus, very little], a very little, somewhat.

**paulum**, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little; a little while.

**Paulus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see Aemilius.

**pauper**, -eris, *adj.*, poor, of small means; scanty, small; *as subst., m.*, a poor man.

**paupertās**, -ātis, *f.* [pauper], poverty, small means.

**Pausaniās**, -ae, *m.*, a *Spartan general*.

**paveō**, -ēre, **pāvi**, —, *tr. and intr.*, be afraid of; be afraid, be terrified.

**pavidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [paveō], trembling, fearful, timorous, timid.

**pavor**, -ōris, *m.* [paveō], trembling, terror.

**pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace.

**peccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, make a mistake; transgress, sin; **peccantēs**, offenders.

**pectus**, -oris, *n.*, breast; heart, mind.

**pecūnia**, -ae, *f.* [pecū, cattle], wealth, money, sum of money.

**pecus**, **pecoris**, *n.*, cattle, flock, herd.

**pecus**, -udis, *f.*, beast, animal; *in particular*, a sheep.

**pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [pēs], of a foot in thickness or diameter.

**pedes**, -itis, *m.* [pēs], foot-soldier; *collectively*, infantry.

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiaē**, infantry.

**peditātus**, -ūs, *m.* [pedes], foot-soldiers, infantry.

**Pedius**, -ī, *m.*, a *Roman name*; esp. **Quintus Pedius**, *Caesar's grand-nephew and legate*.

**pelagus**, -ī, *n.*, the sea.

**pellis**, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.

**pellō**, -ere, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, *tr.*, strike, beat; drive out or away, banish, expel; defeat, repulse.

**Pelopeius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of **Pelops**, a *king of Phrygia*; *Phrygian*.

**Peloponnēsus**, -ī, *f.*, the **Peloponnesus**, the *southern part of Greece*.

**penātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the **Penates** or *guardian deities of the household*; *fig.*, home, dwelling.

**pendeō**, -ēre, **pependi**, —, *intr.*, hang, hang in the air, overhang.

**pendō**, -ere, **pependi**, **pēnsu**, *tr.*,

weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (*as money was, in early times, weighed in payment*); *w.* **poenam**, pay, suffer.

**penetrālis**, -e, *adj.* [penetrō, enter], inner, inward; *as subst.*, *n. pl.*, inner rooms or chambers, shrine.

**penitus**, *adv.*, inwardly, far within.

**penna**, -ae, *f.*, a feather, plume; wing; flight.

**per**, *prep.* *w. acc.*, of space, through, among, amid, throughout; along, at; over, across; of time, throughout, during; of cause, by reason of, on account of; of agency, by means of, through the agency of, by; **per sē**, of oneself; *in oaths*, by; *in other relations*, through, of, by, at.

**per-agō**, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.*, drive or carry through, complete.

**percipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [per+capiō], take fully, receive, assume; perceive, hear, learn.

**percontātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [percontor], inquiring; question, inquiry.

**per-currō**, -ere, -cucurri (-curri), -cursum, *tr. and intr.*, run through or over, pass over or along.

**percutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, *tr.* [per+quatiō], strike through, strike, beat, smite.

**per-discō**, -ere, -didici, —, *tr.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart.

**per-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, destroy, ruin; lose, give over; *pf. part.* **perditus**, *as adj.*, ruined, desperate.

**per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or bring through, bring over; bring, lead, conduct; extend, construct; win, win over.

**per-eō**, -īre, -iī or -ivi, -itum, *intr.*, go through; pass away, be lost; perish, die.

**per-equitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, ride through, ride about or around.

**per-exiguus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

**per-faciļš**, -e, *adj.*, very easy.

**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear through, bear; endure, submit to; announce, report, spread abroad.

**perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [per+faciō], accomplish, complete, make.

**perfidia**, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], faithlessness, treachery.

**perfringō**, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [per+frangō], break or burst through.

**perfuga**, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee], deserter.

**per-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee for refuge, desert.

**perfugium**, -i, *n.* [perfugiō], place of refuge, refuge, shelter.

**per-fungor**, -fungī, -fūctus, *intr.*, perform, undergo, endure.

**Pergamēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to Pergamus. *Map I, I, 5.*

**pergō**, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō], go on, march, advance.

**periclitor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [periculum], try, test, prove.

**periculum**, *see* periculum.

**periculōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [periculum], dangerous.

**periculum**, *or* periculum, -i, *n.*, trial, attempt; periculum facere, to make trial; risk, peril, danger.

**perihō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [per+emō], destroy, kill, slay.

**peritus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skillful; familiar with, accustomed to.

**periūrium**, -i, *n.* [periūrus, false], perjury.

**per-maneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm, *intr.*, continue, remain.

**per-mātūrēscō**, -ere, -mātūruī, —,

*intr.* [mātūrēscō, ripen], become quite ripe, ripen.

**per-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, let go, permit, intrust, commit.

**per-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, disturb, alarm; influence.

**per-mulceō**, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.*, stroke gently; soothe; appease, conciliate.

**permūtātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [permūtō], exchange.

**per-mūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, change completely; interchange, exchange.

**perniciēs**, -ēī, *f.* [per+nex], destruction, calamity, loss, disaster.

**perniciōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [perniciēs], destructive, fatal.

**per-pauci**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few, but very few.

**perpendiculum**, -i, *n.* [perpendō, weigh carefully], plummet, plumb-line.

**Perpenna**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

**perpetuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, perpetual, permanent; in perpetuum, for all time, forever, for life.

**perquirō**, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [per+quaerō], ask for anxiously, make careful inquiry about.

**per-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.*, break through, force one's way.

**Persae**, -arum, *m.*, the Persians.

**per-sequor**, -i, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow after, follow, pursue; proceed against, take vengeance upon.

**persevērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [persevērus, very strict], persist, persevere.

**per-solvō**, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay in full, pay.

**perspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectrum, *tr.* [per+speciō, spy], see through,

perceive, see; observe, ascertain; examine, inspect.

**per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum**, *tr. and intr.*, convince, persuade, induce, satisfy; *impers. pass.*, be convinced, believe.

**per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, *tr.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.

**pertinācia, -ae, f.** [**pertināx**, stubborn], obstinacy.

**pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, *intr.* [**per+teneō**], stretch, extend; tend, have to do with; belong.

**perturbātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**perturbō**], disturbance, alarm, confusion.

**per-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *tr.*, disturb greatly, disturb, throw into confusion.

**Perusia, -ae, f.**, a city of Etruria. *Map II, C, 3.*

**per-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum**, *intr.*, come through, arrive, reach, come.

**per-vertō, -ere, -verti, -versum**, *tr.*, overturn, corrupt, undermine.

**pēs, pedis, m.**, foot; foot (as a measure); *pl.*, pace, swiftness of foot; **pedibus**, on foot; **pedem ferre**, move; **pedibus aditum habēre**, be accessible by land.

**petō, -ere, -ivi or -iī, -itum**, *tr.*, pursue, strive after, aim at, seek; attack, assail; **fugam petere**, take to flight; make for, travel to; demand, ask for; ask, beg.

**Petreius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name; *esp.* Marcus Petreius, a partisan of Pompey.

**Petrocorii, -ōrum, m.**, a people inhabiting modern Périgord. *Map IV, C-D, 4.*

**phalanx, -ngis, f.**, phalanx.

**Pharnacēs, -is, m.**, son of Mithridates.

**Philēmōn, -onis (acc. -ona), m.**, an old man of Phrygia.

**Philippi, -ōrum, m.**, a city of Macedonia. *Map I, H, 5.*

**Philippus, -ī, m.**, a king of Macedonia, Philip III.

**phōca, -ae, f.**, seal, sea-calf.

**Phōcis, -idis, f.**, Phocis, a country in Greece between Boeotia and Aetolia.

**Phrygia, -ae, f.**, a country in Asia Minor. *Map I, I, 5.*

**Phrygius, -a, -um, adj.**, Phrygian, of Phrygia.

**Picēnum, -ī, n.**, a district of eastern Italy. *Map II, D, 3-4.*

**piceus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pix**, pitch], pitchy, pitch-black.

**Pictonēs, -um, m.**, a Gallic tribe south of the Loire. *Map IV, C-D, 3.*

**pictus**, see **pingō**.

**pietās, -ātis, f.** [**pius**], dutiful behavior, duty; devotion, loyalty, faithfulness to natural ties; justice.

**pīlum, -ī, n.**, pike, heavy javelin. The pīlum was an iron-pointed missile weapon, averaging nearly two yards in length. The point at the end was almost half the length of the javelin, and was made of soft iron (except at the extreme end) so that it would bend upon striking the enemy's shield. This made it very difficult to draw out, and useless for throwing back. The pīlum could be thrown to a distance of 30 yards or more. It was the weapon used by the Roman foot-soldier in beginning battle. After the first onslaught, which was made by the **levis armātūra**, slingers and bowmen, the advancing legionary hurled the pīlum, and then, hastening forward, drew the short sword (**gladius**), and attacked at close quarters.

**pīlus, -ī, m.**, a manipule of the **triarii**, who formed the third line of the



*Roman legion; primi pili centuriō, the centurion of the first maniple, chief centurion.*

**pingō, -ere, pīnxi, pictum, tr.,** paint; *pf. part. as adj., painted, ornamented; of various colors.*

**pinna, -ae, f.,** feather, wing; *of a dolphin, fin; a parapet, battlement.*

**pirāta, -ae, m.,** pirate, corsair.

**Pirūstae, -ārum, m.,** an Illyrian people.

**piscis, -is, m.,** a fish, *used collectively, fish; the constellation of the Fishes.*

**Pisō, -ōnis, m.,** a cognomen.

**Pittheus, -ei (-eos), m.,** son of Pelops and king of Troezen.

**pīus, -a, -um, adj.,** dutiful, just, holy; *faithful to kindred, loyal.*

**placeō, -ēre, -uī (-itum est), -itum, intr.,** please, be pleasing, suit; *impers., it is settled, determined.*

**placidus, -a, -um, adj. [placeō],** calm, gentle, mild, placid.

**placitus, -a, -um, adj. [placeō],** pleasing, pleasant.

**plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** soothe, appease, placate.

**plānē, adv. [plānus],** plainly, clearly, distinctly.

**plangor, -ōris, m. [plangō, strike],** a beating, noise of beating; wailing, lamentation.

**plānitēs, -ēī, f. [plānus],** level ground, a plain.

**plānus, -a, -um, adj.,** even, level, flat; *as subst., n., a plane, level, plain.*

**Plataeae, -ārum, f.,** a town in Greece, southwest of Thebes. *Map I, H, 5.*

**plēbs, plēbis or plēbēs, -ei, f.,** common people, populace.

**plēnē, adv. [plēnus],** fully, completely, entirely.

**plēnus, -a, -um, adj.,** full; complete; filled; *of a river, swollen; plentiful.*

**plērique, -aeque, -aque, adj. [plērus, very many],** very many, the greater part or most of.

**plērumque, adv. [plērusque, most],** for the most part, commonly, frequently.

**plumbum, -i, n.,** lead; **plumbum album, tin.**

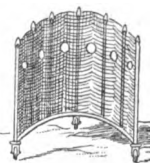
**plūrimum, see multum.**

**plūrimus, see multus.**

**plūs, adj., see multus.**

**plūs, adv., see multum.**

**pluteus, -i, m.,** shed, mantelet; defense, breastwork. *The term pluteus is usually applied to a screen, made of wickerwork, which was employed to protect the soldiers as*



*they pushed the agger forward toward a besieged city. It was generally curved into a half-cylindrical form, and ran on three rollers. Wet hides protected it from firebrands thrown from the city walls.*

**pōcūlum, -ī, n.,** drinking cup, goblet.

**poena, -ae, f.,** compensation, indemnity; punishment, penalty; vengeance.

**Poenī, see Poenus.**

**Poenicus, see Pūnicus.**

**Poenus, -a, -um, adj.,** Punic, Carthaginian; *as subst., m., a Carthaginian; Poenī, the Phoenicians, i.e., the Carthaginians, who were descended from them.*

**poēta, -ae, m.,** a poet.

**pollex, -icis, m.,** the thumb; **digitus pollex, the thumb.**



**polliceor**, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, offer, promise.

**pollicitatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [pollicitor, promise], a promise, offer.

**Pōmētia**, -ae, *f.*, see *Suessa*.

**Pompeius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; (1) Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the triumvir, son-in-law and rival of Julius Caesar. (2) Gnaeus Pompeius, son of (1).

**Pompilius**, -i, *m.*, see *Numa*.

**pōmum**, -i, *n.*, fruit; an apple.

**pōndō**, *adv.* [cf. *pondus*], by weight, in weight.

**pondus**, -eris, *n.*, weight, mass; load, burden.

**pōnō**, -erē, posuī, positum, *tr.*, put, place, set, set up, fix; lay, lay down, put down; arma pōnere, lay or throw down one's arms; consign, lay away, store up; ar range; *w. castra*, pitch; arrange; *pass.*, depend on; *pf. part.* positus, situated, lying.

**pōns**, pontis, *m.*, bridge, draw-bridge, passageway.

**pontus**, -i, *m.*, the sea, the deep.

**Pontus**, -i, *m.*, a country of Asia Minor, situated on the Black Sea. *Map I, J, 4.*

**populatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [populor], a ravaging, pillaging.

**populor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

**populus**, -i, *m.*, people, nation, body of citizens; throng, multitude.

**porrigō**, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [por = prō + regō], stretch forth, reach, extend.

**Porsenna**, -ae, *m.*, a king of Etruria.

**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, city gate.

**portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, bear, carry; transport, bring.

**portōrium**, -i, *n.* [portus], import or export tax, duty.

**pontus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port, haven.

**poscō**, -ere, poposci, —, *tr.*, ask, ask urgently, beg; ask for, demand.

**positus**, see *pōnō*.

**possessiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [possidō], possession, occupation; property.

**possideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por = prō + sedeō], be master of, hold, possess, occupy.

**possidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por = prō + sidō], settle, take possession of, occupy, seize.

**possum**, posse, potuī, —, *intr.* [potis, able + sum], be able, can, have power or influence; multum posse, have much power or influence; tantum posse, be so strong.

**post**, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*; as *adv.*, behind, in the rear; after, afterward, later; as *prep.*, behind, after, since.

**post-eā**, *adv.*, afterward.

**postea-quam**, *adv.*, after.

**posterus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [post], the following, next; *m. pl. as subst.*, descendants, posterity; *comp.*, posterior, -ius; *sup.*, postrēmus, -a, -um, last; ad postrēmum, at last, finally.

**postis**, -is, *m.*, post, door-post; *pl.*, door.

**postliminium**, -i, *n.* [post + limen, threshold], a return to one's old condition and privileges, right of return.

**post-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place behind; neglect, disregard.

**post-quam**, *conj.*, after, as soon as, when.

**postrēmō**, *adv.* [postrēmus], at last, finally.

**postrēmus**, see *posterus*.

**postridiē**, *adv.* [locative posterī + diē], next day; postridiē eius diē, the next or following day.

**postulātum**, -i, *n.* [pf. part. of

- postulō**, a demand, claim, request.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, demand, ask for, require.
- Postumius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
- (1) Spurius Postumius, *consul in 321 B.C.*
- (2) Aulus Postumius Albinus, *consul in 241 B.C.*
- potēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of possum*], mighty, powerful, influential, victorious; *w. vōti*, having attained; *as subst., pl.*, **potentiorēs**, the more powerful people or citizens.
- potentātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns**], power, supremacy.
- potentia**, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**], power, might; *political* power, sovereignty; influence.
- potestās**, -ātis, *f.* [**potis**, able], power, authority; ability; opportunity, chance, possibility; permission; **potestātem facere**, give an opportunity, grant permission.
- potior**, -iri, -itus, *intr.* [**potis**, able], become master of, get possession of, acquire; possess.
- potius**, *comp. adv.* [**potis**, able], rather, preferably; *sup.*, **potissimum**, especially, in preference to all others.
- prae**, *prep. with abl.*, before; in comparison with.
- prae-acūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed.
- praebeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**prae+habeō**], hold out, offer, give; **opiniōnem praebeēre**, give an impression; furnish, afford.
- prae-caveō**, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.*, take precautions.
- prae-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.*, go before, precede.
- praeceps**, -cipitis, *adj.* [**prae+caput**], head foremost, headlong, precipitate; steep, precipitous.
- praeceptum**, -ī, *n.* [**praeceptiō**], command.
- praeceptiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**prae+capīō**], take in advance; instruct, order.
- praecipitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**praeceps**], throw headlong, throw; rush headlong, sink, fall.
- praecipuē**, *adv.* [**praecipuus**], chiefly, especially.
- praecipuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**praeceptiō**], taken before *other things*; eminent, prominent.
- praecūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.* [**prae+claudō**], close or shut in front, shut or cut off.
- Praecōninus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; *esp.* Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate.
- praeda**, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder; prey; **praedam facere**, get booty.
- prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, proclaim, declare, assert.
- praedor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [**praeda**], plunder, pillage.
- prae-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead before; make or construct before or in front, construct.
- praefectus**, -ī, *m.* [**prae-ficiō**], overseer, commander, officer, captain of cavalry. *The title praefectus stood for no definite rank, but was applied to the chief officers of the auxiliary force (e.g. praefectus equitum), the engineers (e.g. praefectus fabrum), etc.*
- prae-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry in front, carry in procession, display; put before, prefer; **sē praeferre alicui**, show oneself better than some one.
- prae-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**prae+faciō**], place over, place in command of.
- prae-fixō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fix or fasten before, set in front or on the end.

**prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.,** send forward or in advance.  
**praemium, -ī, n.,** reward, recompense, prize.  
**Praeneste, -is, n.,** one of the oldest cities of Latium. *Map I, B, 8.*  
**prae-optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** choose, prefer.  
**prae-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** prepare beforehand, provide.  
**prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr.,** place before, place in command of, set over.  
**prae-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr.,** break off, tear away.  
**praeruptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praerumpō],** steep, rugged.  
**prae-saepiō, -ire, -psī, -ptum, tr.,** hedge or block up, barricade.  
**prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.,** order, direct, prescribe.  
**praescriptum, -ī, n. [praescribō],** order, dictation.  
**praesēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of praesum],** present, in person; prompt; powerful; aiding, propitious.  
**praesentia, -ae, f. [praesēns],** presence, the present; in **praesentiā,** for the present.  
**praesertim, adv.,** especially, particularly.  
**praesidium, -ī, n. [praeses],** defense, protection, aid, garrison, guard, outpost; redoubt, stronghold; safety.  
**prae-stō, -āre, -iti, -itum, tr. and intr.,** stand before, surpass; show, exhibit; supply, furnish, give, bestow; discharge, perform; **prae-stat, impers.,** it is better.  
**prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr.,** be over, be in command of, be in charge of; rule over.  
**praeter, adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv.,** besides; **as prep.,** beyond; besides, except; contrary to.

**praeter-eā, adv.,** beyond this, besides, furthermore.  
**praeter-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr.,** go by, pass by; outstrip; pass over, leave unmentioned, omit, neglect; **pf. part. as adj.,** past; **as subst., n.,** the past.  
**praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.,** send by; let pass, overlook.  
**praeter-quam, adv.,** besides, except.  
**prae-texō, -ere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave],** weave in front, edge, border.  
**praetor, -ōris, m. [for praetor from prae-eō, go in front],** leader; general, praetor.  
**praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor],** of a praetor, pretorian; **as subst., m.,** a man of pretorian rank, ex-praetor.  
**praetūra, -ae, f. [praetor],** praetorship.  
**prae-ustus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praeūrō, burn at the end],** burned in front or at the end.  
**prandium, -ī, n.,** luncheon.  
**prātum, -ī, n.,** meadow, mead.  
**prāvus, -a, -um, adj.,** distorted; vicious, bad.  
**precor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr. [prex],** ask, supplicate, pray, offer prayer to.  
**premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, tr.,** press, press hard, urge; mark, imprint, tread on; oppress, harass, annoy; **in a military sense,** press hard, overwhelm; **pf. part. pressus,** pressed down, marked; overwhelmed.  
**prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsūm, tr.,** grasp, seize.  
**pressus, see premo.**  
**pretium, -ī, n.,** price; reward, recompense; ransom; punishment.  
**prex, precis, f.,** prayer, request, entreaty.  
**prīdiē, adv.,** on the day before.

**primipīlus**, -ī, *m.* [primus+pīlus], the first or chief centurion.

**primitiæ**, -ārum, *f.* [primus], the first yield, first fruits.

**primō**, *adv.* [primus], at the beginning, at first; first.

**primum**, *adv.* [primus], first, at first; **cum primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

**primus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of prior*], first, foremost, earliest; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the first men, foremost men; in **primis**, especially.

**princeps**, -ipis, *adj.* [primus+capiō], first, foremost, chief, eminent; as *subst.*, *m.*, leader, chief.

**principātus**, -ūs, *m.* [princeps], chief authority, leadership, headship.

**prior**, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, first; superior; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, those in advance; forefathers, the ancients.

**Priscus**, -ī, *m.*, elder; as a *cognomen*, the Elder.

**prīstinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, preceding, previous; **prīstinus diēs**, the day before.

**prius**, *comp. adv.* [prior], before, previously; first; **prius . . . quam**, sooner . . . than, before.

**prius-quam**, *conj.*, sooner than, before.

**privātim**, *adv.* [privātus], privately, individually.

**privātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of privō*], individual, private; as *subst.*, *m.*, a private citizen.

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in return or exchange for, instead of; in the character of, as; in accordance with, in proportion to, in view of, considering.

**probābilis**, -e, *adj.* [probō], worthy of approval, good.

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, [probus, good], approve of, prove, demonstrate, esteem, favor, adopt.

**prō-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go or come forward, advance; **iter prōcēdere**, make a journey.

**Procillus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman *cognomen*.

**Proclēs**, -ī (-is), *m.*, brother of Eurysthenes, son of Aristodemus.

**prō-cōsul**, -is, *m.*, the governor of a province, proconsul.

**procul**, *adv.*, at a distance, distant, far, from afar; far from, without; **procul dubiō**, without doubt.

**prōculcō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [prō+calcō], tread down, trample upon.

**prō-cumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [-cumbō, recline], lean over, lean forward; lie down, fall; slope.

**prō-cūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, take care of, attend to.

**prōdeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō], go forth or forward, advance.

**prōditor**, -ōris, *m.* [prōdō], betrayer, traitor.

**prō-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, make known, hand down; betray.

**prō-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or bring forth, bring; *w.* **cōpiās**, draw up; prolong, protract.

**proelior**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [proelium], join battle, engage, fight.

**proelium**, -ī, *n.*, battle, skirmish, engagement.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor], a departure.

**prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.*, carry out, bring out or forth.

**prōficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [prō+faciō], make progress, advance, gain an advantage; accomplish.

**proficiscor**, -ī, profectus, *intr.* [*cf. proficiō*], set out, depart; proceed.

**profiteor**, -ērī, -fessus, *tr. and intr.* [prō+fateor], state publicly, avow or declare one's purpose.

**prōfligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, crush completely, overthrow, put to flight.

**prō-fluō**, -ere, -flūxi, —, *intr.*, flow forth or along, issue, rise.

**pro-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee from or before, flee, escape.

**pro-fundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fundus, bottom], deep, vast; as *subst.*, *m.*, the depths of the sea, the deep, sea.

**prōgeniēs**, -ēi, *f.* [prō+gignō], progeny, race.

**prōgenitor**, -ōris, *m.* [prōgeniēs], ancestor, progenitor.

**prō-gnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, born, descended.

**prōgredior**, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [prō+gradior], go forward, march out, advance, proceed.

**prōgressus**, -ūs, *m.* [prōgredior], progress.

**prohibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prō+habeō], hold before, restrain, keep, prevent; hinder from, cut off; protect; *abs.*, offer resistance.

**prōciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [prō+iaciō], throw forward, throw away, abandon; throw down, cast.

**Promēthidēs**, -ae, *m.*, son of Prometheus, Deucalion.

**prō-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, let hang down, let grow; promise, assure; give hope of.

**prō-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move forward, advance; extend.

**prōmptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of prōmō, bring out], manifest, evident; prepared, ready; quick, prompt.

**prōmunturium**, -ī, *n.* [prōmineō, project], headland, promontory.

**prōnē**, *adv.* [prōnus], in an inclined position, sloping downward.

**prō-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,

announce, publish, relate, report.

**prōnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bending forward, on one's face; headlong.

**prōpāgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, extend, enlarge.

**propatulum**, -ī, *n.* [pateō], open space, court.

**prope**, *prep.* with *acc.* and *adv.*; as *prep.*, near, near to; as *adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; *comp.*, propius, *sup.*, proximē, nearest, very near; last, latest.

**prō-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward or forth, put to flight, rout, dislodge, break down.

**properē**, *adv.* [properus, quick], hastily, quickly.

**properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry; do with haste.

**propinquitās**, -ātis, *f.* [propinquus], nearness, proximity, relationship, kinship.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope], near; as *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, a relative, kinsman or kinswoman.

**prō-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, put forth, offer, suggest; state, explain, represent; present, raise, display.

**proprius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, own, special; peculiar, characteristic.

**propter**, *prep.* with *acc.*, near; on account of.

**propter-eā**, *adv.*, for this reason, therefore; propterea quod, because.

**prō-pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, sally; hurl weapons; fight for, defend.

**prōpulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of prōpellō], drive forth or off, drive back, repel.

**prōra**, -ae, *f.*, the bow of a ship, prow.

**prōrsus**, *adv.* [prō+vorsus = versus], by all means, indeed, certainly.

- prō-ruō**, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, tear down, overthrow, demolish.
- prō-scribō**, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, publish; proscribe, outlaw.
- prō-sequor**, -i, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow up; pursue; address, take leave of.
- prōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō], view, prospect; in prōspectū, in sight; faculty of sight, sight.
- prōspērē**, *adv.* [prōspērus, as desired], favorably, prosperously.
- prōspiciō**, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [prō+speciō, spy], look forward; have a prospect of, overlook; descry, discern, see afar, observe; look out for, take precautions.
- prō-steruō**, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.*, throw forward or to the ground, overthrow, ruin.
- prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfui, —, *intr.*, be useful, profit, benefit, help.
- prō-terreō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, frighten or drive away, affright.
- prōtinus**, *adv.* [prō+tenus], forward; next, then; at once, immediately.
- prō-turbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse.
- prō-vehō**, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; usually *pass.*, move forward, sail.
- prōventus**, -ūs, *m.* [prōveniō, come forth], a coming forth; issue, result.
- prō-vidēō**, -ēre, -vidi, -visum, *tr.*, see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide.
- prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, office; province.
- prō-volō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, fly or rush forth.
- proximē**, *see* prope.
- proximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup.* of propior], nearest, next, very near; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, bystanders, neighbors.
- prūdētia**, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns], foresight, discretion, prudence.
- pruinōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pruīna, frost], frosty, covered with frost.
- prūnum**, -i, *n.*, plum.
- Prūsia**, -ae, *m.*, king of Pontus.
- Pseudophilippus**, -i, *m.*, the pretended Philip.
- Ptiani**, -ōrum, *m.*, an Aquitanian tribe about modern Pau. Map IV, C, 5.
- pūblicē**, *adv.* [pūblicus], in behalf of the people or state, officially; as a state.
- pūblicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pūblicus], make public, confiscate.
- Pūbicola**, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen; see Valerius.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus], belonging to the state, common, public; as *subst.*, *n.*, public place.
- Pūblius**, -i, *m.*, a praenomen.
- pudor**, -ōris, *m.* [pudet], shame, modesty, propriety.
- puella**, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of puer], girl, maiden.
- puer**, -i, *m.*, boy, child; lad, young man; *pl.*, children.
- puerilis**, -e, *adj.* [puer], childish, boyish, youthful.
- puerulus**, -i, *m.* [*dim.* of puer], little boy.
- pugna**, -ae, *f.*, battle.
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [pugna], fight, contend, struggle.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful, handsome; noble, honorable; *comp.*, pulchrior, *sup.*, pulcherri-mus.
- pullulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [pullulus, sprout], sprout out, grow, increase.
- pullus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark, blackish.
- pulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of pellō], push, strike or beat, strike or beat against.

**pulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [pellō], stroke, beat;  
**pulsus rēmōrum**, rowing.

**pulvis**, -eris, *m. and f.*, dust.

**pūniceus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Pūnicus],  
 reddish, red, purple.

**Pūnicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Poenus],  
 Punic, Carthaginian.

**puppis**, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship; ship.

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [pūrus  
 +agō], clean, clear; excuse, exonerate.

**purpureus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [purpura,  
 purple], purple, crimson.

**pūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. putō], clean,  
 pure.

**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, clean,  
 clear up; consider, suppose, think.

**Pŷramus**, -ī, *m.*, a young man of  
 Babylon, the lover of Thisbe.

**Pŷrēnaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyre-  
 naean; with or without montēs (or  
 saltus), the Pyrenees. *Map I*,  
 B-C, 4.

**Pyrrha**, -ae, *f.*, the daughter of  
 Epimetheus and wife of Deu-  
 calion.

**Pyrrhus**, -ī, *m.*, a king of Epirus.

## Q

**Q.**, *abbr. for* Quīntus.

**quā**, *adv.* [quī], where, by which  
 way; to what extent, as far as.

**quācumque**, *adv.* [quīcumque], wher-  
 ever.

**quadrāgēnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*  
*adj.* [quadrāgintā], forty each,  
 forty.

**quadrāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*  
 [quadrāgintā], fortieth.

**quadrāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty.

**quadrīngēnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*  
*adj.* [quadrīngentī], four hundred  
 each.

**quadrīngentēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num.*  
*adj.* [quadrīngentī], four-hun-  
 dredth.

**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*  
 [quattuor+centum], four hundred.

**quadrīngentīēs**, *num. adv.* [quad-  
 rīngentī], four hundred times.

**quaerō**, -ere, -sīvi or -sīī, -sītum, *tr.*,  
 seek, hunt for; seek to obtain,  
 strive for; ask, inquire, examine.

**quaestiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō], inquiry,  
 investigation, examination.

**quaestor**, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō], a  
 quaestor. *The quaestor in the serv-*  
*ice of the proconsul was properly*  
*a financial officer who had charge*  
*of the pay rolls and supplies, the*  
*commissariat, and the valuation*  
*and sale of the spoils taken in war.*  
*Occasionally, however, he was in-*  
*trusted with a military command,*  
*and performed the same service*  
*as the lēgātus.*

**quaestus**, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō], gaining,  
 acquisition, profit.

**quālis**, -e, *adj.*; *interrog.*, of what  
 sort? what kind of? *rel.*, of  
 such a kind, such as, as.

**quam**, *adv.*, to what degree, how,  
 how greatly; *after comparatives*,  
 than; *after expressions of time*,  
 later than, after; *correl. w. tam*  
*expressed or understood*, as; *with*  
*superlatives*, as . . . as possible.

**quam-diū**, *adv.*, as long as.

**quam ob rem** or **quamobrem**, *see* rēs.

**quam-quam**, *conj.*, although, though.

**quandō**, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

**quantum**, *adv.* [quantus], as much  
 as, as far as, as much; how much,  
 how far, to how great an extent.

**quantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*; *interrog.*, how  
 great? how large? how much?  
**quantō opere**, how much? how  
 deeply? *rel.*, as great, as large or as  
 much as; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, as  
 much or so much . . . as; *as subst.*,  
*n.*, how much, how little.

**quā-rē**, *adv.*, whereby, by reason of  
 which, wherefore; for this reason,  
 therefore, then.

**quártus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [quattuor], fourth, the fourth.

**qua-si**, *adv.*, as if, just as if, as though; as, as it were.

**quattuor**, *indecl. num. adj.*, four.

**quattuordecim**, *indecl. num. adj.* [quattuor+decem], fourteen.

**-que**, *conj., encl.*, and; **-que . . . -que**, both . . . and.

**quercus**, -ūs, *f.*, an oak, oak-tree.

**queror**, -ī, *questus, tr. and intr.*, complain, lament; complain of, find fault with.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *pron.; interrog., used subst. and adj.*, who? which? what? what kind of? *rel.*, who, which, what, that; *often best translated by a pers. or dem. pron. with or without "and"; indef. rel.*, whoever, whichever, whatever; anyone who, anything that.

**quī**, *adv.* [quī], how.

**quia**, *conj.*, because.

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*; as *adj.*, certain, some, a; as *subst.*, a certain one, somebody, something.

**quidem**, *adv.*, *postpositive*, indeed, it is true, even; **nē . . . quidem**, not even, not . . . either.

**quiēs**, **quiētis**, *f.*, rest, quiet; **quiētem capere**, to rest.

**quiēscō**, -ere, **quiēvī**, **quiētum**, *intr.* [quiēs], rest, be inactive.

**quī-libet**, **quae-libet**, **quod-libet**, *indef. pron.*, any, all.

**quīn**, *conj. and adv.* [quī+ne]; as *conj.*, but, but that, so that not; after words of doubt or ignorance, that, but that; after words of hindering, from; as *adv.*, nay, nay even, moreover; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover.

**Quinctius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

**quīncūnx**, -ūncis, *m.* [quīnque+ūncia, twelfth], five twelfths; anything arranged in oblique lines or rows, the figure formed by the four corners of a square and its middle point, a quincunx.

**quindecim**, *indecl. num. adj.* [quīnque+decem], fifteen.

**quīngentēsimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīngentī], five-hundredth.

**quīngentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [quīnque+centum], five hundred.

**quīnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [quīnque], five each.

**quīnquāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnquāgintā], fiftieth.

**quīnquāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty.

**quīnque**, *indecl. num. adj.*, five.

**quīnquīēs**, *num. adj.* [quīnque], five times.

**quīntus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnque], fifth.

**Quīntus**, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

**Quīrīnālīs**, -e, *adj.* [Quīrīnus], of Quīrīnus or Romulus, Quīrīnāl; as *subst.*, *m.* (sc. collis), the Quīrīnāl Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

**quīs**, **quae** (qua), **quīd**, *indef. pron.*, anybody, anyone, anything, any.

**quīs**, **quae**, **quīd**, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? what a? what sort of? *acc. n.*, with *adv. use*, quīd, what? what amount? how far? in what respect? how? why?

**quīs-nam**, **quaenam**, **quīdnām**, *interrog. pron.*, who or what then? pray who or what?

**quīspīam**, **quaeπīam**, **quodpīam**, and as *subst.*, **quīdpīam** or **quīppīam**, *indef. adj. pron.*, anyone, anything, any.

**quīs-quām**, **quaequām**, **quīdquām** or **quīcquām**, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, anyone, anybody, anything; as *adj.*, any.

**quīs-que**, **quaeque**, **quīdque** or **quod-**



**que**, *indef. pron.*, each one, every one; *as adj.*, each, every.  
**quisquis, quicquid**, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever, every one or everything which.  
**qui-vīs, quaevis, quidvis** (*adj.*, quodvis), *indef. pron.*, who or what you wish; anyone, anything, any whatever, any.  
**quō**, *conj.*, in order that, that; **quō minus** or **quōminus**, so that . . . not, that . . . not, from.  
**quō**, *adv.* [qui]; *interrog.*, whither? where? *rel.*, whither, where; and to this, to this point; *indef.*, anywhere.  
**quo-ad**, *adv.*, as far as, as long as; till, until.  
**quod**, *adv. and conj.* [qui]; *as adv.*, in respect of which, in what; *in transitions with other particles*, as **si, nisi, quoniam**, etc., but, though; *as conj.*, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that, because, since.  
**quōminus**, *see quō*.  
**quondam**, *adv.*, once, formerly.  
**quoniam**, *conj.* [quom+iam], since, as, seeing that.  
**quoque**, *conj.*, placed after the emphatic word, also, too.  
**quōque** **versus**, in every direction.  
**quot**, *indecl. adj.*; *rel.*, as many as, as; *interrog.*, how many?  
**quot-annis**, *adv.*, as many years as there are; every year, yearly.  
**quotiēns**, *adv.* [quot], how often? how many times? as often as, as many times as.  
**quotiēnscumque**, *adv.*, as often as, whenever.  
**quousque**, *adv.*, till when, until.

R

**Racilia**, -ae, *f.*, the wife of Cincinnatus.  
**radius**, -ī, *m.*, rod; beam, ray

**rādix**, -icis, *f.*, root; radish; *pl.*, w. montis or collis, foot, base.  
**rādō**, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.*, scrape, shave; touch *in passing*, graze.  
**raeda**, -ae, *f.*, wagon.  
**rāmālia**, -ium, *n.* [rāmus], twigs, brushwood.  
**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch, twig.  
**rapiditās**, -ātis, *f.* [rapidus, seizing], swiftness.  
**rapina**, -ae, *f.* [rapiō], robbery, pillage.  
**rapiō**, -ere, -puī, -ptum, *tr.*, carry off, seize, snatch or hurry away, sweep away, take by force, rob.  
**rārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart, here and there, few; rare.  
**ratiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ratus], account, reckoning; **pecūniae ratiōnem habēre**, take an account, consider; **ratiōnem inīre**, cast up accounts, make a reckoning, plan; **ratiō atque ūsus**, theory and practice; method, way, measure; reason, ground; theory, science, art; **ratiō ōrdōque**, plan and arrangement; affair, transaction.  
**ratis**, -is, *f.*, raft, boat, vessel.  
**Rauraci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. *Map IV, G, 3.*  
**re-** or **red-**, inseparable particle, used in composition, back, again.  
**rebelliō**, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellis, revolted], a renewal of war, revolt; **rebelliōnem facere**, renew the war.  
**Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.  
**re-cādō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, move back, retreat.  
**recēns**, -entis, *adj.*, new, fresh, recent, late; **animae recentēs**, souls of those lately dead.  
**re-cēnsēō**, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsu, *tr.*, count over, enumerate, review.  
**receptus**, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō], a place of withdrawal, refuge; retreat, withdrawal; **receptum** or **receptūs canere**, sound the retreat.

**re-cingō, -ere, -cīnxi, -cinctum, tr.,**  
ungird, loosen.

**reciperō, see recuperō.**

**recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re-+capīō],** take back, receive, admit; **recipere in fidem,** take under one's protection; **sē recipere,** recover oneself, betake oneself, withdraw, retreat, return.

**re-clinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [clinō, bend],** bend or lean back, recline.

**re-cognōscō, -ere, -cognōvi, -cognitum, tr.,** know again, recognize, recall.

**re-condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** hide away; close again, shut.

**rēctē, adv. [rēctus],** straightly, rightly, well.

**rēctor, -ōris, m. [regō],** a guider, ruler, governor, master.

**rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of regō],** straight, direct.

**recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** win back, recover.

**recusō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causa],** refuse, decline, be reluctant.

**re-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** give back, restore, give up, resign; render, make; make or cause to be; utter in response; *w. iūs,* administer; offer.

**red-eō, -ire, -iī or -ivi, -itum, intr.,** turn back, return, turn; come around, be brought; slope down.

**redigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō],** drive back; reduce, bring; render, make.

**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [red-+emō],** buy back, ransom; release.

**red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [integrō, make whole],** renew, restore.

**reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō],** a returning, return.

**reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō],** a going back, returning, return.

**red-oleō, -ēre, -olui, —, intr. [oleō, smell],** emit scent, be odorous.

**Redonēs, -um, m.,** a Gallic tribe living near modern Rennes. *Map IV, C, 2-3.*

**re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.,** lead or conduct back; extend back.

**re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum, tr.,** bring back, move back; **pedem referre,** move backward, retreat; bring again, bring; report, tell.

**rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit, —, intr. [rēs+ferō],** it is of advantage, matters.

**reficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, tr. [re-+faciō],** remake, renew, refresh, recruit; repair, refit; with **sē,** recover.

**refringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractum, tr. [re-+frangō],** break in or open, break, destroy.

**re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, intr.,** flee back, escape.

**rēgina, -ae, f. [rēx],** queen.

**Rēginus, -i, m.,** a cognomen.

**regiō, -ōnis, f. [regō],** direction, line, region, country; neighborhood, situation.

**rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [rēx],** of a king, royal, king's; befitting a king, regal; as *subst., m. pl.,* the king's officers or troops.

**rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [rēgnum],** be king, reign, govern, rule over.

**rēgnum, -i, n. [rēx],** royal authority, sovereignty, supremacy, rule, reign, kingdom.

**regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, tr.,** rule, govern; guide, control.

**regredior, -i, -gressus, intr. [re-+gradior],** go back, return.

**Rēgulus, -i, m.,** a cognomen; esp. Marcus Atilius Regulus, a hero of the First Punic war.

**reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [re-+**

- iaciō**, throw or hurl back, drive back.
- re-languescō**, -ere, -guī, —, *intr.*, grow faint or weak.
- re-laxō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, unloose, open.
- re-levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, lift up, make light, ease, rest.
- religiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, piety; moral obligation, oath; religious matters in general.
- re-linguō**, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave; *impers. pass.*, be left, remain.
- reliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō], remaining, other, rest of; in *reliquum tempus*, afterward, for the future; *n.*, as *subst.*, a remainder, residue, rest.
- re-mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, send back word.
- re-maneō**, -ēre, -mānsi, —, *intr.*, remain, be left.
- rēmex**, -igis, *m.* [rēmus+agō], rower, oarsman.
- rēmigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [rēmex], propel the oar, row.
- re-migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, move or go back, return.
- reminiscor**, -i, —, *intr.*, recall, remember.
- remissus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of remittō], relaxed, not rigid, mild.
- re-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send back, throw back; remit; release; relax, weaken.
- re-mollēscō**, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [mollēscō, become soft], grow soft, melt; be enervated or weakened; be influenced.
- re-moror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, tarry, linger, delay.
- remōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [removeō], remote.
- re-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr. and intr.*, move back or away, put aside, withdraw, remove.
- re-mūneror**, -āri, -ātus, *tr.* [mūneror, reward], reward, repay.
- Rēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or one of the Remi; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Remi, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, E-F, 2.*
- rēmus**, -i, *m.*, oar.
- re-novō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [novō, make new], renew.
- re-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, bring back word, report.
- reor**, rēri, ratus, *tr.*, believe, think, suppose.
- reparābilis**, -e, *adj.* [reparō], that may be repaired, repairable.
- re-parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, get again, replace; renew, restore.
- re-pellō**, -ere, reppuli, repulsum, *tr.*, drive back, repel, drive away; reject, refuse; refute, confute.
- repente**, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly.
- repentinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty.
- reperiō**, -ire, repperi, repertum, *tr.*, find again; find, meet with; discover, find out, ascertain.
- re-petō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *tr.*, ask back, exact; seek again, recall.
- re-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [-pleō, fill], fill again, fill up, fill.
- rēpō**, -ere, rēpsi, —, *intr.*, creep, crawl.
- re-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore, place.
- re-portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry back, get, win; *praemium reportāre*, win a reward.
- re-praesentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [praesentō, place before], do at once.
- re-prehendō**, -ere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.*, draw back; blame, censure.
- reprimō**, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [re-+premō], press or keep back, curb, check, restrain.

**repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [repudium, putting away], put away; refuse, scorn.

**re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** fight back, oppose, resist.

**re-quiēs, -ētis (acc. requiem), f.,** rest, repose; respite, intermission.

**re-quiēscō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, intr.** [quiēscō, become quiet], rest, repose; *of the dead*, rest, sleep.

**requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr.** [re-+quaerō], seek again, look after, search for.

**rēs, rei, f.,** a thing, matter, affair; **rēs militāris**, warfare, the art of war; **rēs frumentāria**, grain-supply, provisions; **rēs divinae**, religious exercises, divine worship, sacrifice; fact, circumstance; **quam ob rem**, why; case, deed; **rem gerere**, fight; achievement, event; *pl.*, things *in general*, the universe; **rēs or rēs pública**, the state, commonwealth, republic, civil affairs, government; **novae rēs**, a change of government, revolution; interest, fortune; uncertainty, trouble; means; habit, custom.

**re-scindō, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, tr.,** cut or break down, tear down, destroy.

**re-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, tr.,** find out, learn.

**re-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.,** write again; transfer, promote.

**re-secō, -āre, -secui, -sectum, tr.,** cut off.

**re-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** keep back, save up, reserve.

**resideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, intr.** [re-+sedeō], sit or remain behind, sit, remain.

**re-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, intr.,** remain standing, halt, stop; make a stand, resist, withstand, oppose.

**re-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr.,** unbind, loose, loosen.

**respicō, -ere, -spexi, -spectrum, tr. and intr.** [re-+speciō, spy], look back, look at, regard; contemplate, be mindful of.

**re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum, intr.,** answer, reply; correspond.

**respōnsum, -i, n.** [respondeō], an answer, reponse.

**re-spuō, -ere, -spui, —, tr.** [spuō, spit], refuse, reject.

**restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr.** [re-+statuō], replace, restore, reinstate; renew; *w.* **aciem**, form again.

**re-stō, -stāre, -stiti, —, intr.,** hold out; resist, oppose; be left, remain.

**re-supīnus, -a, -um, adj.,** lying on the back, facing upward.

**retineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.** [re-+teneō], hold or keep back, retain, detain, hold; maintain.

**re-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.,** drag or bring back.

**retrō, adv.,** backward, to the rear, back.

**re-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, tr.** [vellō, tear], pull or tear away, pull out; wrest away.

**reverentia, -ae, f.** [revereor, revere], awe, reverence.

**re-vertō, -ere, -ti, — (regularly in pf. tenses only) or re-vertor, -i, -versus, intr.,** turn back, return.

**re-vinciō, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctum, tr.,** bind back or fast, fasten, bind.

**re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** recall, call off, withdraw; recover.

**rēx, rēgis, m.,** king.

**Rhēa, -ae, f.,** *praenomen* of Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

**Rhēnus, -i, m.,** the Rhine, which formed the boundary between Gaul and Germany. Map I, D-E, 2-3.

**Rhodanus**, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone, a river of Gaul. *Map I, D, 3-4.*

**Rhodiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of Rhodes.

**rictus**, -ūs, *m.*, gaping jaws, jaws.

**rigor**, -ōris, *m.* [rigēō], hardness, firmness.

**riguus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [rigō, to water], watered; besprinkled, spattered.

**rīma**, -ae, *f.*, cleft, chink, crack.

**rīpa**, -ae, *f.*, bank of a river, bank, margin.

**rīsus**, -ūs, *m.* [rīdeō], laughter.

**rōbur**, -oris, *n.*, oak-tree, oak, oak-timber; strength, vigor.

**rōbustus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōbur], strong.

**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question, request; ask for, beg.

**rogus**, -ī, *m.*, funeral pyre.

**Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome. *Map I, E, 4.*

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rome, Roman; *as subst., m.*, a Roman, *pl.*, the Romans.

**Rōmulus**, -ī, *m.*, the mythical founder and first king of Rome.

**rōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [rōs, dew], shed moisture, drip.

**rōstrātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōstrum], furnished with a beak, beaked.

**rōstrum**, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw], beak, snout, muzzle; beak or prow of a ship; *pl.*, the Rostra, or speaker's platform in the forum.

**rota**, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

**ruber**, rubra, rubrum, *adj.*, red; rubrum mare, the Red Sea, the Arabian and Persian Gulf.

**rubus**, -ī, *m.*, bramble.

**rudis**, -e, *adj.*, unformed, rough, coarse; rude, inexperienced.

**Rūfinus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see Cornēlius.

**Rūfus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see Sulpicus.

**rūgōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [rūga, wrinkle], wrinkled, shriveled.

**rūmor**, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, rumor, gossip.

**rumpō**, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.*, break; break in upon, interrupt.

**ruō**, -ere, rūī, rutum, *tr.*, fall or rush down, hasten, rush.

**rūpēs**, -is, *f.* [rumpō], rock, cliff.

**rūrsum**, see rūrsus.

**rūrsus** or **rūrsum**, *adv.* [reversus or reversum, *pf. part. of revertō*], back, back again, again, once more, in turn, further.

**Rutēni**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe. *Map IV, D-E, 4-5.*

**Rutilus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen of one of Caesar's lieutenants.

## S

**Sabīnī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sabines, an Italian people adjoining the Latins on the north. *Map II, D, 4.*

**Sabīnus**, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of the legate Quintus Titurius.

**Sabis**, -is, *m.*, a tributary of the Meuse, the modern Sambre. *Map IV, E-F, 1.*

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, dedicated, sacred; holy.

**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [sacer], a priest, priestess.

**sacrārium**, -ī, *n.* [sacer], a shrine, sanctuary.

**sacrificium**, -ī, *n.* [sacrificus, sacrificial], sacrifice.

**sacrificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [sacer+faciō], sacrifice.

**sacrilegus**, -ī, *m.* [sacer+legō], one that robs a temple, an impious person.

**sacrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sacer], consecrate, dedicate.

**sacrum**, -ī, *n.* [sacer], something holy; *pl.*, sacred things, sacred images; religious rites, sacrifices.

**saeculum**, -ī, *n.*, generation, age.

**saepe**, *adv.*, often, frequently.  
**saepenumerō**, *adv.* [saepe+numerus], often, again and again.  
**saepēs**, -is, *f.* hedge.  
**saepiō**, -ire, -psī, -ptum, *tr.* [saepēs], hedge in, inclose, fortify, guard.  
**saeviō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus], rage, be furious, be violent.  
**saevus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fierce, furious; cruel, harsh.  
**sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow, shaft.  
**sagittārius**, -ī, *m.* [sagitta], bowman, archer. *Caesar's archers came, for the most part, from Crete. They were armed with bows of more than 3½ feet in length, and carried quivers, each of which contained from 12 to 14 arrows.*  
**Saguntini**, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Saguntum.  
**Saguntum**, -ī, *n.*, a city on the east coast of Spain. *Map I, C, 5.*  
**Salamis**, -inis, *f.*, an island near the coast of Attica, west of Athens. *Map I, H, 6.*  
**salignus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [salix], of willow-wood, willow.  
**Salinātor**, -ōris, *m.*, a cognomen.  
**salix**, -icis, *f.*, willow-tree, willow.  
**saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, wooded height, forest-pasture, forest; mountain pass.  
**salūs**, salūtis, *f.*, health; welfare, safety; ad salūtem, to a place of safety; greeting, salutation.  
**Samnitēs**, -ium (*acc. pl. -ēs or -as*), *m.*, the Samnites, a Sabine people east of Latium. *Map II, D-E, 4.*  
**sanciō**, -ire, sānxī, sāntum, *tr.*, make sacred, ordain, ratify.  
**sānctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of sanciō], sacred, holy, inviolable.  
**sanguis**, -inis, *m.*, blood, bloodshed.  
**sānitās**, -ātis, *f.* [sānus], soundness, good sense; ad sānitātem reverti, come to one's senses.

**Santoni**, -ōrum or -um, *m.*, a people of modern Saintonge. *Map IV, C-D, 4.*

**sānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

**sarcina**, -ae, *f.*, baggage, pack, load. *This was the personal baggage carried by the legionary in addition to his arms and armor. It comprised his ration of grain, his cooking vessels, cloak, axe, hammer, etc. The weight of the whole amounted to about 60 pounds. In order that the burden might inconvenience the soldier as little as possible, Marius introduced forked poles, on which the food and cooking utensils could be fastened and carried over the shoulder. See ill. facing p. 135.*

**Sardēs**, -ium (*acc. -is*), *f.*, the chief city of Lydia, in Asia Minor.

**Sardinia**, -ae, *f.*, an island in the Mediterranean. *Map I, E, 5.*

**Sardiniēnsis**, -e, *adj.* [Sardinia], Sardinian.

**sarmentum**, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagot.

**sata**, -ōrum, *n.* [pf. part. of serō], standing corn, crops.

**satis**, *indecl. adj.*, enough, sufficient; *as subst.*, enough; *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently, tolerably, somewhat, quite; *comp.*, satius, better, preferable.

**satis-faciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.*, do enough for, give satisfaction to, apologize, make amends.

**satisfactiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō], excuse, plea, explanation.

**satrapēs**, -ae [*nom. pl., -ae*], *m.*, governor, satrap.

**Sāturnius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Saturn, Saturnian; *as subst. m.*, son of Saturn, *i.e.*, Jupiter.

**satus**, *see serō.*

**sauciō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [saucius], wound, hurt.

**saucius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded, injured.

**saxum**, -i, *n.*, rock.

**scālae**, -ārum, *f.* [cf. **scandō**, climb], ladder, scaling-ladder.

**scapha**, -ae, *f.*, small boat, skiff.

**scelerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of **scelerō**, defile], stained with crime, wicked, accursed.

**scelus**, -eris, *n.*, evil or impious act, a crime, sin.

**scientia**, -ae, *f.* [**sciēns**], knowledge, science, skill.

**scīlicet**, *adv.* [**scire**+**licet**], you may know, evidently, that is; ironically, forsooth, doubtless.

**scindō**, -ere, **scidi**, **scissum**, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy; *pass.*, be split, burst open.

**sciō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, know, know how, understand.

**Scipio**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen. (1) Gnaeus Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul in 260 B.C. (2) Lucius Scipio, consul in 259 B.C. (3) Publius Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., son of (2). (4) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, son of (3), consul in 205 and 194, conqueror of Hannibal. (5) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor, grandson of Lucius Aemilius Paulus, and destroyer of Carthage. (6) Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiagenes, consul in 83 B.C. (7) Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, tribune of the plebs in 49 B.C., father-in-law of Pompey.

**scitum**, -i, *n.* [**sciscō**, approve], decree.

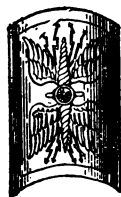
**Scordisci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Pannonia. Map I, G, 3.

**scribō**, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *tr.* and *intr.*, write, write out, tell or say in writing.

**scriptor**, -ōris, *m.* [**scribō**], writer, author.

**scrobis**, -is, *m.* and *f.*, ditch, pit.

**scūtum**, -i, *n.*, shield. The **scūtum** was an oblong shield, about four feet long by two and a half wide, not flat, but having a curved surface. It was made of boards closely joined together, and covered on the outside with heavy linen and leather. It was rimmed with metal, and had a metal projection or boss (**umbō**) in the middle, from which ran metal ornaments in the shape of thunderbolts over the surface of the shield. On the march, the soldier kept the **scūtum** in a leathern cover (**tegimentum**) and carried it hanging by a thong on his back or at his left side.



**sē-** or **sēd-**, inseparable particle used in composition, apart, away; =sine, without.

**sē-cernō**, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, *tr.*, separate, distinguish.

**secō**, -āre, **secui**, **sectum**, *tr.*, cut, cut through; run through, traverse.

**sēcrētō**, *adv.* [**sēcernō**], separately, apart, privately, secretly.

**sectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**secō**], a cutting, parcelling out; booty, spoil.

**sectūra**, -ae, *f.* [**secō**], a cutting; mine, quarry.

**secundum**, *prep.* with *acc.* [**secundus**], by, along, besides; in accordance with, according to.

**secundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor**], following, second; favorable, favoring; successful.

**secūris**, -is, *f.*, axe; the lictor's axe, a symbol of authority.

**sed**, *conj.*, with stronger adversative force than **autem**, the general word, both strong and weak, but, on the contrary.

**sēdecim**, *indecl. num. adj.* [**sex**+**decem**], sixteen.

**sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, intr.,** sit, sit down; wait; rest, settle.

**sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō],** seat, tribunal; settlement; abode.

**sedīle, -is, n. [sedeō],** seat, chair.

**sēditiō, -ōnis, f. [sēd-+eō],** a going aside; dissension, rebellion, revolt.

**sēditiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sēditiō],** full of sedition; rebellious, seditious.

**sē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,** lead aside, set aside, put by.

**Sedulius, -i, m.,** a leader of the Lemovices.

**sēdulus, -a, -um, adj.,** busy, careful.

**Sedūni, -ōrum, m.,** a people living about modern Sitten. Map IV, G-H, 3.

**Sedusiī, -ōrum, m.,** a German tribe.

**seges, -etis, f.,** cornfield, standing corn, crop.

**Segontiāci, -ōrum, m.,** a tribe of southeast Britain. Map IV, C-D, 1.

**Segovax, -actis, m.,** a British prince of Kent.

**sē-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [gregō, collect],** set apart, remove.

**Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m.,** a tribe west of the Rhone, about modern Lyons. Map IV, E-F, 4.

**sē-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.,** separate, divide.

**sēlibra, -ae, f. [sē (=sēmi, half)+libra],** a half-pound.

**semel, num. adv.,** once, one time; **semel atque iterum,** repeatedly.

**sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed],** a planting, sowing.

**sēmi-barbarus, -a, -um, adj.,** semi-barbarous.

**Semiramis, -idis (-is,) f.,** a celebrated queen of Assyria.

**semper, adv.,** always, perpetually.

**Semprōnius, -i, m.,** a Roman name. (1) Tiberius Sempronius Longus,

consul in 218 B.C. (2) Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Sēna, -ae, f.,** a town on the Umbrian coast. Map II, D, 3.

**senātor, -ōris, m. [senex],** senator.

**senātus, -ūs, m. [senex],** council of elders, senate.

**senecta, -ae, f. [senex],** old age.

**senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex],** old age.

**senex, senis, adj.,** old; as *subst.*, m., old man, elder; *comp.*, senior, -ōris, older; as *subst.*, m., old man; *pl.*, the elders.

**sēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [sex],** six each.

**senior, see senex.**

**Senonēs, -um, m.,** a tribe of northern Celtic Gauls, part of whom settled in upper Italy. Map II, D, 3.

**sententia, -ae, f. [sentīō],** judgment, opinion, decision; wish, resolution; proposal; **ex sententiā,** according to one's wish.

**sentēs, -ium, m.,** thorns, briars.

**sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, tr.,** perceive, realize, know; hear, see; think, observe, decide; **idem sentīre,** be of the same opinion.

**sēparātim, adv. [sēparō],** apart, separately.

**sē-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** sever, separate; *pf. part. as adj.*, separated, marked off, separate.

**sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum, tr.,** bury.

**septem, indecl. num. adj.,** seven.

**septentrionēs, -um, m. [septem+trionēs, plowing oxen],** the stars of the Great Bear, which were compared to oxen drawing a wagon, hence the North.

**septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem],** seventh.

**septingentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septingenti],** seven hundredth.



- septingenti**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [sep-tem+centum], seven hundred.
- septuāgēsīmus**, -a; -um, *num. adj.* [septuāgintā], seventieth.
- septuāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventy.
- sepultūra**, -ae, *f.* [sepeliō], burial.
- Sēquana**, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of Gaul. *Map IV, D-F, 2-3.*
- Sēquani**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sequanians, an important tribe of eastern Gaul, north of the Rhone. *Map IV, F-G, 3.*
- sequor**, -ī, *secūtus*, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, ensue; keep to; accede to, obey; fall to the share of, belong to; make use of, take advantage of; *fidem sequi*, put oneself under the protection of.
- Ser.**, *abbr. for Servius.*
- sera**, -ae, *f.*, bar, cross-bar, bolt.
- Sergius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; see *Catilina.*
- sērius**, *comp. of sērō.*
- sermō**, -ōnis, *m.* [serō], conversation, discourse.
- serō**, -ere, *sēvi*, *satum*, *tr.*, sow, plant; beget, produce; *pf. part.*, begotten, born, sprung.
- sērō**, *adv.*, late; *comp.*, *sērius.*
- serpēns**, -entis, *m. and f.* [serpō, creep], snake, serpent.
- Sertōrius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Sertorius, a partisan of Marius.
- servilis**, -e, *adj.* [servus], of a slave, servile.
- Servilius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
- serviō**, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *intr.* [servus], be a slave or subservient to; submit; be at one's service; follow, seek for, heed.
- servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [servus], slavery, servitude.
- Servius**, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.
- servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, give heed to, watch, keep, maintain, preserve, save; *abs.*, keep guard; *fidem servāre*, keep one's word.
- servulus**, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of servus*], young slave.
- servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave.
- sēsqui-pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, (one and a) half+pedālis, of a foot], of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch.
- sētius**, *comp. adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihilō sētius*, none the less.
- seu or si-ve**, *conj.*, or if, be it that, or; *seu . . . seu or sive . . . sive*, either . . . or, whether . . . or.
- sevērē**, *adv.* [sevērus, grave], rigidly, strictly.
- sē-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, call aside or apart, withdraw.
- sex**, *indecl. num. adj.*, six.
- sexāgēni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [sexāgintā], sixty each.
- sexāgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty.
- sexcentēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [sexcenti], six-hundredth.
- sexcenti**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [sex+centum], six hundred.
- Sextius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. (1) Publius Sextius Baculus, a brave centurion of Caesar's army. (2) Titus Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- sextus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [sex], sixth.
- sexus**, -ūs, *m.*, sex; offspring.
- sī**, *conj.*, if; whether, on the chance that, to see if.
- Sibusātēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe living near the Pyrenees, about modern Saubusse. *Map IV, C, 5.*
- sic**, *adv.*, thus, in this manner; so, to such a degree; yet, still; *sic . . . ut*, just . . . as, so . . . that.
- siccitās**, -ātis, *f.* [siccus], dryness.
- siccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [siccus], make dry, drain; dry up, dry.

**siccus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry, unwet; as *subst.*, *n.*, a dry place, dry land.

**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily. *Map I, F, 6.*

**sic-utī**, or **sic-ut**, *adv.*, so as, just as, as, as it were.

**sidus**, -eris, *n.*, constellation; star, heavenly body.

**signifer**, -ī, *m.* [**signum**+**ferō**], standard bearer. *See illus. facing p. 201.*

**significātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō**], signal, sign.

**significō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**signum**+**faciō**], make signs, show, indicate.

**signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, token, emblem; trace, track; a military standard, ensign; signal; image, statue, picture. *The signa or standards were of the utmost importance in the Roman army, as through their movements, which the general governed by means of signals from the trumpeters, the movements of all the troops were directed. Signa were of several kinds. There were the aquila of the legion, the signum (in a narrow sense) of the maniple, and the vexillum of the veterans, the cavalry, etc., as well as the vexillum which was the standard of the general. The cohort had no ensign of its own, and so the standard of the first maniple did duty as the signum of the whole cohort. It was borne on a long staff, and had a cross-piece at the top, from which fluttered ribbons, and the figure of an upright hand, below which was a complicated arrangement of disks and a crescent, each part of which had its especial significance. The cavalry followed the vexillum, a square banner of cloth, fringed at the bottom, which was borne on a long staff. Vexilla were of different colors. The term vexillum was also applied to the general's standard, which was set up at his tent as the signal for*

*battle, or displayed as a sign for quick marching. It was a large banner, either red, or white with red lettering. For the different sorts of signa see illus. facing p. 201.*

**silēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of **sileō**, be silent], still, quiet, silent, **silentium**, -ī, *n.* [**silēns**], stillness, silence; *abl. as adv.*, in silence, silently.

**Silēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian.

**Silius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Titus Silius, a military tribune.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, wood, woodland, forest.

**silvestris**, -e, *adj.* [**silva**], of a wood or forest, wooded.

**Silvia**, -ae, *f.*, *see Rhēa.*

**similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar, having a resemblance; *comp.*, **similior**, -ius, *sup.*, **simillimus**, -a, -um.

**similitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**similis**], likeness, resemblance.

**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, together; as soon as; **simul atque**, as soon as; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and; partly . . . partly.

**simulācrum**, -ī, *n.* [**simulō**], image, figure, statue; form, phantom.

**simulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō**], simulation, pretense, deceit.

**simulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**similis**], make like, imitate; feign, pretend.

**sīn**, *conj.* [**sī+ne**], but if.

**sincērus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; *fig.*, chaste.

**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without.

**singillatim**, *adv.* [**singuli**], singly, one by one.

**singulāris**, -e, *adj.* [**singuli**], single; singular, unusual, remarkable.

**singuli**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one apiece, single, one by one, one at a time, one on each side; several, respective; successive.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, left-

- hand, on the left; sub *sinistrā* (*sc. manū*), on the left.
- sinistrorsus**, *adv.* [*sinister*+*vorsus* = *versus*], turned to the left, to the left.
- sinō**, -ere, *sivī* (*siī*), *situm*, *tr.*, let down; suffer, allow, permit.
- sinus**, -ūs, *m.*, a fold of a garment.
- sistō**, -ere, *stiti*, *statum*, *tr. and intr.* [*stō*], cause to stand; rest, stay.
- sitis**, -is, *f.*, thirst.
- situs**, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position.
- sive**, *see seu*.
- socer**, *socerī*, *m.*, father-in-law.
- societās**, -ātis, *f.* [*socius*], fellowship, partnership, league, alliance.
- socius**, -ī, *m.*, companion, comrade; ally; accomplice.
- Sōcraticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to Socrates, a pupil of Socrates.
- sōl**, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun; sunshine; *personified*, the Sun-god.
- soldūrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, vassals, retainers.
- soleō**, -ēre, -itus *sum*, *intr.*, be accustomed, be wont.
- solidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, undivided; firm, hard.
- sōlitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [*sōlus*], solitude; wilderness.
- solitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of soleō*], customary, usual, wonted.
- sollers**, -rtis, *adj.*, skilful, clever.
- sollertia**, -ae, *f.* [*sollers*], skill, shrewdness, quickness of thought.
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, stir up, agitate, instigate; urge.
- sollicitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, agitated, anxious, watchful, alive (to).
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, bottom, ground; earth, soil.
- solum**, *adv.* [*sōlus*], only, merely; *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only, the only.
- solvō**, -ere, *solvi*, *solūtum*, *tr.* [*sē*+*luō*], loosen, untie, disengage; (*sc. nāvēs*), weigh anchor, put to sea; free, release, absolve; break up, banish, dispel; impair, enfeeble; annul; pay.
- sonō**, -āre, -uī, *sonātūrus*, *tr. and intr.*, sound, resound, make a noise; celebrate, praise.
- sordidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sordēs*, filth], dirty; darkened, dingy.
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister; cousin.
- sors**, *sortis*, *f.*, lot, casting of lots; oracle, oracular response.
- Sosylus**, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian.
- Sotiātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the most powerful people of Aquitania. *Map IV, C-D, 4-5.*
- Sp.**, *abbr. for Spurius.*
- Sparta**, -ae, *f.*, Sparta. *Map I, H, 6.*
- spatiōr**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [*cf. spatium*], walk, go, proceed.
- spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, distance; interval; period of time, time; opportunity.
- speciēs**, -iēi, *f.* [*speciō*, spy], sight, spectacle; shape, form; pretense.
- spectāculum**, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], place for spectators, place at a show; show, spectacle.
- spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of speciō*, spy], look or gaze at, see, observe; face, lie, be situated.
- speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [*speculor*, spy], spy, scout. *The speculātor was the individual spy, or reconnoitrer, sent out alone to obtain information in regard to the enemy. Usually he was himself a soldier, and differed from the explorātor mainly in the fact that the explorātōrēs were not sent out singly, but in detachments.*
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*speculātor*], scouting, reconnoitring.

**speculor**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, spy.  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [spēs], hope, anticipate.  
**spēs**, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation.  
**spiritus**, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō], breath, air; breath of life, life; airs, pride.  
**spoliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [spoliū], strip, despoil, plunder.  
**spolium**, -ī, *n.*, skin; spoil, booty.  
**sponda**, -ae, *f.*, bedstead, frame of a couch.  
**spondeō**, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *tr.*, assure, promise, undertake.  
**spontis**, sponte, *gen. and abl. sing. from an obsolete nom.* spōns, *f.* [cf. spondeō], of one's own accord, voluntarily; suā sponte, of one's own accord.  
**spūmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, foam, froth.  
**Spurius**, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.  
**stabiliō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.  
**stabilitās**, -ātis, *f.* [stabilis, steady], steadiness.  
**stāgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [stāgnū], stagnate; of places, be overflowed or inundated.  
**stāgnū**, -ī, *n.*, standing water, lake.  
**statim**, *adv.* [stō], at once, immediately.  
**statiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], a standing, stationing; military post, sentry, guard, outpost; reserve; in statione esse, be on guard.  
**statua**, -ae, *f.* [status], image, statue.  
**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [status], set up; put in position, place; resolve; decide, judge.  
**statūra**, -ae, *f.* [stō], stature.  
**status**, -ūs, *m.* [stō], standing, position; condition.  
**sternō**, -ere, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, stretch out, spread, lay; stretch on the ground; pave; overthrow.

**stimulus**, -ī, *m.*, a goad, spur; stake concealed beneath the ground as a defense.  
**stipendiārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium], liable to duty, tributary; as *subst.*, *m.*, a tributary.  
**stipendium**, -ī, *n.* [stips, gift + pendō], tax; campaign.  
**stipes**, stipitis, *m.*, log, stock, trunk of a tree.  
**stipula**, -ae, *f.*, stalk, stem; dried stalks, straw.  
**stō**, stāre, steti, stāturus, *intr.*, stand, stand upright; stand still, be immovable; remain, be; be fixed or placed; stand by, abide by.  
**strāmen**, -inis, *n.* [sternō], straw.  
**strāmentum**, -ī, *n.* [sternō], straw, litter.  
**strātum**, -ī, *n.* [sternō], bed, couch.  
**strēnuē**, *adv.* [strēnuus, prompt], strenuously, promptly.  
**strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make noise], confused noise, noise, clash.  
**strīdeō** (strīdō), -ēre (-ere), strīdī, —, *intr.*, make a noise, hiss.  
**strīdō**, see strīdeō.  
**stringō**, -ere, -inxī, -ictum, *tr.*, draw tight; touch or sweep lightly; strip off; w. gladium, unsheathe.  
**studeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager, desire, wish; pay attention or heed to, lay stress on.  
**studiōsē**, *adv.* [studiōsus, eager], eagerly, carefully.  
**studium**, -ī, *n.* [studeō], eagerness, enthusiasm, good-will, devotion, desire; occupation, pursuit.  
**stultē**, *adv.* [stultus], foolishly, stupidly.  
**stultitia**, -ae, *f.* [stultus], folly.  
**suādeō**, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr. and intr.*, advise, persuade, urge.

- sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., of motion, under, beneath, into; of time, just before, toward, about, just at, during; with abl., of place, under, beneath, at the foot of; of time, in, at, within; of direction, on, toward; sub sinistrā (sc. manū), on the left; v. oculis, before; of other relations, under, beneath, with, in the reign of.*
- sub-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put or set under, plunge under.
- sub-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, draw or lead up, beach; withdraw, draw off.
- subductiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [subdūcō], a leading or drawing up; drawing ashore, beaching.
- sub-eō**, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *tr.*, come or go under, come up, approach; succeed, take the place of; endure, submit to.
- sub-fodiō**, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, dig under; stab or pierce underneath.
- subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [sub+iaciō], hurl or put under or near, place below; cast, throw up; expose, make subject; *pf. part. as adj.*, lying under or below, near, neighboring.
- subigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [sub+agō], drive up; put down, conquer, subdue, subjugate; incite; constrain.
- subitō**, *adv.* [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly, all at once.
- subitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected, suddenly arisen.
- sub-levō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, lift up, help up, support; *sē sub-levāre*, rise up.
- sublica**, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake, palisade.
- sublicius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sublica], resting on piles; *pōns sublicius*, the pile-bridge built by *Ancus Marcius*. Map III, D, 4.
- sub-luō**, -ere, —, -lūtum, *tr.* [luō, wash], wash underneath, wash.
- sub-ministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ministrō, serve], furnish, supply, give.
- sub-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, let down, lower, drop; send up, send to one's assistance.
- sub-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, dislodge, drive back.
- sub-ruō**, -ere, -uī, -utum, *tr.*, undermine, dig under.
- sub-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus, *tr. and intr.*, follow on, follow.
- subsidiū**, -ī, *n.* [sub+sedeō], reserve, aid, assistance; reserves, reinforcements; *subsidia comparare*, make provision; *subsidiō venire, or subsidium ferre*, relieve.
- sub-sidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sidō, sit down], sit down, settle down, sink, subside.
- sub-sistō**, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, stand, remain; hold out, hold firm.
- sub-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be under; be near or close at hand.
- sub-trahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, take away, withdraw.
- sub-vehō**, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, bring up, transport.
- sub-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to aid, assist.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō], go under, enter, go or come up from beneath; come close to, come up to, advance; succeed to, take the place of, follow; in *locum succedere*, succeed to one's position; in *stationem succedere*, take one's place on guard.
- succendō**, -ere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [sub+cendō, burn], set on fire from below, kindle.
- successus**, -ūs, *m.* [succēdō], an advance, approach; onset; success.

**succidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, tr.** [sub + caedō], cut from beneath, cut down, fell, cut through.

**succingō, -ere, -cīxi, -cinctum, tr.** [sub + cingō], gird below, gird; *pf. part.*, with tucked-up skirt.

**succrēscō, -ere, —, —, intr.** [sub + crēscō], grow from below, grow up; be supplied anew.

**succumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr.** [sub + cumbō, recline], fall or sink down, yield, succumb.

**succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, intr.** [sub + currō], run under or to the help of, assist, succor.

**sūcus, -i, m.,** juice, moisture.

**sudis, -is, f.,** pile, stake.

**sūdor, -ōris, m.** [sūdō, sweat], sweat, perspiration.

**Suēbi, -ōrum, m.,** a powerful people of central Germany. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*

**Suessa, -ae, f.,** a city in Latium, usually called Suessa Pometia. *Map I, B, 8.*

**Suessiōnēs, -um, m.,** a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons. *Map IV, E, 2.*

**sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr.** [sub + faciō], put under; be enough; choose, elect.

**suffrāgium, -i, n.,** ballot, vote; decision, election.

**suffrāgor, -ārī, -ātus, intr.,** vote for, support.

**Sugambri, -ōrum, m.,** a German tribe. *Map IV, G, 1.*

**sui, sibi, sē, sēsē, sing. and pl. pron. of 3d pers.; reflex.,** of himself, herself, itself; of themselves; *in acc. as subject of inf.,* him, her, it, them, he, she, etc.; *recipr.,* each other, one another.

**Sulla, -ae, m.,** a Roman cognomen; esp. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, consul in 88 B.C., afterwards dictator, and champion of the aristocracy against Marius.

**Sulpicius, -i, m.,** a Roman name.

(1) Publius Sulpicius, consul in 280 B.C.

(2) Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

**sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist, happen, belong.**

**summa, -ae, f.** [summus], the top; sum total, aggregate; chief control, general management, final decision; **summa imperi,** the chief command; *in summā, in general, generally.*

**summus, see superus.**

**sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr.** [sub + emō], take, take to oneself, take on, assume, take into one's hands; undertake; consume, eat.

**sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [sūmptus], expensive, lavish.

**sūmptus, -ūs, m.** [sūmō], expense, cost.

**supellectilis (more commonly supellex), -is, f.,** furniture, goods, furnishings.

**super, adv. and prep. with acc. and abl.; as adv.,** above, on top; *as prep. with acc.,* over, above, beyond; *as prep. with abl.,* above, concerning, about.

**superbē, adv.** [superbus], proudly, arrogantly.

**superbus, -a, -um, adj.,** proud, haughty; *as subst., m.,* the Proud, cognomen of Tarquinius, the seventh king of Rome.

**super-incidō, -ere, —, —, intr.,** fall from above, fall upon.

**super-iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.,** throw on, cast over.

**superior, see superus.**

**superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [superus], rise above, overtop; be superior, surpass; survive; **vitā superāre, survive; overrule, overmatch; subdue, conquer.**

**super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,**

*intr.*, sit over, be above; refrain or desist from.

**superstes**, -itis, *adj.* [super+stō], standing by; remaining alive, surviving.

**super-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be left, survive.

**superus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [super], high, high up; **Mare Superum**, the Adriatic; as *subst.*, *pl.*, **superi**, the gods above, gods; *comp.*, **superior**, -ius, higher, upper, superior, stronger; conquering, victorious; of *time*, earlier, former, previous; *sup.*, **summus**, -a, -um, and **suprēmus**, -a, -um, highest; the highest or uppermost part of, top of, surface of; as *subst.*, *n.*, **sumum**, the top, summit; greatest, most important, preëminent, utmost; complete, perfect; of *time*, last, final.

**super-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.*, come up, arrive, rush in; come upon, surprise.

**supinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, backward, on the back; **manibus supinis**, with upturned or outspread hands.

**suppetō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *intr.* [sub+petō], be at hand, hold out, suffice.

**suppleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [sub+pleō, fill], fill up, make full, fill.

**supplex**, -icis, *adj.*, suppliant; as *subst.*, *m.*, a suppliant.

**supplicatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [supplicō, kneel], public prayer in times of calamity or rejoicing; thanksgiving.

**suppliciter**, *adv.* [supplex], as a suppliant, humbly.

**supplicium**, -ī, *n.* [supplex], punishment, torture, execution.

**supportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sub+portō], bring up, carry or convey to.

**supputatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+putō], a reckoning up, computation.

**suprā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [su-

perus] as *adv.*, above; earlier, before; as *prep.*, above, on; of *time*, before.

**suprēmus**, see **superus**.

**surgō**, -ere, **surrēxi**, **surrēctum**, *tr. and intr.* [sub+regō], raise; rise, arise.

**sūs**, **suis**, *m. and f.*, a swine, boar.

**suscipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [sub+capiō], take up, assume, receive; enter upon, begin, undertake.

**suscitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sub+citō, urge], stir up, rekindle.

**suspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [speciō, spy], look up, admire.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+speciō, spy], suspicion, distrust.

**suspikor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [cf. suspiciō, look up], mistrust, suspect.

**sustentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [freq. of sustineō], sustain, maintain; withstand; hold out, endure.

**sustineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [sub+teneō], hold up, support, sustain, bear the weight of; sē **sustinēre**, stand, stand up; check, stay; withstand; bear, undergo, hold out; maintain; wear.

**suus**, -a, -um, *poss. pron.*, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; one's own peculiar or personal; *w.* **mors**, natural; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, one's own people, family, or friends, one's own men, party, or troops; *n. pl.* as *subst.*, one's property.

**Syphāx**, -ācis, *m.*, a king of Numidia.

**Syria**, -ae, *f.*, a country of Asia, on the Mediterranean. *Map I, J, 5.*

## T

**T.**, *abbr. for Titus.*

**tabellārius**, -ī, *m.* [tabella, tablet], letter or dispatch carrier.

**tabernāculum**, -i, *n.*, tent.  
**tabula**, -ae, *f.*, plank; tablet;  
**tabula picta**, a painted tablet,  
 painting, picture.  
**tabulātum**, -i, *n.* [tabula], flooring  
 of boards, story.  
**taceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*,  
 be silent, keep silent.  
**Tachus**, -i, *m.*, a king of Egypt.  
**taeda**, -ae, *f.*, pine-wood; torch, *esp.*  
 the marriage-torch; marriage.  
**taedium**, -i, *n.* [taedet, it wearies],  
 weariness, disgust.  
**tālea**, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar.  
**talentum**, -i, *n.*, talent, about  
 \$1,132 in gold.  
**tālis**, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a sort;  
**tālis . . . quālis**, such . . . as; of  
 this sort.  
**tam**, *adv.*, so, so far; *correl. v.*, quam,  
 in such a degree, as much, so.  
**tamen**, *adv.*, yet, for all that, still,  
 nevertheless, however.  
**Tamesis**, -is, *m.*, the Thames. *Map*  
*IV, C-D, 1.*  
**tametsi**, *adv.* [tamen+etsi], al-  
 though.  
**tam-quam**, *adv.*, as if, just as if; on  
 the ground that.  
**tandem**, *adv.*, at length, finally.  
**tangō**, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, *tr.*,  
 touch, take away; reach, come to;  
 border on; *fig.*, touch, move,  
 affect.  
**tantopere**, *adv.* [tantō+opere], so  
 greatly, very greatly, fiercely.  
**tantulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of  
 tantus], so small or little, so  
 diminutive, so trifling.  
**tantum**, *adv.* [tantus], so much; only,  
 alone, merely; tantum . . . quan-  
 tum, as much or as far . . . as.  
**tantum-modo**, *adv.*, so much only;  
 only, merely.  
**tantundem**, *adv.* [tantus], just as  
 great or far, just so far.

**tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, such,  
 so large; tantus . . . quantus, as  
 great or large . . . as, such . . . as;  
*n. as subst.*, so much; tantum . . .  
 quantum, as much . . . as; *gen.* of  
 price, tanti, of such value, worth  
 so much.

**Tarbelli**, -ōrum, *m.*, an Aquitanian  
 tribe about modern Tarbes. *Map*  
*IV, C, 5.*

**tardē**, *adv.* [tardus], slowly, with  
 delay.

**tardō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus],  
 retard, hinder, check.

**tardus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, tardy, sluggish,  
 slow.

**Tarentīni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of  
 Tarentum. *Map II, F, 5.*

**Tarentum**, -i, *n.*, a Greek city in  
 southern Italy. *Map II, F, 5.*

**Tarquinius**, -i, *m.*, name of an early  
 Roman gens, said to have come  
 from Etruria.

(1) Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth  
 king of Rome.

(2) Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh  
 king of Rome.

(3) Sextus Tarquinius, son of (2).

(4) Tarquinius Collatinus, husband  
 of Lucretia.

**Tarusātēs**, -ium, *m.*, a Gallic people  
 on the west coast of Aquitania.  
*Map IV, C, 4-5.*

**taurus**, -i, *m.*, bull, ox.

**Taximagulus**, -i, *m.*, a British prince.

**Tectosagēs**, -um, *m.*, a branch of the  
 Volcae. *Map IV, D-E, 5.*

**tēctum**, -i, *n.* [tegō], covering,  
 roof; roofed inclosure, house, hall.

**tegimentum**, -i, *n.* [tegō], covering.

**tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, *tr.*, cover,  
 cover over; shelter, protect; con-  
 ceal, keep secret; crown, adorn.

**tellūs**, -ūris, *f.*, earth; land, ground;  
 space of ground, district.

**tēlum**, -i, *n.*, missile, dart, javelin  
 weapon.



**temerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [temere], imprudent, rash, indiscreet.

**temere**, *adv.*, by chance, without reason or cause, rashly.

**temeritās**, -ātis, *f.* [temere], chance; rashness, indiscretion.

**tēmō**, -ōnis, *m.*, beam, pole, especially of a chariot.

**temperantia**, -ae, *f.* [temperāns], moderation, self-control.

**temperātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of temperō], moderate, temperate, mild.

**temperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tempus], restrain one's self, refrain.

**tempestās**, -ātis, *f.* [tempus], time, season; weather, bad weather; storm, tempest.

**templum**, -ī, *n.*, temple.

**temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tendō], handle; make trial of, attempt, attack.

**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time, season; occasion, crisis; passage or duration of time.

**Tencteri**, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe living east of the Usipeles. *Map IV, G-H, 1.*

**tendō**, -ere, tendē, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; aim; *w.* insidiās, lay.

**tenebrae**, -ārum, *f.*, shades, darkness.

**teneō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, hold, keep; occupy, watch, guard; seize, possess, inhabit; check, stay, hold back, control, bind; detain; **castris sē tenēre**, keep inside the camp; include, extend; **for cursum tenēre**, take one's way, steer, sail.

**tener**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, soft; of tender age, young.

**tentō**, *see* temptō.

**tenūis**, -e, *adj.*, thin, little, slight.

**tenuiter**, *adv.* [tenuis], thinly, slightly.

**tepeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be warm.

**tepidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [tepeō], moderately warm, warm.

**ter**, *num. adv.*, thrice, three times.

**Terentius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Publius (or Gaius) Terentius Varro, consul in 216 B.C. (2) Marcus Terentius Varro, a partisan of Pompey in the Civil War.

**teres**, -etis, *adj.* [terō], rubbed or rounded off, smooth.

**tergeō**, -ēre, tersi, tersum, *tr.* [terō], rub or wipe off, wipe clean.

**tergum**, -ī, *n.*, the back, rear; **tergum vertere** or **dare**, turn one's back, take to flight, flee; covering of the back, skin, hide; *w.* suis, back, piece of bacon.

**tergus**, -oris, *n.*, the back; **tergus suis**, a piece of bacon.

**terni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each or apiece; three on each side; three by three.

**terō**, -ere, trivi, tritum, *tr.*, rub, grind; grind against, graze.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth; land, territory, country, soil; personified as a goddess, Terra, Earth.

**Terrasidius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune.

**terrēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra], of earth, earthy, earthen.

**terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten, alarm; frighten or drive away.

**territō**, -āre, —, —, *tr.* [*freq.* of terreō], frighten greatly, terrify.

**territōrium**, -ī, *n.* [terra], territory, domain.

**terror**, -ōris, *m.* [terreō], fear, panic.

**tertiō**, *adv.* [tertius], for the third time.

**tertius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], the third, third.

**testa**, -ae, *f.* [=tosta, from *torreō*, parch], bit of burned clay, bit of earthenware; potsherd.

**testāmentum**, -ī, *n.* [testor], will, testament.

**testimōnium**, -ī, *n.* [testis], witness, evidence, proof.

**testis**, -is, *m. and f.*, witness.

**testūdō**, -inis, *f.* [testa], tortoise; shed, testudo, covered column.

(1) The term **testūdō** is applied to the overlapping formation of shields

sloping roof from which missiles rolled easily, and which was covered with raw hides as a protection against fire. The end turned toward the enemy had an opening let into it, through which the head of the ram could readily move. The men in charge of the **ariēs** stood at the opposite end, and, drawing the beam back by means of ropes, set it swinging heavily against the enemy's walls. See *illus. facing p. 233*.



TESTUDO

which an attacking column threw up to protect itself, when it rushed forward to break open a gate or scale a wall. (2) A heavy shed for the protection of attacking parties was also called **testūdō**. This had a heavy roof, but no floor or sides, except the side that was turned toward the enemy. Under cover of such sheds the soldiers could work safely close to the wall of a besieged town. (3) The **testūdō arietāria** was a shed in which the **ariēs** was hung if it was not placed in the lowest story of a siege-tower. It had a steeply

**testula**, -ae, *f.* [dim. of *testa*, bit of burned clay], voting tablet.

**Teutoni**, -ōrum, (-um), *m.*, the Teutons, a people from northern Germany.

**textum**, -ī, *n.* [texō, weave], web, fabric, cloth.

**Thēbāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Thebes, a town in Greece. Map I, H, 5.

**Themis**, -idis (acc. -in, voc. -i), *f.*, the goddess of justice and prophecy.

**Themistoclēs**, -is, or -ī, *m.*, an Athenian statesman.

**Thessalia**, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country of Greece. *Map I, G-H, 5.*

**Thermopylae**, -ārum, *f.*, a pass between the mountains and the sea, opposite the north end of the island of Euboea. *Map I, H, 5.*

**Thisbē**, -ēs (*acc. -ēn*), *f.*, a maiden of Babylon.

**Ti.**, *abbr. for Tiberius.*

**Tiberis**, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the principal river of central Italy. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

**Tiberius**, -i, *m.*, a praenomen.

**tignum**, -i, *n.*, log, beam, piece of timber.

**Tigrānēs**, -is (*Greek acc. -ēn*), *m.*, a king of Armenia, son-in-law of Mithridates.

**tigris**, -is (*-idis*), *m. and f.*, tiger, tigress.

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Tigurini; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Tigurini, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians. *Map IV, G, 3.*

**tilia**, -ae, *f.*, linden-tree.

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, dread; be afraid of, be anxious, be alarmed.

**timidē**, *adv.* [timidus], with fear or cowardice, timidly.

**timor**, -ōris, *m.* [timeō], fear, dread, alarm, timidity.

**tinguō** (-gō), -ere, tīnxī, tinctum, *tr.*, wet, drench, bathe, dye.

**Tissaphernēs**, -is, *m.*, a Persian governor of Lydia and Caria.

**Titānia**, -ae, *f.*, Pyrrha, granddaughter of the Titan Iapetus.

**Titūrius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Titus**, -i, *m.*, a praenomen.

**toga**, -ae, *f.* [tegō], toga, the outer garment worn by the Romans in civil life.

**togātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [toga], wearing the toga.

**tolerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, bear up under, endure; hold out; nourish, support.

**tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, raise, take up, pick up; w. *ancoram*, weigh; take on board, carry; w. *clāmōrem*, set up; take away, carry off, remove; break off, put an end to; kill.

**Tolōsa**, -ae, *f.*, a town on the Garonne, modern Toulouse. *Map IV, D, 5.*

**Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of Tolosa. *Map IV, D, 5.*

**tormentum**, -i, *n.* [torqueō], an engine for hurling missiles; torment, torture. *Tormenta* were engines fashioned after the principle of the cross-bow, though the force was supplied, not by the rebound of a bow, but by elastic cords woven of ropes, hair, etc. Two sorts were used in Caesar's army, the *cata-pulta*, which threw light missiles and arrows, and the *ballista*, which flung heavy missiles and stones. The *onager* was not employed till a later time. The *ballista* and the *onager* are shown in the *illus. facing p. 233.*

**tortilis**, -e, *adj.* [torqueō], twisted, winding.

**torus**, -i, *m.*, a swelling; cushion, couch; marriage-bed, marriage.

**tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

**totidem**, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number.

**totiēns**, *adv.* [tot], so many times, so often.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, the whole of, all, entire.

**trabs**, *trabis*, *f.*, a beam, timber, log, tree.

**tractō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, drag; handle, manage; treat, conduct oneself toward.

- trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr.** [trāns+  
dō], give up, deliver over, sur-  
render; hand down, report, tell;  
impart, teach.
- trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.**  
[trāns+dūcō], lead across or over,  
bring over, draw over.
- trāgula, -ae, f.,** a light javelin or  
dart, used by the Gauls.
- trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, tr.,**  
draw, drag, drag along, draw out  
or forth; derive, deduce; carry  
along or with, get, take on,  
assume, acquire; take upon;  
distract.
- trāciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.**  
[trāns+iaciō], throw over, put  
over, transport, bring across;  
thrust through, pierce, stab; go  
over, pass over, cross.
- trāiectus, -ūs, m.** [trāciō], a crossing  
over, crossing, passage.
- tranquillitās, -ātis, f.** [tranquillus,  
calm], stillness; calmness of mind  
or weather.
- trāns, prep. with acc.,** across, beyond.
- trāscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scen-  
sum, tr. and intr.** [trāns+scandō,  
climb], climb across or over into,  
board.
- trāns-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr.**  
and *intr.*, go over, pass over,  
cross; pass by, pass; desert.
- trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,**  
take or carry across, transfer.
- trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.,**  
pierce through, transfix.
- trāns-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr.,**  
dig or thrust through, transfix,  
wound.
- trāns-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, intr.,**  
flee to the other side, desert.
- trāns-gredior, -ī, -gressus, tr. and  
intr.** [trāns+gradior], step across,  
pass over, cross.
- trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.**  
[trāns+agō], drive or carry  
through, finish, bring to an end,  
settle.
- trānsitus (acc. -um, abl. -ū), m.**  
[trānseō], a going over, passage.
- trāns-marinus, -a, -um, adj.** [ma-  
rinus, of the sea], from over the  
sea; foreign.
- trānsmissus, -ūs, m.** [trānsmittō], a  
sending across, passing over,  
passage.
- trānō, -āre, -āvi, —, tr. and intr.**  
[trāns+nō], swim across.
- trāns-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,**  
carry over, remove, transport.
- Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj.** [trāns  
+Rhēnus], beyond or across the  
Rhine; *m. pl. as subst.*, the people  
across the Rhine.
- trānstrum, -ī, n.,** cross-beam or  
timber; bench for rowers.
- trāns-versus, -a, -um, adj.,** turned  
across, cross-, at right angles.
- Trasumēnus, -ī, m.,** a lake in  
Etruria. *Map II, C, 3.*
- Trebia, -ae, f.,** a small tributary of  
the Po. *Map II, B, 2.*
- Trebius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name; *esp.*  
Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military  
tribune.
- Trebōnius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name;  
*esp.* Gaius Trebonius, a friend of  
Cicero and Caesar.
- trecentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj.**  
[trecentī], three-hundredth.
- trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,** three  
hundred.
- tredecim, indecl. num. adj.** [trēs+  
decem], thirteen.
- tremebundus, -a, -um, adj.** [tremō],  
trembling, quaking.
- tremō, -ere, -uī, —, intr.,** tremble,  
quiver, shudder.
- tremulus, -a, -um, adj.** [tremō],  
shaking, quivering, tremulous.
- trepidātiō, -ōnis, f.** [trepidō], alarm,  
confusion.

**trepidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, agitated, alarmed, disturbed.

**trēs, tria**, *num. adj.*, three.

**Trēveri**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people about modern Treves. Map IV, F-H, 2.

**Triboci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in the neighborhood of modern Strasburg. Map IV, G-H, 2.

**tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune. The **tribūni militum** were generally young men of senatorial or equestrian rank, who had little or no experience in military affairs, and who were in reality using the office as a good means of entering political life, and of gaining at the same time some military experience. There were six to each legion, and they originally divided the command, three holding it at once; but Caesar soon discovered that his tribunes were not especially efficient officers, and put the **lēgātī** in command of the legions. The tribunes were given light duties, and no independent command except on unimportant occasions. They performed such offices as keeping the muster-rolls, giving out the watchword, keeping order in camp, etc.

**tribūō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [tribus, division of the people], assign, allot, bestow, grant, yield; pay, render; ascribe, attribute.

**tribūtum**, -ī, *n.* [tribūō], tribute, tax.

**tricēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [trīgintā], thirtieth.

**triciēs**, *num. adv.* [trīgintā], thirty times.

**tricuspis**, -idis, *adj.* [trēs+cuspis], with three points, three-pronged; **tricuspis tēlum**, the trident.

**tridēns**, -entis, *adj.* [trēs+dēns], with three teeth, three-pronged; as *subst.*, *m.*, trident.

**trīdium**, -ī, *n.* [trēs+diēs], three days.

**triennium**, -ī, *n.* [trēs+annus], period of three years, three years.

**trīgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty.

**trimēstris**, -e, *adj.* [trēs+mēnsis], of or for three months.

**trīni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [trēs], threefold, triple.

**Trinovantēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of south-eastern Britain. Map IV, D, 1.

**tripertitō**, *adv.* [tripertitus, in three parts], in or into three parts.

**triplex**, -icis, *adj.* [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, in three divisions or lines, triple; three.

**triquetrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, with three corners, triangular.

**tristis**, -e, *adj.*, sad, unhappy, gloomy, disconsolate, melancholy, saddening.

**tristitia**, -ae, *f.* [tristis], sadness, dejection.

**Trītōn**, -ōnis (*acc.* -ōna), *m.*, Triton, Neptune's son, a sea-god.

**triumphālis**, -e, *adj.* [triumphus], triumphal; having had a triumph.

**triumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [triumphus], celebrate a triumph; **dē aliquō triumphāre**, celebrate a triumph in honor of a victory over anyone.

**triumphus**, -ī, *m.*, triumph; **triumphum agere**, to triumph.

**Troia**, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city of Asia Minor. Map I, H-I, 5.

**Troucillus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

**truncō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [truncus], maim, cut off; **foliis truncāre**, to strip of leaves.

**truncus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, maimed, disfigured.

**trux**, **trucis**, *adj.*, fierce, stern, savage.

**tū**, **tui** (*nom. pl.* vōs), *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

**tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. *This was a straight, long, bell-mouthed instrument, over three feet in length. With it the tubicinēs or trumpeters gave the signals for attack and retreat. For its appearance see the illus. facing p. 201.*

**tueor**, -ēri, *tūtus*, *tr.*, look at, watch over; care for; defend, protect.

**tugurium**, -i, *n.*, hut, cottage.

**Tulingi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*

**Tullius**, -i, *m.*, name of a Roman gens.

(1) Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.

(2) Marcus Tullius Cicero, see Cicerō.

(3) Quintus Tullius Cicero, see Cicerō.

**Tullus**, -i, *m.*, see Hostilius.

**tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time, thereupon.

**tumulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tumulus], cover with a mound, bury.

**tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion; disturbance, rebellion.

**tumulus**, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell], a swelling, mound, hill; sepulchral mound.

**tunc**, *adv.*, then, just then, at that time.

**tunica**, -ae, *f.*, an undergarment, tunic.

**turbō**, -inis, *m.* [verb turbō], whirlwind; of a shell, a whorl, spiral.

**turbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [turba, crowd], disturb, break; make turbid.

**turma**, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of cavalry, the tenth part of an āla, numbering about 33 men.

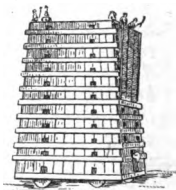
**Turonī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Touraine. *Map IV, D, 3.*

**turpis**, -e, *adj.*, unsightly, unseemly, disgraceful, shameful, dishonorable, foul.

**turpiter**, *adv.* [turpis], basely, shamefully, disgracefully.

**turpitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [turpis], ugliness; baseness, disgrace.

**turris**, -is, *f.*, tower; high building, citadel. *The towers used by the Romans in war were of two sorts, (1) the turris vallāris and (2) the turris mōbilis or ambulātōria. The first was an immovable tower, of several stories in height, constructed upon a wall to serve as a defense. The turris ambulātōria was a movable wooden tower on wheels or rollers, built up to at least the height of the wall it was to aid in storming. Caesar had siege-towers of as many as ten stories. Sometimes it was constructed on the agger, and sometimes was placed beside it. Stairs on the inside led from story to story. Three sides were boarded up, with windows let in to enable the besiegers to discharge missiles at the enemy. Often the upper stories were provided with drawbridges, which enabled attacking parties easily to reach a city wall; and in the upper parts were also placed engines of war. Often the ariēs was hung in the lowest story. The whole structure was protected from fire by wet hides hung over it, and abundant provision of water was kept in reservoirs in the lowest part. See illus. facing p. 233.*



**Tuscia**, -ae, *f.*, Etruria. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

**Tusculum**, -i, *n.*, a town near Rome. *Map I, B, 8.*

**Tuscus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Tuscan, Etruscan; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Etruscans, Etrurians. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

**tūtēla**, -ae, *f.* [tueor], watch, protection, defense; keeper, guardian.

**tūtō**, *adv.* [tūtus], safely, securely.

**tūtōr**, -ōris, *m.* [tueor], guardian, tutor.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of tueor*], protected, safe, in safety, secure.

**tyrannicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, tyrannical, despotic.

**tyrannus**, -ī, *m.*, monarch, sovereign, lord.

## U

**über**, -eris, *adj.*, rich, full, fruitful.

**ubi**, *adv.*; *rel.*, where, in which place, when, whenever; **ubi primum**, as soon as; *interrog.*, when? where?

**ubique**, *adv.*, in any place, everywhere.

**Ubii**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Ubii; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Ubii, a German tribe on the east bank of the Rhine, near Cologne. *Map IV, G-H, 1-2.*

**ulciscor**, -ī, *ultus*, *tr.*, take vengeance on, punish, avenge.

**ūllus**, -a, -um (*gen. ūllius*), *adj.*, any; *as subst.*, anyone, anybody.

**ulmus**, -ī, *f.*, elm-tree.

**ulterior**, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther, beyond, ulterior.

**ultimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of ulterior*], most remote or distant; last part of, end of; last, extreme; utmost, greatest.

**ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord; without provocation or cause, actually.

**ululātus**, -ūs, *m.* [ululō, howl], a howling, yell, shrieking.

**ulva**, -ae, *f.*, swamp-grass, sedge.

**umbra**, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow; of the dead, a shade, ghost.

**umerus**, -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.

**ūmidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūmeō, be moist], moist, damp, wet.

**umquam**, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

**ūnā**, [ūnus], *adv.*, together, along with, at the same time.

**unda**, -ae, *f.*, a wave, billow; stream; water, moisture.

**unde**, *adv.*, from which place, whence, from which; on the side that.

**ūndecim**, *indecl. num. adj.* [ūnus + decem], eleven.

**ūndecimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [ūnus + decimus], eleventh.

**ūndēvigintī**, *indecl. num. adj.* [ūnus + dē + vigintī], one from twenty, nineteen.

**undique**, *adv.* [unde + que], from all sides, on all sides.

**unguentum**, -ī, *n.*, ointment, perfume.

**ūnicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus], single, only.

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus + versus], all together, whole, entire.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, single; only, alone; the same; in **ūnum**, to one place, together.

**urbs**, *urbis*, *f.*, city; *esp.* the City, Rome.

**urgeō** (urgueō), -ēre, *ursi*, —, *tr.*, press, press on, press hard; drive, urge.

**urna**, -ae, *f.*, urn, burial-urn.

**ūrus**, -ī, *m.*, wild ox or bison.

**Usipetēs**, -um, *m.*, a German tribe beyond the Rhine, below Cologne. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

**usquam**, *adv.*, in or to any place.

**usque**, *adv.*, all the way, even to, even, as far as; **usque adeō**, to so great an extent.

**ûsus, -ûs, m.** [ûtor], use, control, management; service, advantage; **ûsui** or **ex ûsû**, of advantage; practice, skill, experience; occasion, need.

**ut** or **utî**, *adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, when, since, as soon as; as, just as, like; inasmuch as, seeing that; though, although; *introducing an indirect question*, how; **ut . . . sic**, while . . . yet, though . . . still; **ut quisque** with a *sup.* followed by *ita* with a *sup.*, the more . . . the more; as *conj.*, that, so that, so as to, in order that.

**uter, utra, utrum, pron.**; *interrog.*, which of the two? which? *indef.*, whichever of two, whichever one.

**uter-que, utraque, utrumque, adj.**, each of two, both; *pl.*, of two parties, each side, both.

**Utica, -ae, f.**, a town in Africa. *Map I, E, 6.*

**ûtilis, -e, adj.** [ûtor], useful, serviceable, expedient.

**ûtilitâs, -âtis, f.** [ûtilis], usefulness, advantage, service.

**uti-nam, conj.**; oh that! if only! I wish that!

**ûtor, -i, ûsus, intr.**, make use of, employ; adopt, have; observe, exercise, show; keep possession of; enjoy; associate with.

**utpote, adv.**, namely, as.

**utrimque, adv.** [uterque], on both sides; from each side, from each.

**utrobique, adv.**, on both sides.

**utrum, adv.** [uter], whether.

**ûva, -ae, f.**, a grape, bunch of grapes.

**uxor, -ôris, f.**, wife, consort.

## V

**V, for quinque, etc.**

**Vacalus, -i, m.**, the Waal, a branch of the Rhine. *Map IV, F, 1.*

**vacatiô, -ônîs, f.** [vacô], freedom, exemption, immunity.

**vacô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, intr.**, be empty or unoccupied, lie waste.

**vacuus, -a, -um, adj.** [vacô], empty, unoccupied; free, destitute.

**vadum, -i, n.**, ford, shallow, shoal; bed, channel; of a river, **vada nôta**, its wonted channel.

**vagor, -âri, -âtus, intr.** [vagus], roam about, roam, wander.

**vagus, -a, -um, adj.**, wandering, roving.

**valéns, -entis, adj.** [valeô], powerful.

**valeô, -êre, -uî, -itûrus, intr.**, be strong, be powerful, have strength or power, have weight or influence; succeed; **multum valére**, be strong or powerful, have great influence; **minus valére**, be less or too little powerful, have too little power; *inv.*, farewell, good-bye.

**Valerius, -i, m.**, a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Valerius Publicola, *consul* in 509 B.C.

(2) Publius Valerius Laevinus, *consul* in 280 B.C.

(3) Lucius Valerius Laevinus, *consul* in 206 B.C.

(4) Lucius Valerius Flaccus, *propraetor* in Gaul, 83 B.C.

(5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate defeated by the Aquilani.

**valêtûdô, -inîs, f.** [valeô], state of health; good health; infirmity, sickness.

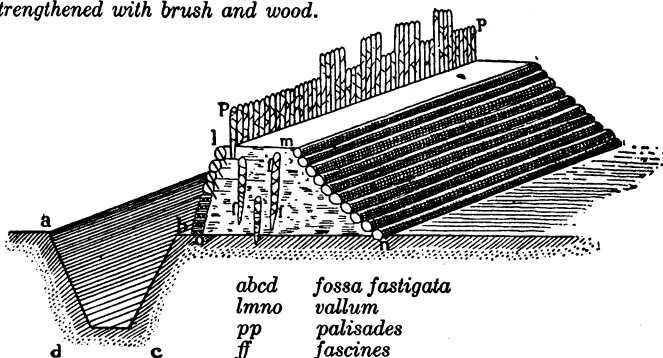
**validus, -a, -um, adj.** [valeô], strong, stout, powerful.

**vallês (-is), -is, f.**, a vale, valley.

**vâllum, -i, n.** [vâllus], wall of earth, earthworks, intrenchments, rampart. The term **vâllum** was loosely used by the Romans, sometimes applying to the rampart of earth (also called **agger**) surrounding a camp, and sometimes to the palisade of stakes that often surmounted the earthwork. The *reg-*



ular fortification of a Roman camp consisted of a wall and ditch (see fossa). The rampart was usually made with the earth thrown up from the ditch, and its slope was made firm with turf, stones, etc., if time permitted. Inside, it was strengthened with brush and wood.



VALLUM AND FOSSA

**vallus**, -ī, *m.*, a stake, pale.  
**Vangionēs**, -um, *m.*, a German tribe.  
**varietās**, -ātis, *f.* [varius], difference, variety; varied color.  
**varius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, different; manifold, changing.  
**Varrō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; see Terentius.  
**vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vāstus], make empty, ravage, destroy.  
**vāstus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, empty, uninhabited; vast, immense.  
**vāsum**, -ī, *n.*, vessel, jar.  
**vāticinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [vāticinor, predict], prediction, prophecy.  
**vectīgāl**, -ālis, *n.* [vectīgālis], tax, revenue, tribute.  
**vectīgālis**, -e, *adj.* [vehō], paying revenue or tribute, tributary.  
**vectōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō], for carrying; vectōria nāvigia, transport-ships.

**vehementer**, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, zealously, powerfully.

**vehō**, -ere, **vexi**, **vectum**, *tr.*, bear, carry, convey; *pass.*, be carried, ride, sail.

**Veientēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of the Etrurian town Veii. *Map I, A, 7.*

**vel**, *conj.* [volō], or; **vel** . . . **vel**, either . . . or.

**vēlāmen**, -inis, *n.* [vēlō], a covering, veil, garment.

**Velānius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp., Quintus Velanius, a military tribune.

**Velocassēs**, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe on the Seine. *Map IV, D, 2.*

**Vellavī**, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Arverni living in modern Velay. *Map IV, E-F, 4.*

**vēlō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vēlum], cover, veil, wrap, cover over.

**vēlōcītās**, -ātis, *f.* [vēlōx], swiftness, speed.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, fleet.

**vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, a covering, veil; awning, curtain; sail; **vēla dare** or **facere**, set sail.

- vel-ut** or **vel-utī**, *adv.*, even as, just as if, as though.
- vēna**, -ae, *f.*, a blood-vessel, vein; of minerals, a vein of metal.
- vēnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**vēnor**, hunt], hunting, hunting expedition; hunting spectacle.
- vēnātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**vēnor**, hunt], a hunter.
- vēndō**, -ere, -didī, —, *tr.* [**vēnum**, sale+dō], sell, put to sale; sell at auction.
- Venelli**, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Normandy. *Map IV, C, 2.*
- vēnēnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vēnēnō**, poison], filled with poison, poisonous.
- vēnēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.
- Veneti**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of Britanny, near modern Vannes. *Map IV, B, 3.*
- Venetia**, -ae, *f.*, the territory of the Veneti. *Map IV, B, 3.*
- Veneticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Veneti.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, favor, grace, indulgence; pardon.
- veniō**, -ire, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, go; in **dēditiōnem venire**, surrender.
- ventiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [double freq. of **veniō**], keep coming, be wont to come, resort.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, the wind.
- Venusia**, -ae, *f.*, a town in southern Italy. *Map II, E, 5.*
- Veragri**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 3-4.*
- Verbigenus**, -ī, *m.*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, a word; *pl.*, words, discourse, conversation; a saying, expression; **verba facere**, to speak.
- Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Arverni.
- Vercingetorix**, -īgis, *m.*, a chief of the Arverni and commander of the allied Gallic forces at Alesia.
- vereor**, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, to reverence, fear, dread.
- vergō**, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, be inclined, lie toward, look toward; slope, incline.
- vergobretus**, -ī, *m.*, vergobret, the chief magistrate of the Haeduans.
- vērō**, *adv.* [**vērus**], postpositive, in truth, indeed, assuredly; however, but; to mark a climax, even.
- versō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of **vertō**], turn often, turn; change; *pass. as deponent*, live, dwell, remain, be, be occupied or busy.
- versus**, -ūs, *m.* [**vertō**], a line, line of writing, verse.
- vertex**, -icis, *m.* [**vertō**], a whirlpool; the crown of the head, head; top, peak, summit.
- vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; **tergum vertere**, to flee; **annō vertente**, in the course of a year; change, alter.
- Verucloetius**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetians.
- vērum**, *adv.* [**vērus**], truly, certainly; but.
- vērus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, true, genuine, reasonable, right; as *subst., n.*, the truth, reality, fact; **vērī simile**, probable.
- Vesontiō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the chief town of the Sequani, modern Besançon. *Map IV, F, 3.*
- vesper**, -erī (-eris), *m.*, the evening star, evening; sub **vesperum**, toward evening.
- Vestālis**, -e, *adj.*, Vestal, pertaining to Vesta.
- vester**, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [**vōs**], your, yours.
- vestigium**, -ī, *n.* [**vestigō**, track], the sole of the foot; step, footprint; trace, mark; spot, place.

**vestiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, tr.,** clothe, dress.

**vestis, -is, f.,** clothing, vesture; a cover, spread.

**vestitus, -ūs, m. [vestiō],** clothing, garments.

**veterānus, -a, -um, adj. [vetus],** old, veteran.

**vetō, -āre, -ui, -itum, tr.,** not to allow, forbid; prevent, hinder.

**Vettōnēs, -um, m.,** a tribe in Lusitania, in Spain. *Map I, A, 5.*

**Veturius, -i, m.,** a Roman name.

**vetus, -eris, adj.,** old, ancient; former, of a former time.

**vetustās, -ātis, f. [vetus],** old age, long existence; antiquity, ancient times.

**vetustus, -a, -um, adj. [vetus],** old, ancient.

**vexillum, -i, n. [dim. of vēlum],** a standard, banner. *For a description see signum; for illus. see plate facing p. 201.*

**vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of vehō],** shake; harass, plunder, overrun.

**via, -ae, f.,** way, road, path; journey, march.

**viātor, -ōris, m. [via],** a traveler.

**vicēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [viginti],** twenty each, twenty.

**vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [viginti],** twentieth.

**vicēs, num. adv. [viginti],** twenty times.

**vicīnia, -ae, f. [vicinus],** neighborhood, nearness; neighbors.

**vicīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vicus],** neighboring, near by, near.

**vicis, f., gen. (no nom.),** change; in vicem or in vicēs, in turn, alternately, one another.

**victima, -ae, f.,** a sacrifice, victim.

**victor, -ōris, m.,** a victor; as adj., victorious.

**victōria, -ae, f. [victor],** victory.

**victus, -ūs, m. [vivō],** means of living, living, food; manner of life.

**vicus, -i, m.,** street; village.

**videō, -ēre, vidī, visum, tr.,** see, perceive, observe, understand; see to, take care; pass., seem, appear, seem good, be decided or adjudged.

**vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake],** a watching, watch.

**viginti, indecl. num. adj.,** twenty.

**vilis, -e, adj.,** of small price, of little value, cheap.

**villa, -ae, f.,** country house, farmhouse, farm, villa.

**vīmen, -inis, n.,** pliant twig, wither, osier.

**Viminālis, -e, adj. [vīmen],** of osiers; Viminal; as subst., m. (sc. collis), the Viminal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

**vinciō, -īre, vīnxi, vīnctum, tr.,** bind, fetter; restrain.

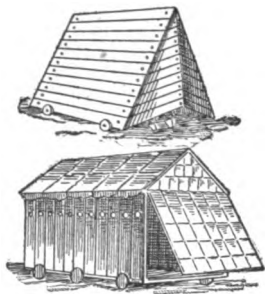
**vincō, -ere, vīci, victum, tr. and intr.,** conquer, overcome, defeat; convince, win; prevail, have one's way.

**vinculum, -i, n. [vinciō],** bond, fastening; pl., bonds, chains, prison.

**vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vindex],** claim, maintain; assert authority; avenge, punish; in aliquem vindicāre, take vengeance upon.

**vīnea, -ae, f.,** vineyard, vine-arbor, vine; a shed for the defense of a besieging party. *This was a structure 7 or 8 feet high, about 6 feet wide, and from 13 to 16 feet long. It was built of wood and wicker-work, and ran on rollers. Like other Roman siege-works built of inflammable materials, it was protected from fire by wet coverings,*

such as raw hides, etc. The *vinea* is shown in the *illus.* facing p. 233.



**vinētum**, -ī, *n.* [**vinum**], vine-garden, vineyard.

**vinum**, -ī, *n.*, wine.

**violō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**vis**], violate, injure, dishonor.

**vir**, **virī**, *m.*, a man; man of courage; husband.

**vireō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be green or fresh.

**virēs**, see **vis**.

**virgineus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**virgō**], of or like a maiden, maidenly.

**virgō**, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin, young girl.

**virgulta**, -ōrum, *n.*, thickets; sprouts, brushwood.

**viridis**, -e, *adj.* [**vireō**], green; young, fresh.

**Viridomārus**, -ī, *m.*, a *Haeduan* chief.

**Viridovix**, -icis, *m.*, a chief of the *Venelli*.

**virilis**, -e, *adj.* [**vir**], male, manly.

**viritim**, *adv.* [**vir**], man by man, singly, individually.

**Viromandui**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie* tribe of modern *Picardy*. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir**], manliness, courage, bravery; excellence.

**vis**, *acc.* **vim**, *abl.* **vi**, *f.*, force, violence; great number; *pl.*, **virēs**, -ium, strength; **vim facere**, use violence, resist; influence.

**viscus**, -eris, *n.* (usually *pl.*), the internal organs, entrails; flesh.

**visus**, -ūs, *m.* [**videō**], a sight, spectacle.

**vita**, -ae, *f.*, life; way of life, manner of living.

**vitiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**vitium**], make defective, injure, damage.

**vitis**, -is, *f.*, a vine, grapevine.

**vitium**, -ī, *n.*, fault, imperfection.

**vītō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, shun, avoid, escape.

**vitrum**, -ī, *n.*, glass; woad, a plant used in dyeing blue.

**vitulina**, -ae, *f.* [**vitulus**, calf], veal.

**vivō**, -ere, **vixi**, **victum**, *intr.*, live; support life, feed; dwell.

**vivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vivō**], alive, living; of rock, unwrought, native.

**vix**, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, barely, with difficulty.

**Vocātes**, -ium, *m.*, an *Aquitania* people. Map IV, C-D, 4.

**Vocciō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of the *Norici*.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**vōx**], call, summon; call by name, name.

**Vocontii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie* tribe in the Alps. Map IV, F, 4.

**Volcae**, -ārum, *m.*, a people of the Province. Map IV, D-F, 4-5.

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, —, *tr. and intr.*, will, be willing, wish, purpose, determine; be minded, be about.

**Volsci**, -ōrum, *m.*, an ancient tribe of southern *Latium*. Map II, D, 4.

**volucer**, -cris, -cre, *adj.* [**volō**, fly], flying, winged; fleet, swift; as *subst.*, *f.*, a bird.

**voluntās**, -ātis, *f.* [**volō**], will, wish, desire; consent, approval; goodwill, attachment.

**voluptās**, -ātis, *f.* [volō], what one wishes; pleasure, delight; darling.

**Volusēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, a tribune of Caesar's army.

**volūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of volvō], roll, turn; turn over in one's mind, ponder, consider.

**volvō**, -ere, volvī, volūtum, *tr.*, roll; *pass.* with reflex. meaning, roll along, flow.

**vōs**, see tū.

**Vosegus**, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges Mountains. *Map IV, G, 2-3.*

**vōtum**, -ī, *n.* [voveō], vow, promise; wish, prayer.

**voveō**, -ēre, vovī, vōtum, *tr.*, devote, vow; wish, wish for.

**vōx**, vōcis, *f.*, voice, sound, tone; cry, shout; utterance, speech; word, saying.

**Vulcānus**, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, the god of fire and metals; *fig.*, fire.

**vulgō**, *adv.* [vulgus], commonly, publicly, universally.

**vulgus**, -ī, *n.*, the common people, crowd; the rabble, masses.

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vulnus], wound.

**vulnus**, -eris, *n.*, a wound.

**Vulsō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; see Mānlius (3).

**vultus**, -ūs, *m.*, expression, countenance, look, features, face.

## X

**X**, for decem, etc.

**Xanthippus**, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan general.

**Xenophōn**, -ōntis, *m.*, an Athenian soldier and author.

**Xerxēs**, -is, *m.*, a king of Persia.

## Z

**Zama**, -ae, *f.*, a town in northern Africa. *Map I, E, 6.*











